

# CONTENTS

<b>MAP OF THE DICTUM FACTUM UPPER INTERMEDIATE PRACTICAL ENGLISH COURSE 1</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>THE BEGINNING</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Unit 1. Crown Thy Gold With Brotherhood</b>	<b>13</b>
Lesson 1. Little Rhody Is No Match to the Lone Star	13
Lesson 2. Kelpies' Sightings at Pistyll Rhaeadr and Lough Neagh	39
Lesson 3. European Crossroads	63
<b>Unit 2. Dream Factories</b>	<b>82</b>
Lesson 1. The Rise of the Curtain	82
Lesson 2. They Just Kept Rolling Along	100
Lesson 3. The Silver Screen	123
Lesson 4. The British Are Coming	<b>141</b>
<b>Unit 3. Flying High</b>	<b>159</b>
Lesson 1. Bomb Dogs on the Concrete Apron	159
Lesson 2. Anything to Declare?	177
Lesson 3. The Cut-Ptice Fleet Goes Marginal	199
<b>Unit 4. Stars and Crowns</b>	<b>214</b>
Lesson 1. Lodge and Board	214
Lesson 2. A Room with a View	227
Lesson 3. Have a Break	244
<b>Unit 5. Doctor at Large</b>	<b>256</b>
Lesson 1. The Heart of the Matter	256
Lesson 2. Swabs, Wet Packs and Sounds	275
Lesson 3. Modern Medicine is Bad for Your Health	293
<b>SPEAKING TASKS</b>	<b>310</b>
<b>VOCABULARY</b>	<b>363</b>

# MAP OF THE DICTUM FACTUM UPPER INTERMEDIATE PRACTICAL ENGLISH COURSE

## UNIT 1. CROWN THY GOLD WITH BROTHERHOOD

LESSONS	TOPICS	FUNCTIONS	CAE EXAM FOCUS
Lesson 1. Little Rhody Is No Match to the Lone Star	US Geography US People and Character National Stereotypes Holidays in US, UK and UA	Function 53. Offering invitations Function 54. Accepting or declining invitations Function 71. Location - 1. Stationary prepositions - 1	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description of countries, people, holidays, stereotypes and contrasting them, Listening comprehension, Writing, Reading.
Lesson 2. Kelpies' Sightings at Pistyll Rhadadr and Lough Neagh	UK Geography UK People and Character National Stereotypes	Function 55. Asking for/Giving reasons Function 72. Location - 2. Stationary prepositions - 2	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description of countries, people, stereotypes and contrasting them, Listening comprehension, Writing, Reading.
Lesson 3. European Crossroads	Geography of Ukraine Ukrainian People and Character	Function 56. Making suggestions - 2 Function 73. Location - 3. Stationary prepositions - 3	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description of countries, people, stereotypes and contrasting them, Listening comprehension. Writing Leaflets, Reading.

## UNIT 2. DREAM FACTORIES

LESSONS	TOPICS	FUNCTIONS	CAE EXAM FOCUS
Lesson 1. The Rise of the Curtain	Theatre Interior. London Theatres. Theatre Genres and Artistic Staff. Premiers and Reviews.	Functions 71-73. Location. Stationary prepositions	Vocabulary <sup>7</sup> , Speaking: Descriptions and contrasting of theatre interiors, artistic staff, performances, evaluating them. Listening comprehension, Writing (assessing good and bad points, a theatre review), Reading.
Lesson 2. They Just Kept Rolling Along	Broadway Musicals. Reasons for the shows popularity.	Function 57. Disappointment Function 58. Regret Function 74. Time. Temporal prepositions	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description, analysis and evaluation of the situation, identifying tendencies, predicting the future. Writing (first-person narrative; describing performances, ceremonies, festivals), Reading.
Lesson 3. The Silver Screen	History of the Cinema. Film Genres. Artistic and Production Staff. Film Rating in US, UK and UA. Factors that Encourage/Discourage Movie-going.	Function 59. Making plans/arrangements Function 60. Cancelling plans. Function 75. Prepositions to Express Other Meanings - 1	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of opinions, films, cinema theatres. Listening comprehension, Reading.
Lesson 4. The British Are Coming	British Cinema. Ukrainian Cinema. Cinema Theatres in Ukraine.	Function 61. Expressing hopes Function 62. Asking for/Giving Advice - 2 Function 76. Prepositions to Express Other Meanings - 2	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of Ukrainian and British Cinema, Listening comprehension, Writing (Survey Reports), Reading.

### UNIT 3. FLYING HIGH

LESSONS	TOPICS	FUNCTIONS	CAE EXAM FOCUS
Lesson 1. Bomb Dogs on the Concrete Apron	Airport Building. Baggage Transportation Rules. Baggage screening. Tickets and Boarding Passes. Airport Services. US Major Airports.	Function 63. Asking for/Giving advice - 3 Function 77. Verbs Followed by Prepositions and Common Fixed Expressions - 1	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description of airports, their services and contrasting them, Listening comprehension, Writing (assessing good and bad points).
Lesson 2. Anything to Declare?	Immigration and Customs Control (UA and US). Customs declarations and Landing Cards. Competition in the air.	Function 64. Making Predictions Function 78. Verbs Followed by Prepositions and Common Fixed Expressions - 2	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of immigration and customs rules in different countries, airlines' performance, Listening comprehension, Writing, Reading.
Lesson 3. The Cut-Price Fleet Goes Marginal	Competition in the air.	Function 65. Expressing Certainty - 2 Function 79. Verbs Followed by Prepositions and Common Fixed Expressions - 3	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of airlines' performance, Listening comprehension, Writing (For-and-Against Essay), Reading.

### UNIT 4. STARS AND CROWNS

LESSONS	TOPICS	FUNCTIONS	CAE EXAM FOCUS
Lesson 1. Lodge and Board	Types and Categories of Hotels. Types of Rooms. Food Plans. Hotel Services, Facilities and Staff.	Function 66. Expressing (Im)Probability Function 77-79. Verbs Followed by Prepositions and Common Fixed Expressions	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of hotels, rooms, facilities.
Lesson 2. A Room with a View	Reservations. Checking In and Out. Room Service. Problems Likely to Arise at a Hotel.	Function 67. Correcting	Vocabulary, Speaking: Making Reservations, Description and contrasting of hotels, Listening comprehension, Writing (Filling in Forms, Letter of Complaint)
Lesson 3. Have a Break	Weekend Breaks at English Hotels.		Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of weekend breaks, Reading.

### UNIT 5. DOCTOR AT LARGE

LESSONS	TOPICS	FUNCTIONS	CAE EXAM FOCUS
Lesson 1. The Heart of the Matter	Human Organs and Their Prostheses. Branches of Medicine. Types of Professionals. Hospitals: Outpatient and Inpatient Departments. Immune System. Diseases. AIDS. Avian Flu.	Function 68. Requesting information on the state of health -1	Vocabulary; Speaking: Description and contrasting of hospitals, diseases, remedies, Listening comprehension, Reading.
Lesson 2. Swabs, Wet Packs and Sounds	Medical Equipment and Instruments. Heart Disorders and Their Treatment. Alternative Medicine. Flu. Language and the Brain.	Function 69. Requesting information on the state of health -2	Vocabulary, Speaking: Making Reservations, Description and contrasting symptoms, Reading, Listening comprehension, Writing (Survey Report), Reading.
Lesson 3. Modern Medicine is Bad for Your Health	New Trends in Medicine. The Future of Medicine.	Function 70. Requesting information on the state of health -3	Vocabulary, Speaking: Description and contrasting of different approaches to disease prevention and treatment, Reading

## ВСТУП

Дана робота є продовженням підручника для другого курсу (Dictum Factum Intermediate English Course) і призначена для студентів третього курсу перекладацьких факультетів або перекладацьких відділень факультетів іноземної філології університетів, хоча може використовуватися і для загальної мовної підготовки.

**Вихідний рівень.** Відповідно до рекомендацій Комітету з питань освіти при Раді Європи щодо навчання іноземних мов (*A Common European Framework of Reference 2001*) та Програми з англійської мови для університетів (Ніколаєва та ін. 2001), по закінченні другого курсу студенти факультетів іноземної філології мають відповідати рівню B2 в письмі, B2.2 в аудіюванні та діалогічному мовленні, а також рівню C1.1 у монологічному мовленні та читанні. Коротко характеристики згаданих рівнів (див. Ніколаєва та ін. 2001, с. 116) за видами мовленнєвої діяльності зводяться до такого: аудіювання - в межах знайомих тем розуміти зміст поширених повідомлень, що включають складні типи аргументації; розуміти короткі тексти наукового характеру, а також більшість теле- та радіоновин і програм, пов'язаних з поточними подіями; діалогічне мовлення - підтримувати спілкування зі швидкістю та спонтанністю, ступінь яких є достатнім, аби не спричинювати незручності співрозмовнику; монологічне мовлення - виступати з широкого кола питань, пов'язаних з діапазоном власних інтересів; пояснювати власну точку зору на конкретну проблему, аналізуючи переваги та недоліки різних варіантів її вирішення; письмо - писати стислі повідомлення або твори для передачі інформації або викладення аргументів на користь або проти конкретної точки зору; читання - читати сучасну художню прозу; розуміти фактичну інформацію, передану як експліцитно, так й імпліцитно. (більш детально див.: *A Common European Framework of Reference 2001*; Ніколаєва та ін. 2001). Саме на такий рівень розрахований матеріал цього підручника. Протягом третього року навчання студенти мають вийти на рівень C1.1 - C1.2. Цим рівням відповідає тест *CAE (Certificate in Advanced English)* у Кембріджській (*UCLES*) класифікації тестів (див. *Certificate in Advanced English 1997*), відповідно і матеріал підручника та структура його завдань готують студентів до тестів такого типу.

Цілі навчання в підручнику формулюються, виходячи із загальної мети усього п'ятирічного курсу (див. Ніколаєва та ін. 2001), і зводяться до практичних (формування мовленнєвих навичок і умінь та засвоєння лінгвістичних і соціокультурних знань), когнітивних (розвиток когнітивних здібностей), афективних (формування впевненості щодо використання мови як засобу комунікації та для перекладу, а також позитивного відношення до вивчення англійської мови та засвоєння відповідної культури), освітніх (розвиток здатності до самостійного пошуку та засвоєння нового матеріалу), фахових (формування перекладацької компетенції) та соціальних (розвиток загальних умінь спілкування).

Наприкінці третього курсу студенти, як уже згадувалося вище, мають досягти рівнів C1.1 в аудіюванні, письмі та діалогічному мовленні, а також рівня C1.2 у монологічному мовленні та читанні. Зміст вказаних рівнів (див. Ніколаєва та ін. 2001, с. 116) викладений далі: аудіювання - в межах знайомих і незнайомих тем розуміти зміст поширених повідомлень, що включають складні типи аргументації; розуміти лекції та документальні програми, де коментар ведеться нормативною англійською мовою; діалогічне мовлення - здійснювати спілкування невимушено, чітко формулюючи думки і своєчасно коригуючи власне мовлення у відповідності до висловлювань співрозмовників; монологічне мовлення - виступати з детальним викладом складних тем, одночасно інтегруючи кілька підтем; письмо - писати чіткі за змістом і добре структуровані за формою тексти, детально викладаючи інформацію; писати резюме, фактичні повідомлення та ділові листи; читання - розуміти довгі та складні тексти, як фактичного характеру, так і художні твори, усвідомлюючи стилістичні засоби, що містяться у тексті.

Досягнення таких цілей на третьому курсі здійснюється завдяки вирішенню низки завдань, а саме: а) засвоєнню близько 5000 лексичних одиниць (слів та зворотів) в межах пройдених тем; б) інтеграції навичкових параметрів (фонетики, лексики та граматики) у мовленнєвих уміннях; в) аудіювання текстів, що відносяться до тем, які студенти вивчають; г) упевненого спілкування в межах згаданих тем; д) уміння долати чинники, що перешкоджають розумінню під час спілкування; е) розвитку гнучких стратегій читання як мовленнєвого уміння за рахунок формування усіх його видів; є) розвитку письма як мовленнєвого уміння на матеріалі написання різножанрової продукції (рекламна листівка туристичного характеру, рецензія на фільм, спектакль тощо, лист-скарга, аналіз позитивних та негативних аспектів ситуації тощо, аналіз переваг та недоліків ряду об'єктів тощо, звіт про результати аналізу, виконаного за одержаним завданням), а також написання невеликих творів; ж) засвоєнню певного обсягу соціокультурних знань за рахунок читання відповідних текстів, застосування ілюстративного матеріалу тощо; з) формуванню фахових навичок завдяки розвитку здатності передачі власних назв при перекладі, застосування транскодування при передачі топонімів і власних імен та виконанню перекладних вправ. До вправ, що готують майбутнього перекладача до можливої роботи у туристичній індустрії слід також віднести формування умінь вести усні перемови та



листування з готелями та авіакомпаніями, підготовки рекламних листівок для туристів, написання звітів за результатами аналізу наявних готелів, авіарейсів тощо.

**Зміст навчання.** Тематика, як і передбачено Програмою (Ніколаєва та ін. 2001), на цьому рівні навчання відноситься переважно до блоків "Англомовний світ і Україна" та "Гуманітарна сфера", які на всіх етапах тісно переплітаються з соціокультурним компонентом: 1) Великобританія - США -Україна: географічне положення, поділ на регіони, особливості регіонів, характер народів, що населяють відповідну країну, національні стереотипи, національні свята; 2) Театр та кіно у Великобританії, США та Україні: історія виникнення та розвитку, провідні кіно- та театральні актори, режисери, продюсери, найбільш відомі фільми, вистави тощо, жапри кінофільмів та спектаклів, кіно- та театральні рецензії, технологія підготовки спектаклів та зйомок кінофільмів, прем'єри; 3) Індустрія повітряних перевезень у США та Україні: структура аеропорту, призначення його частин та служб, авіаквитки та посадочні талони, резервування квитків, правила перевозу багажу та проблеми з ним, реєстрація на рейс, митний та імміграційний контроль, заповнення митних декларацій в Україні та США, види обмежень на ввіз та вивіз певних товарів, конкуренція авіаперевізників, економічні аспекти діяльності авіакомпаній; 4) Індустрія готельного господарства у Великобританії та Україні: типи готелів, їхня класифікація, вимоги до різних категорій готелів (зірки, корони), персонал готелю та його функції, типи кімнат, обслуговування у номерах, устаткування готелів та додаткові послуги (проведення конференцій, прийомів тощо), резервування номерів електронною поштою, телефоном, листом, культурні програми вихідного дня у британських готелях; 5) Медицина: органи людського тіла, протезування, галузі медицини, лікарі та інший медичний персонал, лікарня та поліклініка - відділення, служби, їхні функції, хвороби, симптоми, травми та перша медична допомога, огляд лікаря, скарги пацієнта, медичне устаткування, прилади та інструменти, імунна система та механізм її дії, СНІД, птишиний грип, серцево-судинна система та її захворювання, захворювання вуха, горлата носа, дерматологічні та офтальмологічні захворювання, захворювання очередини, органів черевної порожнини, грудної клітки і грудної порожнини; 6) Мова і мозок, виникнення та розвиток мови, особливості засвоєння мови, роль спадкових механізмів у засвоєнні мови, виникнення та розвиток англійської мови, джерела впливу на англійську мову, роль запозичень у розширенні лексичного складу, роль англійської мови у сучасному світі.

**Розвиток мовленнєвих умінь.** Досягнення мети навчання аудіювання (див. вище) здійснюється як за рахунок спеціальних вправ у класі, включаючи спілкування з викладачем та іншими студентами, так і завдяки домашній та самостійній роботі (прослуховування аудіокасети, що входить до комплексу з підручником, радіопередач, перегляд телевізійних передач та кінофільмів). Вправи на аудіювання зазвичай забирають надто багато часу при роботі в класі. До того ж різні студенти потребують різної кількості прослуховувань, аби виконати завдання, пов'язані з аудіюванням. Враховуючи це, доцільно перенести основну частку цієї праці на домашню роботу, ретельно перевіряючи самостійність такої роботи кожного студента.

Навчання говоріння ставить за мету розвиток умінь спонтанного непередбаченого спілкування, а не відтворення завчених текстів. З цією метою застосовуються мовленнєві вправи проблемного характеру, пов'язані з необхідністю опису, порівняння, протиставлення, аналізу, оцінки та формулювання висновків, відстоюванням власної точки зору, аргументуванням тощо. Протягом третього року навчання студенти, на додачу до 52 мовленнєвих функцій, засвоєних протягом першого та другого курсів, мають оволодіти ще 28-ма (див. розподіл функцій на початку підручника). Для забезпечення мовленнєвого спрямування, на додачу до вправ, пов'язаних з текстами та особистим досвідом студентів, підручник має окремий розділ (*Speaking Tasks*) з фотографіями. Ці вправи, що виконуються у парному і груповому режимах, забезпечують активність студентів та інтенсивність їхньої праці.

Змістом навчання читання є розвиток контекстуальної догадки для розуміння незнайомих слів у тексті, розпізнавання його головної ідеї, складових, їхньої структури, елементів та засобів зв'язку між ними. Передбачається також формування навичок відновлення деформованих текстів, розвиток умінь розпізнавання аргументації автора, прогнозування змісту тексту, виходячи з наявної інформації. На відміну від підручників попередніх рівнів, цілеспрямований розвиток зазначених навичок та умінь не обмежується лише останніми уроками кожного розділу (*Unit*), а поширюється й на інші уроки. У підручнику збережено принцип застосування виключно автентичних текстів, які практично не адаптувалися (за винятком незначних скорочень), і запозичені з британських та американських засобів масової інформації.

Мета навчання письма як мовленнєвого умінь досягається за рахунок розширення типів вправ для його розвитку. У цьому підручнику студенти засвоюють принципи написання низки типів писемної продукції, про які вже згадувалося вище (рекламна листівка туристичного характеру, рецензія на фільм, спектакль тощо, лист-скарга, аналіз позитивних та негативних аспектів ситуації тощо, аналіз переваг та недоліків ряду

об'єктів, звіт про результати аналізу, виконаного за одержаним завданням), значно розширюючи діапазон власних умінь породжувати писемні тексти, що відповідають вимогам носіїв англійської мови. Разом з тим студенти продовжують традицію написання фабульних міні-творів з використанням засвоєного матеріалу.

Засвоєння лексики та її відпрацювання і включення до структури мовленнєвих умінь є важливим завданням підручника. Лексика вводиться семантичними кластерами і семантизується без застосування перекладу за допомогою малюнків, контексту, використання синонімів або антонімів та пояснень англійською мовою. Наявність двомовних (англо-українського та українсько-англійського) словників наприкінці підручника значною мірою знімає лексичні проблеми студентів. Враховуючи орієнтацію на міжнародні тести типу CAE (*Certificate in Advanced English*), в підручнику передбачена робота по засвоєнню фразових дієслів. Суттєвою відмінністю даної роботи є використання новітніх досягнень лексикологічних досліджень, зокрема даних сучасних комбінаторних словників (див. *Oxford Collocations Dictionary of English 2002*) та застосування комбінаторних таблиць з відповідними вправами.

Вдосконалення граматичних навичок, формування яких на першому та другому курсі проходило на основі окремого посібника (*Dictum Factum University Practical English Grammar 2005*), на третьому курсі здійснюється в рамках підручника. З цією метою до змісту майже кожного модуля (*Part*) уроку входять вправи по підтриманню різних елементів граматичної системи, яка вже сформована у свідомості студента. Ці вправи мають форму корегування недосконалих текстів, утворення слів від заданої основи, множинного вибору тощо. Крім того, у більшості уроків передбачена спеціальна частина (переважно *Part 3*), метою якої є подальше вдосконалення навичок вживання системи англійських прийменників, яка, за даними досліджень, є найважчим сегментом англійської мови взагалі. Ця частина підручника базується на результатах спеціального дисертаційного дослідження (Ковальчук 2004).

Вправи цієї частини об'єднані у комплекс, що реалізується поетапно (кожен з етапів відповідає певній категорії прийменників: просторові - стаціонарне положення та напрям руху; темпоральні; відносні; прийменники, що вживаються з деякими дієсловами і в найбільш поширених сталених виразах), та циклічно. Крім того, ця частина підручника включає чотирі тести, зміст яких наведено у "Книзі для викладача". Там же подається приблизний розподіл усього матеріалу підручника по заняттях. Рекомендовані критерії оцінки (1 бал за кожне правильно виконане завдання): 85-100 % правильних відповідей - "відмінно", 70-84% - "добре", 55-69 % - "задовільно", менше 55 % - незадовільно.

Виконання вправ по засвоєнню системи англійських прийменників організовано за третім типом орієнтування (П. Я. Гальперін), відповідно до якого система орієнтирів не дається студентам у готовому вигляді, а будується ними самими в процесі розв'язання системи проблемних завдань. Така процедура вважається найбільш ефективною для формування навичок, умінь та узагальнень. На практиці це виглядає так: викладач вводить мовленнєві зразки у вигляді фабульного тексту, що містить певні прийменники. Далі студентам пропонується самостійно встановити значення, в яких вони вживаються, заповнити таблиці, вивести правила тощо. Виконання цього завдання дозволяє досягти двоєдиної мети: по-перше, студенти будують (без актуального усвідомлення) та засвоюють орієнтувальну основу дій по вживанню відповідних прийменників, а по-друге - розвивають навички їхнього вживання, бо вправи є лише англійськими.

До складу комплексу цієї частини підручника входять репродуктивні умовно-комунікативні вправи, які виконуються після побудови системи орієнтирів: заповнення пропусків або вибір прийменника із запропонованих. Матеріал для вирішення одних завдань можна знайти безпосередньо в текстах епізодів, інші - розширюють контекст, створюючи ситуації, що відсутні в епізодах, але є їхніми можливими наслідками. Контекст доповнюється за рахунок малюнків, що ілюструють вживання певних категорій та підкатегорій прийменників.

Інші репродуктивні умовно-комунікативні вправи включають опис малюнків, що є ілюстраціями до змісту конкретних епізодів, переказ епізоду від імені певного персонажа, відповіді на запитання, різні види перефразування та вибір еквівалентів на основі контексту.

Репродуктивні комунікативні вправи мають форму переказу невідомого іншим тексту, який студенти складають вдома. Таким чином, переважна більшість вправ є умовно-комунікативними. Близько 25 % вправ, пов'язаних із заповненням таблиць та формулюванням правил, формально класифікуються як некомунікативні. З іншого боку, метою їхнього виконання є розв'язання певних проблемних ситуацій, що пов'язано з активними діями студента, коли він/вона вживає лише засоби англійської мови, має реальне завдання, мотив та усі інші атрибути комунікативності. Відповідно подібні вправи доцільніше класифікувати як рецензивно-репродуктивні комунікативні.

Фахова перекладацька підготовка студентів вже на цьому ранньому етапі забезпечується, крім традиційних для вітчизняних підручників вправ на переклад (яких порівняно небагато, і які виконують швидше узагальнюючу функцію, перевіряючи міцність перекладацьких лексично-граматичних навичок

при роботі з текстом, що відзначається високим ступенем концентрації активної лексики), спеціальними вправами для розвитку навичок роботи зі словниками (де студенти мають знайти різницю між синонімічними словами), транскрибування власних імен, вдосконалення навичок перекладацького скоропису (див. Ребрій 2002). Як уже згадувалося вище, до пов'язаних з перекладацьким фахом також можна віднести вправи на формування умінь вести усні перемови та листування з готелями та авіакомпаніями, підготовки рекламних листівок для туристів, написання звітів за результатами аналізу наявних готелів, авіарейсів тощо, бо ця робота зазвичай входить до сфери відповідальності перекладача.

Структура підручника. Підручник включає такі компоненти: 1) карта розподілу матеріалу підручника (*MAP OF THE DICTUM FACTUM PREINTERMEDIATE PRACTICAL ENGLISH COURSE*), яка показує розподіл матеріалу за розділами (*Units*), уроками (*Lessons*), темами (*Topics*), функціями (*Functions*), а також вказує, на які частини тесту тину *CAE* переважно орієнтовані вправи відповідного уроку (*CAE Exam Focus*); 2) Вступ, який Ви саме зараз читаете; 3) основна частина підручника, розділена на п'ять розділів (*Units*), в одному з яких (другому) - 4 уроки, а в інших - по 3; 4) Додаток (*Addendum*) складається з двох частин - перша містить пояснення, як виконувати вправи, призначені для роботи зі словниками, а друга - викладає загальні принципи перекладу пісенних творів; 5) секція наочності (*Speaking Tasks*) містить фото для стимулювання говоріння студентів у мовленнєвих вправах та пояснення структури завдання (і тесту) для розвитку усного мовлення, призначення кожної з його чотирьох частин, а також загальних принципів його оцінювання; 6) англо-українські та українсько-англійські словники до кожного уроку.

Контроль засвоєння змісту підручника здійснюється переважно у форматі тесту *CAE* (*Certificate in Advanced English*), тобто за допомогою комплексного тесту, який включає чотири частини: 1) аудіювання (40 хвилин, 4 тексти: I - розуміння загального змісту, II - розуміння деталей, III - пошук конкретної інформації, IV - розпізнавання смислу та факторів відношення) має форму підтвердження або спростування, множинного вибору, заповнення пропусків або таблиць тощо, знаходження відповідника, дописування незакінчених речень; 2) говоріння - студентів тестують парами (14 хвилин на кожну пару, чотирьох завдання: I - бесіда на особисті теми без візуальної опори; II - порівняння, протиставлення та розмірковування з візуальною опорою на два або більше малюнків; III - обговорення та оцінювання з візуальною опорою на серію малюнків; IV - розвиток теми, яка обговорювалася в частині III, з перенесенням обговорення на особистий досвід студентів; 3) читання (75 хвилин, 4 тексти: призначення текстів та варіанти форми виконання - такі ж, як і при контролі аудіювання), структура вправ для навчання читання у підручнику відповідає тій, яка використовується при тестуванні; 4) письмо (90 хвилин, 2 завдання: диктант (1500 знаків), написання листа за завданням (120-180 слів) або міні-твору за завданням (120-180 слів). Лексичний та граматичний компоненти контролюються за допомогою окремих письмових перекладів англійською мовою з української (обсяг кожного перекладу - 1 000 знаків, час на виконання кожного перекладу -45 хвилин). Комплексний тест у повному обсязі використовується тільки раз у семестрі, на останньому тижні навчання. На усний іспит виносяться тільки тест для перевірки говоріння. Оцінки з усіх частин комплексного тесту складаються і виводиться середня, яка округлюється за арифметичними правилами. Контроль протягом семестру здійснюється за допомогою перекладів та диктантів, по закінченні певної дози матеріалу. Підготовка до здачі інших компонентів тесту відбувається в процесі навчання, бо більшість вправ мають структуру, ідентичну структурі завдань відповідної секції тесту.

Експериментальне навчання, проведене на протязі двох років в групах третього курсу англійського перекладацького відділення факультету іноземних мов Харківського національного університету ім. В. Н. Каразіна показало, що застосування даного підручника дозволяє сформувати повноцінні мовленнєві навички та умінь і засвоїти релевантну соціокультурну інформацію.

Йдучи назустріч побажанням викладачів, які вже працюють з підручниками серії *Dictum Factum* до змісту "Книги для викладача" включені не тільки ключі до найбільш складних вправ та транскрипт текстів, записаних на аудіокасету, але й приблизний план розподілу матеріалу підручника на увесь навчальний рік по тижнях та заняттях. Розподіл проведено з розрахунку 6 годин на тиждень та за умови відповідності студентів згаданим рівням навчання. У випадку відхилень будь-яких з цих чинників, викладачі можуть провести відповідне коригування самостійно. "Книгу для викладача" можна замовити у видавництві "Нова книга", контактні телефони та електронна адреса якого наводяться наприкінці підручника.

Автори висловлюють глибоку вдячність студентам факультету іноземних мов Харківського національного університету ім. В. Н. Каразіна, зокрема Олені Вітковській, Тетяні Єні, Юліані Сукновій, Юлії Сутормінній та багатьом іншим за допомогу у пошуку оригінальних текстів, частина яких була використана при підготовці цього підручника.

Автори будуть вдячні за пропозиції чи зауваження щодо будь-яких питань, пов'язаних із застосуванням підручника. Вони також готові надати консультативну та іншу допомогу у справі запровадження

навчальних матеріалів серії *Dictum Factum* в освітніх закладах. Ви можете підтримувати зв'язок з нами через видавництво "Нова книга".

### **При підготовці підручника були використані ресурси Інтернету і такі джерела.**

Англо-русский медицинский словарь. М.: Рус. яз., 1989; Англо-русский синонимический словарь. М.: Рус. яз., 2000; Англо-український словник (в 2-х томах) / М. І. Балла.. - К.: Освіта, 1996; Англо-український словник медичних термінів (в 2-х томах) / Занорожан В. М. та ін. Одеса: Одеський державний медичний університет, 1996; Баранцев К. Т. Англо-український фразеологічний словник. -К.: Радянська школа, 1969; Большой русско-английский медицинский словарь. М.: Рус.яз., 1989; Кортни Р. Английские фразовые глаголы. Англо-русский словарь. - М.: Руссо, 2000; Ковальчук Н. М. Методика навчання англійських прийменників майбутніх філологів / Автореф. канд. дис. 13.00.02. -Київ. нац. лінгв. ун-т, 2004; Ковальчук Н. М. Ущелина Пенкадер: Посібник для навчання англійських прийменників у вищих закладах освіти. - Харків: НТМТ, 2002; Корунець І. В. Теорія і практика нерекладу. - Вінниця: Нова книга. - 2003; Ніколаєва С.Ю., Соловей М. І, Головач Ю. В. та ін. Програма з англійської мови для університетів/інститутів (чотирирічний курс навчання). - К.: Київ. держ. лінгв. ун-т, 2001; Петров В. П., Чунятова В. С, Корн С. И. Русско-английский медицинский словарь-разговорник. -М.: Рус. язык, 1993; Ребрій О. В. Перекладацький скоронис-Вінниця: Поділля-2000. -2002; Рум А. Великобритания: Лигвострановедческий словарь. -М.: Рус.яз., 1999; Томахин Г. Д. Америка через американизмы. -М.: Высш. школа, 1982; Томахин Г. Д. США: Лигвострановедческий словарь. - М.: Рус. яз., 1999; Усатенко О. К. Російсько-український словник медичної термінології. -К.: Наукова думка, 1996; American Idioms Dictionary. - М.: Рус.яз., 1991; Bath Spa Hotel (A Guest Guide); Beech J. Thank You for Flying With Us. - Prentice Hall, 1990; Collins Cobuild Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. - London: Collins, 1989; Collins Thesaurus. - London: Collins, 2000; Collins Cobuild English Language Dictionary. -London: Collins, 1990; Concise Columbia Encyclopedia. - New York: Columbia University Press, 1994; Dictionary of American Slang. -М.: Рус. яз., 1991; Dictum Factum Practical University Grammar/ L.Chernovaty, V.Karaban (eds). - Vinnytsya: Nova Knyha, 2005; Certificate in Advanced English. - Cambridge: University of Cambridge Local Examinations Syndicate. - 1998; Evans V. Successful Writing. Intermediate. - Newbury: Express Publishing, 2000; Evans V. Successful Writing. Upper Intermediate. - Newbury: Express Publishing, 2004; Harken Sh., M. Wherly. English for Hotel Reception. - London: Edward Arnolds, 1984; Harken Sh., M. Wherly. English for Hotel Service Staff, - London: Edward Arnolds, 1984; Heaton J., Turton N. Longman Dictionary of Common Errors. -М.: Рус. яз., 1991; Jates Ch. Check in. English in Tourism. -London: Casell, 1991; Kyiv Post; Leveson L.F., M.Cass. Sky Talk. - London: Stanley Thornes, 1984; Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English. - Longman, 2003; Longman Dictionary of English Language and Culture. -Longman, 1992; Longman Lexicon of Contemporary English. - Longman, 1981; Macmillan Visual Dictionary. - NY: Macmillan, 1995; Merriam Webster English Language Dictionary. - 1994; Modern Languages: Learning, Teaching, Assessment: A Common European Framework of Reference. - Council for Cultural Cooperation, Education Committee. - Strasbourg, 2001. - <http://www.ecml.at/default.asp>; New Webster's Dictionary and Thesaurus of the English Language. -1993; Oxford Collocations Dictionary of English. - OUP, 2002; Oxford-Duden Pictorial English Dictionary. - Oxford-Mannheim, 1985; Oxford Guide to British and American Culture. - London: OUP. 2001; Revell R., Ch. Scott, Five Star English. - OUP, 1991; Stanton A., Morris S. CAE Practice Tests 1-2. - Longman, 2004; Stevenson, D. American Life and Institutions. - Stuttgart: Ernst Klett Verlag. - 2000; Swan M. Practical English Usage. - OUP, 1997; The Guardian; The Newsweek; The Mail on Sunday; The Sunday Times; The Time; The US News and World Report; Trusthouse Forte Hotel Breaks (brochure); Trusthouse Forte International Hotels (brochure).

Для ілюстрацій підручника використані фото та малюнки з таких компакт-дисків: Unit 1. EPS Cliparts 2003; Getty-Arch-City-London 104150-001; Getty-Arch-City-London 256006-002; Getty-Arch-City-London 253326-002; Getty-Arch-City-London 257770-001; Искусство и народы - English 314764-003; Getty-Arch-City-London 251605-002; Getty-Arch-City-London 288047-001; Искусство и народы - English 243676-001; Искусство и народы - English 241273-001; Искусство и народы - English 306702-004; Искусство и народы -Art-Museum 291029-001; Искусство и народы - English 264603-001; Искусство и народы - English 277360-001; Art Today-Europe-United Kingdom-England-1309437; Getty -Architecture - City - New York - 245519-001; Getty -Architecture - Contemporary buildings - 686816-002; Getty -Architecture - City - New York - 240944-002; Getty-Architecture-Contemporary buildings- 920616-026; Getty -Architecture - City - Los Angeles - 888503-002; Getty - Architecture - City - San Francisco - 312736 - 002; Getty -Architecture - City - San Francisco - 267843-002; Getty -Architecture - City - San Francisco - 797663-001, 8287-001, 691437-001, 289585-001, 3622123-002; Искусство и народы -Art - Sculpture - 973980-001; Искусство и народы - Art - Museum - 395522-001; Искусство и народы - Art - Museum - 876422-001; Искусство и народы - Art - Museum - 988473-001; Искусство и народы - Art - Museum - ар 6190-001; Искусство и народы - Art - Sculpture - 973980-002; Getty-Architect-City - New York 305908-001; Искусство и народы-Art - Sculpture - 304136-002; Искусство и народы -Art - Sculpture - 571062-002; Getty-Architect-Cont build be 0472-001; Искусство и народы - Art - Museum - 266781-002; Getty-Architect-City - New York 966170-001; Искусство и народы - Theatre - hg0597-001; Искусство и народы - Theatre - 988656-001; Искусство и народы - Theatre - hg0596-001; Kharkiv - 27, 33, Зеркальная струя; Kharkiv - 350: 11, 16, Успенский собор, Покровский собор; Новые фото-2 0000317578-049; Искусство и народы Nations Chinese cb7687-001; Искусство и народы Nations - Indian 246792-002; Искусство и народы Nations - Chinese 313212-005; Искусство и народы Nations -African American 828636-001; Искусство и народы Nations - Indian 318782; Вокруг света - Нью Йорк 1-1; Искусство и народы Nations-Indian bb2379-001 Искусство и народы Nations-Chinese па0007-001; Вокруг света-Нью Йорк 1-55; Вокруг света - Нью Йорк 2-94; Вокруг света - Нью Йорк 2-95; Искусство

и народы Nations-Chinese eb0355-003; Искусство и народы Nations-Chinese naO 105-001; Искусство и народы Nations-Indian 287125-001; Искусство и народы Nat-Indian an8428-001;

Unit 2: EPS Cliparts 2003; Фотоклинарт № 19 In Character Os20030; Фотоклинарт №19 Moments in life Os36043; Мода 03-95; Мода 01-333; Мода 01-118; Мода 01-174; Фотоклинарт № 19 In Character Os20013, In Character Os20019, In Character Os20021, In Character Os20052, In Character Os20070; Люди-6 OH 0024; Люди и их жизнь 2398; Family Spirit 593020; Family Spirit 593094; Family Spirit 593096; Люди-6 Ax053918; Люди-6 Ax059456; Люди и их жизнь 2049; Люди и их жизнь 2061; Люди и их жизнь 2235; Люди-2 86165; Профессии людей 1-96; Люди-6 737-FO-096-U8189; Люди-6 AX 041576; Люди-6 AX 057551; Люди-6 KЮ01662; Люди-6 УТ0114206; Люди и их жизнь 2223; Люди и их жизнь 2221; Дети 1-49; Дети 1-56; Дети 1-76; Дети 1-93; Люди и их жизнь 2003; Люди-6 0-079-0104; Профессии людей 1-127; Профессии людей 2-36; Профессии людей 2-34; Профессии людей 2-14; Профессии людей 2-24; Профессии людей 2-16.

Unit 3: EPS Cliparts 2003; Искусство и народы Nations Polynesian ea 9906-002 Adobe 2002 Energy 099323-002 Getty Архитект Cities San-Fran 278111-001; Adobe 2002 Energy 453033-001; Adobe 2002 Energy 490156-001; Искусство и народы Nations Tribe 307146-009; Adobe 2002 Energy 450449-001; Adobe 2002 Energy 450047-002; Adobe 2002 Energy arl474-001; Люди-6 MY 003478; Люди-6 PE 070-0739; Люди и их жизнь 2076; Adobe 2002 Energy 299937-001; Новые фото-2 NT 531-2273; Архитектура City New York la 7493-014; Искусство и народы Nations Hispanic American 557794-010; Искусство и народы Nations Inuit ap3943-001; Искусство и народы Nations Indian 250185-001; Искусство и народы Nations Asian 452560-001; Adobe 2002 Energy ap 6009-001; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-7; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-6; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-2; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-14; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-15; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-13; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-1; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-24; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-23; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 2-8; Новые фото-2 SC 090-0106; Новые фото-2 SFI 026\_H1; Новые фото-2: O - 029-088; Новые фото-2: Ri 007970; Новые фото-2 RT 001815; Новые фото-2 RS 001560; Adobe 2002 Energy ar 1359-004; Люди-2 86010; Люди-2 86030; Люди-2 86036; Люди-2 86126; Люди-2 86127; Adobe 2002 Мифические be 5534-001; Adobe 2002 Energy AR 5247-001; Adobe 2002 Energy AR 5249-001; Adobe 2002 Energy AR 5248-001; Искусство и народы Nations Hispanic American 875016-005; Искусство и народы Nations British 993264-053; Еда Dy 005922; Home and Garden 22261;

Unit 4: Животные-2: AX 063728; B-058-0184; BF 002837; BIR-01 TM016-001; CB 067139; CHI-10MR002-001; CSM 003643; FL 007309; HOR-04HB002-001; HS-004800HS-004807; HS-009346; JB-010346; MD 005803; MI-063-0207; KW-003525; JB003751; MI-063-0244; MY-006561NR 002293; RI-006258; WK-016614; Ya-002674; YM-012739; YM-013913;

Природа и окружающая среда: 44151; 44168; 6107; 6011; 6035; 6054; 6055; 6325; Коллекция клинартв № 8: Os 06055;

Коллекция клинартв № 10: Os 18001; Os 18002; Os 18003; Os 18004; Os 18014; Os 18017; Os 18022; Os 18033; Os 18040; Os 18044; Os 18048; Os 18053; Os 18056; Os 18060; Os 18061; Os 18062; Os 18091; Os 18097; Os 18098; Os 18100; Os 18101; Os 18110; Os 18114; Os 18112; Os 18116; Os 18117; Os 18118; Os 38009; Os 38011; Os 38023; Os 38075; 38079; Os 38084; Os 01007; Os 01037; Os 01004; Os 38068; Os 38069; Os 38071; Os 38072; Os 38067; Os 38070; Os 01002; Os 01003; Os 01005; Os 01006; Os 01009; Os 01011; Os 01013; Os 01020; Os 01025; Os 01028; Os 01030; Os 01031; Os 01036; Os 01053; Os 01059; Os 01060; Os 01074; Os 01079; Os 01081; Фотоклинарт № 19: In Character Os20102; Adobe 2003: Energy: 450859-001; 452339-001; 453627-001; 485976-001; 490055-001; 286098-001; 994500-001; Искусство и народы: Nations: English: 687361-001; Home and Garden: 26195; 26238; 26267; 26234; 26322; Новые фото-2 Jh 002006; RS 001560

Visuals: Искусство и Haponbi-Nations-English-244139-001; Искусство и Haponbi-Nations-English-257770-001; Искусство и народы - Nations-English 292935-001; Art Today-Europe-United Kingdom-England-1309428; US landmarks and Travel 16042; US landmarks and Travel 16068; US landmarks and Travel 16074; US landmarks and Travel 16251; US landmarks and Travel 16269; US landmarks and Travel 16290; Getty-Arch-City-Moscow ea 3075-001; Executives and Food Eхе-063; Люди-6 PE 294-0288; Люди и их жизнь 2184; Новые фото-2 CB 033564; Новые фото-2 LC 002040; Новые фото-2 MNT 055-HI; Новые фото-2 N 032-0297; Adobe 2002 Energy 996542-001; Adobe 2002 Energy 770755-003; Новые фото-2 UG 001847; Adobe 2002 Energy 106480-022; Adobe 2002 Energy 391842-001; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 10-43; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 10-45; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 10-46; Cliparts 2001 Люди и профессии 10-26; Люди-6 PE 131-0131; Family Spirit 593039; Люди и их жизнь 2078; Люди и их жизнь 2187; Люди и их жизнь 2337; Профессии людей 1-105; Профессии людей 1-270; Профессии людей 1-196; Профессии людей 1-197.

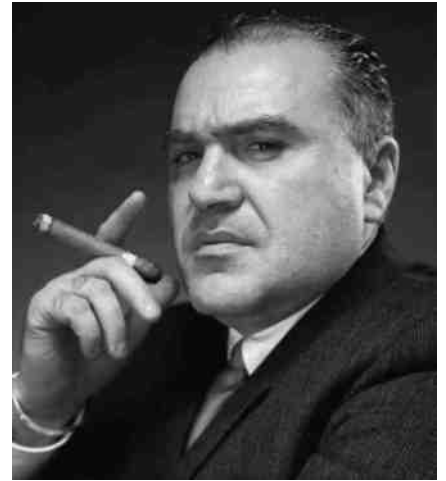
## THE BEGINNING-3



June 27. A burned car is found out of town with two badly burned bodies in it. The car had been registered for the name of John Cunningham, a Cincinnati lawyer. The second body is presumably his friend's, Lucy Foxtrot's, a restaurant owner.



It turned out that both John and Lucy had insured their lives at the Globetrotter Insurance Agency for \$5mln each about half a year before the accident. In due time John's wife and Lucy's husband got the money.



The Globetrotter Insurance Agency management are very suspicious. They do not believe in coincidences and decide to investigate the accident thoroughly.



The Globetrotter Insurance Agency hire the best agent, James Fond, to investigate the case. He has to find out if the burned bodies were really John's and Lucy's, and if they were not, to find and arrest both of them.



James studied John's and Lucy's family and personal background, made a plan of his investigation, travelled around, talked to some of their relatives. However the picture got more and more confusing with a touch of mystique.



James dug a little deeper, gleaned details that may later prove vital, only to find the case getting increasingly baffling. He badly needs more information, which means more travelling and talking to all kinds of people. But that's his job. Without pains no gains.

# UNIT 1. CROWN THY GOLD WITH BROTHERHOOD

## LESSON 1

### PART 1. LITTLE RHODY IS NO MATCH TO THE LONE STAR

1. James is planning some traveling around the USA. He is doing his preparations playing with Lappy. This is Lappy's first task: There are six unofficial geographic regions in the USA: New England, the Middle Atlantic, the South, the Midwest, the Southwest and the West. Distribute the states in the table on page 15 among the regions. Fill in the second column of the table. The first state has been done for you. Help James do it. Use the map on the next page and the table. Mark the regions on the map.

LOS ANGELES - WEST



NEW ENGLAND



SOUTH



DETROIT - MIDWEST



NEW YORK - MID ATLANTIC



ARIZONA- SOUTHWEST









<b>State</b>	<b>Abbr.</b>	<b>Region</b>	<b>Capital</b>	<b>Largest City</b>	<b>Nickname</b>
Alabama	Ala.	<b>South</b>	Montgomery	Birmingham	The Heart of Dixie
Alaska	AL		Juneau	Anchorage	The Last Frontier
Arizona	Ariz.		Phoenix	Phoenix	The Grand Canyon State
Arkansas	Ark.		Little Rock	Little Rock	The Land of Opportunity
California	Cal.		Sacramento	Los Angeles	The Golden State
Colorado	Colo.		Denver	Denver	The Centennial State
Connecticut	Conn.		Hartford	Hartford	The Constitution State
Delaware	Del.		Dover	Wilmington	The First State
Florida	Fla.		Tallahassee	Jacksonville	The Sunshine State
Georgia	Ga.		Atlanta	Atlanta	The Empire State of the South
Hawaii	Haw.		Honolulu	Honolulu	The Aloha State
Idaho	Id.		Boise	Boise	The Gem State
Illinois	Ill.		Springfield	Chicago	The Prairie State
Indiana	Ind.		Indianapolis	Indianapolis	The Hoosier State
Iowa	Ia.		Des Moines	Des Moines	The Hawkeye State
Kansas	Kan.		Topeka	Wichita	The Sunflower State
Kentucky	Ky.		Frankfort	Louisville	The Bluegrass State
Louisiana	La.		Baton Rouge	New Orleans	The Pelican State
Maine	Me.		Augusta	Portland	The Pine Tree State
Maryland	Md.		Annapolis	Baltimore	The Old Line State
Massachusetts	Mass.		Boston	Boston	The Bay State
Michigan	Mich.		Lansing	Detroit	The Wolverine State
Minnesota	Minn.		St. Paul	Minneapolis	The North Star State
Mississippi	Miss.		Jackson	Jackson	The Magnolia State
Missouri	Mo.		Jefferson	St. Louis	The Show Me State
Montana	Mont.		Helena	Billings	The Treasure State
Nebraska	Neb.		Lincoln	Omaha	The Cornhusker State
Nevada	Nev.		Carson City	Las Vegas	The Silver State
New Hampshire	N.H.		Concord	Manchester	The Granite State
New Jersey	N.J.		Trenton	Newark	The Garden State
New Mexico	N.Mex.		Santa Fe	Albuquerque	The Land of Enchantment
New York	NY.		Albany	New York City	The Empire State
North Carolina	N.C.		Raleigh	Charlotte	The Tar Heel State
North Dakota	NDac.		Bismarck	Fargo	The Sioux State
Ohio	OH		Columbus	Cleveland	The Buckeye State
Oklahoma	Okla.		Oklahoma City	Oklahoma City	The Sooner State
Oregon	Ore.		Salem	Portland	The Beaver State
Pennsylvania	Pa.		Harrisburg	Philadelphia	The Keystone State
Rhode Island	R.I.		Providence	Providence	Little Rhody
South Carolina	S.C.		Columbia	Columbia	The Palmetto State
South Dakota	S.Dak.		Pierre	Sioux Falls	The Coyote State
Tennessee	Term.		Nashville	Memphis	The Volunteer State
Texas	Tex.		Austin	Houston	The Lone Star State
Utah	Ut.		Salt Lake City	Salt Lake City	The Beehive State
Vermont	Vt.		Montpelier	Burlington	The Green Mountain State
Virginia	Va.		Richmond	Norfolk	The Old Dominion
Washington	Wash.		Olympia	Seattle	The Evergreen State
West Virginia	W.Va.		Charleston	Huntington	The Mountain State
Wisconsin	Wis.		Madison	Milwaukee	The Badger State
Wyoming	Wy.		Cheyenne	Cheyenne	The Equality State

The District of Columbia (D.C.) is not a state. It comprises the nation's capital, Washington.

**2. You are going to read six fragments on some regional variations in the USA. For Questions 1-19, choose from the regions (A-F). The regions may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).**

A. New England  
D. The Midwest

B. The Middle Atlantic  
E. The Southwest

C The South  
F. The West

### WHICH OF THE REGIONS

has been the last in its size but not the least in its importance	0	A	is a major supplier of cereals	10	
does not have a reputation of being careless	1		may have the largest territories given to national parks and wildlife refuges	11	
used to be the muscles of the country in the 18-20 <sup>th</sup> centuries	2		underwent serious changes in the structure of its economy in the last 100 years	12	
dramatically benefited from modern technology innovations	3		may have the highest concentration of native Americans	13	
is attractive to older people	4		includes a state with the lowest percentage of European origin inhabitants	14	
used to supply most of the country's brains	5		used to have official laws based on racial discrimination	15	
is characterized by sharp climatic contrasts	6		used to have many immigrants from the Netherlands	16	
attempted to separate from the USA	7		tends to concentrate on internal rather than international problems	17	
has serious water supply problems	8		includes a state that has the largest amount of population	18	
used to be the monetary capital at the beginning of the nation	9		is home to the country's monetary capital now	19	

#### A. NEW ENGLAND

This smallest region played a dominant role in American development

His earliest European settlers were English Protestants of firm and settled doctrine. They gave the region its distinctive political format - the town meeting in which citizens gathered to discuss issues of the day. Only men of property could vote. This political practice afforded New Englanders an unusually high level of participation in government.

By 1750, the mainstays of the region had become shipbuilding, fishing and trade. In their business dealings, New Englanders gained a reputation for hard work, shrewdness, thrift, and ingenuity. Most of the money to run the businesses came from Boston, which was the financial center of the nation.

New England supported a vibrant cultural life and education. It boasts a cluster of top-ranking universities and colleges, including Harvard and Yale. Despite a changing population, much of the original spirit of New England remains. It can be seen in the simple, wood frame houses and white church steeples that are features of many small towns, and in the traditional lighthouses that dot the Atlantic coast. In the 20th century many skilled workers have been left without jobs. The gap has been partly filled by the microelectronics and computer industries.

#### B. MIDDLE ATLANTIC

The Middle Atlantic region was settled by a wide range of people. Dutch immigrants moved into the lower Hudson River Valley in what is now New York State. Swedes went to Delaware. English Catholics founded Maryland, and an English Protestant sect, the Quakers, settled Pennsylvania.

The region served as a bridge between North and South. Philadelphia was home to the Continental Congress (the convention of delegates from the original colonies that organized the American Revolution) and the birthplace of the Declaration of Independence in 1776 and the U.S. Constitution in 1787.

As heavy industry spread throughout the region, rivers such as the Hudson and Delaware became vital shipping lanes, and the cities on them - New York on the Hudson, Philadelphia on the Delaware, Baltimore on Chesapeake Bay - grew dramatically. New York is still the nation's largest city, its financial hub, and its cultural center. The region's largest states, New York and Pennsylvania, became centers of heavy industry (iron, glass, and steel).

Like New England, the Middle Atlantic region had eventually to switch over to other industries, such as drug manufacturing and communications.

### C. THE SOUTH

Like New England, the South was first settled by English Protestants. But whereas New Englanders tended to stress their differences from the old country, Southerners tended to emulate the English. After 1800 the interests of the manufacturing North and the agrarian South began to diverge.

Slavery was the most contentious issue. To northerners it was immoral; to southerners it was integral to their way of life. In 1860, 11 southern states left the Union intending to form a separate nation, the Confederate States of America. It led to the Civil War, the Confederacy's defeat, and the end of slavery. The abolition of slavery failed to provide African Americans with political or economic equality. Southern towns and cities legalized and refined the practice of racial segregation.

It took a long, concerted effort by African Americans and their supporters to end segregation. In the meantime, the South could point with pride to a 20th-century regional writers, such as William Faulkner, Robert Perlmutter, Katherine Anne Porter, Tennessee Williams, Flannery O'Connor and others.

Today the South has evolved into a manufacturing region, and high-rise buildings crowd the skylines of such cities as Atlanta, Georgia and Little Rock, Arkansas. Owing to its mild weather, the South has become a mecca for retirees from other U.S. regions and from Canada.

### D. THE MIDWEST

Starting in the early 1800s Europeans bypassed the East Coast to migrate directly to the interior. The region's fertile soil contributed to abundant harvests of cereal crops. The region was soon known as the nation's "breadbasket."

Most of the Midwest is flat. The Mississippi River has acted as a regional lifeline, moving settlers to new homes and foodstuffs to market. The river inspired two classic American books written by Mark Twain: *Life on the Mississippi* and *Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*.

Midwesterners are praised as being open, friendly, and straightforward. Their politics tend to be cautious, but the caution is sometimes peppered with protest. The Midwest gave birth to the Republican Party, which was formed in the 1850s, to oppose the spread of slavery into new states. Perhaps because of then geographic location, many Midwesterners have been strong adherents of isolationism, the belief that Americans should not concern themselves with foreign wars and problems.

The region's hub is Chicago, Illinois. This major Great Lakes' port is a connecting point for rail lines and air traffic to far-flung parts of the nation and the world.

### E. THE SOUTHWEST

The Southwest differs from the Midwest in weather (drier), population (is less dense), and ethnicity (strong Spanish-American and Native-American components). Outside the cities, the region is a land of open spaces, much of which is desert. The magnificent Grand Canyon is located in this region, within the Navajo Reservation, home of the most populous American Indian tribe.

Parts of the Southwest once belonged to Mexico and its Mexican heritage continues to exert a strong influence. The regional population is growing rapidly, with Arizona rivaling the southern states as a destination for retired Americans in search of a warm climate.

Population growth in the hot, arid Southwest has depended on two human artifacts: the dams and the air conditioner. Dams have brought water to towns such as Las Vegas, Nevada; Phoenix, Arizona; and Albuquerque, New Mexico, allowing them to become metropolises. Las Vegas is renowned as one of the world's centers for gambling, while Santa Fe, New Mexico, is famous as a center for the arts.

### F. THE WEST

The West is a region of scenic beauty on a grand scale. To the west of the Sierra Nevada mountains, winds from the Pacific Ocean carry enough moisture to keep the land well-watered. To the east, however, the land is very dry. In much of the West the population is sparse, and the federal government owns and manages millions of hectares of undeveloped land. Americans use these areas for recreational and commercial activities, such as fishing, camping, hiking, boating, grazing, lumbering, and mining.

Alaska is a vast land of few, but hardy, people and great stretches of wilderness protected in national parks and wildlife refuges. Hawaii is the only state in which Asian Americans outnumber residents of European stock.

Los Angeles bears the stamp of its large Mexican-American population. The second largest city in the nation, it is best known as the home of the Hollywood film industry and the "Silicon Valley" area near San Jose, California is the most populous of all the states.

Western cities are known for their tolerance. The western economy is varied. California, for example, is both an agricultural state and a high-technology manufacturing state.

3. Work in pairs. Co back to the photos at the beginning of this Lesson. Match the photos with the six geographic regions of the USA. Explain your choice.

4. For questions 1-24, read the text below and then decide which word best fits each space. Use the table at the beginning of this Lesson. The exercise begins with an example (0).

### Example

0

#### The Most Risky Places In the USA

Almost any \_\_\_\_ (0) in the state with the capital of \_\_\_\_ (1) is dangerous. In addition to earthquakes, wildfire, landslides, the state has \_\_\_\_ (2) active areas in the north, around Mt. Shasta and other major volcanoes, as well as in the east, where the Long Valley Caldera shows signs of renewed \_\_\_\_ (3). Even beyond its \_\_\_\_ (4) seismic zones, the \_\_\_\_ (5)'s shoreline is \_\_\_\_ (6) to tsunamis (seismic sea waves) from submarine \_\_\_\_ (7) throughout the Pacific. More recent additions to this \_\_\_\_ (8) of hazards are smog, freeway snipers, urban riots, oil spills, and (looking \_\_\_\_ (9) a few decades) severe water \_\_\_\_ (10).

0	A person	B car	C place	D animal
1	A Sacramento	B Little Rock	C Montgomery	D Denver
2	A seismically	B inflammably	C solarly	D volcanically
3	A movement	B motion	C activity	D liveliness
4	A infamous	B wicked	C detestable	D disgusting
5	A Empire State of the South	B Golden State	C Grand Canyon State	D Gem State
6	A naked	B uncovered	C conspicuous	D vulnerable
7	A intrusions	B torpedos	C earthquakes	D influences
8	A assortment	B buffet	C acceptance	D decision
9	A for	B after	C at	D ahead
10	A failures	B shortages	C neglects	D declines

Seattle, the largest city in the \_\_\_\_ (11), is also vulnerable to severe earthquakes. Unlike Californians, long aware of the risk, the officials in this state capital town of \_\_\_\_ (12) have only recently begun to plan for a seismic \_\_\_\_ (13). Coastal parts of the continental \_\_\_\_ (14) and of the island state with the capital in \_\_\_\_ (15) are especially \_\_\_\_ (16) to tsunamis, huge waves whipped up by \_\_\_\_ (17) earthquakes in the the Pacific Ocean. The Pacific coast of the state with the capital in \_\_\_\_ (18) is seismically active, and the islands of the \_\_\_\_ (19) can generate their own tsunamis. Tropical hurricanes pose a danger to the Atlantic Coast, particularly to Outer Banks, a long, thin barrier island, in the \_\_\_\_ (20) state, from which evacuation is difficult. Construction and geographical problems make the southern areas of the \_\_\_\_ (21) State's Atlantic Coast vulnerable to high winds and flooding from storms. The \_\_\_\_ (22)'s coast is also vulnerable to multiple hazards: tropical hurricanes, unnaturally high dams along the lower Mississippi River, air and groundwater \_\_\_\_ (23). Cancer \_\_\_\_ (24) is as high here as well.

11	A Equality State	B Evergreen State	C Buckeye State	D Empire State
12	A Dover	B Hartford	C Springfield	D Olympia
13	A collapse	B disaster	C breakdown	D crash
14	A Last Frontier State	B Hawkeye State	C Sunflower State	D Bay State
15	A Indianapolis	B Frankfort	C Honolulu	D Augusta
16	A receptive	B susceptible	C tender	D dangerous
17	A artificial	B echo	C continental	D submarine
18	A Juneau	B Annapolis	C Boston	D Lansing
19	A Granite State	B Magnolia State	C Aloha State	D North Star State
20	A Show Me	B Tar Heel	C Treasure	D Cornhusker
21	A Silver	B Land of Enchantment	C Sioux	D Sunshine
22	A Pelican State	B Coyote State	C Volunteer State	D Mountain State
23	A adulteration	B corruption	C pollution	D alteration
24	A fatality	B mortality	C deadliness	D extinction

## LISTENING

5. Work in pairs. Discuss everything you know about the Grand Canyon.



6. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.

A	B	A	B
1. entire	a. canyon	2. sight	j. edge
3. spectacular	b. variety	4. dimension	k. bottom
5. fossil	c. differ	6. abundant	l. protected territory
7. amount	d. mean	8. mammal	m. view
9. vary	e. striking	10. rim	n. trip
11. gorge	f. prehistoric remains	12. reservation	o. size
13. annual	g. total	14. floor	p. pathfinder
15. average	h. yearly	16. expedition	q. primate
17. species	i. quantity	18. guide	r. plentiful

7. You will hear a lecturer talking about the Grand Canyon. For questions 1-23, fill in the missing information. Use 1-5 words to fill the gaps in. There is an example at the beginning (0). You will hear the recording twice.

The Grand Canyon is situated in \_\_\_\_\_ *Northern Arizona* \_\_\_\_\_ (0)

The Colorado River \_\_\_\_\_ (1) is called the Grand Canyon

The length of the Grand Canyon is \_\_\_\_\_ (2), its depth is \_\_\_\_\_ (3) and its width is \_\_\_\_\_ (4).

The height of the Canyon area varies between \_\_\_\_\_ (5) feet.

The South rim of the Canyon \_\_\_\_\_ (6) than the North rim.

The South rim \_\_\_\_\_ (7) temperatures than the North rim does

The average annual amount of rainfall on the North rim is \_\_\_\_\_ (8) on the South rim.

The annual amount of rainfall on the floor of the Canyon is at least \_\_\_\_\_ (9) on the South rim

You can see many \_\_\_\_\_ (10) in the Canyon walls.

There are more than \_\_\_\_\_ (11) birds, \_\_\_\_\_ (12) plants, about \_\_\_\_\_ (13) mammals in the Grand Canyon Park.

The members of the Spanish \_\_\_\_\_ (14), guided by Hopi Indians, were the first Europeans who saw the Canyon in the year of \_\_\_\_\_ (15).

The Navaho Indians reservation, situated \_\_\_\_\_ (16) of the Grand Canyon Park, has the area of \_\_\_\_\_ (17).

The Hopi Indian reservation, with the area of \_\_\_\_\_ (18) is \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the Navaho reservation

The Havasupai Indians reservation has the area of \_\_\_\_\_ (20), and there are only \_\_\_\_\_ (21) people living in it.

The Grand Canyon National Park \_\_\_\_\_ (22) by President Woodrow Wilson in the year of \_\_\_\_\_ (23).

## 8. Translate

1. Першими європейськими мешканцями Нью-Інгленда були англійські протестанти, які прибули до Америки у пошуках свободи релігії. Вони запровадили в регіоні характерне політичне врядування - міські збори, на яких громадяни обговорювали нагальні питання. Право голосу мали лише ті, хто володів власністю. Завдяки цьому мешканці Нью-Інгленда набули значного політичного досвіду. Вони рано зрозуміли, що обробляти великі ділянки землі, як було прийнято на Півдні, у цьому регіоні важко. До середини 18-го століття більшість поселенців зайнялися іншими ремеслами: суднобудуванням, рибальством та торгівлею. У цих справах нью-інглендці зажили репутації людей роботящих, ощадливих і майстерних.

2. Перші переселенці Середньої Атлантики займалися переважно землеробством та торгівлею, а регіон відіграв роль моста між Півднем та Північчю. Місто Філадельфія, розташоване у штаті Пенсільванія стало місцем "народження" Декларації про Незалежність у 1776 році та Конституції Сполучених Штатів у 1787 році. Коли почала розвиватися важка індустрія, річки, такі як Гудзон та Делавер, перетворилися на життєво важливі лінії руху пароплавів. Міста, розташовані на важливих водних шляхах, - Нью-Йорк на річці Гудзон, Філадельфія на річці Делавер та Балтімор у Чесапекській затоці, - швидко зросли до великих розмірів. Нью-Йорк і досі є найбільшим містом, фінансовим та культурним центром країни.

3. Південь спочатку був заселений англійськими протестантами. Однак після 1800 року інтереси промислової Півночі та аграрного Півдня почали набувати розбіжностей, основною причиною яких було рабство. У 1860 році 11 північних штатів залишили Союз з метою створення самостійної держави-Конфедерації Штатів Америки. Такий крок спричинив Громадянську війну і скасування рабства. Проте це не надало афро-американцям політичної та економічної рівності. В містах Півдня було легалізовано та вдосконалено практику расової дискримінації. Багато зусиль довелося докласти афроамериканцям та їхнім прихильникам, щоб покінути з нею. Сьогодні Південь перетворився на виробничий район з великими містами, такими як Атланта та Літл Рок, штат Арканзас.

4. Більша частина території Середнього Заходу лежить на рівнині. Річка Міссісіпі відігравала життєво важливу роль для регіону, перевозячи переселенців до місць їхнього проживання та продукти на ринки. Тутешні мешканці вважаються щирими, дружніми людьми, які дотримуються свого слова, обережно ставляться до політики, а також є прихильниками ізоляціонізму, тобто вважають, що американці не повинні надто перейматися проблемами інших країн. Центром регіону вважається Чикаго, штат Іллінойс, третє найбільше місто в країні.

5. Південний Захід відрізняється від сусіднього Середнього Заходу погодними умовами (сухіший клімат), населенням (менша щільність) та етнічним складом (значна присутність іспано-американців та місцевих американських індіанців). Збільшення населення на гарячому, сухому Південному Заході залежить від двох чинників: гребель та кондиціонерів повітря. Греблі на річці Колорадо та на інших річках, а також канали, побудовані за проектом "Центральна Арізона", постачаючи воду таким колись маленьким містам, як Лас-Вегас у штаті Невада, Фінікс у штаті Арізона та Альбукерк у штаті Нью Мехіко, допомогли їм перетворитися на ділові та культурні центри.

6. Захід - це регіон масштабних мальовничих краєвидів. Рельєф усіх тутешніх штатів є частково гірським. Вітри з Тихого океану приносять на західну частину верхівок гір достатньо вологи. Однак землі, розташовані далі на схід, дуже сухі. Наприклад, західні території штату Вашингтон отримують за рік опадів у 20 разів більше, ніж східна частина Каскадних гір, розташованих на території цього ж штату. Щільність населення на Заході досить мала. Аляска - найпівнічніший штат країни - має нечисельне населення і велику площу, де створюються національні парки. Гаваї є єдиним штатом, де американці азіатського походження переважають населення європейського походження. Лос-Анджелес, друге найбільше місто США, відоме розташованим поблизу Голлівудом. Завдяки бурхливому зростанню населення Лос-Анджелеса та "Силіконової долини" поблизу Сан Хосе, за кількістю жителів Каліфорнія є найбільшим штатом країни.

## DICTIONARY WORK

Work with a dictionary. Find out the meaning of the following words: **padded field - afforestation - coomb - crag - conurbation - glade - glen - levee - mantle (of snow) - meander (of the river)**. Indicate how these words can be used to describe the geographical features of the United States of America. Make a list of their Ukrainian equivalents, too. See the explanation in the Addendum first.

## PART 2

### FROM MELTING POT TO SALAD BOWL

Lappy's next task is on the US population. Help James do it.



1. For paragraphs 1-9 you must choose which of the fragments A-J fit into the gaps below. There is one extra fragment, which does not fit into any of the gaps.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A fought to keep the land they had traditionally used                    | F suffered fierce prosecution in eastern Europe                          |
| B helped fill its roster of troops by encouraging emigration from Europe | G specifically excluded immigrants from that area                        |
| C formed an internal wave of immigration                                 | H lived in what is now the continental United States                     |
| D have placed greater value on diversity                                 | I have arrived from a variety of countries                               |
| E were still trapped by poverty in urban neighborhoods                   | J caused an estimated 5 million people to leave their homeland each year |
|  | plagued by drug use and crime  |

/1

The story of the American people is a story of immigration and diversity. The United States has welcomed more immigrants than any other country - more than 50 million in all - and still admits almost 700,000 persons a year. In the past, many American writers emphasized the idea of the 'melting pot', an image that suggested newcomers would discard their old customs and adopt American ways. Typically, for example, the children of immigrants learned English but not their parents' first language. Later, however, Americans have switched over to the concept of the 'salad bowl', i.e. they \_\_\_\_\_, ethnic groups have renewed and celebrated their heritage, and the children of immigrants often grow up being bilingual.

/2

The first American immigrants, beginning more than 20,000 years ago, were intercontinental wanderers: hunters and their families following animal herds from Asia to America, across a land bridge where the Bering Strait is today. When Christopher Columbus "discovered" the New World in 1492, about 1.5 million Native Americans \_\_\_\_\_, although estimates of the number vary greatly. Mistaking the place where he landed - San Salvador in the Bahamas - for the Indies, Columbus called the Native-Americans "Indians."

/3

During the next 200 years, people from European countries followed across the Atlantic Ocean to explore America and set up trading posts and colonies. Native Americans suffered greatly. The transfer of land from Indian hands was accomplished through treaties, wars, and coercion. In the 19th century, the governments preferred solution to the Indian "problem" was to force tribes to inhabit reservations. Some tribes

In many cases the reservation land was of poor quality. Poverty and joblessness among Native Americans still exist today.





[4

I

Between 1840 and 1860, the United States received its first great wave of immigrants. In Europe as a whole, famine, poor harvests, rising populations, and political unrest \_\_\_\_\_. In Ireland, a blight attacked the potato crop, and up to 750,000 people starved to death. Many of the survivors emigrated. Today there are about 39 million Americans of Irish descent.

[5

During the American Civil War in 1861-65, the federal government \_\_\_\_\_, especially from the German states. In return for service in the Union army, immigrants were offered grants of land. By 1865, about one in five Union soldiers was a wartime immigrant. Today, 22 percent of Americans have German ancestry.

[6

Jews came to the United States in large numbers beginning about 1880, a decade in which they \_\_\_\_\_. Over the next 45 years, 2 million Jews moved to the United States; the Jewish-American population is now more than 5 million.

[7

Among the flood of immigrants to North America, one group came unwillingly. These were Africans, 500,000 of whom were brought over as slaves between 1619 and 1808. Today, African Americans constitute 12.7 percent of the total U.S. population. In recent decades blacks have made great progress, and the black middle class has grown substantially. However the average income of blacks is lower than that of whites, and unemployment of blacks - particularly of young men - remains higher than that of whites. In 1990s many black Americans

[8

The number of Hispanics in the United States is about 27 million. About 50 percent of them have origins in Mexico. The other 50 percent \_\_\_\_\_, including El Salvador, the Dominican Republic, and Colombia. Thirty-six percent of Hispanics live in California. Several other states have large Hispanic populations, including Texas, New York, Illinois, and Florida, where hundreds of thousands of Cubans fleeing the Castro regime have settled.

[9

Today Asian Americans are one of the fastest-growing ethnic groups in the country, although prior to 1924, U.S. laws \_\_\_\_\_. About 10 million people of Asian descent live in the United States. Although most of them have arrived here recently, they are among the most successful of all immigrant groups. They have a higher income than many other ethnic groups, and large numbers of their children study at the best American universities.

**2. Work in pairs. How do you understand the word combinations *melting pot* and *salad bowl* in paragraph 1? Why have the Americans switched over from the concept of the *melting pot* to that of the *salad bowl*?**

**3. Work in pairs. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the two concepts: the *melting pot* and the *salad bowl*? How can the American concept be applied in other countries, including Ukraine?**

**4. Work in pairs. Look through the text again and fill in the table below.**

Immigrant Groups	Immigration Peak	Ratio in US population	Characteristic features
Native Americans			
Irish			
German			
Jewish			
African			
Hispanics			
Asian			

5. Work in pairs. What are the most typical features of American character? Are they related to any historical factors (e.g. the population composition, the immigration background etc).

6. Work in pairs. Read the list of cultural stereotypes, which Spaniards between age 15 and 21 who have never been to the U.S. or who have never had any American friends, might have about Americans. Which of the following are stereotypes and which, if any, are accurate descriptions of American culture?

### Physical Appearance and Dress



Most Americans are very tall with blue eyes and blond hair.

All American men are as handsome as movie stars.

Men in the U.S. have muscular builds; they resemble Arnold Schwarzenegger or Sylvester Stallone.

American men like to wear short, sleeveless T-shirts to show off their physiques.

American women are either unusually fat or unusually thin, never of normal build.

Women in the U.S. wear a lot of make-up. Americans wear very bright colors and mixed patterns, and they wear summer clothes even in the winter.

Americans have no sense of style.

The typical American "native dress" is jeans, cowboy boots, and a cowboy hat.

### Work and Leisure



Americans spend almost all day at work; they have very little free time. Although they are extremely punctual and efficient in their jobs, Americans don't consider their work important; family comes first. The first two things an American wants to discuss are salary and age. The two favorite leisure-time activities in the U.S. are movies and rodeos. Young people usually just take walks for fun, because they're not allowed to drink or go to discos.

### Home Life



Most Americans live either in skyscrapers or on farms.

In big cities everyone has a large car like a Cadillac, but outside of cities people usually travel on horseback.

Americans divorce repeatedly and have very complicated private lives.

In marriages in the U.S., the wife always dominates.

American cities are so dangerous that a person has a good chance of being killed in the street; therefore, American men either know kung-fu or carry a gun.

### Food



Americans eat almost nothing but hamburgers, hot dogs, popcorn, and Coke.

Americans generally eat fast food Monday through Saturday, but never on Sunday.

American men are always drinking beer, even at breakfast.

American breakfasts are huge. A typical one might consist of eggs, toast, bacon, and pancakes with peanut butter.

## Communication and Social Interaction



Americans speak very quickly and very loudly. They use their hands a lot, often gesturing in an exaggerated way when they talk.

Their strange intonation makes their speech sound like singing. American English is extremely difficult to understand because people speak as if they were chewing gum.

The typical American is very rude, often putting his feet on a desk or table and frequently belching in public. He yawns a lot, never trying to hide it. In international affairs as in personal life, Americans do whatever they want and don't care what other people think.

### LISTENING

7. Work in pairs. Write down everything you know about John F. Kennedy, the 35<sup>th</sup> US President.

8. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.

A	B	A	B
1. honor (v)	a. well	2. assassinate	j. operation
3. smoothly	b. mention	4. mishap	k. story
5. cite (v)	c. aggression	6. surgery	l. position
7. keen	d. prohibition	8. account (n)	m. union
9. invasion	e. respect	10. install	n. pact
1 missile	f. sharp	12. involve	o. kill
1 ban	g. mirror	14. treaty	p. entangle
1 reflect	h. rocket	16. alliance	q. misfortune



9. Work in pairs. Read the following biographical entries. What is similar and what is different about the life of the four presidents.



**George Washington** (1732-1799), the first US president (1789-1797), led his army to success in the American Revolution. Americans admire him as one of their best and most moral presidents.

**Thomas Jefferson** (1743-1826), the 3d US president (1801-1809), wrote the Declaration of Independence, bought a huge territory from France that made the USA more than twice as large as it had been.

**Abraham Lincoln** (1809-1865), the 16<sup>th</sup> US president (1861-1865), regarded as US best president, who served through the Civil War, preserved the Union and freed the slaves. He was shot and killed in 1865.

**John K Kennedy** (1917-1963), the 35<sup>th</sup> US president (1961-1963), who served through the Cuban missile crisis (1962) and supported the civil rights movement. He was murdered in Dallas in 1963.

Read the beginning of the text. What do you think the text is about?

On November 22, 1963, when he was hardly past his first thousand days in office, John Fitzgerald Kennedy was killed by an assassin's bullets as his motorcade wound through Dallas, Texas. Kennedy was the youngest man elected President; he was the youngest to die.

**Now listen to the first part of the text about John F. Kennedy. For questions 1-29, complete the statements. You will hear the recording twice.**

John Kennedy is as famous as such former US presidents as \_\_\_\_\_ (1), \_\_\_\_\_ (2) and \_\_\_\_\_ (3).

John Kennedy was assassinated in the month of \_\_\_\_\_ (4) of the year \_\_\_\_\_ (5), just \_\_\_\_\_ (6) years and \_\_\_\_\_ (7) months after he became President.

John Kennedy won his first political election in \_\_\_\_\_ (8), when he was \_\_\_\_\_ (9) years old.

At the age of \_\_\_\_\_ (10) he was elected the youngest US President.

At the age of \_\_\_\_\_ (11) he was the youngest US President to be assassinated.

**John Kennedy's major personal misfortunes included:**

a serious \_\_\_\_\_ (12) during World War II

major \_\_\_\_\_ (13) to correct the injury in \_\_\_\_\_ (14) another \_\_\_\_\_ (15) in \_\_\_\_\_ (16)

his son's \_\_\_\_\_ (17), soon after birth.

**John Kennedy's major personal characteristics included:**

he had a keen sense of \_\_\_\_\_ (18)

he did not \_\_\_\_\_ (19) of what influenced his political decisions.

he often made his political decisions alone after a series of \_\_\_\_\_ (20)

he would often discuss political issues with his \_\_\_\_\_ (21) Robert

nobody took part in the whole process of Kennedy's \_\_\_\_\_ (22)

Kennedy relied mostly on \_\_\_\_\_ (23) in making political decisions

**As a result of Kennedy's specific character, history does not have the full story on:**

why the invasion of the Bay of Pigs in \_\_\_\_\_ (23) ended in a \_\_\_\_\_ (24)

the Russian attempt to install \_\_\_\_\_ (25) in Cuba in \_\_\_\_\_ (26)

why the US became more deeply involved in a civil war in \_\_\_\_\_ (27)

the background on what led up to the \_\_\_\_\_ (28) treaty of 1963

why NATO was not \_\_\_\_\_ (29) very well during his administration

plans for the alliance for progress in \_\_\_\_\_ (30) were more a dream than reality

**10. Translate**

Розповідь про американців - це розповідь про імміграцію та різноманітність. У минулому панівною була концепція "плавильного казана", тобто ідея, що іммігранти мають відмовитися від старих звичок і адаптуватися до нового способу життя. Наприклад, як правило, діти іммігрантів вивчали англійську мову, а не мову своїх батьків. Останнім часом, однак, американці почали надавати перевагу концепції "салатниці", тобто збереження етнічних особливостей іммігрантів. Відновилися етнічні групи, які відродили власну спадщину. Діти нових іммігрантів часто виховуються і спілкуються двома мовами.

Після відкриття Нового Світу переселенці з європейських країн впростили за Колумбом, щоб підкорювати Америку, будуючи торговельні пункти й створюючи колонії. Корінні американці дуже постраждали від впливу іммігрантів. Перехід власності на землю до європейців відбувався шляхом угод, війн, примусу, внаслідок чого індіанці залишали свої землі. Деякі племена боролися зі зброєю в руках, але їх примусово переселяли до резервацій, де землі були неродючі, й індіанці залежали від підтримки уряду. Бідність та безробіття й досі існують серед корінних американців.

Голод, бідні врожаї, зростання населення та політична нестабільність в Європі в середині XIX-го століття змушували біля 5 мільйонів людей щороку залишати рідні землі. В Ірландії хвороба рослин спричинила загибель врожаю картоплі, внаслідок чого сотні тисяч померли з голоду, а інші рятувалися еміграцією до США. Сьогодні приблизно 40 мільйонів американців мають ірландське походження.

Під час Американської Громадянської війни федеральний уряд поповнював ряди власної армії, емігрантами з Європи, особливо з Німеччини. В нагороду за службу іммігранти отримували ділянку землі. До 1865 року приблизно 20 відсотків солдатів федеральної армії були іммігрантами часів війни. Сьогодні 22 відсотки американців мають німецьке походження.

Переселення великої кількості євреїв до США почалося приблизно наприкінці XIX-го століття, коли вони стали зазнавати жорстоких переслідувань у Східній та Центральній Європі. В наступні півстоліття до США переїхали 2 мільйони євреїв. В наші часи єврейсько-американське населення перевищує 5 мільйонів.

Пращури сучасних афро-американців прибули до Америки всупереч своєму бажанню, бо були завезені як раби. Рабство було скасоване у 1865 році, однак американські негри продовжували зазнавати

дискримінації. В пошуках щастя афро-американці створили внутрішню хвилю імміграції, переїжджаючи до міської Півночі. Але багато з міських негрів не могли знайти роботу; бо мали жити в "гетто". В середині XX сторіччя афро-американці активно вимагали рівних прав. Конгрес США прийняв закон про заборону дискримінації. Сьогодні афро-американці складають 15 відсотків від загального населення США. Однак їхній середній прибуток залишається нижчим, а безробіття - вищим, ніж у білого населення. До того ж багато з них досі ведуть бідне існування на міських околицях, де поширені вживання наркотиків та злочинність.

Сьогодні 27 мільйонів мешканців США походять з іспаномовних країн. Біля половини іспаномовних мешканців США походять з Мексики. Решта є вихідцями з інших країн, наприклад, з Ель Сальвадора, Домініканської Республіки та Колумбії. 36 відсотків іспаномовного населення США мешкають у Каліфорнії. Кілька інших штатів, такі як Техас, Нью-Йорк, Іллінойс та Флорида, куди іммігрують сотні тисяч кубинців, що тікають від режиму Кастро, також мають велику кількість іспаномовного населення.

До 1924 року закони США забороняли імміграцію з країн Азії. У 1952 році було прийнято нове законодавство, яке дозволяло людям будь-якої раси стати громадянами США. Сьогодні азіатські американці, кількість яких становить близько 10 мільйонів, є громадою, чия чисельність стрімко зростає. Вони мають вищий прибуток, ніж інші етнічні групи, а їхні діти часто навчаються в найкращих університетах США.

### DICTIONARY WORK

Work with a dictionary. Find out the difference between the following words: **descendent - ancestor - migrant - emigrant - immigrant**. Indicate how these words can be used to describe the population features of the United States. Make a list of their Ukrainian equivalents, too. See the explanation in the Addendum first.

## PART 3

### EASTER BUNNY ROLLING EGGS

Lappy's next task is on holidays. Help James do it.

**1. Work in pairs. Match the names of the US Calendar days in the box with their descriptions below. Which of them are public holidays?**

A. Easter B. Christmas C. New Year's Day D. Thanksgiving Day E. Independence Day  
F. Martin Luther King Day G. Presidents' Day H. Memorial Day I. Labor Day  
K. Columbus Day L. Veterans Day M. Valentine's Day N. Halloween

---

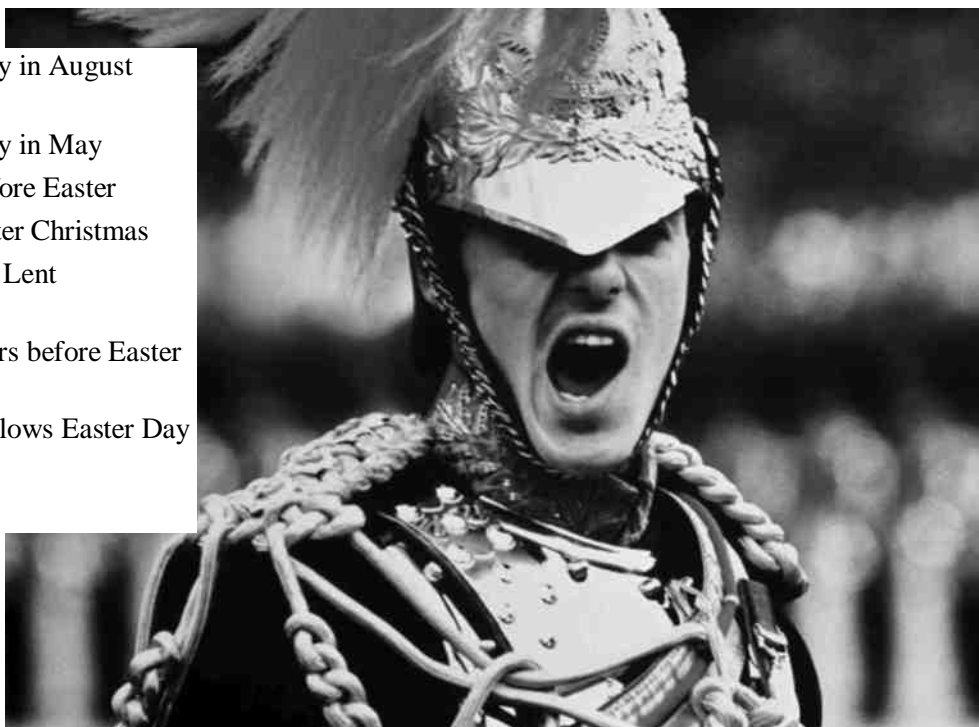


1. A spring holiday: people color hard-boiled eggs and give children baskets of candy. On the next day the US president holds an annual egg hunt on the White House lawn for young children.
2. A spring holiday (the fourth Monday of May): people remember their dead in special programs held in cemeteries, churches, and other public meeting places.
3. A summer holiday: people celebrate the nation's birthday - a day of picnics and patriotic parades, a night of concerts and fireworks. The flying of the American flag is widespread.
4. An autumn holiday (the first Monday of September): people honor the nation's working people, typically with parades. For most Americans it marks the end of the summer vacation season, and for many students the opening of the school year.
5. An autumn holiday (the second Monday in October): people remember the Italian navigator who was the first to land in the New World in modern times.
6. An autumn holiday (October 31, the evening before All Saints or All Hallows Day): children dress up in funny or scary costumes and go "trick or treating": knocking on doors in their neighborhood. The neighbors are expected to respond by giving them small gifts of candy or money. Adults may also dress in costume for parties.
7. An autumn holiday (November 11): people remember Americans who had served in all wars. Parades are held, and the president places a wreath on the Tomb of the Unknowns at Arlington National Cemetery, across the Potomac River from Washington, D. C
8. An autumn holiday (the fourth Thursday in November): dinner on this day includes roast turkey, cranberry sauce, potatoes, pumpkin pie. Before the meal people give thanks for their blessings, including the joy of being united for the occasion.
9. A winter holiday: people decorate houses and yards with lights, put up special trees, give gifts, and send greeting cards.
10. A winter holiday: The celebration begins the night before, when people gather to wish each other many good things.
11. A winter holiday (the third Monday of January): people remember a great American whose tireless efforts and tragic death helped to win civil rights for all people through nonviolent means.
12. A winter holiday (February 14): people give presents, usually candy or flowers, to the ones they love.
13. A winter holiday (the third Monday of February): people remember all those who headed the country throughout the years of independence.

**2. Work in pairs. Match the names of the British Calendar days in the box with their descriptions below. Some definitions may be absent, give your own ones. Which of them are public holidays?**

A. Late Summer (August Bank) Holiday B. Spring Bank Holiday C. Good Friday D. Boxing Day  
E. May Day Holiday F. Easter Monday G. Ash Wednesday H. Mother's Day I. Palm Sunday  
J. Ascension Day K. Pentecost (Whitsun) L. Trinity Sunday M. Father's Day N. New Year  
O. Halloween P. Remembrance Day Q. First Sunday in Advent R. Epiphany S. Christmas

1. last Monday in August
2. last Monday in May
3. Sunday before Easter
4. first day after Christmas
5. first day of Lent
6. day 48 hours before Easter
7. day that follows Easter Day
8. October 31



9. the fourth Sunday of March, a day on which people give cards and presents to their mothers
10. First Sunday in the period of four weeks before Christmas
11. seventh Sunday after Easter, when Christians celebrate the appearance of the Holy Spirit to the apostles
12. third Sunday of June, a day on which people give presents to their fathers
13. Thursday 40 days after Easter, Christians remember when Christ went up to heaven
14. second Sunday of June, when Christians celebrate the union of Father, Son, and Holy Spirit in one God
15. Sunday nearest to the first day of May, when people celebrate the arrival of spring
16. November 11th, when a ceremony is held to remember people who were killed in wars
17. January 6, Christians remember when the three kings from the East came to see the baby Jesus

**3. Work in pairs. Compare the Calendar days in Britain and the USA. What days are the same? What is similar and what is different between American and British Calendar days?**

**4. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one unnecessary word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-14, find this word. Some lines may be correct.**



## Example

over

00

0 In 1620, a boat filled with more than over one hundred people sailed across the Atlantic Ocean  
0 to settle in the New World. This religious group had begun to question the beliefs of the Church  
1 of England and they wanted to separate away from it. The Pilgrims settled in what is now the  
2 state of Massachusetts. Their first winter in the New World was difficult. They had been arrived  
3 too late to grow many crops, and without fresh food, half the colony died from the disease. The  
4 following coming spring the Iroquois Indians taught them how to grow corn (maize), a new food  
5 for the colonists. They showed them off other crops to grow in the unfamiliar soil and how to  
6 hunt and fish. In the autumn of 1621, known bountiful crops of corn, barley, beans and pumpkins  
7 were harvested. The colonists had organized much to be thankful for, so a feast was planned.  
8 They invited the local Indian chief and 90 Indians. The Indians brought deer to have roast with  
9 the turkeys and other wild game offered by the colonists. The same colonists had learned how to  
10 cook cranberries and different kinds of corn and Coke squash dishes from the Indians. To this  
11 first feast,the Indians had even brought popcorn. In some following years, many of the original  
12 colonists have celebrated the autumn harvest with a feast of thanks. After the United States  
13 became an independent country, the Congress recommended one whole yearly day of  
14 thanksgiving for the whole nation to start celebrate.

**Which holiday is the text above about? When is it celebrated?**

**5. Work in pairs. For questions 1-28, read the two texts below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text. Which holidays are the texts about? The exercise begins with an example (0).**

## Example

0

beliefs

## TEXT1

According to old \_\_\_\_ (0), this day is the time, when the veil between the living and the dead is partially lifted, and witches, ghosts and other \_\_\_\_ (1) beings are about. Now children celebrate it in \_\_\_\_ (2) costumes and masks. It is a festival of merrymaking, superstitions spells, \_\_\_\_ (3), traditional games and pranks. Many customs of this holiday are based on beliefs of the \_\_\_\_ (4) Celts. When \_\_\_\_ (5) came, the Church wisely let the people keep their old feast, but it became a festival to honour the souls of the dead, \_\_\_\_ (6) those who died during the year. A \_\_\_\_ (7) custom on the day is to make a jack-j'-lantern, a pumpkin with holes in its side, and a candle inside, \_\_\_\_ (8) from far away on a dark night. This day is also called \_\_\_\_ (9) *'Night or Trick or Treat* night. Some people \_\_\_\_ (10) as ghosts and witches, go from house to house and say "*Trick or treat*" \_\_\_\_ (11) "*Give me a treat or I'll play a trick on you*".

A similar picture may be seen in winter, when \_\_\_\_ (12) boys ask for money, going from house to house and carrying \_\_\_\_ (13) boxes with them. So the name of this day doesn't come from the sport of \_\_\_\_ (14) - it comes from the boys' wooden boxes. Now, this day is an \_\_\_\_ (15) holiday after Christmas Day.

- (0) BELIEVE
- (1) NATURE
- (2) USE
- (3) FORTUNE
- (4) ANCESTOR
- (5) CHRIST
- (6) PART
- (7) FAVOUR
- (8) VISION
- (9) BEG
- (10) MASK
- (11) IMPLY
- (12) TRADITION
- (13) WOOD
- (14) BOX
- (15) ADD

## TEXT 2

The \_\_\_\_ (16) crowd, packed together like cheap sardines in oil, spent the whole day getting slowly \_\_\_\_ (17) by the heat, each others' stares, and the omnipresent law- \_\_\_\_ (18) officers who were there with one and one purpose only: to make sure that absolutely no one has any fun. Cold beer, some \_\_\_\_ (19) of which, would have made the air seem a bit cooler and one's neighbor \_\_\_\_ (20) more attractive, was banned and \_\_\_\_ (21) who dared to take even a single swallow, were \_\_\_\_ (22) escorted to the nearest police district. Firecrackers were banned too. The \_\_\_\_ (23), whose number included not only the "easy-to-please" \_\_\_\_ (24) due to the fact that we are, after all, talking about American public, were treated exactly the same way as the "aspiring alcoholics". The \_\_\_\_ (25) was enough to inspire sincere doubt in most biblical \_\_\_\_ (26). Overall, however, the scene was more \_\_\_\_ (27) than hate-inducing: it was absurd to watch the nation celebrating its independence in an act of a \_\_\_\_ (28) torturous restraint.

(16) SWEAT  
(17) ABILITY  
(18) FORCE  
(19) DOSE  
(20) CONSIDER  
(21) VIOLENT  
(22) MEDIATE  
(23) OFFENCE  
(24) AGE  
(25) SEE  
(26) COMMAND  
(27) PITY  
(28) MASS

**6. Work in pairs. Compare the Calendar days in Britain, the USA and Ukraine. What days are the same? What is similar and what is different between American, British and Ukrainian Calendar days?**

**Holidays in Ukraine:** New Year - Jan 1; Christmas - Jan 7; International Women's Day - Mar 8; Easter - first Sunday after the first full Moon that coincides with or comes after the spring equinox on March 21; International Labour Solidarity Day - May 1; Spring Labour Day - May 2; Victory Day - May 9; Trinity - fiftieth day after Easter; Constitution Day - June 28; Independence Day - August 24.

**7. Work in pairs. Read an opinion of a US businessman on holidays in Ukraine. For questions 1-18, complete the following article from the *Kyiv Post* by writing each missing word in the text. Use only one word in each space. There is an example (0) at the beginning.**

### Example

0

too

### Less vacation, please

I'd hate to rain on anyone's parade, so to speak, but all the vacation time in Ukraine is a little \_\_\_\_ (0) much. This May, for example, with its back-to-back May Day and Victory Day holidays, will have seen a full four week days \_\_\_\_ (1) which the entire country legally shuts down. That's almost a full work week wiped \_\_\_\_ (2). And that's not even taking into \_\_\_\_ (3) that many people extend those extra-long \_\_\_\_ (4) by lopping off a Friday (and maybe even a Thursday) on the near side.

On June 28, Constitution Day comes along. It \_\_\_\_ (5) on a Tuesday this year, which means Monday and Tuesday will be days \_\_\_\_ (6). The preceding Saturday will be an official work day in compensation - but in our experience Saturday work days tend to be listless and low-energy \_\_\_\_ (7) days indeed. The fact that the \_\_\_\_ (8) of the world won't work that Saturday won't help things get done.

Then, less than two months \_\_\_\_ (9), comes Independence Day - another two days off. Of course, it doesn't really \_\_\_\_ (10), as by late August the entirety of official Ukraine seems to be on the Black Sea coast, entrenched there through the beginning of September. The August-September \_\_\_\_ (11) is one of almost complete torpor. That fact was drilled home to me last year, when not even the reality that the most \_\_\_\_ (12) elections in Ukrainian history loomed was sufficient to inject some energy into Kyiv. Old socialist habits die hard.

And I haven't even \_\_\_\_ (13) the period around the New Year. Everything stops in the middle of December, and doesn't pick \_\_\_\_ (14) again until the middle of January. Nothing gets done. I'm not advocating that Ukraine effect a 180-degree turn-around and institute an American-style \_\_\_\_ (15) regime. But a country that's trying to make itself a productive \_\_\_\_ (16) of the world economy might do well to pick up the slack a bit. One-possible \_\_\_\_ (17) would be to cut a day off the May Day celebration, or lose it altogether. A country that's no \_\_\_\_ (18) communist might do well to celebrate the victories of international labor by laboring a little.

**Do you agree with the article's point of view? Why or why not?**

**8. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.**

A	B	A	B
1. available	a. heir	2. domestic	n. nonsense
rare	b. advance	4. dignity	o. pay
5. small talk	c. well-being	6. chit-chat (n)	p. decrease
7. successor	d. ruin	8. get along	q. influence
9. approve	e. law	10. wage	r. home
1 pass (v)	f. lavatory	12. security benefit	s. persuade
1 decay	g. at hand	14. reduction	t. separation
1 prosperity	h. actual	16. convince	u. outlaw
1 legislation	j. proposal	18. affect	v. achievement
1 bill	k. unusual	20. segregation	w. honor
2 restroom	l. sanction	22. prohibit	x. pension
2 actual	m. babble	24. accomplishment	y. agree



**9. Read the beginning of the second part of the text about John F. Kennedy. What do you think this part is about?**

Responding to ever more urgent demands, John Kennedy took vigorous action in the cause of equal rights, calling for new civil rights legislation. He wished America to resume its old mission as the first nation dedicated to the revolution of human rights. With the Alliance for Progress and the Peace Corps, he brought American idealism to the aid of developing nations.

**10. Now listen to the second part of the text about John F. Kennedy. For questions 1-23, complete the statements. You will hear the recording twice.**

According to Kennedy's plans, *Peace Corps* had to provide assistance to \_\_\_\_\_ (1).  
 Kennedy used to be much more popular \_\_\_\_\_ (2) than in the USA.  
 Kennedy's personal \_\_\_\_\_ (3) made him very effective in communicating with foreigners.  
 Unlike his \_\_\_\_\_ (4), Kennedy was not very successful in dealing with American \_\_\_\_\_ (5).  
 The American Congress was not very \_\_\_\_\_ (6) in approving Kennedy's \_\_\_\_\_ (7) programs.

**Kennedy administration's successes**

- (a) the \_\_\_\_\_ (8) of the Peace Corps;
- (b) the raise of the \_\_\_\_\_ (9) from \$1.00 to \$1.25 per hour;
- (c) the increase of the \_\_\_\_\_ (10), that is money paid to people 65 years and older;
- (d) the increase in the financing of \_\_\_\_\_ (11), which resulted in Moon landing \_\_\_\_\_ (12) years after Kennedy's death.

**The Congress refused to pass the following Kennedy's proposals on:**

- (a) the \_\_\_\_\_ (13) for people over 65;
  - (b) the creation of the \_\_\_\_\_ (14) Affairs;
  - (c) the federal aid to \_\_\_\_\_ (15);
  - (d) the tax reform and \_\_\_\_\_ (16).
- Kennedy failed to convince the Congress of the need for changes because of the \_\_\_\_\_ (17) in the country.  
 Kennedy's name is associated with most of \_\_\_\_\_ (18) on the black Americans.

**Kennedy and his death were responsible for:**

- (a) the bill that prohibited discrimination in \_\_\_\_\_ (19);
- (b) the bill that prohibited discrimination in public \_\_\_\_\_ (20), such as public \_\_\_\_\_ (21), etc.
- (c) the bill that \_\_\_\_\_ (22) at schools;
- (d) the definite \_\_\_\_\_ (23) in the United States.

**DICTIONARY WORK**

Work with a dictionary. Find out the meanings of the following words related to some holidays: *Easter*: Easter bonnets - hot cross buns - Easter Bunny - egg rolling - Easter Egg Hunt. *Christmas*: Christmas carol - nativity play - midnight mass - Christmas tree - bauble - tinsel - holly wreath - Christmas stocking - mince pie - Christmas cake - Christmas cookies - Christmas dinner - Christmas pudding - Christmas cracker. Indicate how these words can be used to describe holidays in the three countries. Make a list of their Ukrainian equivalents, too. See the explanation in the Addendum first.

## 11. Translate

Американці, так само як британці та українці, святкують Великдень, Різдво Христове та Новий рік. На Великдень християни усіх трьох країн фарбують круто зварені яйця, а діти чекають подарунків від різдвяного кролика. У Великодній понеділок, Президент Сполучених Штатів проводить для дітей на галявині перед Білим домом полювання на великодні яйця.

На Різдво люди прикрашають домівки вогниками, встановлюють різдвяні ялинки, прикрашають їх блискучими кулями, іграшками, мішурою, роблять різдвяні подарунки, які дітям кладуть до різдвяної панчохи, та розсилають різдвяні картки. Деякі американці вішають на двері віночок з гостролисту. До різдвяного столу англійці готують солодкі круглі пиріжки з солодким начинням та різдвяний пиріг, а в США - різдвяне печиво. Неодмінними на різдвяній вечері англійців є страви з індички і різдвяний пудинг з родзинками та цукатами, прикрашений гілочкою гостролисту. Діти та дорослі розважаються, стріляючи з хлопавок, всередині яких можуть бути невеликі іграшки. 26 грудня у Великобританії - День коляди, коли в старі часи хлопці ходили від дому до дому колядуючи та співаючи різдвяних колядок. Ця традиція існує і в Україні, але колядування відбувається 7 січня та 14 січня (на Старий Новий рік). Різдвяні ялинки та прикраси у США розбирають після Нового року, в Англії - після Водохреща (6 січня), а в Україні - після Старого Нового року (14 січня).

Інші свята в трьох країнах різні, хоча є й схожі. У Великобританії загалом більше свят, пов'язаних з релігією. Це, наприклад, Страшна п'ятниця, Поминальна неділя, Покаянна середа, Вознесіння, Перша неділя Різдяного посту, Трійця або Зелена неділя (язичницька назва - День духів), Трійцина неділя, Вербна неділя. Крім того, для забезпечення сталої кількості офіційних вихідних днів (тобто днів, коли банки не працюють) на рік, у Великобританії існують так звані: офіційний літній вихідний день, офіційний першотравневий вихідний день та офіційний весняний вихідний день. Існують ще й свята, що не є офіційними, але відзначаються більшістю громадян в усіх трьох країнах, наприклад, День матері, День батька, Гелловін (переддень Дня Усіх Святих), день Святого Валентина тощо.

Більшість свят в Україні (за винятком Різдва, Нового року, Великодня та Трійці (Зеленої неділі) мають політичний характер і або дісталися у спадок від колишнього Радянського Союзу (Міжнародний жіночий день, який святкується лише в деяких пострадянських країнах, День міжнародної солідарності трудящих, День весни та праці, День перемоги), або пов'язані з новітньою історією України, як незалежної держави (День Незалежності, День Конституції).

Суто американськими святами є такі. День Подяки веде своє походження з 1621 року, коли з Англії до Массачусеттса прибули нуртани. Після суворої зими половина з них померла і індіанці навчили їх вирощувати польові культури. Багатий врожай надихнув на влаштування свята. Обід у День Подяки включає запечену індичку, соус із журавлини, картоплю, гарбузовий пиріг. До обіду американці моляться на знак подяки.

Четверте липня, День Незалежності, це день пікніків та патріотичних парадів, ніч концертів та феєрверків. Повсюди піднімають американські прапори (так само, як у День Пам'яті та інші свята).

День Мартіна Лютера Кінга, невтомого борця за права всіх людей, відзначається з моменту його віроломного вбивства у 1968 році. У 1986 році цей день було зсупуто на третій понеділок січня і оголошено національним святом.

День Президентів святкується кожного третього понеділка лютого день на відзначення усіх президентів минулого.

День Пам'яті - кожний четвертий понеділок травня - вшановує усіх померлих. У цей день на цвинтарях, у церквах та в інших публічних місцях проводяться спеціальні служби.

День Праці - перший понеділок вересня - святкується на честь робочого люду країни. У цей день проходять паради. Для більшості американців цей день означає закінчення періоду літніх відпусток, а для більшості школярів та студентів - початок навчального року.

Колумбіє День - незважаючи на те, що більшість народів американського континенту святкують цей день 12 жовтня, у США це свято відзначається кожного другого понеділка жовтня.

День Ветеранів присвячено ветеранам усіх війн, що в них брали участь Сполучені Штати. Організації ветеранів проводять паради, а президент традиційно кладе вінок на могилу невідомого солдата на Арлінгтонському Національному цвинтарі, що розташований біля річки Потомак у Вашингтоні, округ Колумбія.

12. There are many patriotic songs about America. One of the most famous songs of this type, at least in the USA, is *America the Beautiful* (1895), words by Katherine Lee Bates, music by Samuel A. Ward. Katherine Lee Bates' poem was inspired by a view from Pike's Peak in the Rocky Mountains of Colorado, where she marveled at the expanse of fertile country spreading away so far under ample skies. The poem was later set to many different tunes, the most popular being 'Materna' by Samuel A. Ward. Over the years many Americans have suggested that this is a song worthy of being a national anthem.

Read the song and try to translate it into Ukrainian. Read about the principles of translating songs in the Addendum first. A variant of the translation of the first verse has been suggested there, too. It does not mean that you should accept it, suggest your own variant if you feel like that.



O, beautiful for spacious skies,  
For amber waves of grain,  
For purple mountains majesties  
Above the fruited plain.

America! America!  
God shed His grace on thee,  
And crown thy gold with brotherhood  
From sea to the shining sea.

O, beautiful for pilgrim feet  
Whose stern impassion'd stress  
A thoroughfare of freedom beat  
Across the wilderness.

America! America!  
God mend thy ev'ry flaw.  
Confirm thy soul in self control.  
Thy liberty in law.

O, beautiful for heroes prov'd  
In liberating strife,  
Who more than self their country loved,  
And mercy more than life.

America! America!  
May God thy gold refine  
Till all success be nobleness,  
And ev'ry gain divine.

O, beautiful for patriot dream That sees  
beyond the years, Thine alabaster cities  
gleam Undimmed by human tears.

America! America!  
God shed His grace on thee,  
And crown thy gold with brotherhood  
From sea to the shining sea.

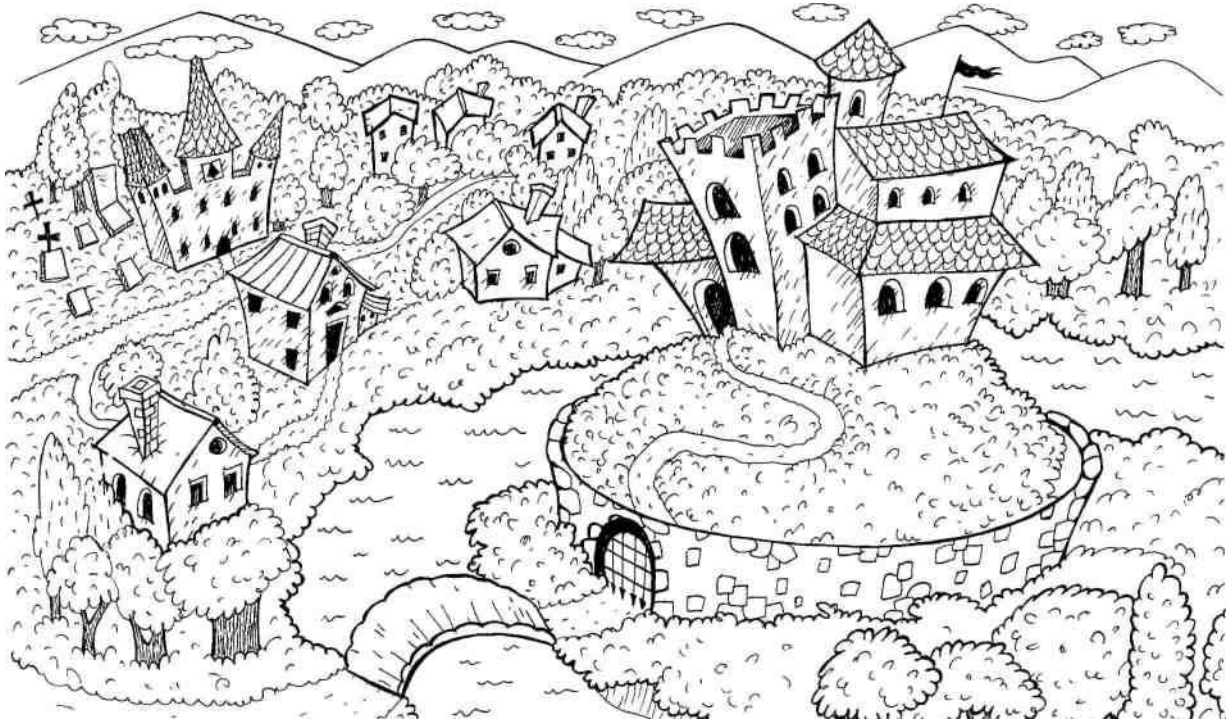


## PART 4

### ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 1

#### STATIONARY PREPOSITIONS -1

James had promised Annie to tell about the strange things that had happened to him the previous summer when his grandmother had asked him to come and help some locals. She lives in a microscopic kingdom of Pencader. James decided to write an interactive story about it.



Picture 1

1. Read Part 1, look at the picture above and complete Table 1. Number 1 has already been done for you.

#### EPISODE 1

##### PART I

Once upon a time there lived a king. He was well *over* (1) seventy. He had nobody *above* (2) him except his daughter who had an absolute control *over* (3) her father. She was just *under* (4) sixteen, and the king admired her *above* (5) anything in the world. The king's castle was *up* (6) a high hill. There was a river, a village *over* (7) it, a wood far *below* (8) the castle in the valley and the mountains beyond. The valley was *below* (9) the sea level so there floods were not infrequent, and bushes stayed *under* (10) the water for a while. But the castle was *above* (11) the sea level so it stood *beneath* (12) the velvet night sky, well *above* (13) the highest spot the floods had ever reached. Life was boring *up* (14) in the castle. Every day the princess looked through her window and thought that everything interesting was there, *down* (15), *below* (16) the castle in the valley, *underneath* (17) the thick woods. But there was a high wall around the castle *down* (18) the hill, and there was a gate in the fence and, of course, the guards at the gate.

2. Work in pairs. Each sentence below has a mistake. Correct the sentences according to the content of Episode 1.

1. The king was probably 71 years old.
2. The king lived on the top but one floor. Only his daughter lived in the room above him. All others lived downstairs.
3. The princess could not give orders to her father.
4. The princess was probably 14 years old.
5. The king liked when his daughter got up the hill and was above everything around.

TABLE 1

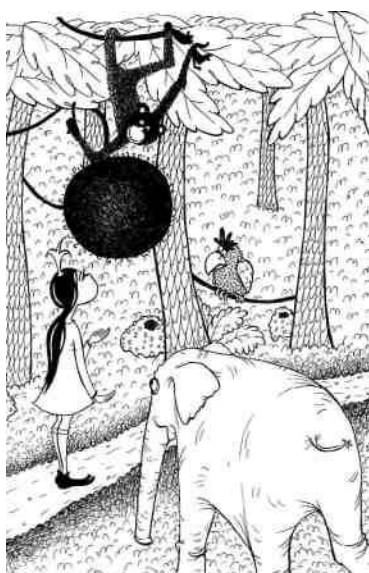
Preposition Types	Under	Below	Beneath	Underneath	Down	Over	Above	a £
1. Directly under/over								
2. Hidden from observation and (almost) touching								
3. Higher/lower than a certain point/level								
4. Covered by the object								
5. On the other side								
6. More/less than (about measurements, age, amount)								
7. Control of something								
8. Higher than, more important than								
9. Much lower								
10. Observation from a higher point								
11. In the direction of a lower/higher point								
12. Under the water or the ground								
13. Literary style								
14. Adverb								

**3. Work in pairs. Are the sentences below true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Picture 1 and Table 1.**

1. The king's castle was on the very top of the hill.
2. The river flowed under the village.
3. The wood was under the castle.
4. The valley was under the sea level, so there were often floods.
5. During the flood the bushes stayed beneath the water.
6. The castle stood over the highest spot the floods had ever reached.
7. The castle stood below the velvet night sky.
8. The princess thought that everything interesting was underneath the castle.
9. She thought there might be something interesting below the thick woods.
10. There was a wall around the castle underneath the hill.

**4. Read Part 2 and go on completing Table 1.**

### PART 2



One beautiful summer day, warm, *above* (19) twenty degrees, the princess went *down* (20) the hill, through the gate and into the woods. It was easy - the guards were asleep. The sun was still far from sinking *below* (21) the horizon. The princess was walking *down* (22) the path like an ordinary girl, her skirt just *below* (23) her knees, her heart beating wildly *underneath* (24) her T-shirt, the wind blowing *over* (25) her face. She was walking *beneath* (26) gorgeous trees, deeper and deeper into the woods, until she saw a tall palm tree with a huge coconut, hanging on a long string. The coconut was the size of her bath.

The princess came closer and saw a monkey, hanging upside *down* (27) from one of the branches *above* (28) her.

"Don't stand *under* (29) the coconut," she heard. "It may fall *down* (30)". To her surprise it was a big multicoloured parrot sitting on a lower branch. She had never seen a talking parrot before.

"Don't stand *over* (31) the coconut," said the Monkey. Another surprise.

"*Under* (32) the coconut," said the Parrot. "We are both *below* (33), and the coconut and you are *up* (34)."

"No," persisted the Monkey. "You are *up* (35) and I'm *below* (36). You are directly *over* (37) the coconut, I'm directly *under* (38) it so if it falls, I'll get *underneath* (39) it. The girl doesn't need to worry." "You're hanging upside *down* (40)," continued the Parrot. "The coconut can't fall *up* (41), it always falls *down* (42)."

"That's why it's going to fall my way," retorted the Monkey. "It's you who are upside *down* (43)."

"Here comes the Elephant," compromised the Parrot. "Let's ask him."

The Elephant listened to them and said, "I'm going to cut the string, and the way the coconut falls is '*down*' (44), while the opposite side is '*up*' (45). Agreed?" The Elephant cut the string, the giant coconut fell *down* (46), smashing the mole's holes *under* (47) the ground and the bushes *underneath* (48) the tree, and rested *over* (49) them.

"You see," declared the Parrot, "*up* (50) is *up* (51) and *down* (52) is *down* (53) even if you're upside *down* (54)."

**5. Work in pairs. Each sentence below has a mistake. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part 2.**

1. The temperature was up twenty degrees.
2. The princess did not go up the hill, she went below it.
3. The sun was not going under the horizon.
4. The princess was not walking up the path, she went under it.
5. The princess' skirt was almost above her knees.
6. The princess' heart beat wildly below her T-shirt.
7. She felt a warm wind above her face.
8. What a life should be down these gorgeous trees!

**6. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Picture 2 and Table 1.**

1. The princess was standing under the coconut.
2. The monkey was over the coconut.
3. The monkey thought the princess was up the coconut.
4. The princess and the parrot were both under the coconut.
5. The monkey thought that if the coconut fell, he would get directly below it.
6. When the coconut fell, it smashed the mole's holes beneath the ground.
7. It also smashed the bushes below the tree.
8. When it fell, the coconut rested above the bushes.

**Study the sentences in Episode 1. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with the examples from Part 1.**

over                      above                      under

**When we want:**

- to express the meaning of "more or less than a certain age", we use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ correspondingly
- to say that something / somebody is higher or more important than everything / everybody else, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- to say that somebody controls or manages somebody, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**7. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Part 1.**

over                      above                      under

1. Ten years ago the king was \_\_\_\_\_ seventy, but now he is well \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. In five years' time the princess is going to be \_\_\_\_\_ twenty but now she is well \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. The only person \_\_\_\_\_ the king is his daughter. She has had control \_\_\_\_\_ him for over fifteen years.
4. Because the King loved his daughter \_\_\_\_\_ all, she was \_\_\_\_\_ any criticism at all.



**8. Study the sentences in Part 2. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with examples from Part 2.**

up      down      over      below      under      above      beneath      underneath

**When we want to indicate:**

- the position which is in the direction of a higher or a lower point, we use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ correspondingly
- that something is on the other side of a river, a street etc., we use \_\_\_\_\_
- something higher or lower than a certain point on a scale / level, we use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ correspondingly
- that something is under the water or the ground, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the literary style, we use \_\_\_\_\_ to express the meaning of "under".
- the position lower but not directly under, we use \_\_\_\_\_, especially when it is far below.
- that something is under something, hidden from observation and touching or almost touching each other, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**9. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Part 2.**

below      beneath      above      down      over      up      underneath

1. The village people could see the King's castle \_\_\_\_\_ the river \_\_\_\_\_ a high hill.
2. The princess looked at the village huts far \_\_\_\_\_ the castle in the valley \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
3. The floods happened often because the valley was not \_\_\_\_\_ the sea level, and the water never reached the castle, as it was not \_\_\_\_\_ the sea level but well \_\_\_\_\_ the highest spot the floods had reached.
4. The castle stood like a fortress \_\_\_\_\_ the bright stars in the dark blue velvet sky.
5. "Life is so interesting \_\_\_\_\_ in the village and so boring \_\_\_\_\_ in the castle," thought the princess.
6. "Life is so boring \_\_\_\_\_ here in the village, and it must be so exciting \_\_\_\_\_ there in the castle," thought the village people \_\_\_\_\_ the thick woods.
7. "I can get into the woods through a gate which is \_\_\_\_\_ the castle in a high wall around the hill," thought the princess.

**10. Study the sentences in Part 2. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with the examples from Part 2.**

above      beneath      below      down      over      underneath

- More examples on:
  - (a) higher or lower than a certain level or a point on a scale. We use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ correspondingly
  - (b) in a direction of a lower point. We use \_\_\_\_\_
  - (c) under and (almost) touching. We use \_\_\_\_\_
  - (d) "under" in a literary style. We use \_\_\_\_\_

When we want to indicate that something (light, liquid, gas) is covering an object, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**11. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Part 2.**

above      below      beneath      down      over      underneath      up

1. The village women could not wear skirts, which were \_\_\_\_\_ their knees, because the village priest said they should be at least as long as five inches \_\_\_\_\_ the knees.
2. Because the princess wanted to get out of the castle, she did not go \_\_\_\_\_ the hill. She went \_\_\_\_\_ the hill and \_\_\_\_\_ the path.
3. The sunlight poured \_\_\_\_\_ the princess as she was walking \_\_\_\_\_ the gorgeous trees, the wind blowing \_\_\_\_\_ her T-shirt and her heart beating wildly \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. The village children were playing \_\_\_\_\_ the thick bushes spraying water \_\_\_\_\_ each other.

**12. Study the sentences in Part 2. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with the examples from Episode 4.**

above below down over under underneath up

**More examples on:**

- higher than (but not necessarily directly over). We use \_\_\_\_\_
- vertical position of an object higher or lower than another object. We use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ correspondingly
- under and touching something. We use \_\_\_\_\_
- lower than (but not necessarily directly under). We use \_\_\_\_\_
- on top and covering something. We use \_\_\_\_\_
- lower / higher position. We use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ correspondingly. Those are not prepositions but adverbs.
- below the surface of the water or ground. We use \_\_\_\_\_ .

**13. Reproduce Episode 1. Use the clues below.**

**Part 1. You are the king.** 1. King > 70. 2. Princess / King. 3. Princess —» control —> King. 4. Princess < 16. 5. King —► admire —► princess —► anything.

**Part 1. You are the king's guard.** Look at Picture 1 and use as many prepositions from Unit 1 as possible.

**Part 2. You are the princess.** 1. Day —► > 20°. 2. Princess —► hill —► gate —► woods. 3. Guards - asleep. 4. Sun —► far —► sink —► horizon. 5. Princess —► path —► skirt —► knees; heart —► beat —► T-shirt; wind —► blow —► face. 6. Princess —► walk —► gorgeous tree —► palm tree —► coconut string.

**Part 2. You are the parrot.** Look at Picture 2 and use as many prepositions from Unit 1 as possible.

**14. Write your own story (200 words). Use as many spatial prepositions as possible.**

## LESSON 2

### PART 1.

#### KELPIES' SIGHTINGS AT PISTYLL RHAADR AND LOUGH NEAGH

1. James keeps playing with Lappy. Below is Lappy's task. Help James do it. Read the text below, mark the corresponding areas on the map on page 47 and fill in the following information:



The official name of the country is \_\_\_\_\_  
It is situated on: \_\_\_\_\_  
The names of the 2 biggest islands are: \_\_\_\_\_  
The biggest groups of smaller islands are: \_\_\_\_\_  
The biggest island in the north is \_\_\_\_\_  
The biggest island in the west is \_\_\_\_\_  
The northernmost islands are: \_\_\_\_\_  
The mainland is between latitudes \_\_\_\_\_  
and between longitudes \_\_\_\_\_  
The Prime Meridian runs through \_\_\_\_\_  
The area of the country is \_\_\_\_\_

The main highlands are in \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_  
The backbone of England are \_\_\_\_\_  
The highest mountains are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_  
The longest rivers are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_  
The country is washed by \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_  
The country has a land border with \_\_\_\_\_  
The country's climate is \_\_\_\_\_  
The country's climate is warm because of \_\_\_\_\_  
The prevailing winds are \_\_\_\_\_  
Average annual rainfall varies from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_  
The driest county is \_\_\_\_\_ with average rainfall of \_\_\_\_\_  
This county usually has \_\_\_\_\_ rainy days per year



The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland occupies a substantial part of the British Isles. It comprises the island of Great Britain and the northeastern one-sixth of the island of Ireland (Northern Ireland), together with many smaller islands. Great Britain is the largest island in Europe. There are also more than 5000 smaller islands around the coasts of the two main islands. The biggest group is the Hebrides and the Orkney Isles in the north. Other bigger islands are Isle of Wight in the south and Isle of Man in the west.

The mainland areas lie between latitudes 49°N and 59°N (the Shetland Islands reach to nearly 61°N), and longitudes 8°W to 2°E. The Royal Greenwich Observatory, near London, is the defining point of the Prime Meridian. The United Kingdom has a total area of approximately 245,000 km<sup>2</sup>.

The main areas of highland are in Scotland, Wales and Cumbria. In the center of England there are hills called the Pennines, the backbone of England. They stretch across Cumbria, North West, and Yorkshire into the heart of England and East Midlands. The highest peaks are in Scotland (Ben Nevis - 1343 m) and Wales (Snowdon - 1085 m). The longest rivers are the Severn (354-km), flowing across Wales and the heart of England, and the Thames (346 km) in the Thames and Chiltern and London areas.

Great Britain is washed by the North Atlantic Ocean in the west, the North Sea in the east and the English Channel in the south. Northern Ireland shares a 360 km international land boundary with the Republic of Ireland.

The climate of the UK is temperate, though significantly warmer than some other locations at similar latitude, due to the warming influence of the Gulf Stream. The south is warmer and drier than the north. The prevailing winds are southwesterly, from the North Atlantic Current. More than half of the days are overcast. There are few natural hazards, although there can be strong winds and floods, especially in winter. Average annual rainfall varies from over 3,000 mm (120 inches) in the Scottish Highlands down to 553 mm (21.8 in) in Cambridge. The county of Essex is one of the driest in the UK, with an average annual rainfall of around 600 mm (24 inches), although it typically rains on over 100 days per year.

2. You are going to read four fragments on regional variations in Great Britain. For Questions 1-23, choose from the regions (A-D). The regions may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A. England B. Scotland

C Wales

D. Northern Ireland

### Which of the regions

occupies most of the island of Great Britain	0	A has a famous water attraction	12
has the largest freshwater reservoir	1	has drained marshland in the east	13
has three main geographic parts	2	has over a score of 1-km-high mountains	14
has land border with two parts of the country	3	attracts tourists by its plants	15
is nearest to mainland Europe	4	has an underground international border	16
is known for an old bridge	5	has 50 % of largest cities in the central part	17
has the highest peak in the country	6	has little difference between seasons	18
has a land international border	7	has the largest harbour in the country	19
has low mountains in the north	8	has 30 % of its population living in the capital	20
had the lowest temperature ever recorded	9	is situated on a peninsula	21
has the highest point below 1 km	10	has a hilly sothern part	22
enables you to get to Europe by car	11	has the highest temperature ever recorded	23



### A. England

It comprises the central and southern two-thirds of the island of Great Britain, plus offshore islands of which the largest is the Isle of Wight in the Southern area. Its northern parts, Cumbria and Northumbria, border Scotland, and its western regions, West Midlands (or the Heart of England) and North West, - Wales. It is closer to continental Europe than any other part of Britain, divided from France only by a 21-mile (34-km) sea gap. Most of England consists of rolling hills, but it is more mountainous in the north with low mountains, the Pennines, dividing east and west. There is also an area of flat, low-lying marshland in the east (East Anglia) much of which has been drained for agricultural use. The Channel Tunnel ('Chunnel'), near Folkestone, in South East, links England to Europe. The English/French border is halfway along the tunnel. The largest harbour is at Poole, on the south-central coast. The highest temperature ever recorded in England is 38.5 °C (101.3 °F) in 2003 in Kent, and the lowest -26.1 °C (-15.0 °F) in 1982 at Newport in Shropshire.



### B. Scotland

Scotland comprises the northern part of the island of Great Britain; it borders England in the south. The country consists of a mainland area plus several island groups, including Shetland, Orkney, and the Hebrides. Three main geographical areas make up the mainland: from north to south, the Highlands and Islands, including the Grampians with Ben Nevis, Britain's highest mountain, and the groups of islands mentioned above; the low-lying Central Belt, and the hilly Southern Uplands. The majority of the Scottish population resides in the Central Belt, which contains three of the country's six largest cities (Edinburgh, Glasgow, and Stirling) and many large towns. Most of the remaining population lives in the North-East Lowlands, where two of the remaining three cities (Aberdeen and Dundee) are situated. The final city, Inverness, is situated in the area of the famous lake of Loch Ness, where the River Ness meets the Moray Firth. The highest temperature: 32.9 °C (91.2 °F) in 2003, the lowest: - 27.2 °C (-17.0 °F) in 1895.



### C. Wales

Wales is located on a peninsula in central-west Great Britain. Wales borders by England to the east and by sea in the other three directions: the Bristol Channel to the south, St George's Channel to the west, and the Irish Sea to the north. There are several islands off the Welsh mainland, the largest being Anglesey. Much of Wales's landscape is mountainous. The 14 Welsh mountains over 3 000 feet high are known collectively as the Welsh 3 000s. The Brecon Beacons are in the south and are joined by the Cambrian Mountains in mid-Wales. The Seven Wonders of Wales include: Snowdon (the highest mountain), the Gresford bells (the peal of bells in the medieval church of All Saints at Gresford), the Llangollen bridge (built in 1347 over the River Dee), St Winefride's Well (a pilgrimage site at Holywell in Flintshire), the Wrexham steeple (16th century tower of St. Giles Church in Wrexham), the Overton yew trees (ancient yew trees in the churchyard of St Mary's at Overton-on-Dee) and Pistyll Rhaeadr (Wales's tallest waterfall, at 240 feet or 75 m). The highest temperature: 35.2 °C (95.4 °F) in 1990, the lowest: -23.3°C(-10°F)in1940.



### D. Northern Ireland

The centrepiece of Northern Ireland's geography is Lough Neagh, at 392 km<sup>2</sup> the largest freshwater lake in the British Isles. There are substantial uplands in the Sperrin Mountains. None of the hills are especially high, with Slieve Donard reaching 848 metres, Northern Ireland's highest point. The numerous rivers form extensive fertile lowlands, with excellent arable land, although much of the hill country is suitable largely for animal husbandry. The valley of the River Lagan is dominated by Belfast, whose metropolitan area includes over a third of the population of Northern Ireland, with heavy urbanisation and industrialisation. The whole of Northern Ireland has a temperate maritime climate, although cloud cover is persistent across the region. The weather is unpredictable at all times of the year, and although the seasons are distinct, they are considerably less pronounced than in interior Europe or the eastern seaboard of North America. Average daytime maximums in Belfast are 6.5 °C (43.7 °F) in January and 17.5 °C (63.5 °F) in July. The damp climate and extensive deforestation in the 16th and 17th centuries resulted in much of the region being covered in rich green grassland. The highest temperature: 30.8 °C (87.4 °F) in 1976, the lowest temperature: - 17.5 °C (0.5 °F) in 1979.

### 3. Work in pairs. Read the following and then write down everything you know about Stonehenge.

More than 4,000 years ago, the ancient people decided to build a massive monument using earth, timber and stones, placing it high on Salisbury Plain in Wiltshire, England - about 137 kilometres southwest of London. Some of what was Stonehenge still stands today. The stones of the main monument appear to form layers of circles and horseshoe patterns that slowly enclose the site. First there is an outer stone circle, now mostly in ruin. Within this are a smaller set of stones, also set in a circle. Within the centre of the monument are trilithons - two pillar stones with one stone on top - in the shape of a horseshoe. Within this is another smaller set of stones, also in a horseshoe. But it is a monument made of more than just rocks. There is the henge, or a ditch and the bank that surrounds the stone circle. There is also a laneway that extends from the northeast side of the monument from the open horseshoe to the River Avon, a few kilometres away. Several stones mark this laneway, just outside the henge of the monument.

4. For questions 1-18, read the text below and then decide which word best fits each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).



Stonehenge is surely Britain's greatest national icon, symbolizing mystery, power and \_\_\_\_\_. (0). Its original purpose is unclear to us, but some have \_\_\_\_\_ worship of ancient earth deities. It has been called an astronomical observatory for marking \_\_\_\_\_ events on the prehistoric calendar. Others claim that it was a \_\_\_\_\_ citizens from the societies of long ago. While we can't say with any degree of \_\_\_\_\_ for, we can say that it wasn't constructed for any

\_\_\_\_\_ to the ancients would have been worth the effort and \_\_\_\_\_ (6) that it took to construct Stonehenge.

The question of who built Stonehenge is \_\_\_\_\_ (7) unanswered, even today. The monument's construction has been \_\_\_\_\_ (8) to many ancient peoples throughout the years, but the most captivating and enduring attribution has been to the Druids. This \_\_\_\_\_ (9) connection was first made around three centuries ago. Julius Caesar and other Roman writers told of a Celtic priesthood who \_\_\_\_\_ (10) around the time of their first \_\_\_\_\_ (11) (55 BC). By this time, though, the stones had been standing for 2,000 years, and were, perhaps, already in a ruined condition. Besides, the Druids \_\_\_\_\_ (12) in forest temples and had no need for stone structures.

The legend of King Arthur tells that Merlin brought the stones to the Salisbury Plain from Ireland. Some time in the fifth century, there had been a \_\_\_\_\_ (13) of 300 British noblemen by the \_\_\_\_\_ (14) Saxon leader. The high king wanted to create a memorial to the murdered men. Merlin suggested an expedition to Ireland for the purpose of \_\_\_\_\_ (15) the Giant's Ring, whose stones had been \_\_\_\_\_ (16) brought from Africa by giants, to Britain. The expedition arrived in Ireland. The Britons were unable to move the great stones. And only Merlin's magic helped \_\_\_\_\_ (17) them by air to Britain, where they were set up in a great circle, around the mass grave of the \_\_\_\_\_ (18) noblemen.

- |    |   |               |   |              |   |                |   |              |
|----|---|---------------|---|--------------|---|----------------|---|--------------|
| 0  | A | endurance     | B | holding up   | C | undergoing     | D | stability    |
| 1  | A | conjectured   | B | ventured     | C | speculated     | D | chanced      |
| 2  | A | eloquent      | B | significant  | C | expressive     | D | representati |
| 3  | A | sanctioned    | R | secure       | C | divine         | D | sacred       |
| 4  | A | certainty     | B | reality      | C | faith          | D | actuality    |
| 5  | A | careless      | R | occasional   | C | casual         | D | effortless   |
| 6  | A | metropolis    | B | share        | C | investment     | D | venture      |
| 7  | A | largely       | B | amply        | C | thoroughly     | D | enough       |
| 8  | A | credited      | R | attributed   | C | characteristic | D | laid         |
| 9  | A | unjust        | B | faithless    | C | unspecific     | D | erroneous    |
| 10 | A | succeeded     | R | flourished   | C | paraded        | D | brandished   |
| 11 | A | triumph       | B | conquest     | C | captivation    | D | acquisition  |
| 12 | A | worshipped    | R | adored       | C | sanctified     | D | idolized     |
| 13 | A | annihilation  | R | liquidation  | C | holocaust      | D | massacre     |
| 14 | A | unreliable    | R | treacherous  | C | unstable       | D | insecure     |
| 15 | A | replanting    | B | repotting    | C | transplanting  | D | uprooting    |
| 16 | A | imaginatively | R | basically    | C | originally     | D | startlingly  |
| 17 | A | ship          | R | consign      | C | freight        | D | cart         |
| 18 | A | slain         | B | extinguished | C | done in        | D | destroyed    |

#### 5. Work in pairs. Read the following information from Encyclopaedia Britannica.

Loch Ness, a lake in Inverness district, Highland region, Scotland, has the largest volume of fresh water in Great Britain, reaching a depth of 788 feet and a length of about 23 miles. The lake is believed to be inhabited by an aquatic monster. Many sightings of the so-called Loch Ness monster have been reported, and the possibility of its existence continues to intrigue many people.

What do you know about the Loch Ness monster? Do you believe in it? Why or why not?

6. Work in pairs. Read some accounts of the Loch Ness monster's sightings. Do you believe them? Why or why not?



**Saint Columba** - 565AD. Saint Columba, while preaching Christianity in the area saw a water beast heading to attack one of his followers who was swimming across for a boat. The Saint raised a cross and told the monster to go back with all speed and not to hurt the swimmer. On another occasion the water kelpie took the form of a bridled horse offering weary travellers a ride. Once the traveller mounted the horse, it reverted into the Kelpie and plunged into the loch to devour its victim. When the Saint met the kelpie, he gave it a severe lecture and it never again hurt the local people!

**Dr & Mrs Rines, Mr & Mrs Cary** 1971. They observed a single hump 20 feet long at a range of three quarters of a mile. They examined it through a telescope from the Cary's cottage just above Urquhart Castle. Dr Rines described it as having a back like that of an elephant. Mrs Cary later said that it could have been anything.



**Tony Harmsworth** 1986. While leaving his house he spotted something in the water about 400 metres or so away and moving diagonally across the loch against the direction of the wind. Through binoculars it was clearly an elongated shape he estimated at between four and six feet long. For information, a seal is about two feet long at the surface showing that four feet is quite a substantial object.



**Father Gregory Brucey** 1972. Fr Gregory was one of the monks of Fort Augustus Abbey. He was walking in the monastery garden by the loch with the organist from Westminster Cathedral when they both saw a head and neck about 6 feet high. It moved through the water, turned on its side and submerged.



**Hugh Ayton** 1963. Three large humps and a neck seen by Mr Ayton and three others who ran to the loch-side, got into their boat, rowed out into the loch, started the motor and then followed the monster for about a mile. The body was 30 to 40 feet long and the humps stood 4 feet out of the water and the neck six feet long. Hugh Ayton says that the one thing he will always remember was the large oval eye looking at him from the horse-like head!

**Mr Forbes** 1919. A big beast, fully the width of the road, crossed the road in front of him, spooking the pony. Sighting not reported until after 1933. Whisky was popular in the early twentieth century, too!



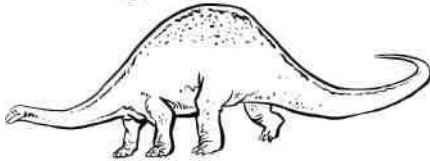
**Mr Cruickshank** 1923. An animal with a huge body and pug-nosed head seen on the road. It was up to 25 feet long. Sighting not reported until after 1933. Spectacles were not available on the National Health Service in 1923!



**Mr & Mrs Spicer** 1933. A huge animal, "the nearest thing to a prehistoric animal that I have ever seen" crossed the road in front of their car. This was the first long-neck sighting and may have inspired other people's plesiosaur sightings. Suddenly, after this sighting, anyone who saw a single hump was barely newsworthy and exaggeration became the order of the day!



**Mr Grant** 1934 .A much reported sighting which Mr Grant had actually admitted as a joke to Mr Alex Menzies. He had apparently fallen off his motor bike and told his mother that the damage to the bike was caused by the monster making him crash!.



**Mrs Munro** 1934. A twenty-five minute sighting of a huge animal with a giraffe-like neck playing in the water at a range of 300 yards. Such good fortune!



**Mr MacLeod** 1960. A plesiosaur type animal seen on a beach near the Horseshoe Scree through binoculars. It was supposed to have been 40 to 60 feet long without the tail! Having no telephoto lens on his movie camera, Mr MacLeod did not take any film because he wanted to save it in case the animal swam the mile across the loch towards him to join him for afternoon tea, no doubt!

**LISTENING Work in pairs. Discuss everything**



you know about Ireland and the Irish language.



**7. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.**

A	B	A	B
1. principal	A. achieve	2. barbarian	O. enslave
3. conquer	B. abuse	4. conquest	P. assess
5. gain	C limiting intake of food	6. subjugate	Q. combat
7. entire	D. main	8. rebel	R. churchmen
9. crush	E. autonomy	10. suffer	S. alien
11. exploitation	F. miss	12. prosecution	T. proclaim
13. poverty	G. whole	14. estimate	U. agonize
15. starvation	H. registration	16. coffin	V. obligatory
17. famine	I. dying out	18. clergy	W. domination
19. self-government	J. overcome	20. decree	X. publish
21. lack	K. hunger	22. required	Y. pursuance
23. matriculation	L. shortage	24. issue	Z. funerary box
25. extinction	M. occupy		

**8. Read the beginning of the text about Ireland. What do you think the text is about?**

If a living-room has a fish tank and a strange-looking table lamp made from wax in water which circulates in patterns as the lamp warms up, you're in a home of Protestants, who might be the descendents of medieval English and Scottish settlers. If there are newspapers on the floor and a dried-out plant on the mantelpiece, and there is animated chatter till all hours, and the front lawn has not been mowed in a while, welcome to Catholic west Belfast. Whoever rules Northern Ireland, most elected politicians will be Protestants, the folk with peculiar first names like Mabel and Myrtle. Even a name held in common divides: Catholic Roberts are called Bobby, Protestants are called Rab; Michaels are called Mickey (Catholic) or Mike (Protestant).

**9. Now listen to the text about Ireland. For questions 1-31, complete the statements. Use 1-5 words to fill the gaps in. You will hear the recording twice.**

- . The republic of Ireland has the area of \_\_\_\_\_ (1) square miles and the population of about \_\_\_\_\_ (2).
- . Northern Ireland is \_\_\_\_\_ (3) of the Republic of Ireland.
- . Ireland used to be a \_\_\_\_\_ (4) Europe in the early Middle Ages.
- . Ireland preserved Western culture and learning during the \_\_\_\_\_ (5).
- . By 1500s the \_\_\_\_\_ (6) territory of Ireland \_\_\_\_\_ (7) to England.
- . During this time the English and Scottish \_\_\_\_\_ (8) control over Irish lands.
- . The foreign conquerors always managed to put down or \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the frequent Irish \_\_\_\_\_ (10).
- . The Irish lived in poverty because of economic \_\_\_\_\_ (11), as well as political and religious \_\_\_\_\_ (12).
- . Because of the potato crop failure, the Irish population decreased from \_\_\_\_\_ (13) in the 1830s to about \_\_\_\_\_ (14) in the 1850s.
- . According to \_\_\_\_\_ (15), the number of people that died of \_\_\_\_\_ (16) in the late 1840s, is more than \_\_\_\_\_ (17), and about \_\_\_\_\_ (18) emigrated.
- . Because many people died on board during the emigration overseas, those ships were called \_\_\_\_\_ (19).
- . By 1870, due to the potato \_\_\_\_\_ (20) and emigration, the use of Irish decreased to \_\_\_\_\_ (21) %.
- . Only English was taught in the schools in Ireland in the \_\_\_\_\_ (22) 19<sup>th</sup> century.
- . Ireland managed to achieve \_\_\_\_\_ (23) in 1922 and to become free, in \_\_\_\_\_ (24).
- . According to the government \_\_\_\_\_ (25), all elementary school teachers \_\_\_\_\_ (26) the Irish language.
- . By 1949, more than \_\_\_\_\_ (27) % of the Irish teachers did not \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the certificate to teach Irish.
- . Since 1913, knowledge of Irish has been obligatory for college \_\_\_\_\_ (29).
- . Nowadays all government papers must \_\_\_\_\_ (30) two languages.
- . Thus the people have prevented the \_\_\_\_\_ (31) of an ancient language.

**10. Work in pairs. Compare the history of the countries of Ireland and Ukraine and of their national languages. Do you see any similarities? What are they? What are the differences?**

**11. Translate**

Територія Великої Британії умовно ділиться на 15 частин. По-перше, це - Англія, а в ній - Лондон з передмістями, де, поміж іншого, знаходиться Королівська Грінвіцька обсерваторія, через яку проходить нульовий меридіан. Потім - Південний схід, узбережжя якого виходить на Англійський канал (британська назва протоки Ла-Манш), в найвужчому місці якого, біля міста Фолкстоун, починається "Чаннел", тунель

під Ла-Маншем, який з'єднує Англію з Францією. У південній частині Англії знаходиться Пул, найбільший порт на Британських островах, та прибережний острів У айт. Західна частина Англії, яку називають Західна країна, омивається Ла-Маншем та Брістольською затокою. На цій території є пагористі й гористі ділянки, трапляється й болотиста місцевість, частина з якої осушена для сільськогосподарського використання. Є й рівнини, зокрема, Солсберійська рівнина, на якій знаходиться таємничий Стоунхендж, стародавня (4000 років) споруда з гігантських кам'яних брил у формі дольменів, яка, як гадають, могла бути давньою астрономічною обсерваторією. На північний схід лежить район, який називається Темза та Чилтернські пагорби, а ще далі на схід - Східна Англія, узбережжя якої виходить вже в Північне море. Вище знаходиться район Мідлендз (центральні графства Англії), який інколи ділять на Східні Мідлендз, з узбережжям на Північному морі, та Західні Мідлендз (або Серце Англії), що межують з Уельсом на заході. Тут тече річка Северн, найдовша у Великій Британії. Пеннінські гори, хребет Англії, які простягаються від кордону з Шотландією до центру країни, ділять її північну частину навпіл. Праворуч від Пеннінських гір знаходяться два регіони: Йоркшир і Гамберсайд, а також Нортумбрія (графство Нортамберленд), а ліворуч - Північний захід і Камбрія (район озер на північному заході Англії), недалеко від узбережжя якої, в Ірландському морі, лежить острів Мен, популярний туристичний центр.

На північ від Камбрії та Нортумбрії розташована Шотландія - її материкова частина, а також Оркнейські, Шетландські, Гебридські та багато малих островів. Шотландія омивається Північним морем та Атлантичним океаном, зокрема, його теплою течією Гольфстрім. Територію Шотландії можна розділити на три частини. На півночі знаходиться Північно-шотландське нагір'я з хребтом Грампіанських гір і Бен Невісом, найвищою вершиною у Великій Британії, а на півдні - Південно-шотландська височина. Між ними, в басейні річок Клайд і Форт, лежить Центральний пояс або Шотландська низина. Саме тут, на східному узбережжі, у затоці Форт, розташована столиця Шотландії Едінбург, а на західному узбережжі, у гирлі річки Клайд, що впадає в Ірландське море, лежить Глазго, найбільше місто країни. Між ними, на східному узбережжі, у затоці Форт, у гирлі річки Форт, є ще одне досить велике місто - Стерлінг, а трохи північніше, на східному узбережжі, у гирлі річки Тей, знаходиться місто Данді. Далі на північ бачимо Абердін, важливе місто на північно-східному узбережжі, у гирлі річки Ді, яка впадає у Північне море. Єдиним великим містом на півночі є Івернесс, яке розташоване на північному узбережжі у затоці Морей, біля озера Лох-Несс, у гирлі річки Несе. Лох-Несс відоме в усьому світі завдяки лох-несському чудовищу, великій водній рептилії, тину плезіозавра, з відносно невеликою головою і довгою шиєю, яка начебто мешкає в озері.

Материковий Уельс - це півострів, що омивається Брістольською затокою, яка заходить у гирло річки Евон, та протокою святого Георга в Ірландському морі. На березі Брістольської затоки знаходиться і валлійська столиця, Кардіфф. Уельсу також належить прибережний острів Англісі. Ландшафт країни переважно гористий. У Камбріанському хребті розташовані дві гори, висотою біля 800 м кожна, відомі під назвою "Бреконські сигнальні вогні", бо на них у старі часи запалювали сигнальні вогні. Тут же розташовані більше десяти валлійських гірських вершин, висота кожної з яких перевищує 3 000 футів. Сім валлійських чудес включають: Рексгемську дзвіницю церкви Св. Джайлза, побудовану в XVI-му столітті; Овертонські старовинні тисові дерева на церковному цвинтарі у церкві пресвятої Марії в м. Овертон-на-Ді; Джерело Св. Вінефрід - місце паломництва поблизу м. Голівелл у графстві Флінтшпир; Гресфордські дзвони у середньовічній Церкві Усіх Святих у м. Гресфорд; Сноудон, найвищу гірську вершину Уельсу; Лланголенський міст через річку Ді, побудований у 1347 році, а також Пістилл Редр, найбільший водоспад в Уельсі, висотою 75 метрів.

Північна Ірландія займає шосту частину острова Ірландія. Її ландшафт місцями пагористий, а місцями являє собою родючі низини з орною землею. Знищення лісонасаджень та непередбачуваний вологий клімат, що є наслідком стійкого хмарного покриву, спричинили наявність великих площ лукопасовищних угідь зі соковою травою, що сприяє розвитку тваринництва. Пори року не так чітко відрізняються одна від одної, як на материковій частині Європи або на східному узбережжі США. Височини відносно низькі - найвища північноірландська точка, Слів Донард, сягає лише 848 м. На заході розташовані Сперрінські гори, найвища точка яких ще нижча - 554 м. Найпримітнішим географічним елементом Північної Ірландії є Локс-Ней, найбільше прісноводне озеро Великобританії. Столиця, Белфаст, розташована у долині річки Лаган. Це - район, що характеризується індустріалізацією та урбанізацією, а також великою щільністю населення - третина населення країни проживає тут.

## DICTIONARY WORK

Work with a dictionary. Find out the meaning of the following words: **occidental - oriental - relief map - rill - moraine - permafrost - rivulet - sandbank - sand bar - scree**. Make a list of their Ukrainian equivalents, too. Indicate how these words can be used to describe the geographical features of the British Isles. See the explanation in the Addendum first.

## PART 2

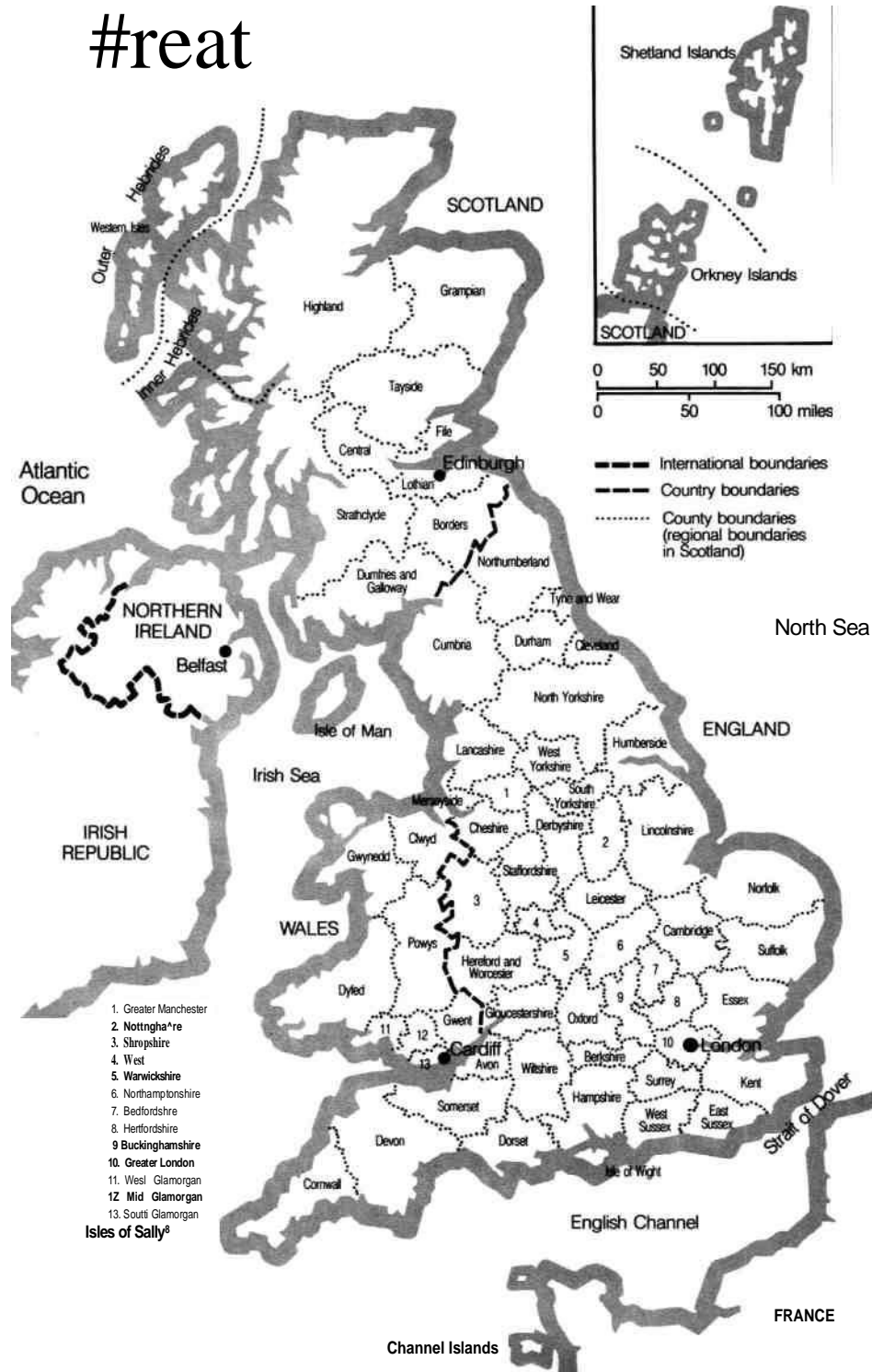
### OXIANS AND CANTABRIGIANGS ARE NO FANS OF LIVERPUDLIANS

Lappy's next task is on English counties. Help James do it.

1. Study the map and distribute the names of English counties in the box among the geographical regions below.

London	17	West Midlands		West Country	East Anglia
Cumbria		Thames and Chilterns		Northumbria	South East
Southern		Yorkshire and Humberside		East Midlands	North West

1. Avon
2. Bedfordshire
3. Berkshire
4. Buckinghamshire
5. Cambridgeshire
6. Cheshire
7. Cleveland
8. Cornwall
9. Cumbria
10. Derbyshire
11. Devon or Devonshire
12. Dorset
13. Durham
14. East Sussex
15. Essex
16. Gloucestershire
17. Greater London
18. Greater Manchester
19. Hampshire
20. Hereford and Worcester
21. Hertfordshire
22. Humberside
23. Isle of Wight
24. Kent
25. Lancashire
26. Leicestershire
27. Lincolnshire
28. Merseyside
29. Norfolk
30. North Yorkshire
31. Northamptonshire
32. Northumberland
33. Nottinghamshire
34. Oxfordshire
35. Shropshire
36. Somerset
37. South Yorkshire
38. Staffordshire
39. Suffolk
40. Surrey
41. Tyne and Wear
42. Warwickshire
43. West Midlands
44. West Sussex
45. West Yorkshire
46. Wiltshire



2. Work in pairs. Match the name of the county in A (or B) with the word in B (or A). Explain the meaning of the resulting word-combinations.

A	B
Berkshire	Bay
Cheshire	cat
Cleveland	Cornwall
Prince of	Day
Duke of	pie
Derby	Pig
Devonshire	Wales



A	B
Dorset	Miners' Gala
Durham	blue
Essex	Old Spot
Gloucester	United
Sussex	Wonder
Manchester	Speckled

A	B
Hampshire	Broads
Worcester	conurbation
Lancashire	hotpot
Leicester	sauce
Merseyside	sheep
Norfolk	Square



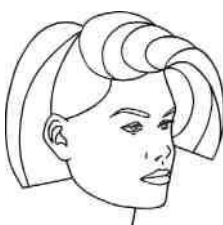
A	B
Yorkshire	Avon
Sheriff of	conurbation
Buckingham	cord
Stradford-on-	Nottingham
Bedfords	Palace
Tyneside	pudding

3. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below choosing the names of the seven towns' inhabitants from the lists below.



**Aberdeen**

- A. an Aberdinee
- B. an Aberdonian
- C. an Aberdeener



**Birmingham**

- A. Brummie
- B. Birmese
- C. Burmenite



**Bristol**

- A. Bristoler
- B. Bristolian
- C. Bristolee



**Glasgow**

- A. Glasgowiegian
- B. Glasgower
- C. Glascunian

- Manchester United and Manchester City are both \_\_\_\_\_ football teams.
- The Beatles are the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ rock group.
- \_\_\_\_\_, being the inhabitants of the UK capital, are pretty cosmopolitan.
- Though Celtic and Glasgow Rangers are both \_\_\_\_\_ football teams, their fans are separated because of religious differences.
- \_\_\_\_\_ like their city, where there are many beautiful houses built of Aberdeen granite.
- \_\_\_\_\_ are proud of their city, Birmingham, the second largest one in Britain.
- \_\_\_\_\_ pop groups, like Massive Attack, became famous due to their style of music, trip-hop, which is sometimes called the "Bristol sound".



**London**

- A. Londonian
- B. Londoner
- C. Londoneer



**Liverpool**

- A. Liverpooles
- B. Liverpudlian
- C. Liverpoolian



**Manchester**

- A. Manchesterian
- B. Manchesterite
- C. Mancunian

4. Work in pairs. Read the following phrases about different British nationalities. How do they characterize each of them? Do you think they are accurate? Why or why not?

Once a foreigner -  
always a foreigner:  
he may become British,  
but he can never  
become English -  
George Mikes



An Irishman is never at  
peace – except when he  
is fighting



Welsh ancestors were  
overworked and  
undereducated so that  
they might be under-  
worked and overedu-  
cated now



A Scot is the only man  
who sings about auld  
lang syne and knows  
what it means

5. Tiffany and Sandra, two young American women, are going to Britain for the first time. Some of their friends have already been there. Read their recommendations. For Questions 1-17, choose from the friends (A-H). The friends may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).



### WHICH OF THE FRIENDS

explains the difference between the United Kingdom and Great Britain	0	A carries out a contrastive analysis of means of communication in British and American English	9
does not think much about British English	1	is skeptical about Irish literature	10
provides some data on animals in Britain	2	provides an overview of British cities	11
tips on how to impress you date's mother	3	Laughs at people's superstitions	12
ridicules security officials	4	ridicules English food	13
evaluates the British time telling abilities	5	tips on the best way to get rid of your date	14
advises on the best place to meet a man	6	advises on pronunciation peculiarities	15
provides some proof of men's loyalty	7	explains how to deal with a British girl competition	16
can't say much about Wales	8	is shocked by the rigidity of British laws	17

## A. Claire

Great Britain is England, Scotland and Wales. The United Kingdom is Great Britain plus North Ireland. Most people don't understand this technicality, nor do they care. They toss Ireland into the lot and call the whole thing Britain. That's fine, but the truth is, England is the only one of the bunch that has anything going for it. Unlike the others, England has a past, a future and a decent football team. When we say "British," we're talking about England. Ladies, you shouldn't bother with men from the neglected parts of the British Isles. Scottish men wear skirts, play terrible musical instruments, are afraid of water monsters and will try to feed you a lamb liver wrapped in sheep stomach. Irish guys are belligerent alcoholics, claim to see little green men at the end of a rainbow and although their favorite hobby is arguing, they're absolutely miserable at it. Men from North Ireland will try convincing you to carry a suspicious package on your flight back home. And Welsh men - have you ever met anyone from Wales? We've been to the country three times and barely remember meeting anyone. There's nothing to be said for them.

## B. Diane

Not only do the neglected countries lack modern day bragging rights, but they've also made few (if any) historical contributions to society. Have you ever tried reading something by Irish author James Joyce? What a nightmare! A boring six-page story about a little boy, who went to a flea market and didn't buy anything, is supposedly symbolic for sexual discoveries and a loss of innocence. Then there's William Wallace, the pride of Scotland. After the movie *Braveheart* became a hit, the William Wallace museum created a life-sized statue of their hero and put him out front. However, the statue isn't William Wallace; it's Mel Gibson. Incidentally, you should learn the correct pronunciation of Brits' men's names. Your potential boyfriends' names are: Benjamin (pronounced ben-NAY), Cameron (CAM-run), Callum (Column), Charles (CHAW-lee), Daniel (dan-YOUL), Harold (Airy), Jack (Jack), Michael (mike-KAY), Oliver (OLIVE-uh), Peter (PETE-uh), William (Wills).

## C. Juliette

If you ask me about dogs in Britain, there's nothing noteworthy about them, but you might be curious to know that the nation's number one road kill is the hedgehog. And speaking of roads, if you hopped into the driver's seat in Britain, you'd be on the wrong side of the car driving on the wrong side of the road. Instead of stop signs, the British drive around in circles. Passing the drivers license test is next to impossible: If a driver does something "wrong" (such as forgetting to put on the parking break at a stop light), they fail. There's a six month wait for another chance to test. When British people finally receive their license, they don't have to renew it until they're 70. Drunk driving laws in Britain are crazy, so don't expect your date to pick you up in a flashy sports car. He'll arrive on foot because he left his keys at home on the kitchen table. If he's caught with keys in his pocket and he's within 50 feet of his car, he can be arrested for a DUI. British are extreme about drunk driving.

## D. Joan

Most British people wear digital watches because they find the ones with the hands a bit confusing. They're also baffled by thermostats: all beer is served at least twenty degrees too warm. The British bobbies (policemen) aren't issued weapons - instead they carry around big sticks. Beefeaters (policemen who guard palaces) don't even have sticks. They just have rifles loaded with blanks and frumpy red hats. They look like clowns trying out for the Nutcracker. For some reason big sticks and clowns are a real crime deterrent because the Brits don't have too many problems. British English is very different from American English. You might benefit from learning a few useful British phrases:

### What You Want To Say:

Get that stuff you call food away from me.  
I'm so hungry, I haven't eaten in weeks.  
Keep talking - I just want to hear your sexy voice.  
Sorry, darling, not interested.  
Your jokes aren't funny, and Mr. Bean is a bore

### How To Say It:

No thanks, I'm not hungry  
Is there an Indian restaurant around?  
Are you a football fan?  
Do I look like a call girl?  
Humor in Britain is different from America.

### E. Rachel

The only place to meet a British man is in a pub, unless, of course, you happen to meet him in the streets on his way home from the pub. Don't think of a British pub the way you think of an American bar because they're worlds apart. Yes, both have beer, liquor and dirty old men, but Brits use their pubs as community gathering points. Many pubs even have swing sets and picnic tables out back so you can bring along the whole family. If you are primping for your date, you should probably ditch the evening gown because you're heading out for a night in the pub - probably the same pub you met him in because that's the only place he ever goes. And unless he mentioned something about Indian food, you should eat dinner before he arrives. The British aren't known for their scrumptious cuisine and pub food is no exception. The grease on an order of fish and chips turns the whole meal white if left sitting for any length of time. Baked beans and bangers (sausage) are nearly inedible and blood pudding is as miserable as it sounds. You can order the spotted dick for dessert, but you can guess where we recommend you shove it.

### F. Chris

You probably think proper British accents make people sound adorable and refined, but that's limited to London and what you've seen from Hollywood. Most dialects sound like people are fighting against a frog in their voice box to cough up a few words. Ah, and you should know some essential facts about British cities.

Belfast	You'll probably want to stay away	Liverpool	Gave birth to the Beatles.
Cambridge	If he mentions going to school here, he's one of the rare smart ones.	Windsor	If you really need to see a castle, the best is here.
Oxford	Clinton was in school here for a semester.	Stratford-on-Avon	Think Shakespeare.
Manchester	Ooooh baby, David Beckham	Cardiff	Somewhere in Wales.
Dublin	Not as cool on St. Patrick's Day as NYC.	Edinburgh	Funny accents.
London	Where your flight probably arrives.	Glasgow	Even funnier accents.

### G. Susan

You might have to meet your date's mother - she is bound to be a major packrat. The country is flooded with antiques because ladies like her never throw anything away. The easiest way to win her over is to ask questions about her furniture. She'll launch into a ten hour spiel about how the coffee table belonged to her grandmother's best friend's cousin, but through a series of deaths, she was able to get her hands on it. If you appear interested and refrain from interrupting, you're in. And speaking about British girls, if you want to picture a typical one, think Scary Spice, but not as good-looking. She's loud and opinionated and if you're competing for a boy, she's going to do her best to make your life miserable. If she calls you a slag, it's your cue to punch her. Ignore any strange phrase such as "Bob's your uncle" and "Taking the Mickey." It's all part of some silly humor that isn't worth an explanation.

### H. Linda

British men are insanely loyal when it comes to their local football (soccer) team. British football lunatics make headlines for beating the hell out of everyone and everything. They get so into the game that they start fights whether their team wins or loses. It's a little crazy, but you can manipulate his weakness for football to get rid of him. Hopefully you won't get injured in the process. Let's pretend, for example, that your British man is from Ipswich. An Ipswich man hates everything that has to do with their rival, the Norwich Canaries. Norwich's colors are yellow and green and they're sponsored by Coleman's mustard. The easiest way to get rid of him is to wear nothing but yellow and green. Within a day or two, he will start loathing you. His hatred may be a displaced subconscious thing or it may spawn from your refusal to change your clothes. If for some reason, he's completely oblivious to your wardrobe, paint yourself yellow and green and walk around with a stuffed canary on your shoulder and a jar of Coleman's in your purse. He'll be gone in no time.

**6. Look through the text again. Which of the opinions are stereotypes and which, if any, are accurate descriptions of British culture?**

## LISTENING



**7. Work in pairs. Read the beginning of the biography of T. E. Lawrence (Lawrence of Arabia). Write down everything else you know about him.**

Tomas Edward Lawrence (1888-1935) or, as he is more often called, Lawrence of Arabia, was one of the most adventurous, colorful European personalities to come out of the World War I. He began his career as an archaeologist, but in 1916 went to Saudi Arabia to lead a successful military operation against Turkey. It brought him fame and romantic reputation.

**8. Match the adjectives and nouns in column A with their synonyms, and the verbs with their antonyms in column B. Translate them.**

### ADJECTIVES

A	B	A	B
1. adventurous	A. separated	6. eventual	F. ordinary
2. keen	B. emotional	7. daring	G. frantic
3. scattered	C. dedicated	8. conventional	H. brave
4. passionate	D. risky	9. virtual	I. final
5. devoted	E. eager	10. desperate	J. practical

### NOUNS

A	B	A	B
1. intelligence	A. assumed name	9. warfare	I. resistance
2. benefit	B. subversion	10. defeat	J. glory
3. glory	C. associate	11. supply	K. martyr
4. uprising	D. partisan	12. cause	L. knowledge
5. pseudonym	E. reconnaissance	13. rebellion	M. failure
6. ally	F. fame	14. wisdom	N. affairs
7. guerrilla	G. revolt	15. fame	O. combat
8. sabotage	H. advantage	16. saint	P. freight

### VERBS

A	B	A	B
1. break out	A. abandon	8. plead	H. make uncertain
2. assign	B. capacitate	9. resign	I. be loyal to
3. weld	C. cease	10. betray	J. give up pursuit
4. succeed	D. finish suddenly	11. sabotage	K. cooperate
5. erupt	E. dismiss	12. enlist	L. resign



6. adopt  
7. cripple

F. disconnect  
G. fail

13. seek  
14. secure

M. leave unprotected  
N. enlist

**9. Now listen to the text about Thomas Edward Lawrence. For questions 1-38, complete the statements. Use 1-5 words for each gap. You will hear the recording twice.**

1. Thomas Edward Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (1) college in Wales or France.
2. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (2) keen interest in archaeology and languages, Thomas Edward Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (3) so successful during the war.
3. But for \_\_\_\_\_ (4) Arabic, Thomas Edward Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (5) to the British Army intelligence service.
4. In the early 1900s Arabs \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the Arabian Peninsula \_\_\_\_\_ (7) of the Ottoman Empire.
5. Before World War I the British leaders could \_\_\_\_\_ (8) to support an Arab rebellion against the Turks as they became during the war.
6. Though the Turks \_\_\_\_\_ (9) of the Arabian Peninsula, secret Arab societies did not \_\_\_\_\_ (10) uprising against the Turks.
7. The Arab revolt against the Turks \_\_\_\_\_ (11) T. E. Lawrence sent by the British government to Arabia.
8. T. E. Lawrence became popular among Arabs due to \_\_\_\_\_ (12) lifestyle.
9. T. E. Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (13) to the Arab cause if he \_\_\_\_\_ (14) alongside the Arabs.
10. Lawrence and his Arab comrades \_\_\_\_\_ (15) conventional-type warfare, but \_\_\_\_\_ (16) instead.
11. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (17) the sabotaging of the supply trains in Hejaz, the Turks \_\_\_\_\_ (18) defeated.
12. Though T.E. Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the Paris Peace Conference, the Arabs \_\_\_\_\_ (20) independence.
13. The Arabs \_\_\_\_\_ (21) the Turks just to pass to \_\_\_\_\_ (22) hands.
14. Had \_\_\_\_\_ (23) post-war British policy towards the Arabs, T. E. Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the Colonial Office.
15. T.E. Lawrence left the Colonial Office because he \_\_\_\_\_ (25) the feeling that he had betrayed his Arab friends.
16. Few people knew that in the early 1920s T. E. Lawrence enlisted in the \_\_\_\_\_ (26) and the British Tank Corps, because both times he \_\_\_\_\_ (27).
17. T. E. Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (28) famous book, *The Seven Pillars of Wisdom*, if it \_\_\_\_\_ (29) period of seclusion.
18. Though T.E. Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (30) battles during the war, he \_\_\_\_\_ (31) desert field of battle.
19. Few could have guessed that T.E. Lawrence's \_\_\_\_\_ (32) an end in the peaceful English countryside.
20. If T. E. Lawrence \_\_\_\_\_ (33), he \_\_\_\_\_ (34) in a road accident.
21. Because T. E. Lawrence was a very colourful personality, people \_\_\_\_\_ (35) opinion about him.
22. T. E. Lawrence's critics \_\_\_\_\_ (36) a courageous dedicated leader of men, while his admirers \_\_\_\_\_ (37) an ambitious, weak and confused man.
23. Whatever people may think about Lawrence of Arabia, they can't help \_\_\_\_\_ (38) unusual strange and complex Englishman, a living legend of the early 1900s.

## 10. Translate

Назви англійських графств часто асоціюються зі сталими словосполученнями, які давно стали невід'ємною частиною англійської мови. Деякі з таких словосполучень відносяться до продуктів харчування. Наприклад, відбивні котлети з цибулею та яблуками, запечені в тісті, називаються Девоншпрською запіканкою, а сорт твердого гострого сиру з синіми прожилками традиційно називають "Дорсетський синій". Особливий сорт помідорів має назву "Ессекське чудо", знаменитий в усьому світі пікантний соєвий соус є відомим як "Вустерський соус", а рідке прісне тісто, що запікається під шматком м'яса на рашпері, всотуючи м'ясний сок і розтоплений жир, знане під назвою "Йоркширський нудинг". Камберлейдська ковбаска - це довга, приправлена гострими спеціями ковбаска, яку скручують спіраллю перед приготуванням, а от страва, куди входять шматочки ягнятини та інші інгредієнти, покриті шаром картопляних скибочок, і запечені в духовці, відома під назвою "ланкаширське рагу".

Інша група сталих словосполучень відноситься до тварин. Скажімо, порода свиней чорної масті з білими плямами називається "беркширською", а інша порода - білої масті з чорними плямами - "Глостерська стара плямиста". Запряжна порода коней відома як "Клівлендська гніда", порода рудих коней-вагозовів, що

відзначається витривалістю - як "Суффолкський нузань", а щорічні перегони коней-трюхліток на іподромі Епсон Даунз поблизу Лондона називаються "Дербі". Порода курей м'ясо-яйцевого тину називається "Ряба суссекська", "Червона суссекська", "Руда суссекська", залежно від масті, а спеціально відгодована курка - "Суррейська м'ясна". "Гемпширська вівця" та "Уїлтширська рогата" - це породи м'ясошерстних овець з короткою шерстю. Чешпирський кіт, відомий персонаж "Аліси в країні чудес", став знаменитим, завдяки письменнику Льюїсу Керроллу.

Деякі графства асоціюються з людьми та відомими закладами. Так, Герцог Корнуельський - це ще один титул Принца Валлійського, найстаршого сина короля, який стає монархом після смерті батька. Назва титулу виникла з причини того, що Принц Валлійський володіє землею в графстві Корнволл. Ноттінгемський шериф став знаменитим завдяки легендам про Робін Гуда, де цей шериф - його найлютіший ворог. Місто Стратфорд-он-Ейвон, місце народження, діяльності та смерті Шекспіра, тісно пов'язане з ім'ям великого письменника, якого інколи називають Ейвонським бардом. Ледь почувши слова Кембриджшир та Оксфордшир, миттєво згадуєш назви знаменитих Оксфордського та Кембриджського університетів.

Назви інших графств походять від географічних об'єктів - річок, озер тощо. Наприклад, Лівернуль з навколишніми населеними нунктами по обидва боки гирла річки Мерсі називається Мерсисайдською конурбацією, Ньюкасл з навколишніми населеними нунктами по обидва боки гирла річки Тайн - Тайнсайдською конурбацією, а орнітологічні заповідники на сході Англії в районі озер - "Норфолк Бродз" або Норфолкські озера.

Назви деяких графств увіковічені в історичних пам'ятках Лондона та інших міст. Наприклад, резиденція англійських монархів має назву Букінгемський палац, а відома площа в Лондоні (Вест-Енд), де розташовані розважальні заклади - Лестер-Сквер. Понулярний серед туристів замок, будівництво якого почалося у XIV-му столітті в м. Уорвік, називається Уорвікський замок. Інші назви асоціюються з понулярними подіями або брендами, як наприклад, "Манчестер Юнайтед", один з провідних футбольних клубів Англії, або свято даремських шахтарів "Дарем Майнерз Гала", урочиста процесія з духовими оркестрами, яка організується Лейбористською партією в другу субота липня. Ще інші пов'язані з виробами, які продукують у конкретній місцевості, Скажімо, бавовняна тканина в рубчик називається "Бедфордський вельвет", сукно яскраво-зеленого кольору відоме як "лінкольн", а знаменита кераміка, що виробляється в м. Стоук-он-Трент або поблизу нього, - як Стаффордширська кераміка.

### DICTIONARY WORK

Work with a dictionary. Find in the dictionary the natives of the following places (e.g. London - Londoner): **Cork - Devon - Dundee - Lancaster - Isle of Man - Newcastle-upon-Tyne - Orkney - Oxford - Cambridge - Wessex**. Make a list of their Ukrainian equivalents, too. See the explanation in the Addendum first.

## PART 3

Picture 3

### ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 2



### STATIONARY PREPOSITIONS - II

on at in; by near beside next to against; inside outside

#### 1. Read Episode 2 and complete Tables 3 and 4.

#### EPISODE 2

#### PART I

The king heard the news that the princess had been missing *on* (1) his cellular phone (he had it *on* (2) him at all times) *on* (3) his farm, and then on the way home he saw headlines *in* (4) the newsagents' windows, heard it *on* (5) the radio and TV *on* (6) his customized van. On the way he had lunch *at* (7) a small town *on* (8) the coast *by* (9) the sea. *At* (10) lunch he checked the items *on* (11) his list together with his secretary *beside* (12) him. Though formally he had been *on* (13) holiday, he actually had come there *on* (14) business. Sitting *in* (15) casual clothes *inside* (16) the restaurant - it would be unwise to sit *outside* (17) it *in* (18) such weather - he stared blankly as if trying to see something *in* (19) the mirror *on* (20) the opposite wall.

#### 2. Work in pairs. Each sentence below has at least one mistake. Correct the mistakes according to the content of Episode 2 (Part 1).

1. Somebody told the news to the king by his telephone.
2. The king always went around with his cellular phone, which he kept in a special box on his head.
3. He had never seen so many newspapers on the shop window.
4. The king kept hearing the news everywhere: at his farm, by the radio and TV and in his customised van.
5. On his way home the king stopped to have lunch in a small town at the coast on the sea.
6. By lunch his secretary was sitting at him, and they looked through all the things in the list.
7. The king was not at work because he was at holiday at that time, but he went to his farm by business.
8. The king was not sitting out the restaurant as it was raining.
9. At the weather like that it was wise to sit at the restaurant - it was raining.
10. Inside the mirror at the wall he saw his own reflection: a tired old man inside casual clothes.

Table 3

Place	Prepositions	On	At	In
1. Having two dimensions (a plane)				
2. Having three dimensions (a space)				
3. General area rather than a precise position				
4. Institutions attended regularly.				
5. Countries, towns, districts.				

6. Towns when regarded as a point on the map (on the way somewhere)			
7. Address with a house number			
8. Address without a house number			
9. Transport: uncovered or regarded as having two dimensions			
10. Public happenings			
11. Media (TV, radio, phone etc.)			
12. Body (in a pocket etc )			
13. List, timetable etc			
14. Activity: work - not work			
15. Bank (of the river etc ), coast			
16. Shop window, mirror etc.			
17. Clothes, books, films, business			
18. Light, dark, weather			
19. Meals			
20. Distance			

Table 4

Prepositions	By	Near	Beside	Next to	Against	Inside	Outside
Place							
1. Not far							
2. On the side							
3. On the same line							
4. On the other side							
5. Covered							
6. Touching							
7. Out of							
8. Sea, lake etc.							
9. Run past							

**3. Study the sentences in Episode 2. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with the examples from Episode 2.**

| \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ beside \_\_\_\_\_ inside \_\_\_\_\_ outside \_\_\_\_\_

**When we want to indicate:**

- the position on a list, timetable etc, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the medium (phone, radio, TV etc.), we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something small is on someone's body, like in a pocket, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the general area rather than a precise position on a two-dimension plane, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position on a particular kind of transport without emphasizing the reference to the interior, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position on the bank of the river etc, or the coast of the ocean or the sea, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the activity, especially whether you are working or not, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position on a two-dimension plane, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something is seen in a (shop)window or a mirror, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position close to the water (sea, lake, river etc.), we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position while having a meal, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position which is close to, on the side and (maybe) on the same line, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position in a three-dimension space with walls and a cover above, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position out of the room etc., but not very far from it, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position under certain climatic conditions, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that somebody wears certain types of clothes, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- When we think of a place (town) as having two dimensions (e.g. as a point on a map on the way somewhere), we use \_\_\_\_\_

**4. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Episode 2.**

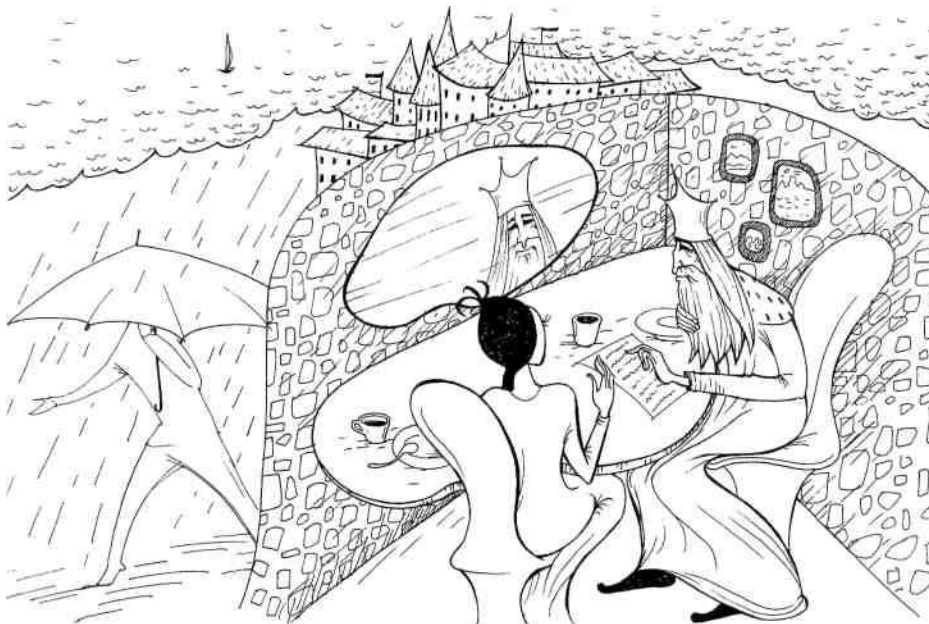
1. \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ beside \_\_\_\_\_ inside \_\_\_\_\_ outside

1. The king wanted to buy the newspaper he saw \_\_\_\_\_ the newsagent's window but had no money \_\_\_\_\_ him.
2. The king wanted to talk to his Minister \_\_\_\_\_ the phone, but the Minister was \_\_\_\_\_ leave.
3. The king liked to watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ his customized van.
4. On the way the king wanted to have breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ a village \_\_\_\_\_ the bank of the river, but the restaurant staff was \_\_\_\_\_ strike.
5. The secretary was sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the king checking the items \_\_\_\_\_ the list.
6. Because the king was \_\_\_\_\_ holiday, he was \_\_\_\_\_ an informal suit, but if he had come \_\_\_\_\_ business, he would have been \_\_\_\_\_ a formal suit.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ good weather the king would sit \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant, but \_\_\_\_\_ bad weather he would prefer to be \_\_\_\_\_ it.

**5. Complete the following sentences, using Picture 3 at the beginning of Lesson 2, Part 3.**

1. The king has a phone \_\_\_\_\_ his right hand.
2. The king has a tennis ball \_\_\_\_\_ his left palm.
3. The king is talking \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.
4. The king is \_\_\_\_\_ holiday. He is \_\_\_\_\_ his farm.
5. He came \_\_\_\_\_ business here.
6. The king sees newspaper headlines \_\_\_\_\_ the newsagents' windows.
7. The king listens to the news \_\_\_\_\_ the radio and TV \_\_\_\_\_ his customized van.

**6. Complete the following sentences, using Picture 4.**



Picture 4

1. The king has lunch \_\_\_\_\_ a town \_\_\_\_\_ the coast \_\_\_\_\_ the sea.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ lunch the king checks the items \_\_\_\_\_ the list.
3. The secretary is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ \ \_\_\_\_\_ \ \_\_\_\_\_ him.
4. The king is \_\_\_\_\_ casual clothes.
5. The king is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant.
6. The king does not want to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ such weather.
7. The king tries to find the answer \_\_\_\_\_ the mirror \_\_\_\_\_ the opposite wall.

**7. Read Part 2 and go on completing Tables 3 and 4.**

**PART 2**

There was real helter-skelter *at* (21) the castle when the king arrived. Soon he was sitting *in* (22) his office *at* (23) a long table with his secretary *next to* (24) him. *Outside* (25) the heavy door, *in* (26) the corridor, *in* (27) the bright light of the lamps, the people who had been *on* (28) duty were waiting to be called *inside* (29). Some of them were sitting *on* (30) two sofas *beside* (31) the door, others were leaning *against* (32) the wall *at* (33) a distance. *Inside* (34) the room the king was talking to his Minister, who was sitting *by* (35) him.

**8. Work in pairs. Are the sentences below true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 2 and Tables 3 and 4.**

1. When the king arrived, he found a real helter-skelter in the castle, but everything was calm in the yard.
2. The king's secretary was sitting near him next to a long table.
3. The people who had not been at holiday were waiting next to the door to be called in.
4. Some people who had been in duty the previous day were leaning on the wall in a distance.
5. The king and his minister, who was sitting next to him, were both under the bright light of the lamps.
6. The king was sitting in, on one side of the door, and the people were out, on the other side.
7. The two sofas, the people were sitting by, were next to the heavy door.
8. By dinner the king wanted to have a good meal and to check everything in his list of the things he had planned to do.
9. He wanted to have his dinner out, at the bank next to the lake.
10. While travelling in his customized van, the king liked to talk by his cellular phone, leaning on the leather cushions of his seat.

**9. Study the sentences in Part 2. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with the examples from Part 2.**

at    next to    outside    in    inside    on    against    beside    by

**More examples on:**

- the activity especially whether you are working or not. We use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position on a two-dimension plane. We use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position which is close to and on the side of an object. We use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position in a three-dimension space with walls and a cover above. We use \_\_\_\_\_

**When we want to indicate:**

- a general area rather than a precise position on a two-dimension plane, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position in a three - dimension space, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position which is close to, on the side and (maybe) on the same line, we use \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_
- the position "out of and "on the other side" (of the door, wall etc.), we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something is so close to an object that it is touching it, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something is away from an object, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something/somebody is in the light, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**10. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Part 2**

at    next to    outside    in    inside    on    against    by    beside

1. The king hardly knew everybody who worked \_\_\_\_\_ the castle: there were hundreds of people both \_\_\_\_\_ the castle and \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the dining room the king used to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the dining table alone. He did not want anybody sitting \_\_\_\_\_ him.
3. The king did not want to sit outside \_\_\_\_\_ the rain, so he went \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The guards who had been \_\_\_\_\_ duty were waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a distance some people were pushing \_\_\_\_\_ the wall as if trying to ruin it.
6. "Come and sit \_\_\_\_\_ me," said the king to the minister.
7. The people \_\_\_\_\_ the corridor were sitting \_\_\_\_\_ a sofa \_\_\_\_\_ each other.

**11. Complete the following sentences, using Pictures 5 and 6.**

- Six people are \_\_\_\_\_ the corridor. They are \_\_\_\_\_ the office.
- Four are waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the office door.
- Two of them are sitting \_\_\_\_\_ \ \_\_\_\_\_ each other \_\_\_\_\_ the sofa \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
- Only four are sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the bright light of the lamps.
- All of them were \_\_\_\_\_ duty \_\_\_\_\_ the castle when the princess disappeared. They were waiting to be called \_\_\_\_\_ the office.
- Two people are leaning \_\_\_\_\_ the wall \_\_\_\_\_ a distance from the other four.





Picture 5

The king is sitting \_\_\_\_ his office. He is \_\_\_\_ the office.  
 The secretary and the minister are standing \_\_\_\_\_ \ \_\_\_\_\_ the king.



Picture 6

## 12. Read Part 3 and go on completing Tables 3 and 4.

### PART3

"This Fond," said the king, "you say, he's the best *in* (36) the country?" "Yes," answered the Minister, "he's the best *in* (37) this business. We were *at* (38) the same college so I know him well. By the way, I met him *at* (39) a party the other day." "Does he live *near* (40) here?" "Actually, he lives in the States. *In* (41) Cincinnati, *in* (42) Elm Street, *at* (43) 124 Elm Street, to be precise. A railroad runs right *by* (44) his house. But he's in Britain now, and since his grandmother lives here, he..." "Do whatever you want but I expect Mr. Fond *at* (45) dinner tonight," concluded the king. "Yes, your Majesty," answered the minister, who was already standing *by* (46) the door *in* (47) the dark.



**13. Work in pairs to find the mistakes in the following sentences. Correct them. Explain why.**

1. The minister thought that Fond was the best at his trade inside the world.
2. Fond got used to the noise because of the railroad that ran next to his house.
3. The minister rang the bell. There was no light so he had to wait beside the door inside the complete darkness.
4. The minister remembered that Fond used to live outside Cincinnati.
5. The minister clearly remembered Fond's house in 124 Elm Street.
6. The king wondered whether Fond lived by here or outside the country.
7. The minister recalled that he had seen Fond on a party a few days before.
8. The minister knew Fond well because they had been in the same college once.
9. The king wanted to see Fond so he told the minister that he expected Mr. Fond on dinner.
10. The king had never met Fond on parties or on dinners because the king seldom went outside.

**14. Study the sentences in Part 3. Complete the following rules with the prepositions in the box. Illustrate each point with the examples from Part 3.**

| in at near by  
|

**More examples on:**

the position while having a meal. We use \_\_\_\_\_

the position close to and on the side of an object. We use \_\_\_\_\_

the position in (or out of) the light, rain etc. We use \_\_\_\_\_

**When we want to indicate:** a general area rather than a precise position in a country, town or street (without a house number), we use

the position within a certain type of business, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the position at an institution attended regularly, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the position at a public happening, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the general idea of "not far", we use \_\_\_\_\_

an address with a house number, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the idea of something running past something, we use \_\_\_\_\_

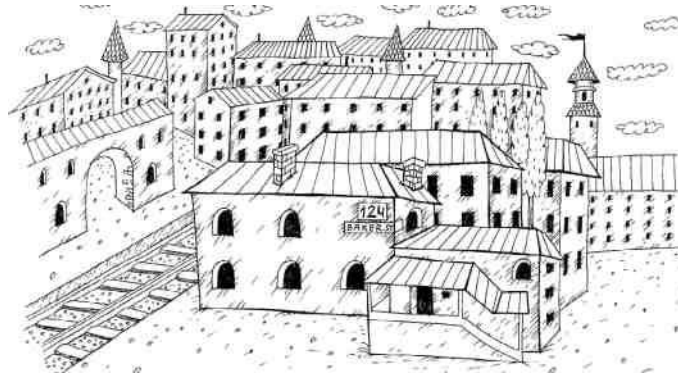
**15. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Part 3.**

| \_\_\_\_\_ in at near by on  
|

1. The minister told the king that there was not a better detective \_\_\_\_\_ the USA than Mr. Fond because there was not anyone better \_\_\_\_\_ his trade.
2. The minister did not have to get acquainted with Mr. Fond because they had studied together \_\_\_\_\_ the same college.
3. The minister had been to Mr. Fond 's house because he knew that a railroad ran \_\_\_\_\_ his house.
4. The minister knew that Mr. Fond lived \_\_\_\_\_ Cincinnati \_\_\_\_\_ Elm Street.
5. The king met his Prime Minister (who was \_\_\_\_\_ leave) \_\_\_\_\_ a party \_\_\_\_\_ 10 Browning Street \_\_\_\_\_ Pencader City.
6. The minister was in a hurry standing \_\_\_\_\_ the door because the king had expected Mr. Fond \_\_\_\_\_ dinner and there was not much time left.
7. The secretary had forgotten her glasses so she could not see the minister very well because he was standing the dark.

16. Complete the following sentences, using Pictures 7, 8 and 9.

Picture 7



1. Fond lives \_\_\_\_\_ Cincinnati \_\_\_\_\_ 124 Elm Street. 2. His house is \_\_\_\_\_ Elm Street. 3. His house is \_\_\_\_\_ the railway. 4. The railway runs \_\_\_\_\_ his house. 5. Fond is the best \_\_\_\_\_ the country \_\_\_\_\_ his business.

P



Picture 8

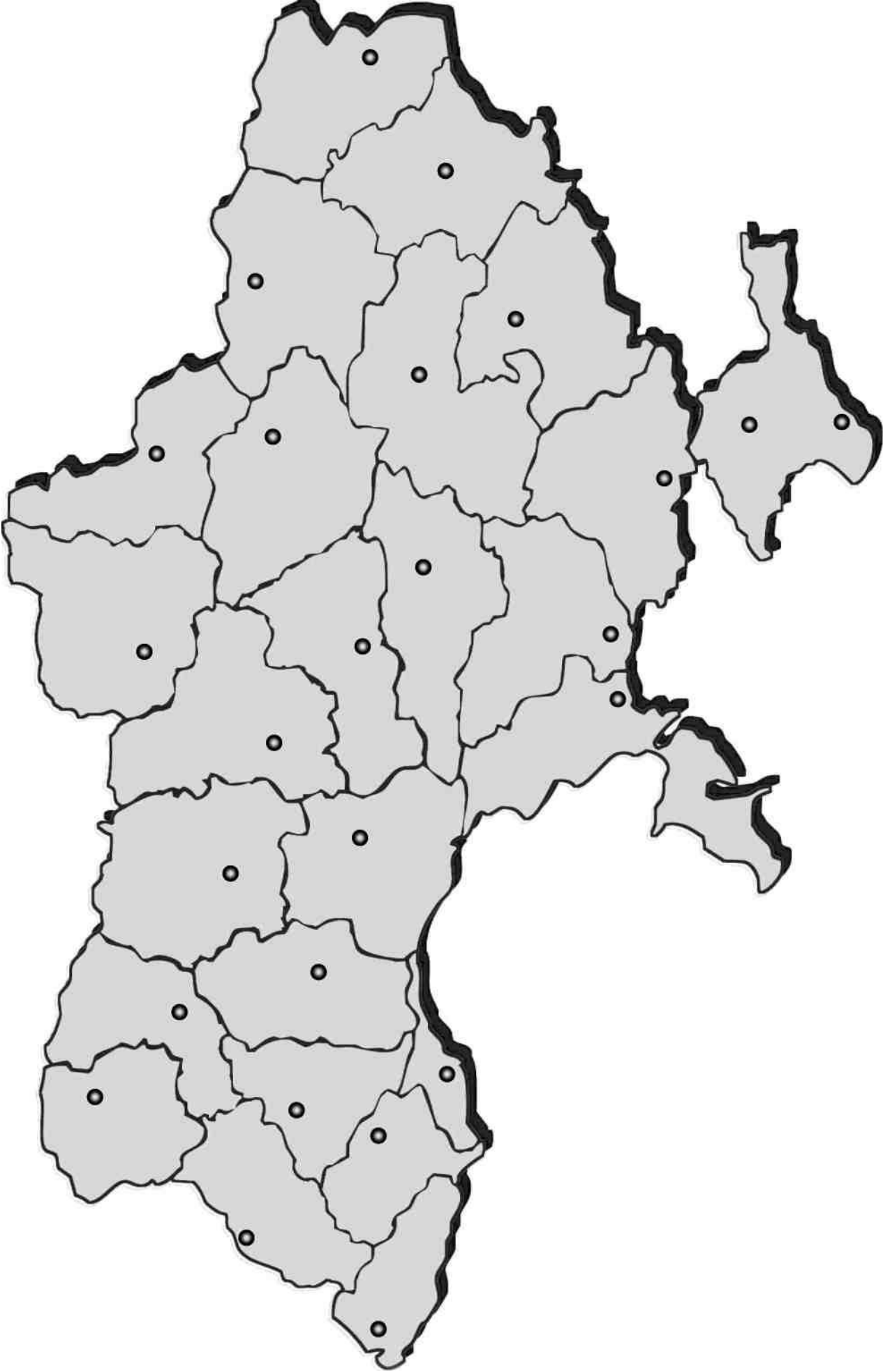
1. Fond and the minister are young. They are college students. They are not \_\_\_\_\_ home now. They are \_\_\_\_\_ college.  
 2. Their friend is a policeman. He is \_\_\_\_\_ the college now. He came here \_\_\_\_\_ business.  
 3. The minister and Fond are \_\_\_\_\_ a party.  
 4. Fond is standing \_\_\_\_\_ the door \_\_\_\_\_ the dark.  
 5. The minister is standing \_\_\_\_\_ the light.

17. Work in pairs. Reproduce Episode 2. Use the clues below.

- (a) **Part 1. You are the king.** 1. King - news: phone (always) - farm, headlines - windows, radio \ TV - van. 2. On the way: lunch - town - coast - sea. 3. Lunch - check - list - items - secretary. 4. Holiday - business. 5. Sit - casual clothes - weather - restaurant - mirror - wall.
- (b) **Part 2. You are the secretary.** 6. Helter-skelter - castle. 7. King - office - table - secretary. 8. Door - corridor - light - people - duty - wait - be called. 9. Some - sit - bench - door - others - lean - wall - distance. 10. Room - king - talk - minister - sit.
- (c) **Part 3. You are the minister.** 11. Fond - best - world. 12. Minister: Fond - best - business. We - same college - know well. I - met - party. 13. Fond - live - here? 14. Cincinnati - Elm Street - 124 Elm Street - railroad - run - house. 15. King: do - want - dinner - tonight. 16. minister: Yes - stand - door - dark.

18. Write your own story (200 words). Use as many prepositions from Episode 2 as possible.





## LESSON 3 PART 1. EUROPEAN

### CROSSROADS

James keeps playing with Lappy. Below is Lappy's task. Help James do it.



A. How many regions (*oblasts*) are there in Ukraine? Write down the names of the regions on the skeleton map of Ukraine on the previous page. Choose from the list of the regional capitals below.

Cherkasy	Ivano-Frankivsk	Kyiv	Odesa	Ternopil
Chernihiv	Kharkiv	Luhansk	Poltava	Uzhgorod
Chernivtsi	Kherson	Lutsk	Rivne	Vinnytsya
Dnipropetrovsk	Khmelnyskyi	Lviv	Simpheropol	Zaporizhya
Donetsk	Kirovohrad	Mykolayiv	Sumy	Zhytomyr

B. Some regions have special names that are different from the names of their capitals. Match the names of the regions below with their capitals in exercise 1.

Podniprovyia, Zakarpattia, Donbas, Slobozhanshchyna, Sivershchyna, Polissya, Podillya, Volyn, Bukovyna, Prychornomorria, Halychyna, the Crimea.

C. Like in many other countries, there are unofficial geographic regions in Ukraine. Distribute the *oblasts* in exercise 1 among the five regions below. Are there any differences between the regions?

**Center:**

**North:**

**South:**

**East:**

**West:**

\*\*\*

1. For questions 1-6 you must choose which of the paragraphs A-G fits into the numbered gaps in the following text. There is one extra paragraph, which does not fit into any of the gaps.

A Black Sea and the Baltic. More than 40 percent of Ukraine's water supply comes directly from the Carpathians.

B nature reserves and more than 100 wildlife refuges. Ukraine has more than 200 species offish, including pike, carp, and sturgeon.

C Azov-Black Sea Basin. Ukraine also has more than 3,000 natural lakes and about 22,000 artificial reservoirs. Many sources of mineral water and "medicinal mud" are used to treat many diseases.

D Danube River provides an outlet for Ukrainian trade with the Balkans, Austria, and Germany.

E Shatsk Lakes that form part of the Shatskyi National Nature Park (in Polissya, Volyn Oblast) are among them.

F Poland on the west. Ukraine occupies an area of 233,100 square miles (603,700 square km) and its population was 47,5 mln in 2005.

G southern Crimean coast enjoys Mediterranean weather

Ukraine is a country in southeastern Europe, the second largest on the continent after Russia, and one of the most populous in Europe. Ukraine is bordered by Belarus on the north, by Russia on the north, northeast, and east, by the Sea of Azov and the Black Sea on the south, by Moldova and Romania on the southwest, and by Hungary, Slovakia, and \_\_\_\_\_

Ukraine lies in a temperate climatic zone. The climate here is similar to the wheat-producing regions of Canada. It is characterized by abundant precipitation (16 to 24 inches or 400 to 600 mm annually) and cloudy skies, especially in fall and winter. The mean temperature in summer is 67 °F (19 °C) and in winter 21 °F (-6 °C). Although the summers tend to be short, the temperature can rise into the 90's making it uncomfortable, since most buildings have no central cooling systems. The winters can be long and cold, with cloudy skies a norm. The

Ukraine occupies a large portion of the East European Plain. It has a complex geology with a rich variety of scenery and impressive contrasts in topography. Plains, with fertile black soil exceptionally well-suited for grain farming, dominate the landscape with mountainous areas accounting for only five percent of the country: the Carpathian Mountains are in the west and there are low mountains in the Crimean Peninsula. The Carpathian Mountains are the backbone of Central and Eastern Europe, stretching across seven countries, and forming the bridge between Europe's northern forests and those to the south and west, as well as being a vital catchment area for the whole region. The area receives twice the rainfall of surrounding areas, and it is this freshwater that feeds the major rivers - the Danube and the Vistula - flowing to the \_\_\_\_\_.

The Dnipro (Dnieper), about 980 km (610 miles) in length, Ukraine's longest and Europe's third largest river, flows through the country's central part and forms its main river network. More than half of Ukraine's rivers belong to this system. The Dnipro is extensively dammed along much of its course for hydroelectric and irrigation purposes. Other major rivers are the Dniester, the Bug, and the Southern Bug, all draining southward through the plains to empty into the \_\_\_\_\_.

The vast water supply in the forest-steppe areas supports vast grasslands and mature forest, and in them, 45,000 species of animals. Wildlife such as elk, deer, wild boars, brown bears, wolves and birds such as vultures, steppe eagles and herons are found throughout the country. Beaver, lynx, elk, and muskrats are protected in \_\_\_\_\_.

Ukraine has a good geographical position for trade. The Dnipro with its many tributaries unifies central Ukraine economically, connecting the Baltic coast countries with the Black Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. The mouth of the

**2. Look through the text again. Write out the words related to the following categories:**

- **The countries and seas that Ukraine is bordered by** - Belarus,
- **The territory of Ukraine** -
- **The population of Ukraine** -
- **The climate of Ukraine** - temperate climatic zone,
- **The relief of Ukraine** - occupies a large portion of the East European Plain,
- **The waterways of Ukraine** - the Carpathians - over 40 % of Ukraine's water supply,
- **The wildlife of Ukraine** - grasslands,
- **The geographical position of Ukraine** - Dnipro and tributaries unifies central Ukraine economically,

**3. For questions 1-21, read the text below and then decide which word in the table under the text best fits each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).**

**Example**

I 0 I

A

I

Ukraine has a \_\_\_\_\_ (0) agriculture. The belt of mixed forest and steppe \_\_\_\_\_ (1) west-east across central Ukraine has \_\_\_\_\_ (2) black soils whose intense \_\_\_\_\_ (3) has made the country a \_\_\_\_\_ south- \_\_\_\_\_ (4) producer of winter wheat and sugar beets. Other \_\_\_\_\_ (5) include sunflower seeds, corn (maize), potatoes, grapes, oats, rye, millet, and buckwheat. Fruits and vegetables are \_\_\_\_\_ (6) on the outskirts of cities, and cattle and pigs are \_\_\_\_\_ (7) throughout the country.

Ukraine is also a major industrial country rich in \_\_\_\_\_ (8) resources. In the east is the industrial heartland \_\_\_\_\_ (9) large reserves of mineral \_\_\_\_\_ (10) known as the Donetsk Basin. Here there are rich reserves of iron ore, bituminous and anthracite coals, manganese-bearing ores, nickel and uranium located in close \_\_\_\_\_ (11) to each other. The \_\_\_\_\_ (12) east-central region is the industrial \_\_\_\_\_ (13) of the country and one of the major heavy-industrial and mining-metallurgical complexes of Europe. Ukraine also \_\_\_\_\_ (14) natural gas and petroleum, though reserves of these fuels were much \_\_\_\_\_ (15) during the Soviet period. Besides its \_\_\_\_\_ (16) mining industries, Ukraine has ferrous-metals industries that produce iron and steel in large \_\_\_\_\_ (17). Durable goods manufactured include mining and metallurgical \_\_\_\_\_ (18), automobiles and tractors. The chemical \_\_\_\_\_ (19) industry produces large \_\_\_\_\_ (19) of sulfuric acid and mineral fertilizers.

\_\_\_\_\_ (20) a wide \_\_\_\_\_ (21) of all kinds of food of good quality.

#### 0 A developed

- |                  |                |                  |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1 A lengthening  | B matured      | D grown D        |
| 2 A abundant     | B elongating   | broadening D     |
| 3 A agronomy     | B rich         | ample D          |
| 4 A dominant     | B horticulture | cultivation D y  |
| 5 A harvest      | B senior       | major D yield D  |
| 6 A grown        | B crops        | raised D h       |
| 7 A brought up   | B matured      | cultivated D     |
| 8 A physical     | B raised       | natural D        |
| 9 A holding      | B tangible     | including D      |
| 10 A residues    | B involving    | slags D g        |
| 11 A concurrence | B deposits     | proximity D s    |
| 12 A complete    | B immediacy    | entire D         |
| 13 A heartland   | B continuous   | backland D       |
| 14 A creates     | B upland       | generates D      |
| 15 A spent       | B manufactures | wasted D root D  |
| 16 A necessary   | B expended     | quantities D     |
| 17 A profusion   | B basic        | apparatus D ary  |
| 18 A equipment   | B excess       | outlays D afford |
| 19 A measures    | B stores       | D spectrum       |
| 20 A yield       | B amounts      |                  |
| 21 A scale       | B grant        |                  |
|                  | B sweep        |                  |
|                  | C compass      |                  |

**It is either grammatically  
find this word. Some lines**

**4. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one unnecessary word. incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-15, may be correct. The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).**

#### Example

0 tiny  
00

- 0 Soviet policies of raising industrial and agricultural productivity with little tiny regard to  
0 ecological considerations have had a devastating effect on the environment of Ukraine.  
1 Air pollution is especially severed in such industrial centers as Zaporizhzhya, Luhansk,  
2 and Donetsk. Industrial and agricultural pollutants have contaminating soil in the south  
3 and drinking water throughout over the country. Ukraine lacks funds for recycling and  
4 conservatory programs, and pollution controls remain at a minimum. On the one hand, the  
5 opening up of Ukrainian society has encouraged the formation of numerous  
6 environmental organizations and a flowering of environmental awarment among the  
7 general public. Environmentorial crimes of the Soviet past have come to light and have  
8 being replaced by more environmentally-friendly legislation and regulation. On the other

9 hand, a boom in car ownership after independence has added to air pollution. Above the  
 10 last years, steps have been taken to conserve the forests of the Carpathians and in 1992  
 11 the Carpathian Biosphere Reserve was established. Other Biosphere Reserves is the  
 12 Askania Nova Biosphere Reserve, the Black Sea Biosphere Reservoir and the Dunaïskyi  
 13 Biosphere Reserve. There are sixteenth Natural Reserves and eleven National Parks. The  
 14 Shatsk Lakes that forms part of the Shatskyi National Nature Park (in Polissya, Volyn  
 15 Oblast) are between them.



**5. Look through the text above and find the synonyms of the following words and word combinations.**

1. efficiency; 2. without paying much attention; 3. consequences; 4. damaging; 5. extreme; 6. impurifying agent;  
 7. pollute; 8. be short of; 9. restoration; 10. preservation; 11. restrictions; 12. advance; 13. consciousness; 14.  
 surrounding; 15. get into focus; 16. substitute; 17. laws; 18. rules; 19. burst of growth; 20. possession; 21.  
 protected area.

**6. Complete the following sentences with the words you have found in Activity 5.**

1. The problem was whether the unknown bacteria in the aliens' spaceship would \_\_\_ the local ecologi  
 cal system. 2. The new approach has already had a remarkable effect \_\_\_\_\_ the standard of the students'  
 language acquisition. 3. Wildlife enthusiasts would certainly like to visit the nature \_\_\_\_\_ islands situated  
 nearby. 4. The managers can always shift resources into areas of higher \_\_\_\_\_ and yield. 5. The pictures sent  
 back to earth from the satellite contained some important \_\_\_\_\_ information. 6. The compromise between  
 public and private \_\_\_\_\_ did not seem to be likely at all. 7. The measures will remain in effect until the end  
 of the year, the same period as wage \_\_\_\_\_ introduced at the weekend. 8. It takes a short time to get used to  
 taking glass, metals and paper for \_\_\_\_\_. 9. Those kinds of programmes, carried out in cooperation with the  
 Environmental Department, include the development of environmental \_\_\_\_\_. 10. The housing \_\_\_\_\_ that  
 started more than five years ago continues with no end in sight - people keep buying real estate like crazy. 11. For  
 her, at the age of 85, it would be a \_\_\_\_\_ blow to lose her television and her virtual world of comfort. 12. The  
 Board of Directors did not reply, and for the General Manager economic \_\_\_\_\_ remained most important.  
 13. Under the new \_\_\_\_\_, students' representatives with the power to vote would be included into academic  
 management structures. 14. Even those that manage to get through the exam are given a \_\_\_\_\_ check and  
 often produce poor results. 15. Some experts argue that students faced with inability to pay for their tuition have  
 a right under international \_\_\_\_\_ to get long-term bank loans. 16. There has been some progress in nature  
 \_\_\_\_\_ after the storm - its devastating effect has prompted a number of fundamental questioning. 17. Many



believe that we now live in an intellectual wasteland where creativity is \_\_\_\_\_ by the needs of the market place. 18. Many environmentalists blame the global warming on industrial \_\_\_\_\_ that lock the heat in the atmosphere. 19. This consideration did not \_\_\_\_\_ until after the graduation exams. 20. She \_\_\_\_\_ the knowledge to enrol into top universities, in fact - even any university at all. 21. The popularity of newly organised courses and the interest of the locals have \_\_\_\_\_ the university to expand.

### WRITING DESCRIBING PLACES (TOURIST LEAFLETS, BROCHURES ETC)

This is a semi-formal piece of writing in which advantages of visiting a particular area are described and highlighted. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) an introduction (paragraph 1) where you identify the area you are going to describe and explain your reasons for choosing it; (2) a main body (2 paragraphs) where you describe what people can see and do there; (3) a conclusion (paragraph 4) where you give a recommendation and/or describe your feelings and thoughts about the place.

#### Recommendations:

(1) Do not use very formal language; (2) Use polite and respectful language; (3) Use various adjectives and adverbs to make your essay more interesting; (4) Refer to the senses (sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch) to make your essay more vivid; (5) Use present tenses to describe the place; (6) Use first [if... / ... will] and second [if (past simple)... / ...would] conditionals to describe the ideal place.

#### Useful phrases:

To introduce the topic, name the area, its location and the reasons you have chosen it: *Set in ... it is a large/attractive/international... It is situated in... It is one of the biggest attractions in ... Every summer thousands of people...*

To describe the place, supply some information about the general look and specific details (sights, shops, **eating places**, night **clubs**, **facilities**): *There are several tourist attractions... The church is certainly worth visiting... It's a must... The places of interest range from \_\_\_ to \_\_\_... The area is also well-known for... The nightlife is exciting and varied...*

To introduce the conclusion, supply comments, feelings and/or recommendations: *It has something to offer to everyone... It is an exceptional place... You may get tired, but you'll never get bored... Whether you want to \_\_\_ or \_\_\_, this place is an ideal choice to \_\_\_*

To **use** senses: *Guests can be **watching** the sunset from the balcony... Guests can **hear** the murmur of the sea from their rooms... You **41** enjoy the **aroma** of the exotic flowers ...Have a glass of the **original local wine**... Enjoy the satin **touch** of the warm sea...*

**7. Read the model information sheet and match the headings (A-G) in the box with the paragraphs (1-6). There is one extra heading, which you do not have to use. When you finish, write the conclusive part of the leaflet with the help of useful phrases given above.**

- A. The Highest in Ukraine    B. The 700-year-old Castle    C. Europe's Longest and Largest  
D. Welcoming Culture    E. Millennium City    G. Cowboys and Hungarian Cuisine  
H. The Center of Europe

1. The Zakarpattya (Transcarpathian) region in southwestern Ukraine, the geographic center of Europe, has long been a crossroads for European traders and conquering armies. The land has been fought over since before the time of the Mongol invasions in the 13th century, but today this region boasts a unique ethnic diversity.

2. The regional capital, Uzhgorod, an ancient city of 125,000, is situated near the confluence of the Hungarian, Slovak and Ukrainian borders and was first mentioned in Hungarian chronicles in 872. The historic city center features a well-preserved 10th-century castle with two inner courtyards. Nearby Kafedrelny Sobor (Cathedral), formerly a Jesuit monastery and now a Ukrainian Catholic church dating from 1646, adds to the downtown's splendor.

3. Cross the Uzh River on a pedestrian footbridge and walk along Europe's longest linden-lined river embankment, Naberezhna Nezalezhnosti, which lies on the north side of the water. From there head to the Cross - the intersection of Voloshna and Corso Streets - near which is a major international bazaar called the Corso. At the eastern (upriver) end of the same embankment are the University Botanical Gardens, with the castle and cathedral close by. Also in the neighborhood is the Museum of Folk Architecture and Folkways. Uzhansky National Park is part of a UNESCO-supported project helping protect Europe's largest stand of beech forest and other plant and wildlife.



4. Mukachevo, the second-largest city in the region, lies 40 km from the Hungarian border, but also boasts a long history, with a complex ethnic makeup. Situated on the Latorytsya River, this town of 90,000 features the 14th-century Palanok Castle, once the seat of Old Slavic, Hungarian and Transylvanian knights and now operating as a history museum. Also of note are St. Nicholas', a Ukrainian Baroque church and the 18th-century White Palace.

5. Aside from towns such as Rakhiv in eastern Zakarpattya, near which stands the marker denoting the geographic center of Europe, Zakarpattya region also boasts Mt. Hoverla, at 2,061 meters the highest peak in Ukraine, and Synevyr National Park, home to Synevyr Lake, one of Ukraine's few alpine lakes. Camping is encouraged, with many campgrounds catering to eager naturists.

6. *Kaktus*, a cowboy-themed restaurant in central Uzhgorod, tends to be popular thanks to its good Hungarian dishes, which have country and western names. Local bands often play in the restaurant, making it a good bet for live entertainment.

**8. Make leaflets to publicize the Black Sea region's resort towns below. Your target readers are students. Divide the texts into sections, make up an eye-catching headline for each of them. Adapt the style if necessary (you may substitute some formal words with informal ones etc).**



### **Foros**

Foros is Crimea's southernmost resort town, jutting out into the mind-blowingly blue local waters. The name translates from Greek as 'favourable wind'. Foros is always blessed with a nice breeze, bringing the scent of sun-drenched pines down off the stunning mountains, and the smell of salt up from the sea. The most striking thing in Foros is the Church of the Resurrection of Christ, a jewel of a building perched on a hill 412 meters above the sea. Take the winding road to the church and you'll see lovely mosaics and dizzy-making Black Sea views. Until 1969, the church was a snack bar for visiting tourists. Foros is also the site of the dacha where Mikhail Gorbachev, the first and the last Soviet president, was held under house arrest during the failed hard-line coup in 1991. Now it's an official residence of the Ukrainian president. It's right next to the lovely old Foros Lighthouse. You can't visit the latter, because it's an official strategic point, but it's worth driving around and checking out. Foros' Cape

Savych is Crimea's southernmost point. If you want to swim to Turkey, here's where to start from. It's only 263 kilometers to the north Turkish coast.

### **Dzharylgach**

This is cool: a wild and pristine barrier island off the south coast of mainland Ukraine, west of the northern end of Ctrirnea. No. it's not technically Ctrirnea, but being in Kherson oblast, it's close enough, and it's good. Dzharylgach is for campers. Sleep out on the lovely sand flats, listening to the movement of the fragrant air and the chitterings of the seagulls. If you believe the reports, wild horses and sheep can be found on the island - but to see them, you'll have to backpack into the island's interior. Dzharylgach is also for swimmers, because it's got nice beaches with soft yellow sand. Which, of course, sets it apart from Crimea, the narrow, rocky beaches of which are probably the worst thing about it. There's great diving off Dzharylgach, and try the roasted tiny fish available from the cafe near the boat landing.

### **Yevpatoria**

This sleepy sanatorium town has been settled for 25 centuries. Now it's a great place to visit not only if you want water, sun, and huge pale-blue summer skies, but also if you are enthused by the Black Sea region's ancient history - Tatar remnants rub up here against bits of the area's Greek, Roman and Russian imperial past. Yevpatoria was also a center for the Karaites, the Turkish people who accepted Judaism as their religion, and who made their sometimes ghostly mark around the peninsula. It's the Karaite traces that will perhaps be most compelling to amateur archeologists. You'll have to take a look at the Karaite temple, known as a kenas. There's an unearthly quiet here: grapevines hang from the ceiling, and water murmurs in delicate fountains. On the temple grounds you'll find Caraman, a cafe that serves Karaite cuisine. Try the nakhut-ashi, a soup made out of peas and mutton, or a pilaf of mutton and prunes.

## **9. Translate.**

Україна межує з Росією на півночі та сході, Білоруссю на півночі, Польщею, Угорщиною та Словаччиною на заході, Молдовою та Румунією на південному заході. На півдні Україна омивається Чорним та Азовським морями. Гирло Дунаю - це вікно для української торгівлі в Австрії та Німеччині, а по Чорному морю можна потрапити на Балкани і далі до Середземного моря. Дніпро, старовинний шлях від Балтійського до Чорного моря, економічно об'єднує центральну Україну. Україна розташована в помірній кліматичній зоні, відзначається значними опадами та переважно хмарним небом взимку, хоча на півдні є зона, для якої є характерною середземноморська погода.

Розташування на Східноєвропейській рівнині визначає переважний рельєф країни - лише на заході знаходимо гористу місцевість - Карпатські гори, хребет Східної та Центральної Європи, і її головна водозабірня площа, що має вдвічі більше опадів, порівняно з навколишніми районами та живить прісною водою річки усього регіону. Карпати простягаються через пів-Європи. Невисокі Кримські гори розташовані на Південному березі Криму, для якого є характерною складна геологія та вражаючі топографічні контрасти. Степова та лісостепова зони мають родючі чорноземи і є зерновими районами, бо сприятливі для вирощування зерна. Східні райони, особливо Донецький басейн, мають великі запаси корисних копалин, навколо яких концентрується промислове виробництво в таких центрах, як Донецьк, Луганськ, Запоріжжя. На заході (Полісся, Волинь) та на півдні є чимало національних парків та природних заповідників, що відзначаються розмаїттям мальовничої природи, зокрема Шацький національний природний парк, Карпатський біосферний заповідник, біосферний заповідник "Асканія Нова", Чорноморський біосферний заповідник та Дунайський біосферний заповідник. В природних заповідниках та заказниках дикої природи можна знайти як луки, так і дорослий ліс, а також різноманітні види тварин.

Водні шляхи України - це передусім загачений греблями по всьому руслі Дніпро з притоками, що утворює цілу мережу річок, а також Буг, Південний Буг, Дунай, Дністер, які усі течуть у південному напрямку і впадають в Чорноморсько-Азовський басейн. Крім них є багато природних озер та штучних резервуарів, джерел мінеральної води і лікувальних грязей.

Україна має розвинуте сільське господарство, що застосовує інтенсивну обробку родючих чорноземів. Внаслідок цього країна є потужним виробником рослинних культур, серед яких озима пшениця, жито, ірсо, овес, гречка, кукурудза, насіння соняшника, цукровий буряк. Населення також вирощує велику рогату худобу та свиней, навіть у передмісті.

Україна є також потужною промисловою державою з багатими запасами мінеральних покладів, таких як антрацитове вугілля, бітумінозне вугілля, залізна руда, марганцеві руди, нікель, уран тощо. Безпосередня наближеність сировини до переробних підприємств сприяла розвитку таких галузей, як гірничодобування, хімічна, пов'язана з чорними металами, харчова переробна, важка, металургійна та інші. Промислові центри країни, її індустріальне серце, розташоване на південному сході, де виробляють товари тривалого користування, добрива, паливо і бензин, залізо і сталь, металургійне та гірничодобувне устаткування, сір-

чану кислоту тощо. Україна мала значні запаси природного газу, але вони були значною мірою виснажені за радянських часів.

Високі темпи зростання промислової продукції, пов'язані зі зміною форм власності, спричинили підвищення продуктивності і збільшення обсягу винуску продукції, але одночасно створили низку проблем для довкілля - забруднення повітря та питної води, руйнівний вплив забруднювачів на здоров'я людей тощо. Широкі кола громадськості усвідомили необхідність захисту оточуючого середовища, створили організації захисників довкілля, які, в свою чергу, запропонували програми збереження природи, що ґрунтуються на екологічних міркуваннях, встановлюють контроль за забрудненням, переробкою відходів, а також звертають увагу на брак законодавчої бази, яка через відповідні постанови встановила б суворий контроль за введенням нових технологій, які не шкодять довкіллю.

## RENDERING UKRAINIAN PROPER NAMES INTO ENGLISH

**Using the Romanization Table adapted from I. V. Korunets, render the following Ukrainian names into English:** 1) Вишгород, Горлівка, Запоріжжя, Донецьк, Кагарлик, Житомир, Макіївка, Ніжин, Миколаїв, Чернівці; 2) Микола Гоголь, Михайло Коцюбинський, Григорій Сковорода, Олександр Довженко, Богдан Хмельницький, Олег Скрипка, Зіновій Мельник, Юрій Довгорукий, Володимир Великий, Ярослав Мудрий.

The Romanization System, adopted by the Verkhovna Rada, enables to convey personal names, family names and geographical names in accordance with some rules. It is to be strictly observed by the people responsible for its implementation in this country and abroad. This system is as follows:

ukr	roman	ukr	roman	ukr	roman	ukr	roman
Аа	Aa	Зз	Zz	Нн	Nn	Хх	Khkh
Бб	Bb	Ии	Yy	Оо	Oo	Цц	Tsts
Вв	V/v	Іі	Ii	Пп	Pp	Чч	Ch/Tch ch/tch
Тт	Hh	Її	Yi/Ii/yi/ii	Рр	Rr	Шш	Shsh
Гг	Gg	Йй	Yy	Сс	Ss	Щщ	Shch shch
Дд	Dd	Кк	Kk	Тт	Tt	Юю	Yuyu
Ее	Ee	Лл	Ll	Уу	Uu	Яя	Yaya
Єє	Ye ye	Мм	Mm	Фф	Ff	Ь	'
Жж	Zhzh						

### Examples:

/и/ as y: Бобрик **Bobryk**, Бровари **Brovary**, Микитенко **Mykytenko**

/ї/ as i or **yi**. After a vowel use i: Заїка **Zaika**, Українка **Ukrainka**; at the beginning of the word use **yi**:

їжакевич **Yizhakevych**.

/й/ as y (at the beginning of the word): Йосип **Yosyp**, as **ii** or **iy** (after /if): Андрій **Andrii/Andriy**; as **yi** (after

/и/): Горовий **Horovyi**, Гулий **Hulyi**.

/я/, /ю/, /є/ as **ya, yu, ye** (especially at the beginning of the word: Яким **Yakym**) or as **ia, iu, ie**: Забіяка **Zabiyaka/Zabiaka** (especially at the end of the word: Марія **Maria**, Югославія **Yugoslavia**, Малазія **Malasia**, but: Кенія **Kenya**

/ь/ as /7: Альвіна **APvina**, Луцьк **Luts'k**, Гринь **Hryn** \ Василь **VasyP**.

/т/ as /h/: Гаврило **Havrylo**, Григорій **Hryhir**, Нухлей Гакслі.

/г/ as /g/: Ґрунтовий **Gruntovy**

/х/ as / **kh** /: Хома **Khoma**, Химич **Khymych**, Харків **Kharkiv**.

/ж/ as /**zh** /: Жук **Zhuk**, Божій **Bozhiy**, Журавель, **ZhuraveP**.

/ч/ as /**ch**/ or /**tch**/: Ключко **Klochko/Klotchko**

/щ/ as /**shch**/: Щаденко **Shchadenko**, Безпощадний **Bezposhchadnyi**.

/в/ as /**v**/: Володимир **Volodymyr**, Вовчок **Vovchok**.

## PART 2

### NEITHER DAY NOR NIGHT

Read the following article on the population of Ukraine prepared by Lappy and answer questions 1-5. Choose the best one from options A, B, C or D. Give only one answer to each question.



1. The population of Ukraine is approximately 47,5 million, of which 73 % is Ukrainian and 22 % Russian. The remaining population is made up of many minorities, the largest of which is Jewish (1.35 %), followed by Byelorussians, Moldovans, Poles, Armenians, Greeks, Bulgarians, Tatars and others. Ukrainian population is only 64 % urban.

2. The official language, Ukrainian, is related to Polish, Slovak, Russian, Belarussian and belongs to the Slavic group of languages. The highest population densities are found in the industrialized Donetsk Basin and Dnipro Bend regions and in the agriculturally productive forest-steppe belt.

3. Most people in Ukraine belong to the Orthodox Christian religion. Other religions include Catholic, Protestant and Jewish faiths. A millennium of cultural development has created a wide spectrum of spiritual achievements. Splendid architectural landmarks, very rich folk art, music, a network of drama and music theatres, art schools, thousands of artists creating in all possible styles attest to a high level of cultural development despite all political and economic upheavals.

4. The youngest and smallest of Ukraine's 26 regions, Zakarpattya (Transcarpathian) borders four countries - Hungary, Romania, Slovakia and Poland - and is heavily influenced by them. An open and welcoming culture has developed there, where tourists are greeted with open arms and local brandy flows as freely as nearby mountain streams.

5. Second in number only to Ukrainians in Zakarpattya, ethnic Hungarians predominate over all other ethnic groups in the area. There are sizable presences of Slovaks, Romanians, Poles, Jews, Armenians, Carpatho-Russians and nearly 70 other ethnic groups. This mix can be heard in the language spoken on the streets of the historic regional capital, Uzhgorod, and also tasted in the local food. Hungarian words are as common on city streets here as *goulash* and *bograch* (a spicy soup) are on local menus.

The rural segment of Ukraine is made up of

- A many minorities
- B mostly Ukrainians
- C over one third of the entire population
- D half of urban population

Most of people in Ukraine live in

- A Donetsk Basin
- B Dnipro Bend regions
- C the forest-steppe belt
- D the most productive regions

- 3 The high level of cultural development in Ukraine is 4 Zakarpattia region has developed a specific culture because
- A connected with the Orthodox Christian religion A it is the youngest and smallest region in Ukraine  
 B connected with religious diversity C surprising B of international mix in the area  
 D natural C tourists like to be greeted with open arms  
 D there is a lot of cheap local brandy here

The ethnic composition of population in Zakarpattia is different from that of the entire Ukraine in A the amount of ethnic groups B the proportions of ethnic groups C the language mix of ethnic groups D the local cuisine

**2. Work in pairs. Is there such a thing as the "Ukrainian national character"? What might be the principal features of such character? How do you think the foreigners see Ukrainians?**

**3. Read the text below about a foreigner's experience of living in Ukraine. What is his general impression of the country? How do you know it?**



**Jorge Santiago, partner at Gingerhouse-Cooper Company in Kyiv:**

Ukrainians are very warm-hearted and kind. The way they open their doors to you is unbelievable, very different from the Anglo-Saxon model. They resemble South Americans and Latin cultures in Europe a lot. Ukrainians themselves are one of the things that Santiago loves most about his nine-year-long Eastern European stint. The other is the challenge that comes with living and doing business in this country. Santiago's life on the road since he was a kid allows him to draw good comparisons between cultures. "I am originally Ecuadorian, with a Spanish background. I studied and was raised mainly in the States; I moved there when I was a kid and then I was kind of commuting back and forth between South America and the U.S. So I grew up half and half."

His father was in construction, and moved the family a lot, jumping around to various building projects.

Kyiv became Santiago's destination in December of 1995. That was when, seeing Ukraine's economic potential, Gingerhouse asked him to transfer from Houston, Texas to Kyiv. With two partners, he was charged with setting up the company's taxation and legal consulting practice.

"It was my look-see trip to Ukraine. There were two problems with it. First, it was minus 30 degrees. They told me it was the worst winter in 30 or 50 years. Second, the garbage collectors were on strike, so the city was full of garbage, although I was told it's not usually that bad," he remembers with a smile.

"So I went for two years, but Ukraine has this unique feature that keeps on charming people, so instead of two years, now I am here close to ten years."

The main things to overcome were the language barrier and the alien culture. The transition was surprisingly difficult for the cosmopolitan Intriago. "I speak several languages, so in the past it was easy to move around, but this was the first time I couldn't do without a translator; it was a kind of a shock. At that time there was nothing in English, even the menus in the restaurants.

Ukraine's business environment was also somewhat unusual. "There is something in the culture here we don't have in other locations. It is '*mozhe buty*' (*maybe*) that's got a very special meaning here. Another one is '*vpryntsypitak*' (*yes, in principle*). It is neither day, nor night - there's always a foggy area somewhere. So for the business mind, it is very difficult to deal with." Once Santiago decided to prolong his stay, he learned the language, started meeting locals, some of whom became good friends. It was then that he "discovered Ukraine," as he puts it.

4. Work in pairs. Look through the text again and write out the words and word combinations according to the categories below.

Features of Ukrainians in general as seen by Santiago:

Features of Ukrainian business people:

Problems encountered by Santiago:

Steps taken by Santiago to solve the problems:

5. Work in pairs. Read the list of Ukrainians' and foreigners' reasons given in favour of staying in Ukraine or leaving it. Compare them. Can you see any difference? How can you explain them? Can you add anything to the lists?

### Best reasons to stay in Ukraine

#### Ukrainians

family  
friends  
culture  
Motherland  
no taxes  
mentality  
life is a challenge



#### Foreigners

#### Ukrainians

- making money
- poor country management
- bureaucrats
- too many beer-drunk teenagers
- to convince yourself that there is life outside Ukraine



great women  
architecture  
people  
culture  
traditions  
drinking on the streets



### Best reason to leave Ukraine

#### Foreigners

- too much snow
- > London
- No Dr. Pepper
- Line cutting
- to reconnect with the people and things you felt were important

6. Match the words, which describe character traits in A with their definitions below the table.

### Character features

conscientious gullible obstinate  
unscrupulous naive pig-headed

### Mode of behaviour

effusive excitable impetuous impulsive  
garrulous taciturn pushy

### Degree of sociability

extravert aloof conceited approachable  
introvert diffident flirt haughty  
modest disdainful reserved self-important



A. doing everything to get what one wants from other people - used to show disapproval; B. willing to believe in good things; C. unwilling to express one's emotions; D. prepared to behave in an unfair or dishonest way; E. quiet, shy and unwilling being with other people; F. doing things very quickly, without thinking first - negative characteristics; G. friendly and easy to talk to; H. very careful in doing one's duty; I. speaking little in an unfriendly way; J. showing disrespect because of thinking others are not good enough; K. easily tricked; L. unfriendly and incommunicable; M. behaving proudly and unfriendly; N. getting excited too easily; O. making permanent romantic approaches; P. behaving to show you are more important than others - used to show disapproval; Q. talking a lot

about unimportant things; R. thinking of himself as being the best - used to show disapproval; S. unwilling to talk about one's own achievements; T. unwilling to change ideas, etc even when others think they are unreasonable; U. showing one's good feelings very excitedly; V. active, confident and enjoying communicating with other people; W. doing things on an impulse - no negative implication; X. lacking self-confidence; Y. very stubborn - used to show disapproval.



## 7. Complete the sentences with the words from exercise 6.

1. The city hall officials were being \_\_\_\_\_ about giving the permission for a street march. 2. She became clearly \_\_\_\_\_ when the talk turned to herself. 3. Though she has a reputation of being \_\_\_\_\_, she is actually very cautious and lacks determination. 4. He is a real \_\_\_\_\_, who will talk to any stranger, while she is quiet and shy. 5. The guest started his speech with \_\_\_\_\_ praise for our university. 6. What do you do with \_\_\_\_\_ students who keep telling lies? 7. In spite of having shown the best result, she was too \_\_\_\_\_ to talk about it. 8. Unwilling to sound \_\_\_\_\_, he had to remind who the experts there were. 9. From a shy silent introvert, she suddenly turned into a \_\_\_\_\_ extrovert. 10. He was a man with icy eyes and a \_\_\_\_\_ mouth - a typical male chauvinist pig! 11. He is a hopeless \_\_\_\_\_ - never misses a single skirt! 12. Ann is an \_\_\_\_\_, hot-tempered woman. 13. David had a reputation of being \_\_\_\_\_ and difficult to talk to. 14. In spite of all her efforts, the students remained \_\_\_\_\_ behind the barrier of their books. 15. The customers were \_\_\_\_\_ enough to buy the faked products, but now someone should be responsible. 16. He was one of those \_\_\_\_\_ bureaucrats who made the customers come again and again. 17. No matter how hard he tried to make polite small talk, she seemed \_\_\_\_\_, if not moody. From a shy silent introvert, she suddenly turned into a \_\_\_\_\_ extrovert. 18. He has been very \_\_\_\_\_ in his 20 years' work for the company. 19. If any student happens to have any problems, the head teacher is always \_\_\_\_\_. 20. Don't be too \_\_\_\_\_, and don't put too much pressure to get what you want. 21. John is too much of an \_\_\_\_\_ to be a leader. 22. A few moments of hesitation were enough for the \_\_\_\_\_ lawyers to take advantage of the situation. 23. English people have a reputation for being very \_\_\_\_\_. 24. Is anyone in this room \_\_\_\_\_ enough to believe this? 25. It sounds \_\_\_\_\_, beginning every sentence with a verb like that.

## 8. Work in pairs. Which words from the box in exercise 6 may be used to describe stereotypes about Ukrainian, British and American characters?

## 9. Make a leaflet to publicize the Rivne oblast. Your target readers are foreigners. Divide the texts into sections, make up an eye-catching headline for each of them. Adapt the style if necessary (you may substitute some formal words with semi-formal ones etc). See the explanation about the structure and content of a leaflet in Part 1 of this Lesson.



Imagine thick, wild woods and swamps with vultures flying over them, hunting for carrion. Imagine having a late night dinner cooked over an open fire in the forest. Those tired of popular western destinations such as Lviv, Ivano-Frankivsk or the Carpathian Mountain areas should try Rivne oblast, a place which to tourists will feel like terra incognita. Rivnenshchyna, or Rivne oblast, some 300 km west of Kyiv, has around 70 percent of its territory covered with swamps and forests. Some of the villages in the northern part of the oblast cannot be even accessed by boat, and the only way to reach them is by trekking through the swamps, or by helicopter. It's not all swamp.

But it's not for travelers looking for posh accommodations either. In fact, with few good hotels or decent restaurants and virtually no nightlife, Rivne oblast often feels like a place lost in time. The oblast tourism authorities are unequivocal: "Love it, or don't stop!" - so reads the billboard at the entrance to the oblast. The slogan drives home a point. Those who care for at least relative comfort will pass Rivne on the way to other western Ukrainian resorts without stopping. Those who decide to give it a try and do stop will fall in love, or at least remember the rugged beauty of the region for a long time. Imagine riding a narrow-gauge railway built in a remote corner of the Rivne oblast back in 1939 to transport wood. Tile windows in their brown frames, the wooden benches, the locomotive powered by a tank engine - everything makes you feel like the clock has been turned back 50 years. As for the train, it joins the villages of Antonivka and Berizne and the entire trip "back in time" takes about four hours. You occasionally notice houses flying red Soviet-like flags over their roofs. But before you start feeling complete *deja vu*, a local resident will explain that red scares away the vultures who like to snatch chickens. The train's conductor, a tired-looking woman in her forties, says that Hr 4, the standard fare for the entire trip of more than 100 km, is often too expensive for local residents, who often ask her to ride for free. Given that most of those who ride the train are elderly pensioners going to the market, and entitled to a free ride anyway, it often happens that only three or four passengers actually pay tile fare. The railway, which is the longest narrow-gauge track in the country, along

with one rail car and the locomotive, can be rented out by tourist groups to the delight of the conductor. A recent such group from Holland, she says, simply rode the train back and forth for the entire day. Then stopped near one of the villages and took pictures of local residents riding on a horse cart. The train itself travels quite slowly, no faster than 30-40 kilometers per hour, and it crosses the only wooden railway bridge in Ukraine, built in 1906.

## 10. Translate

Населення України майже на три чверті складається з етнічних українців, хоча є досить значний прошарок росіян (близько однієї п'ятої), а також десятків інших національностей - вірмен, болгар, білорусів, карпатських русинів, греків, євреїв, поляків, молдаван, румун, татар тощо. При цьому етнічна структура є різною в різних обласних центрах - наприклад, в Ужгороді найбільшою національною меншиною є угорська, яка переважає усі інші. Частка міського населення не така значна, як у промислово розвинутих країнах Європи (трохи більше 60 %), а найбільша густота населення спостерігається в індустріальних східних та центральних районах, а також в продуктивних зонах лісостепу. Українська мова є слов'янською і споріднена з іншими мовами цієї групи, чий народи мають спільний кордон з Україною: польською, словацькою, білоруською, російською. Домінуючою релігією в Україні є православна християнська релігія, хоча тут мпрно співіснують десятки інших вірувань: католики, іудеї, протестанти тощо. Український народ протягом тисячоліть, незважаючи на часті політичні збурення, створив відкриту і гостинну культуру, про що засвідчують чудові архітектурні пам'ятки, багатогранне народне мистецтво, неперевершені духовні здобутки. Проте навіть космополітичним іноземним підприємцям, які працюють в Києві, нелегко дається перехід до нового середовища - чужа культура, мовний бар'єр, незвичне бізнесове довкілля, де багато непевних ділянок, а ситуація часто характеризується словами "ні те, ні се", складності оподаткування компаній та одержання кваліфікованих юридичних консультацій - все це вкупі з іншими чинниками, як наприклад, страйки прибирання сміття, створює значні проблеми вже під час ознайомчих поїздок до України.

Українці, як і будь-яка інша нація, мають певні стереотипні уявлення про самих себе та про інші народи. Британців часто уявляють стриманими, добросовісними, зосередженими на самих собі, неприступними, що байдуже тримаються осторонь, може навіть дещо пихатими, а то й презирливими та чванливими. Американців, навпаки, уявляють доступними, самовпевнено напористими, не схильними до зосередження на самих собі, зарозумілими, і навіть не надто розбірливими у засобах. Французи, в уявленнях пересічних українців, є експансивними, легко збудливими, балакучими, любителями позалицятися чи пококетувати, імпульсивними і навіть гарячкуватими, а норвежці - відлюдкуватими, недовірливими і скромними. Щодо самих себе, то багато українців є тут досить самокритичними - вони вважають самих себе, з одного боку, добросовісними, працьовитими, щиросердими і добрими, але, з іншого, - легковірними і навіть наївними, наполегливими, аж до по-дурному упертими.

Рівненська область є незнаною територією з незручним доступом, на відміну від звичних туристських маршрутів до Львова чи Івано-Франківська. Коли ви вирішили податися до Рівного, забудьте про розкішні апартаменти та гігантські рекламні щити зі звичними лозунгами. Та якщо вас приваблює справжнє "дежа вю", ось вам недвозначна порада: вирушайте до Рівного і ви потрапите в саме яблучко. Неквапливо проїдьте найдовшою в Україні вузькоколійкою в допотопному залізничному вагоні з провідником, у якого ніхто не бере квитки. Через старе вагонне вікно, обкладене кахлями, вам відкриється незаймана природа. Помилуйтеся яскраво-зеленими болотами, де люди гріються біля багаття, де лише зрідка трапляються підводи, бо ходити там можна лише пішки, а над болотами ширяють стерв'ятники, що виглядають мертвечиною. Для шанувальників справжньої грубої краси природи - це саме те.

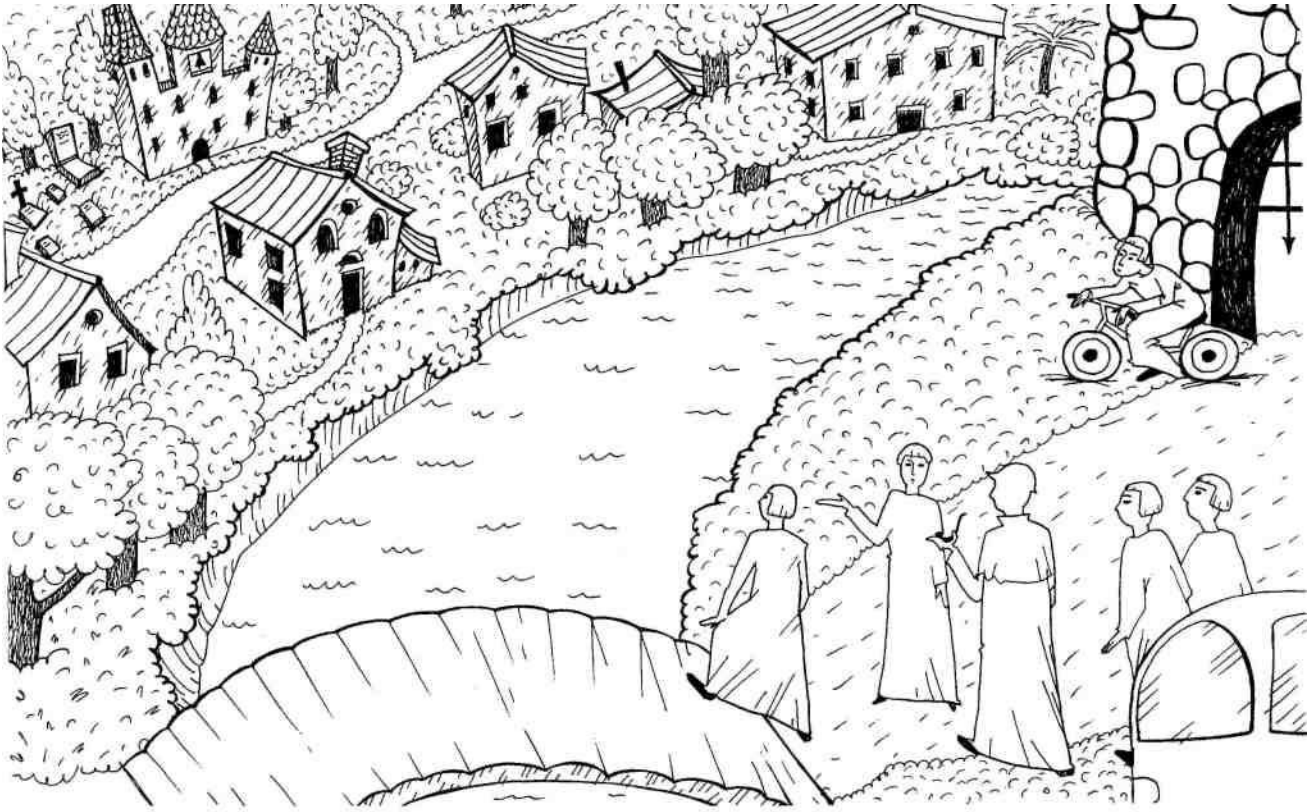
## RENDERING UKRAINIAN PROPER NAMES INTO ENGLISH

**Using the Romanization Table (see part 1 of this Lesson), render the following Ukrainian names into English:**

1) Млин, Чугуїв, Жидачів, Маріуполь, Кіровоград, Ізмаїл, Козельщина, Суми, Черкаси, Лубни; 2) Пантелеймон Куліш, Панас Мирний, Марко Вовчок, Сергій Бубка, Микола Жаботинський, Нечуй-Левицький, Андрій Несмачний, Юрій Андрухович, брати Капранові, Михайло Грушевський.

## PART 3 ADVENTURES IN PENCADER

### HOLLOW - 3



Picture 10

### STATIONARY PREPOSITIONS - III

aboard - astride; among - between - amid(st); in front of- behind;  
opposite-across from - away from; beyond - across;  
on the right of- on the left of; all over

**1. Fill in the blanks in Part 1 of Episode 3 with the prepositions in the box above plus the prepositions *in* and *at*. Use Picture 10.**

### EPISODE 3

#### PART I

James got off the king's van and looked around. He recognized the place: the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (1) the river and the village \_\_\_\_\_ (2) it. His grandmother still lived there, that's why he agreed to go to the king's castle at once. He remembered her old house \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the church \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the cemetery, and his grandfather's tombstone \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the green grass \_\_\_\_\_ (6) two trees. James hoped to see his grandma after dinner. He was sure she knew everything: the news was \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the country.

It was good to walk after several hours \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the van. The van had not arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (9) London because there was just no time. The king had sent his private plane and the van arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the nearest airport, which was not very close either. Holmes started towards the castle \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the bodyguards: one \_\_\_\_\_ (12), one \_\_\_\_\_ (13), one \_\_\_\_\_ (14) and one \_\_\_\_\_ (15) him. Ah, there was another one \_\_\_\_\_ (16) a motorcycle \_\_\_\_\_ (17) them.

**2. Study the sentences in Part 1 of Episode 3. Complete the following rules. Illustrate each point with the examples from Part 1 of Episode 3.**

When we want to indicate:

- the position between two objects, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position in the middle and surrounded by countable objects, we use \_\_\_\_\_ and in case of objects represented as a mass, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position on the other side of a line, but without the meaning of "opposition", we use \_\_\_\_\_. If we want to say directly opposite, we use \_\_\_, but when this position is not necessarily directly opposite, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something is stretched from one side of something to the other to form a kind of bridge, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the general position on a type of transport, we use \_\_\_\_\_, but if this is a position with one leg on each side of it, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the general position "at a distance", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the position "everywhere", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- with the names of villages and towns, especially with the verb *arrive*, use *arrive* \_\_\_\_\_ when you think of the place itself, but arrive \_\_\_\_\_ when you think of the airport, the port or the station

**3. Complete the following with the prepositions in the box in exercise 1. Use Picture 10.**

1. James is \_\_\_\_\_ bodyguards 2 and 4, \_\_\_\_\_ bodyguard 3 and \_\_\_\_\_ bodyguard 1. Bodyguard 5 is \_\_\_\_\_ them.
2. There is a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the river and a village \_\_\_\_\_ it
3. The church and the cemetery are \_\_\_\_\_ James' Grandma's house.
4. James is directly \_\_\_\_\_ the castle gate.
5. James' grandfather's tombstone is at the village cemetery \_\_\_\_\_ the green grass and \_\_\_\_\_ two trees.
6. The driver is \_\_\_\_\_ the van and bodyguard 5 is \_\_\_\_\_ his motorcycle.
7. The news of James' arrival was \_\_\_\_\_ the castle.

**4. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of of Episode 3 (Part 1).**

1. Because James used to visit that place, he recognized the village across the river and the bridge beyond it.
2. James' grandma's house was opposite the street. James just had to cross it, that's all.
3. James' grandma's house was opposite the cemetery but not across from the church.
4. James was walking toward the castle amidst four bodyguards.
5. James was standing among bodyguards 2 and 4.
6. The grandfather's tombstone was between many trees.
7. The tombstone stood among the thick grass.
8. The driver was astride his van while bodyguard 5 was sitting aboard his motorcycle.
9. Bodyguard 5 was standing across from James and the other bodyguards.

**5. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Picture 10 and Part 1 of Episode 3.**

1. The king's van crossed the bridge beyond the river.
2. James' grandma lived in the village across from the river.
3. In his childhood James liked to sit aboard his grandfather's horse.
4. Having spent several hours astride the van, James was glad to have a walk.
5. Walking between the four guards, James was thinking about his grandma.
6. There was a bridge across from the village.
7. There was a church opposite the cemetery in the street where James' grandma lived.
8. There was James' grandfather's tombstone between the green grass.
9. It was not easy to find the tombstone he was looking for amidst the many others which looked rather similar.
10. At last he was standing among the two familiar trees with the tombstone in front of him.

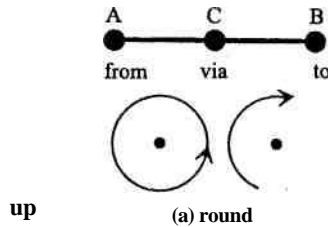
6. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 1 of Episode 3 on the part of a) James; b) bodyguard 5. Use the clues below and Picture 10.

1. James - van - look: recognize - bridge - river - village - grandma - agreed. 2. Grandma's house - church - cemetery - tombstone - grass - two trees. 3. James - hope - see - dinner - grandma: knew - news - country. 4. Good - walk - hours - van. 5. James - start - castle - bodyguards: 1, 2, 3, 4 + 5 (motorcycle).

7. Write your own story (200 words). Use as many prepositions from Episode 3 as possible.

### DIRECTIONAL PREPOSITIONS 1. Study Picture 11 and then

fill in the blanks in Part 2 of Episode 3 with the prepositions in the box.



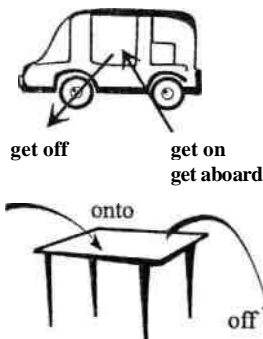
Against the current



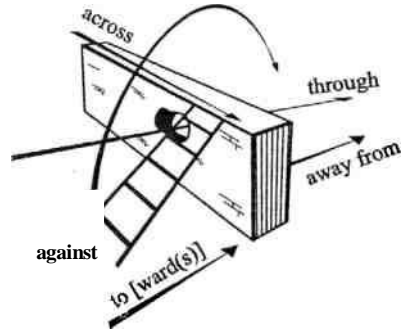
I Along (side) the river

all  
t  
t

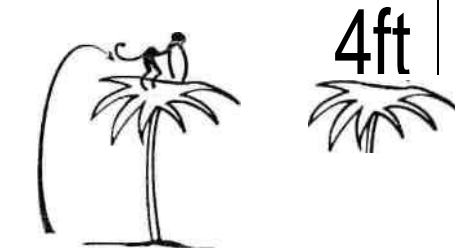
down



out of

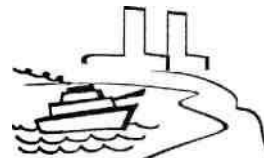


### COMPARE



(1) The monkey jumped onto the tree

(2) The monkey jumped on the tree



(3) The ship burst into the harbour



(4) The ship burst in the harbour



(5) She is throwing a ball at him

(7) She is shouting at him



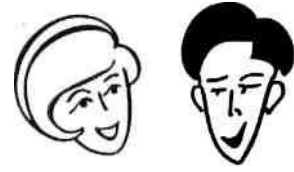
(9) She is laughing at him



(6) She is throwing a ball [to] him



(7) She is shouting [to] him



(10) She is smiling [to] him

**Picture 11**

across (2), against, along, around, at (3), away from, all over, from, into  
(4), off, onto, out, out of, over(2), past (by), through (2), to (ward) (4), up

## PART 2

"Pass the salt \_\_\_\_\_ (1), will you, James?" said grandma, leaning \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the table to take the salt shaker. "Thank you, dear. How did the princess manage to get \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the castle? Did she climb \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the wall?" "No," said James, smiling \_\_\_\_\_ (5) her, "the wall is too high." "She could have put a ladder \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the wall, got \_\_\_\_\_ (7) it and then just jumped down \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the wall, couldn't she?" objected grandma. "There is no ladder," James blew a cloud of smoke \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the table. "It seems that she got \_\_\_\_\_ (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the gate - as simple as that. \_\_\_\_\_ (12) the gate, \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the guards, \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the path, \_\_\_\_\_ (15) the wood and \_\_\_\_\_ (16) it, \_\_\_\_\_ (17) the castle." "But that's incredible!" protested grandma. "The guards did not see her!" She pushed a big cat, which had jumped \_\_\_\_\_ (18) her knees, \_\_\_\_\_ (19) an armchair next to her. "It seems," continued James, "that the guards were asleep." "All twelve of them?" grandma was skeptical. "I don't believe it." "Neither did the king or his men. They laughed \_\_\_\_\_ (20) the guards, shouted \_\_\_\_\_ (21) them, almost threw stones \_\_\_\_\_ (22) them. The king put them \_\_\_\_\_ (23) prison." "Have they sent a search party \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the wood?" asked grandma. "Yes, several of them. They've searched the wood \_\_\_\_\_ (25) the area \_\_\_\_\_ (26) the castle, but found nothing. There is something wrong here. The princess couldn't have gone very far \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the castle." "I've been thinking about it," said grandma. "She might have got \_\_\_\_\_ (28) Pancander Hollow." "Tell me more about it," begged James, stretching his legs \_\_\_\_\_ (29) the fire.

**2. Study the sentences in Part 2 of Episode 3. Complete the following rules with the prepositions from the box. Use sentences from Part 2 of Episode 3 for examples.**

across, against, along, around, at, away from, all over, from, into, off, onto, out, out of, over,  
past (by), through, to(ward), up

Preposition	Rules	Examples
OVER	When we want to indicate: giving or passing something to someone, we use _____	
	a movement above or across something, falling down on the other side, we use _____	
	a movement on a two-dimension plane, going from one side of it to the other, we use _____	
	a movement from a three-dimension space (a box, a room etc.), we use _____	
	looking or gesturing toward someone (often in an unkind manner), when he/she is regarded as a target, we use _____	
	moving or looking or gesturing in a particular direction without regarding the object as a target, we use _____	
	a movement of one object towards another one until it touches it, we use _____	
	a movement in a direction of a higher object, we use _____	
	a movement from a two-dimension plane, we use _____	
	a movement from one side of something to the other within and surrounded by it, we use _____	
	a movement by some other object, we use _____	
	a movement along something long and thin, we use _____	
	a movement inside a three-dimension space (a box, a room etc.), we use _____	
	a movement in the direction from an object, we use _____	
	a movement to the surface of a two-dimension plane, we use _____	

**3. Complete the following with the words from the box. Use Part 2 of Episode 3 and Picture 11.**

**across, against, along, around, at, away from, all over, from, into, off, onto,  
out, out of, over, past (by), through, to(ward), up**

1. The van drove \_\_\_\_\_ the castle \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the village.
2. James moved the salt shaker \_\_\_\_\_ the table \_\_\_\_\_ his grandma who had asked for it.
3. The windows of James' bedroom faced the river so he could see the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ it very well.
4. James' grandma thought that the princess could not get \_\_\_\_\_ the castle \_\_\_\_\_ the gate because there were twelve guards there.
5. James got \_\_\_\_\_ the king's van, and they drove \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the village street \_\_\_\_\_ his grandma's house.
6. The van went \_\_\_\_\_ the cemetery and stopped. James got \_\_\_\_\_ and went \_\_\_\_\_ his grandma's house.
7. James smiled \_\_\_\_\_ his grandma and headed \_\_\_\_\_ her.
8. It took the van just five minutes to travel \_\_\_\_\_ the castle \_\_\_\_\_ the village.
9. James put his umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ the wall in the hall, he did not want to take it \_\_\_\_\_ the living room.
10. Grandma took the flower pot \_\_\_\_\_ the table and cleaned the floor \_\_\_\_\_ the living room.
11. The king got so angry that he shouted \_\_\_\_\_ the guards and even aimed his gun \_\_\_\_\_ them.
12. The van rode \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge, \_\_\_\_\_ the wood and \_\_\_\_\_ the church \_\_\_\_\_ an old house.
13. Grandma thought that the princess could have fallen \_\_\_\_\_ the river or got \_\_\_\_\_ Pencader Hollow.
14. Nobody laughed \_\_\_\_\_ the princess because everybody was afraid to get \_\_\_\_\_ prison.
15. The cat went \_\_\_\_\_ the fire. It was afraid to get burned.
16. The cat went \_\_\_\_\_ grandma planning to jump \_\_\_\_\_ her knees.
17. Grandma pushed the cat \_\_\_\_\_ an armchair because she wanted to talk to her grandson.
18. The search parties had searched \_\_\_\_\_ the area \_\_\_\_\_ the castle but they did not find anything.
19. The van drove \_\_\_\_\_ the yard and headed \_\_\_\_\_ the castle. Holmes had to sleep at the castle
20. As soon as the van arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the castle, James got \_\_\_\_\_ and went \_\_\_\_\_ his bedroom.

**4. Choose the appropriate preposition.**

The van arrived [at/in/on] the castle at five o'clock. James got [off/down/from] the van and went [on/at/into] the castle. The bodyguards showed James' pass [in/at/to] the guards and went [in/through/inside] the gate. They took James [over/along/to] the king's dining room. As soon as James sat [to/at/against] the table, the king started telling him the whole story. James was listening [at/toward/to] the king looking [at/on/to] him [over/across/along] the table. When the dinner was over, James got [in/onto/aboard] the van which drove [over/along/on] the road and [through/along/across] the bridge [from/off/down] the castle [toward/to/in] the village. It took the van just five minutes to get [at/to/toward] grandma's house. On the way the van went [across/over/past] the cemetery and the church and stopped in front of a two-storeyed house. James went [over/along/across] the lawn [toward/down/out of] the house, got [across/up/over] the stairs and knocked [at/in/into] the door.

**5. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part 2 of Episode 3.**

1. Grandma leaned over the table to take the salt shaker which James had passed across to her.
2. Grandma thought that the princess could not manage to get from the castle.
3. Grandma thought the princess had climbed up the wall.
4. James was smiling at his grandma because he liked her very much.
5. James did not think that the princess put the ladder onto the wall and then jumped from it.
6. While talking, James was blowing clouds of smoke along the table.
7. James thought that the princess could have got from the castle past the gate.
8. Walking onto the path, the princess got in the woods.
9. The princess could not get to the wall without a ladder.
10. As soon as the princess got off the castle, she ran all over from it.

**6. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.**

1. The cat could not jump into grandma's knees so it jumped onto the armchair instead.
2. The king did not believe the guards so he laughed to their explanations.
3. The king got very angry with the guards so he started shouting against them.



4. Then the king got furious and he was about to throw stones to the guards.
5. Because the king thought the guards were guilty, he put them all over prison.
6. The king sent several search parties through the wood.
7. The parties did not find the princess though they had searched all along the area all over the castle.
8. Grandma did not think the princess could have gone far out of the castle.
9. Grandma was afraid the princess might have got at Pencader Hollow.
10. Getting ready to enjoy his grandma's story, James relaxed on the armchair, stretching his legs away from the fire.

**7. Work on pairs. Reproduce Part 2 of Episode 3 on the part of a) James; b) grandma; c) cat.**

**Use the clues below.**

1. Grandma: pass - salt - lean - table - shaker. 2. Grandma: How - princess - escape - castle? Climb - wall? 3. James: smile - she: wall - high. 4. Grandma: could - ladder - wall - get - it - jump - wall. 5. James: No ladder - blow - smoke - table - Princess - gate - guards - path - wood - castle. 6. Grandma: No - guards - not see. 7. James: guards - asleep . 8. Grandma: 12? - not believe. 9. James: Neither - king - men: laugh - shout-throw - put - prison. 10. Grandma: search party - wood? 11. James: Yes - search - wood - area - castle- nothing. Something - wrong: princess - can't - far - castle. 12. Grandma: I - think - she - might - get - Pencader Hollow. 13. James: tell - more - stretch - legs - fire.

**8. Write your own story (200 words), using as many prepositions from Part 2 of Episode 3 as possible.**

# UNIT 2. DREAM FACTORIES

## LESSON 1 PART 1. THE RISE OF

### THE CURTAIN

**1. James is planning a visit to a theatre. He is doing his preparations playing with Lappy. This is Lappy's first task: Match the words in the box with the parts of the theatre below. Help James do it.**

stage    proscenium    curtain    foyer    auditorium    stalls    dress circle    pillar    box    footlights  
upper circle    orchestra pit    gallery (balcony)    front lights  
aisle    proscenium arch    tier    rail



**2. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations from the box in the previous exercise.**

1. The actors started the play on the \_\_\_\_\_ before the \_\_\_\_\_ went up. 2. The flowers that draped the \_\_\_\_\_ took the audience right on to the stage. 3. The actor ran downstage and then further, to the \_\_\_\_\_ floor. 4. The conductor came out on the stage and called the musicians down to the \_\_\_\_\_ in front of him. 5. Being just students, they could only afford seats up in the \_\_\_\_\_, on the very top. 6. The director got to the height of the \_\_\_\_\_ and had left his assistant to take care of the things below on the \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Some theatres have an intermediate level, called an \_\_\_\_\_, between the dress circle and the gallery. 8. He hurried across the polished floor of the \_\_\_\_\_ into the auditorium - the play was about to start. 9. Sitting in the front \_\_\_\_\_, he could see the actors well. 10. In the middle of the show the spectators started dancing in the \_\_\_\_\_. 11. The child tiptoed from the stage, shielding his eyes from the brightness of the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. 12. They had their own \_\_\_\_\_ at the Grand Theatre so they could watch the plays in private. 13. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ blocking her view and she could not see part of the stage. 14. She could have joined the post-game party, but she just knew nothing about it - she was sitting on the second \_\_\_\_\_ of the stand. 15. The spectators are kindly asked to hold on to the \_\_\_\_\_ as you walk the stairs in the upper circle.

**3. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.**

	B			B	
I. outdoor entertainment	A. play		2. rise of the curtain	A. list	
3. fall of the curtain	B. want		4. tour	B. mirror	
5. energize	C performer		6. platform performance	C beginning	
7. backstage tour	D. excursion behind the scenes		8. audience	D. live music in the lobby	
9. production	E. amusement in the open air		10. repertory/repertoire	E. stage show	
II. artist	F. end		12. foyer music	F. travel around	
13. aspire	G. strengthen		14. reflect	G. spectators	

**4. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations from column A in the previous exercise.**

1. The theatre troupe were a group of successful performing \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Have you seen the new Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ at the Globe Theatre? 3. Nobody is going to get \_\_\_\_\_ with productions like \_\_\_\_\_ thought the play had gone too wild a \_\_\_\_\_ on his career, do you understand it? 6. The North Theater these, I'm sure. 4. However some of the spectators in the couple of times. 5. It might mean the \_\_\_\_\_ was limited, consisting mostly of one-act plays. 7. The Company's trying to make some money offering \_\_\_\_\_ where the spectators can talk to actors. 8. She saw them go down the stairs to some \_\_\_\_\_ listen to \_\_\_\_\_ . 9. The \_\_\_\_\_ will start at 9:00, don't miss it. 10. There will be \_\_\_\_\_ is expected pretty soon - it may like golf, cricket and horse racing throughout the day. 11. The all start in a month. 12. The theatre is currently \_\_\_\_\_ the country playing live to full houses. 13. After the triumphal tour all serious actors \_\_\_\_\_ to work at that theatre. 14. The playwright's life experience is always \_\_\_\_\_ in his plays.

**5. Work in pairs. Read the beginning of the text on four London theatres. What do you think the text will focus on?**



The four theatres listed below present an eclectic mix of new plays and classics, with seven or eight productions in repertory at any one time. It aims constantly to re-energise the great traditions of the British stage and to expand the horizons of audiences and artists alike. It aspires to reflect in its repertoire the diversity of culture. Through an extensive programme of platform performances, backstage tours, foyer music, exhibitions and free outdoor { entertainment it is recognised that the theatre doesn't begin and end with the rise and fall of the curtain. And by touring, they share their work with audiences in the UK and abroad.

**6. You are going to read four texts on four different theatres in London. For Questions 1-19, choose from the theatres (A-D). The theatres may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).**

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| A. Olivier Theatre   | B. Lyttelton Theatre |
| C. Cottesloe Theatre | D. Soho Theatre      |



## WHICH OF THE THEATRES

has the largest amount of seats	0	A	does not have any visual interference	10
can transform its proscenium	1		never has a formal atmosphere	11
was named after a nobleman	2		is both big and comfortable	12
is traditional in its form only	3		has a deep stage	13
was named after an actor	4		is the most transformable one	14
has the smallest amount of seats	5		has a stadium-type seat arrangement	15
is famous for lighting and sound	6		uses benches for seating	16
has no fixed stalls	7		can transform everything but one element	17
is situated over technical rooms	8		was named after a National Theatre chairman	18
is the least decorated one	9		runs an education programme	19

### A. OLIVIER THEATRE

The Olivier - named after Laurence Olivier\*, the first director of the National Theatre\* (during its years at the Old Vic\*), and the outstanding British actor of the century - is the largest of the three theatres at the National. Sited above the entrance foyer and over the workshops and main rehearsal rooms, it can accommodate 1150 people in its fan-shaped auditorium, and 2000 years of drama on its open stage. Two main tiers of steeply raked seats - flanked by side-banks on a higher level - sweep down to the stage. In spite of its size, the Olivier has a concentrated intimacy. No seat is far from an actor's point of command; and the span of the seats matches their effective span of vision. They can hold the audience within the compass of their eyes.

### B. LYTTTELTON THEATRE

The Lyttelton - named after Oliver Lyttelton, whose parents were among the earliest effective campaigners for the National Theatre and who was himself its first chairman - is a proscenium theatre, conventional in its basic shape though not in the excellence of its sightlines and acoustics. There are no eye-blocking pillars, circle rails, or other familiar hazards and you can see and hear almost equally well from each of its 890 seats. Unlike most traditional theatres, the Lyttelton has an adjustable proscenium.

### C. COTTESLOE THEATRE

The Cottesloe - named after Lord Cottesloe, chairman of the South Bank Board (the body responsible for the construction of the National) - is the smallest, the barest, the most potentially flexible and (for some people) the most potentially influential of the National houses. It is a dark-walled rectangular room, which can hold up to 300 people, but may readily be rearranged to take fewer. On three sides of the room two tiers of pillared galleries look down on an adjustable floor-space, which has no fixed seating or staging. This National cockpit may be used for classical staging, for the latest experimental theatre, or for practically anything in between. You can stage an event at one end with or without a proscenium, in a corner, or in the centre. You can clear the floor of seats, or group the audience close in around a central happening. Everything is open to change except the galleries.

### D. SOHO THEATRE

Situated in the heart of London's West End, it is a state of the art venue with theatre, studio and ancillary space and is home to Soho Theatre's diverse range of new plays, comedy, writers' development work and an innovative community and education programme. Soho Theatre's auditorium seats 144-160 people on comfortably cushioned benches. The seating is unreserved and arranged on a high rake which means that the sight-lines are excellent wherever you sit. Unlike a conventional studio space, the stage has an impressive depth and scale and can be completely transformed with each production. Sets have ranged from the minimal to a two-story house, a barn and even a wrestling ring. Whether you're coming to see a play, comedy or join in a writers' event, you can expect a smart but informal atmosphere in a contemporary and intimate setting.

\* Laurence Olivier (1907-89) - one of the greatest British actors of the 20th century.

\* National Theatre, the - a modern building on the South Bank in London containing three famous theatres.

\* Old Vic, the - a theatre in South London, especially famous for its plays by Shakespeare.

**7. Work in pairs. Find in the texts the words meaning:** **Text A** - administrator, training room, trial, contain, looking like a flat object that you wave to make the air cooler, hall, level, vertical, collected, side, brush off, width, range; **Text B** - usual, fundamental, vision position, sound, vision-interfering, column, banister, danger, adjustable; **Text C** - non-decorated, transformable, contain, arena, event; **Text D** - using the latest methods, materials, or knowledge; place, auxiliary, varied, padded, size, an informal communication with an author, modern.

# LISTENING

## A RARE CREATURE



8. Work in pairs. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.

A	B	A	B
1. committed	a. support	17. sophisticated	a. Judgment Day
2. venue	b. doorway	18. enchanted	b. preoccupied
3. emerge	c. vibrate	19. clad	c. desire
4. accomplish	d. most probably	20. perch	d. edge
5. envisage	e. narrow piece	21. dizzy	e. move quickly and suddenly
6. abandon	f. adaptable	22. stack	f. plank
7. revive	g. inventive	23. deploy	g. complicated
8. remote	h. location	24. cantilever	h. first night
9. ingenious	i. predict	25. hover	i. lightheaded
10. layout	j. design	26. thrust	j. point
11. flexible	k. come to light	27. opening production	k. arrange
12. strip	l. dedicated	28. scoot	l. charmed
13. presumably	m. distant	29. longing	m. sit on
14. quiver	n. stop	30. brink	n. float
15. portal	o. stimulate	31. obsessed	o. pile
16. props	p. achieve	32. apocalypse	p. covered

9. You will hear a correspondent speaking about a new London theatre. For questions 1-18, fill in the missing information. Use 1-5 words to fill the gaps in. There is an example at the beginning (0). You will hear the recording twice.

The name of the theatre	<u>Unicorn Theatre</u>	(0)
The cost of the theatre building	_____	(1)
The time it took to build the theatre	_____	(2)
The part of London it was built in	_____	(3)
The type of the theatre	_____	(4)
Other theatres of same type	_____	(5)
The way the theatre started its performance in 1947	_____	(6)

The place the theatre used to be situated in London	_____	(7)
The construction of the theatre became possible due to	_____	(8)
The theatre building looks like	_____	(9)
The foyer is	_____	(10)
The theatre building seems to hover due to	_____	(11)
The amount of seats in the auditorium	_____	(12)
The auditorium consists of _____	(13) and _____	(14)
The stage is	_____	(15)
The good sides of the auditorium	_____	(16)
The bad sides of the auditorium	_____	(17)
The general conclusion	_____	(18)

**10. Work in pairs. Compare the theatres in the pictures of this Lesson. What is similar and what is different about them. Describe the interior of a theatre you have been to.**

### 11. Translate

Традиційні театри мають звичайний набір ознак - зал для глядачів (найбільш поширена форма у вигляді паралелепіпеда), партер з рядами крісел, між якими є прохід, бельєтаж, над яким може ще бути верхній театральний ярус, обрамлений боковими ложами, а найвище - театральний балкон або гальорка, інколи з колонами та поручнями. Сцена, що може мати регульовану авансцену з аркою над нею, підсвічується рампою знизу і верхнім освітленням згори, закріпленим на кронштейнах. До початку вистави сцена закривається завісою, яку піднімають на початку і онускають наприкінці кожного акту. Між сценою та залом може бути оркестрова яма.

Незалежно від кількості глядачів, яку вміщує зал, більшість британських театрів не одержують грошей від уряду, а тому змушені шукати додаткові джерела фінансування, влаштовуючи, крім спектаклів на сцені, виступи музикантів у фойє на вході до театру, екскурсії за куліси, творчі зустрічі з письменниками, розваги просто неба, гастролі тощо.

Сучасні театри експериментують не тільки з постановками, але й з театральним інтер'єром. У деяких з них відсутні як стаціонарна сцена, так і стаціонарні крісла. Сцена, тобто власне арена, може бути відкритою, навколо якої розміщені крісла, що круто піднімаються вгору, і розташування яких може змінюватися. Така зміна можлива завдяки варійованій формі партеру. Можна, зокрема, крісла зняти, і перетворити приміщення на зал вражаючого масштабу, де віялоподібне і круте розташування крісел або зручних лав, оббитих для м'якого сидіння, дозволяє одержати яруси значного розмаху. При цьому, якщо дивитися згори, створюється відчуття, що ряди крісел з розгону ковзають із запаморочливої висоти, розгортаючись донизу, а знизу здається, що глядачі, які примостилися на верхніх рядах, шпиряють у повітрі. Подібне розташування забезпечує пряму лінію між сценою, яка є командним нунктом актора, і очима кожного глядача - ніяких колон, що перекривають вид, чи інших перешкод - усе дійство постійно відбувається в полі зору. Завдяки тому, що жоден глядач не віддалений від сцени, аудиторія живить власною енергією акторів і навпаки. Сама сцена може бути незвично голою, з мінімумом декорацій та бутафорії, однак загальний інтер'єр, оздоблений сучасними матеріалами, разом з відмінною акустикою і майстерним світлом, створює сучасне і затишне оточення.

Розташування допоміжних площ театру є досить варіативним - тут можуть бути студії, які слугують місцем для репетицій, а також кімнати для проведення майстерень та практичних занять.

Режисери експериментальних театрів, що час від часу виникають то тут, то там, нерідко відмовляються від класичної постановки відомих п'єс, бажаючи реалізувати власне інсценування відомих творів. Ці віддані мистецтву художники, одержимі оригінальними ідеями, що віддзеркалюють їхні складні мистецькі системи, є потенційно впливовими. Адже вони сприяють формуванню більш різноманітного репертуару, зачаровують глядачів незвичним поєднанням камерності і масштабності, балансуючи на грані абсурду, відроджуючи традиції витонченості та імовірно виконуючи важливу функцію передбачення тенденцій розвитку театру. Не дивно, що на прем'єри таких спектаклів глядачі аж прожогом біжать.

## WRITING

12. Read an article below from *timesonline* and then write a report assessing good and bad points of London theatres nowadays. Read the explanation below first.



### DISCURSIVE ESSAYS ASSESSING GOOD AND BAD POINTS

This is a formal piece of writing in which good and bad points of a particular topic are discussed. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) an **introduction** (1 paragraph) where you state the aim and topic of your report; (2) a **main body** where you may present good and bad points under sub-headings; (3) a **conclusion** (1 paragraph) where you summarise the information presented in the main body and give your personal opinion.

#### Recommendations:

(1) Do not use informal language; (2) Prepare a list of 'good' and 'bad' points before you begin writing; (3) Decide on the heading of your report; (4) Decide on the number and wording of the sub-headings for the main body; (5) present both the positive and negative information under the relevant sub-heading; (6) Use contrastive words to introduce the negative information {*however... on the other hand... in contrast...*}; (7) Use a formal impersonal style, short sentences, present tenses, passive voice and do not use contractions of the verb forms

#### Useful phrases:

**To introduce the topic:** *The purpose of this report is to... As requested...*

**To list good points:** *The house is conveniently located in... The restaurant is in a beautiful house...*

**To list bad points:** *However ... Nevertheless... In addition... As a result...*

**To introduce the conclusion:** *To conclude... To sum it up... All things considered... On the whole...*

### NICE SHOW, SHABBY THEATRE

Can you still get afternoon tea brought to your seat?" asks my elegant Park Avenue friend. She wants to know whether a seasonal visit to London's Theatreland will be worth her while, and she is right to be wary. However good the show, a visit to one of London's crumbling, dank and leaky West End theatres is an expensive and often downright shabby experience. Matinee tea is a distant memory from an era when the comfort of bums on seats was as important as the revenue they brought in.

Tickets for many top London shows now top out at £55, virtually the same as Broadway's \$100, and the Arts Council estimates that childcare, food and transport add an estimated £53.77 per person to the cost of an



evening out. For this, you get to sit in a seat that probably hasn't been replaced or reupholstered for years, where legroom can be less than the 26 inches demanded by the Civil Aviation Authority for short-haul flights.

More than likely, that uncomfortable seat will be in a building that has received the bare minimum of maintenance for decades, where whatever money has been spent has gone on the cosmetic touching-up of gold paint or worn velvet in the auditorium, or on the historic frontage, rather than on improving loos, bars and communal areas.

The £25.8 million that was spent on refurbishing the Royal Court by the time it reopened in 2000, for instance, far exceeded the total sum that had been spent on the five theatres on Shaftesbury Avenue in the preceding five years. Act Now, a 2003 report from the Theatre's Trust, estimated that £250 million may be needed to be spent over the next 20 years to keep London's unique stock of Victorian, Edwardian and inter-war theatres functioning.

This is not simple neglect, though, but simple economics. As a subsidised theatre, the Royal Court could apply for Lottery money. As commercial entities, the main theatre-owning groups (the Ambassadors Theatre Group, Andrew Lloyd Webber's Really Useful Company, Cameron Mackintosh Ltd, Clear Channel and new kids on the block Nimax, co-owned by Nica Burns and Max Weitzenhoffer) cannot, nor are they eligible for government grants.

They are also bound to pay dividends to shareholders if they happen to make money either from leasing their theatres or (given that most of the aforementioned groups are producers as well as proprietors), staging shows in the uncertain world of entertainment.

The £781,948 that the Ambassadors Theatre Group earned after tax in 2003 would barely have covered the cost of replacing all the light bulbs in the 11 theatres it then either owned or managed. The same year, the Really Useful Group made a profit of only £399,000 after payouts to shareholders.

Not that theatre owners aren't trying to improve things. Cameron Mackintosh is pouring £35 million of the personal fortune he made from producing shows into the refurbishment of two of the four theatres his company owns, the Queen's and the Gielgud, and the building of a fifth, the Sondheim, between them.

Lloyd Webber recently sold four of RUG's smaller playhouses to Nimax, and purchased outright the eight other theatres he jointly owned with investment firm Bridgepoint, so that he could "sort them out". Howard Panter of ATG insists that his company spends millions just keeping its theatres afloat.

Lloyd Webber's company is also in the vanguard of a new impulse to improve the ambience, as well as the infrastructure, of London theatres. In a move that may please my New York friend, RUG now serves afternoon tea, not in the auditorium as in bygone days, but in the dress circle bar of Her Majesty's during summer matinees of Phantom of the Opera.

The company has also opened a pre-show restaurant in the Theatre Royal, Drury Lane, and taken back the running of bars from external operators. At ATG's Piccadilly Theatre, theatre manager Russell Miller has been sampling boxed canapes with a view to offering more than just nuts and crisps as pre-show fare.

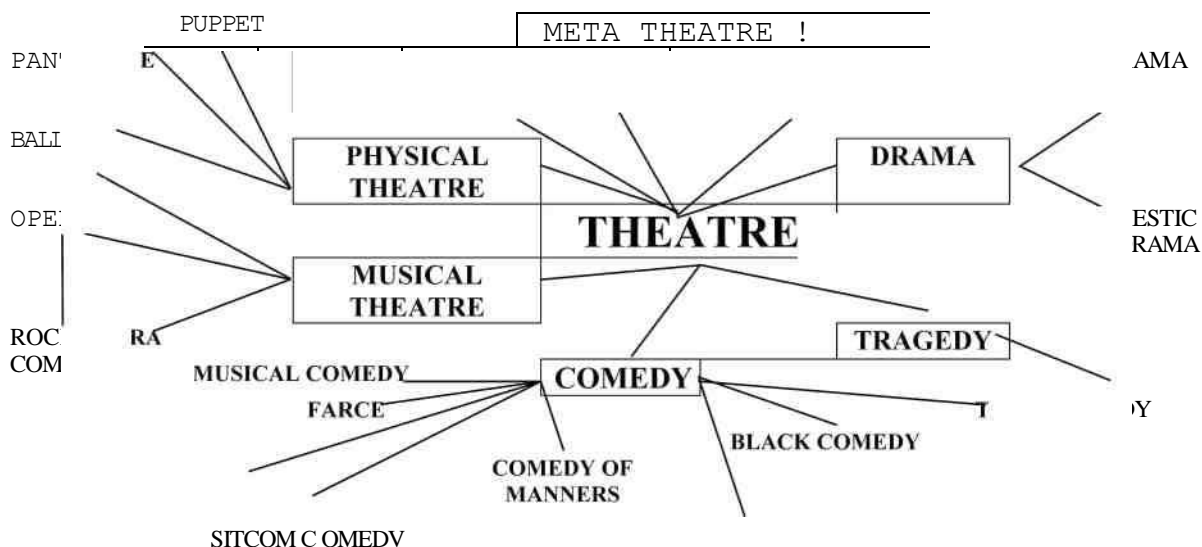
So the future might - might - look better. But right now, how do the theatres hosting London's top 10 shows compare? The play's the thing, of course, but what else do you get for your money in terms of seats, style, legroom and loos?

## PART 2

## THREE BOARDS, TWO ACTORS AND ONE PASSION Help

James do some other tasks by Lappy.

1. What kind of theatre genres can you think of (e.g. opera, ballet...)?
2. Match the definitions below with the genres on the scheme.



- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| A. The primary means of performance is through singing and music   | B. Same style as opera, but the musical form is rock music.   | C. Performance which in the end has a happy and joyful outcome.   |
| D. Addresses a social issue to illustrate injustice.   | E. Comedy enacted through music, singing and dance.   | F. Comedy that juxtaposes morbid or ghastly elements with comical ones.   |
| G. Medley of clever scheming, calculated coincidence, and wondrous discovery to make the events answer precisely to the hero's wishes, focusing on love. | H. Comedy that grows out of a character's attempt to solve a problem created by a situation. The attempt is often bumbling but ends up happily. | I. Witty form of dramatic comedy that depicts and often mocks the manners and affectations of a contemporary society.   |
| J. Comedy, created in Italy, with standard characters (Harlequine, Columbine, Pantaloon) and a few basic plots.  | K. Comic dramatic piece with highly improbable situations, stereotyped characters, extravagant exaggeration, and violent horseplay.             | L. Elements of dance, puppetry, slapstick and melodrama produce an entertaining and comic theatrical experience.        |
| M. Sentimental drama with musical underscoring. Standard characters: noble hero, long-suffering heroine, cold-blooded villain. Happy ending.             | N. The primary means of communication is the body, dance, mime, puppetry and movement, rather than the spoken word.                             | O. Hero goes to find something that will defeat the powers of evil. On his way he meets weird and fantastic characters. |
| P. Drama with a focus is on the everyday domestic lives of people.   | Q. Drama with elements of tragedy and comedy.   | R. Allegory in which the characters are abstractions of moral ideas.  |
| S. Drama that seriously treats the sorrowful or terrible events encountered by a heroic individual.  | T. Characters are engaged in an absurd, that is meaningless, activity or life.  | U. Performance that blurs the line between what is scripted and what goes on by accident.                               |

3. Work in pairs. Read the reviews of the theatre plays below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text. There is an example at the beginning (0).

### THE MAGIC FLUTE

0	Dragons, <b>magical</b> flutes and bells, a wicked	MAGICIAN
1	Queen of the Night and a _____ Bird-Man who	COMEDY
2	<u>can not stay out of _____</u> . The Eisenhower	EMBARRASS
4	Theatre is _____ into a land of	TRANSFORM
5	_____ with our Zack Brown's	ENCHANT
	<u>production of Mozart's brilliant</u>	FABLE
6	_____, 200 years young this year. Watch the	MASTER
7	<u>battle between the powers</u>	MYSTERY
8	<u>of light and _____</u> . Cheer the victors	DARK
9	and Mozart's most beautiful music. _____ in	SING
10	<u>English by an all-star cast _____ by Michael</u>	LEAD
11	Morgan, _____ Conductor of the Chicago	ASSIST
12	Symphony. We'll keep you _____.	TRANCE
13	Dress _____ for Sponsors	REHEARSE
14	(_____ over \$250) - Thu Dec 27 at 7 pm.	CONTRIBUTE

#### 1 RIGOLETTO

2	Real _____ Verdi. Tragic and _____ CLASS dramatic	
	events at a fever pitch. _____ SEDUCE	

4	and abduction, the _____ story of	SORROW NO
5	death and _____. Our jester is Alain of	HONOUR
	<u>Fondary, one of the most</u>	FAME
6	_____ of our time. Sheryl Woods,	ART
7	_____ in so many comic roles, takes on a	CHEER
8	tragic fate of his _____ daughter Gilda.	DOOM
9	Handsome Franco Farina is a _____ in the part	DEBUT
10	of Duke. Wine, women and song fill a _____	NAGNIFY
11	<u>of life in a</u>	TAPE
12	<u>Renaissance court. What happens</u>	CORRUPTION
13	next will haunt you. _____ time is about	RUN
14	<u>2hrs 50 min. with two</u>	INTERMEDIATE

#### 1 LABOHEME

	The most _____ of Puccini's works tells _____ ROMANCE	
--	---	--

2	a bittersweet love story we are never _____ to	TIRE FORGET
4	listen to. Zack Brown's _____	STUDY AGAIN
5	production, newly _____ and back by	STAR
	<u>popular demand, _____ Yoko Watanabe</u>	
6	and Antonio Ordonez as _____ Mimi and her	FRAGMENT
7	Rodolfo. Visit the Bohemian haunts of	POET
8	Paris, meet _____ artists and star-crossed	STARVE
9	lovers, join the Christmas Eve _____ at Cafe	REVEL
10	Momus. Puccini's finest _____ brings together	TRANSCRIBE
11	laughter and tears, _____ and tragedy.	TENDER
12	<u>Bring an extra _____</u> . Opera backstage	HAND
13	tour: A _____ lecture on the many designs	DELIGHT
14	<u>by the opera resident's lighting designer.</u>	ACTUAL



What genres do the plays above belong to? Give as many arguments as you can to support your point of view.

4. What kind of professionals are involved into a theatre performance production (e.g. actors, directors etc). What do they do?

5. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-21, find this word. Some lines may be correct. The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).

**Example**

0     playwrights  
00

0     Actors and actresses bring to life characters created by **playwriters** and scriptwriters. A lot of  
0     their working life is spent rehearsing, for stage, TV or film productions. They also have  
1     to research on their characters and learn lines. Finding the next job is a major part of an actor's  
2     life, so they spend a lot of time preparing for and attending the auditions. Skills such as singing and  
3     dancing can hardly make finding work easier. Actors' working hours can be long and irregular, and  
4     may include evenings and weekends. They work indoor in theatres and TV or film studios, but  
5     filming also can involve outdoor work. Actors often spend time away from home, around the  
6     UK or abroad. Actors need to be talented and determine, physically fit, with good stamina and a  
7     strong, trained voice, lively and creative, good team workers, adaptivity and versatile.  
8     There is work for actors in theatre, television and film - any actor's prospects dependent on talent,  
9     self-discipline, and luck. Most actors make full professional training at drama school. Entry is  
10    very competitionable. Candidates usually need to be at least 18, but most drama schools welcome  
11    adults up to the age of 30. Candidates have to take one or more auditions. They should also having  
12    evidences of an interest in acting, for example belonging to an amateur dramatic or community  
13    drama group. Courses give students many stage skills, and well as the chance to take part in  
14    productions and demonstrate their skills to agents and casting directors. Actors can progress in to  
15    larger parts if they given consistently good performances. Some go into other work, such as  
16    directing, writing or teaching. The most recognizabil figures in theatre are the directors,  
17    playwrights and actors, but theatre is a highly collaborating endeavor. Plays are usually produced  
18    by a production team that common includes a scenic or set designer, lighting designer,  
19    costume designer, sound designer, dramaturg, stage manager, and production manager. The all  
20    artistic staff are assisted by technical theatre personnel who scarecely handle the creation and  
21    executing of the production.

6. Work in pairs. Write out from the text above the words and word combinations belonging to the following categories:

**Artistic Staff:** playwright, ...

**Actors Should Be:** talented, ...

**Conditions to Become an Actor:** do full professional training at drama school, ...

7. Work in pairs. Match the definitions of functions below with the artistic staff professionals in exercise 5.

A. responsible for actors' clothes	B. in charge of finding actors	C. interprets the play	D. writes plays	E. responsible for sound effects	F. in charge of the light on the stage
G. responsible for scenery, furniture etc used on a stage	H. writes stories and words for a performance	I. in charge of technical aspects of a performance	J. responsible for technical aspects of the production process	K. gives instructions to actors and others working on a play	

8. Work in pairs. Discuss the artistic staff and technical theatre personnel needed to produce and stage a play. What kind of responsibilities do each of the production team members have?

9. Match the words in column A with their equivalents in column B. Translate them.

	B		B
1. performing arts	a. belief	2. act out	j. storyline
3. spectacle	b. fundamental	4. narrative (adj)	k. modern
5. mummer	c. whole	6. root	l. study m.
paramount	d. matter	8. routine	affection n.
entire	e. harlequin	10. contemporary	agitator o.
II. creed (n)	f. theatre plus music etc	12. passion	play p.
13. enormous	g. image	14. plot	pattern q.
15. concern (n)	h. preeminent i.	16. catalyst	storylike p.
17. seminal	tremendous	18. critique	stem

10. You are going to listen to a text on some basic notions related to theatre as an art. Mark the statements below as "true" (T), "false" (F) or 'not stated' (NS), depending on the content. There is an example at the beginning (0). Read the notes first.



#### Notes Kabuki - a type of

Japanese drama: tragic, slow-paced, almost plotless, integrating music, movement, masks and language, and using only male actors.

**Sanskrit drama** (1500 BC - 1100 AD) - involved music, dance and highly stylized gestures and costumes, full of religious and supernatural elements, focused on love and heroism. **Chinese drama** - conventionalized acting style, character types and stage properties, the lines used to be sung or declaimed until the 19<sup>th</sup> century, mostly social and pathetic, less concerned with love. **Mummers' play** - a masked pantomime. **Lope de Vega** (1562-1635) - Spanish dramatist, poet and novelist, father of modern drama, wrote about 1800 plays. **Constantin Stanislavski** (1863-1938) - Russian theatrical director, actor and teacher, developed innovative technique for actors based on emotional truth and inner motivation. **Bertold Brecht** (1898-1956) - German dramatist and poet, father of 'epic theatre' that attempted (through the use of bright lines, films etc) to establish a politically conscious distance between the actors and the audience.

		T	F	NS
0	Theatre is a synthetic type of performing arts	•		
1	Theatre can't help being narrative			
2	All forms of theatre involve music			
3	The prevailing element in drama is a verbal one			
4	Drama does not allow any improvisation with the lines			
5	'Theatre' is a synonym to 'play'			
6	Theatre has been used to improve the society			
7	Theatre has been used by religious groups			
8	Catholicism did not approve of entertainment value of theatre			
9	In spite of a variety of approaches the basic theatre pattern remains the same			
10	The only real art is art for art's sake			
11	Theatre may initiate changes in the society			
12	Aristotle's opinion on theatre could not greatly effect theatre development			
13	Lope de Vega believed the theatre design to be very important			
14	Bertolt Brecht is famous for the development of actors' technique			

## 11. Translate

Діапазон театральних жанрів коливається від традиційних до експериментальних, таких як мета-театр, в якому стирається грань між сценарієм та імпровізацією. Глядачів залучають безпосередньо до дії, внаслідок чого вона розвивається не так, як передбачено сценарієм. До традиційних належать також музичний театр (опера, оперета, рок-опера), соціальний театр, невербальний театр (балет, пантоміма) тощо.

Давньою формою комедії є староіталійська комедія дельарте зі стандартним набором персонажів (Арлекін, Коломбіна, Панталун) та сюжетів. Будь-яка комедія зазвичай має щасливий кінець, а якщо вона супроводжується музикою, піснями та танцями, то це - музична комедія. У чорній комедії жахливі і страшні елементи замінюються на комічні, а в романтичній - наявний розумний розрахунок, щасливий збіг обставин, чудесні відкриття, які у фіналі приводять до здійснення усіх мрій закоханих героїв. У комедії ситуацій герой недолуго намагається вирішити якусь проблему, внаслідок чого без кінця потрапляє до несподіванок, з яких щасливо виплутується. Сатирична комедія дотепно висміює звичаї та манірність сучасного суспільства, вдало поєднуючи ляльки, танцювальні номери, елементи балагану та мелодрами. Фарс ґрунтується на надзвичайно маловірогідних ситуаціях, стереотипних персонажах, екстравагантних перебільшеннях та відчайдушно галасливій грі, а в комедії абсурду персонажі ведуть безглузду діяльність. У трагікомедії поєднуються елементи трагедії та комедії, викликаючи у глядачів сміх і сльози одночасно.

Мелодрама - це сентиментальне оповідання про кохання, дія якого відбувається на тлі приємної музики. Класична мелодрама має набір стереотипних персонажів: благородний герой, який не має недоліків і ходить у світлому одязі, багатостраждальна та ніжна красуня-героїня, холоднокровний лихий негідник, одягнений у темне вбрання. Незважаючи на численні пригоди коханців, що народилися під нещасливою зіркою, мелодрама завжди закінчується щасливо.

У виставах у жанрі фентезі герой, який уособлює світлі сили, вирушає на пошук засобу для перемоги над силами зла, а по дорозі зустрічає багато дивних і фантастичних персонажів, які допомагають або перешкоджають його намаганням. У трагедіях, де напруження знаходиться на межі нервового зриву, герой потрапляє до жахливих ситуацій, які загрожують його життю або життю інших людей: викрадення людей, насильство тощо. Головний персонаж сміливо приймає на себе трагічну долю. У цьому жанрі вистава часто закінчується загибеллю одного або кількох персонажів. Соціальна драма звертається до певної соціальної проблеми, ілюструючи випадки несправедливості, а побутова - розглядає питання повсякденних людських відносин у родині тощо.

Важливими складовими вистави-шедевр є музика і, відповідно, оркестр та диригент, а також зірковий акторський склад. На прохання глядачів під час перерв проводяться розважальні зустрічі з акторами, які розігрують сцени з вистав, або оркестр виконує понурі найпопулярніших театральних мелодій. Тривалість вистави може бути дуже різною.

Членами художнього і постановочного колективів та технічного персоналу є: драматург, який пише п'єси; автор сценарію, що готує сценарій; драматург-інтерпретатор, який інтерпретує п'єсу для постановки; продюсер, що контролює фінансування; режисер, який керує роботою акторів та інших членів художнього колективу; заступник режисера з акторського складу, що відбирає акторів; директор постановки, який відповідає за загальні технічні питання; художник по декораціях, що займається декораціями та реквізитом; розпорядник сцени, відповідальний за технічні питання постановки на сцені; художник по костюмах, що готує одяг акторів; звукорежисер, який займається звуковим оформленням; художник по світлу, що забезпечує освітлення сцени та деякі інші.

Постановочний колектив займається створенням спектаклю та здійснює його постановку. Аби стати актором, людина повинна мати такі якості, як талант, творчість, добра фізична форма, бадьорість, здатність до адаптації, рішучість, самодисципліна, стійкість, вміння працювати в колективі, універсальність, сильний поставлений голос, сценічні вміння, готовність їздити у відрядження і працювати у приміщенні та просто неба, зацікавленість професією актора, досвід роботи в аматорському драматичному гуртку або в народному театрі, диплом театального училища. Аби фахово зростати до головніших ролей і одержувати їх, актори мають вчити тексти своїх ролей, вдихати життя в персонажі, яких вони грають, вивчати їхні характери, готуватися до прослуховування, ходити на них, брати участь у постановках, постійно підтримувати високий акторський рівень, демонструвати власні вміння театральним агентам.

## PART 3

### THE OPENING NIGHT

Help James do some other tasks by Lappy.

1. What kind of things do people pay attention to when they describe the performance they have seen (e.g. scenery, costumes, actors' performance ...)?



2. For questions 1-20, read the text below and then decide which word best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Broadway shows still have \_\_\_\_\_ (0) official openings, but the critics are nowhere in sight. Since the 1980s, New York critics have \_\_\_\_\_ (1) to catch late previews, experiencing a show with something closer to a normal \_\_\_\_\_ (2) and allowing them a few days to \_\_\_\_\_ (3) their reviews. However, these reviews cannot be made public until the official opening night.

Openings are still terribly exciting backstage. Flowers, gifts and \_\_\_\_\_ (4) telegrams are received. Spirits run high, and good wishes of the traditional "break a leg" \_\_\_\_\_ (5) are exchanged. Just before curtain time, directors give the cast a final pep talk, and the "Gypsy Robe" \_\_\_\_\_ (6) takes place. These robes are plain canvas material, and are passed on from one Broadway musical to the next. The most senior dancer in the chorus \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the current robe around the stage to bring good luck. Before passing it on to the next production, the cast embroiders a memento on the robe. When all the space on a robe is used up, it is retired and a new one starts from \_\_\_\_\_ (8). Several of these robes are \_\_\_\_\_ (9) by the Museum of the City of New York's Theater Collection.

Playbill adds a top line to the main credit page announcing "OPENING NIGHT" and stating the date. The producers and a mostly invited audience (in larger houses, some seats may be sold to the public) dress in their finest and give the show (no matter how good or bad) an enthusiastic reception. In recent years, it has become \_\_\_\_\_ (10) for all shows to receive a standing \_\_\_\_\_ (11) on opening night. However, it is not too hard to tell the difference between an audience that leaps to its feet in delight and people who are just standing up to slip into their coats.

For publicity purposes, the producers make the opening night party as \_\_\_\_\_ (12) as possible. Everyone involved with the show is invited for food and (usually) an open bar. The \_\_\_\_\_ (13) can be a restaurant, a hotel ballroom, or something more exotic. The opening night party for *Rent* was held on the covered ice rink at the Chelsea Piers athletic center - people kept complaining about cold feet! The \_\_\_\_\_ (14) of the evening comes when the reviews arrive, especially the all-important New York Times review. When the reviews are enthusiastic, the producers find a microphone and read out the \_\_\_\_\_ (15) to delighted cheers. The better the reviews, the better the remainder of the party. If the reviews are less than glowing, they will be \_\_\_\_\_ (16) selectively. \_\_\_\_\_ (17) bad reviews cause all microphones to disappear. The papers are either quietly passed around or \_\_\_\_\_ (18) ignored while most guests figure out how to make \_\_\_\_\_ (19) exits. Die-hards mob the bar and drown their \_\_\_\_\_ (20) as they loudly proclaim, "Well, / loved it!"

0	A	glamorous	B	attractive	C	good-looking	D	sophisticated
1	A	picked	B	decided on	C	opted	D	gone for
2	A	listeners	B	audience	C	addressees	D	meeting
3	A	polish	B	shine	C	rub	D	sparkle
4	A	congratulatory	B	backslapping	C	congruent	D	fitting
5	A	diversity	B	selection	C	brand	D	variety
6	A	service	B	ritual	C	routine	D	convention
7	A	parades	B	shows off	C	marches	D	files
8	A	scrape	B	cut	C	graze	D	scratch
9	A	protected	B	defended	C	preserved	D	carried on
10	A	expected	B	customary	C	regular	D	conventional
11	A	acclaim	B	approval	C	praise	D	ovation
12	A	lavish	B	bountiful	C	abundant	D	plentiful
13	A	pride	B	vernacular	C	sport	D	venue
14	A	peak	B	climax	C	height	D	summit
15	A	rages	B	shouts	C	raves	D	rambles
16	A	quoted	B	quoted	C	quitted	D	quilted
17	A	outsight	B	outgoing	C	outside	D	outright
18	A	transparently	B	patiently	C	blatantly	D	obviously
19	A	unconscious	B	inconspicuous	C	inconsistent	D	unconstructive
20	A	mourning	B	sorrows	C	dilemma	D	discord

**3. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below with the words you have chosen in the previous exercise.**

1. The playwright has managed to avoid any sentimental stereotypes, and this strengthens the play's  
 2. As part of the \_\_\_\_\_, everyone comes up to the priest and kisses his hand. 3. The door opened, and he stepped  
 aside behind it, trying to look \_\_\_\_\_. 4. The day was filled with sweat, heartache and \_\_\_\_\_. 5. This is  
 a new \_\_\_\_\_ back  
 of musicals; they are showing it for the first time. 6. One by one the actors and actresses  
 onstage for an encore. 7. The reviewers are asked to be objective; \_\_\_\_\_ criticism has no place here. 8. On the  
 stage he was so handsome and \_\_\_\_\_, and here he looked old and shabby. 9. He doubted that the play will appeal  
 to American \_\_\_\_\_. 10. The spectators' reaction can range from mild disapproval  
 the theatre company split, she to \_\_\_\_\_ hostility. 11. When  
 to stay with the older generation. 12.  
 He built up his reputation by \_\_\_\_\_ from the critics, especially for danc-  
 witty paradoxes from Oscar Wilde's plays. 13. The new musical got \_\_\_\_\_ messages  
 ing. 14. Even an ordinary play can be \_\_\_\_\_ in the right hands to become a masterpiece. 15.  
 have been coming in ever since the opening night. 16. The premiere performance will take place at a 2000 seat  
 concert \_\_\_\_\_. 17. She had built the new theatre up from \_\_\_\_\_. 18. Besides the \_\_\_\_\_ scenery, the play  
 stood out for excellent music. 19. The prima donna performed with her \_\_\_\_\_ brilliance. 20. The enthusiastic  
 audience gave the actors and actresses a warmhearted standing \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the performance. 21. The  
 theatre building is part of town's history and should be \_\_\_\_\_.

**4. You will read a review of Linda Bitera who attended the opening night of a touring company performance. For questions 1-14 complete the statements below.**

The name of the touring company is \_\_\_\_\_ (1)  
 The reviewer rated the touring company as \_\_\_\_\_ (2)  
 The company has operated for \_\_\_\_\_ The tour won't be over until \_\_\_\_\_ (3)  
 The company's repertoire includes \_\_\_\_\_ (4)  
 The beginning of the performance was \_\_\_\_\_ The good thing in the first act included \_\_\_\_\_ The second act was \_\_\_\_\_ (5)  
 The good thing in the second act included \_\_\_\_\_ (6)  
 The best dancer of the performance was \_\_\_\_\_ (7)  
 Iris Bridge's gifts include \_\_\_\_\_ (8)  
 David Stockton's drawbacks include \_\_\_\_\_ (9)  
 The bad thing in the fourth act was \_\_\_\_\_ (10)  
 The reviewer's overall impression was \_\_\_\_\_ (11)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (12)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (13) 9  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (14)







### SWAN LAKE PERFORMANCE

The New Horizons Ballet Theatre may lack the cachet of the world's leading companies, but it leads the pack of second-tier international classical companies that regularly hit our shores.

Founded in 1994 by the young impresario Francois Lupin, the New Horizons Ballet Theatre has just launched a British tour that will last until mid-February. The repertory includes *The Nutcracker*, *The Sleeping Beauty* and *La Bayadere*, but pride of place goes to *Swan Lake*.

The opening night got off on slightly the wrong foot with a first act that appeared drably designed and hesitantly danced on a seemingly shrunken stage in the vast Albert Hall. Alan Shiver's dynamic jester, however, was a consistent bright spot. There was also a pleasing pas-de-trois from Sabina Hightower, Diana Fox and Andrew Johnson, the latter offering luscious jumps in his solo variations.

Expectations were raised higher, and fulfilled, by a second act set against an illustration of a windswept lakeside. Here the female corps seemed to move with the same breath, while the company orchestra responded sensitively to Alexander Cord's baton.

All of this was in support of the New Horizons Ballet Theatre's star attraction, Iris Bridge. Trained at the International Ballet Academy, the 25-year-old is a real artist whose gifts include expressive arms, a pliant torso and a meltingly slow, expansive yet detailed style that draws us, and David Stockton's Siegfried, right to her. Recently nominated for a National Dance Award as best female dancer by the UK critics, Iris Bridge is a dream of an Odette.

Adagio dancing suits her temperament, but she was no slouch in a fast and fancily gilded third act. Wearing a broad smile, and with two horn-like feathers in her hair, she whipped through Odile's famous 32 fouettes at full throttle.

David Stockton, an attentive partner, lacks Iris Bridge's magnetism. His prince was a bit of a cardboard mama's boy. Although his landings were notably light, he was not always as sure-footed as could be wished. Gilbert Fanton's Rothbart, meanwhile, was a tiny menace.

In the fourth act Iris Bridge, wrapped in tragic melancholia, surrendered to the faintly ridiculous happy ending left over from the Soviet era's ballet interpretation. Despite the wet finish, the evening was a triumph for her.

#### 5. Look through the text again. Find the words and word combinations meaning:

reputation; group; lower level; visit; tour organiser; start a tour; the best thing; start badly; cheerlessly; uncertainly; too small; huge; clown; constant; something good in a bad situation; dancing piece for three ballerinas; delicious; situated in; inhospitable; women's dancing group; progress in unison; react; thoughtfully; conductor's stick; person who gives the best performance; easy-to-read; elastic; upper body; unrestrained; recommend; slow piece of music; slump; in a sophisticated way; finish quickly; as fast as possible; be short of; very thick paper; weak man; able to walk without falling in dangerous places; threat; enveloped; slightly; silly; pathetic end; victory.

6. From the review in exercise 4 write out the adjectives and word combinations that are used to describe the company, the characters and the actors.

The touring company	
Positive	Negative
The performance	
Positive	Negative
The actors and acting	
Positive	Negative

## REVIEWS

**Content:** A short description of a play.

**Language:** Formal or semi-formal, depending on the person it is intended for

**Grammar:** Use Present Tenses and a variety of adjectives

**Structure:** 3 parts: an introduction, a main body, a conclusion.

**Content of the parts:** The **introduction** (paragraph 1) provides the background information of the theatre company, the theatre building, the type of play, the setting, the main characters and actors etc); the **main body** presents the main points of the play in chronological order (paragraph 2) and comments on acting, directing, plot, character development etc (paragraph 3); in the **conclusion** (paragraph 4) the reviewer recommends or does not recommend seeing the play, giving some reasons.

7. Read the review on page 98, identify its components and then fill in the corresponding category in the table with the words from the text.

Introduction

Main points of the plot

General comments

Conclusion



## MADAGASCAR

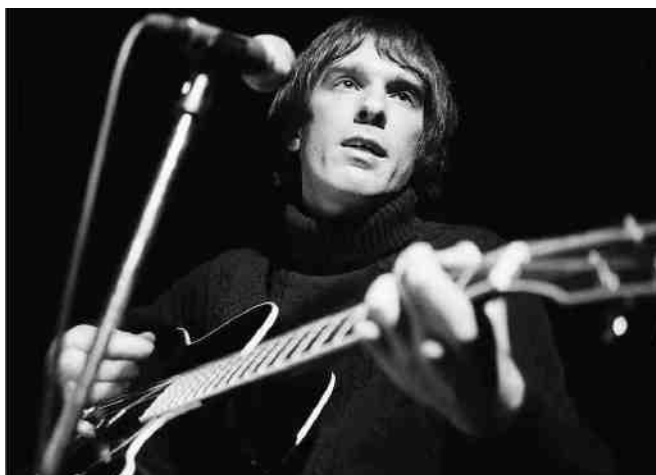
This new play, from one of the directors of *Antz*, is suitable for family viewing, but will likely hold the attention of kids more firmly than adults. Despite the occasionally amusing line or instance of innuendo, there's not much here for a mature audience, and that's one of *Madagascar's* failings. It's hard to see this play appealing to the same broad audience as the previous productions.

The story begins in New York's Central Park zoo, where Alex the Lion (Ben Zigler) is the star attraction. His best friend, Marty the Zebra (Chris Rockefeller), is tired of captivity, and dreams of running free in the wild. When Marty manages to escape, Alex proceeds into Manhattan in pursuit. With him are Melman the Giraffe (David Swimmer) and Gloria the Hippo (Jane Smith). The animals are captured and, after being deemed too dangerous for captivity, shipped off to an animal preserve in Kenya. On the way, however, the plot, which is generally rather boring, has an unexpected twist, when the boat is hijacked by penguins bound for Antarctica, who drop our brave quartet off at Madagascar. There, they are befriended by a tribe of lemurs and the play reaches a dramatic climax with Alex beginning to go savage when his daily diet of steaks is denied to him.

The acting and vocal work in *Madagascar* are as disappointing as in its screen version. While there's nothing wrong with the computer-like animals, they are a step back from some of the theatre's recent efforts. Background detail isn't as rich and there's an exaggeratedly cartoonish appearance to the animals. The characters in the more traditionally staged *The Lion King* looked better. Meanwhile, the voices are non-descript. With the possible exceptions of Chris Rockefeller and Cedric the Entertainer (as one of the lemurs), the creatures inhabiting this play could have been voiced by almost anyone.

*Madagascar* will make money because parents are always on the look-out for "safe" family items, and, in general, the production meets that criterion. The problem here is that, while there's nothing offensive about this play, it's not especially entertaining. I often judge how compelling a play is by how many times I glance at my watch. With *Madagascar*, that number was higher than it should be for a performance of a relatively short running length. With so many other options available, my advice is to give this play a pass and rent it when it's available on video. At least then, if you or the kids get bored through the long stretches in which nothing happens, the fast-forward button is close at hand.

**8. Read the following review and put the paragraphs in correct order. Add some new words to the corresponding categories in the table in exercise 7.**



### SATIN AND STEEL

A I

Sara Poyzer as Teena shines, excellently portraying the growth of Teena from a gauche novice in a club competition to the superstar who has it all. Her skill is to do this with the merest look and gesture, which has all the world in it. Her acting talent as well as her singing voice is exhilarating and the interaction between her and Norman Pace has chemistry.

B I

This is the Northwest premiere of a romantic bitter-sweet comedy so tuned into music that it makes your feet tap and your body want to dance.

The production is a collaboration between the Octagon and Nottingham Playhouse which brings together the on-stage partnership of Norman Pace and Sara Poyzer in a fizzing and sizzling story of rags to riches and back again.

C I

This is a visit to a club as well as the theatre so it is double value for your ticket price. It made me laugh and cry and I had to struggle to stop myself bopping in the aisles. I really enjoyed it.

D I

Having loved the comedic talent of Norman Pace from way back in his partnership with Gareth Hale, it was a surprise to know that he is a very talented actor and a good singer as well. As club land sensation 'the Vince Steel Experience' Vince lacks a certain something that will take his act out of the clubs to the highlife of London, when into a karaoke competition in the club comes Teena Satin and the last piece of the jigsaw falls into place.

## 9. Write a review of a performance you have seen recently. Use the expressions listed below.

**Background:** This well-staged/fascinating play tells the story of... The play is set in... The script was written by... The play is directed by... The play is based upon... It is a drama/tragedy/melodrama/comedy...

**Main points of the plot:** The play begins with/concerns/is about... The plot/play focuses on... The plot is rather trivial/interesting/exciting/thrilling... The plot has an unexpected twist... The plot reaches a dramatic/humorous climax...

**General comments:** The play is rather confusing/long/slow/dynamic/full of thrilling moments... The script is poorly written/clever/dull... The cast is brilliant/unconvincing/weak/awful... The play has a funny/surprising/unexpected/sad/tragic end...

**Recommendations:** Don't miss it. It will change the way you see life... The play is well worth seeing... I highly recommend seeing it... It is bound to be a box-office hit... It is a highly entertaining play... I would not recommend it as... It's a waste of time... It's a bore to watch... Give it a pass...

## 10. Translate

Недавні літні гастролі Національного театру імені Івана Франка у Харкові виявилися ефектними. Успіх був очевидний - переповнені зали, палкі глядачі, бурхливі овації стоячи, вітальні телеграми, розкішні афіші, майстерна реклама, захоплені відзиви критиків, а також відчуття справжньої театральної енергетики.

Десять спектаклів (як на сьогодні - це величезний гастрольний репертуар) є різними за стилем і жанром постановками, з яких глядачам є що вибирати. Тут історичний екскурс - наприклад, легендарні постановки Сергія Данченка, які пройшли серйозне випробування часом ("Украдене щастя" з зірковим Ступкою, талант якого незмінно виблискує в ролі Миколи Задорожного понад чверть століття). Тут і сучасні театральні талановиті, хоча й неоднозначні режисерські експерименти. Дехто, приміром, може не прийняти нове прочитання "Наталки Полтавки" Котляревського із сучасними аранжуваннями Олега Скрипки, музика якого змушує ритунувати в такт, а тіло так і рветься піти в танок - молодь ледве стримувалася, аби не затанцювати в проходах. Відмінне музичне оформлення вистави взагалі заслуговує на окрему відзнаку. Такі новації укріпили переконання, що канонізувати класику не завжди доцільно, особливо якщо театр прагне бути почутим (і побаченим) молодим глядачем. Інша річ, що, освоюючи нову сценічну мову, не можна втрачати художню міру. Здається, що режисер франківської "Наталки" Олександр Ануров усе ж таки уникнув елементарного спрощення в нехитрій історії кохання героїв Котляревського, прикрасивши сюжет новими ритмічними музично-дійовими обертонами. Тетяна Міхіна, що створила образ Наталки, про яку можна тільки мріяти, впевнено лідирує у жвавому молодіжному ансамблі - її вокальні дані і акторський талант просто вражають (залишається тільки пошкодувати, що харківська сцена втратила настільки яскраву індивідуальність). Успіх "Наталки Полтавки" у Харкові виявився без перебільшення приголомшливим. Два покази - два триумфальних вечори. Втім, глядачі настільки ж радо приймали й інші спектаклі театру, не шкодуючи оплесків для Богдана Ступки, Наталі Лотоцької, Анатолія Хостікоєва, Наталі Сумської і багатьох інших акторів. Деколи було враження, що якась потужна енергетична хвиля любові до справжнього театру довго накопичувалася у душах харківських глядачів - і коли їхні очікування справдилися, ця хвиля рантом вихлопнулася назовні шквалом овацій.

Молодий режисер і актор театру Олександр Білозуб поставив тонкий, оригінальний музичний спектакль "Соло-міа", що розповідає про драматичну долю великої української співачки Соломії Крушельницької. І тут виявилися відкриття - Поліна Лазова, Лариса Руснак, Олександр Формаичук. Ці актори, здатні самим лише поглядом чи жестом передати будь-що на світі, є досить органічними в заданому режисером пластичному та підкреслено естетському сценічному середовищі, демонструючи нові, колись приховані можливості труп.

Гастролі театру ім. Івана Франка ще раз підтвердили, що репертуарний театр - це цінна і значуща модель вітчизняної сцени. Тут творчу стратегію колективу визначає режисер. Адже будь-який репертуарний театр складається з десятків людей, не завжди об'єднаних однією творчою ідеєю. І забезпечити їм цікаве творче життя може тільки розумне регулювання цього процесу.

Харківські гастролі франківців переконливо показали, який же в нас чудовий, тонкий і розумний глядач. Виявляється, цей глядач, котрого постійно годують маскультовою вульгарністю, усе-таки може відрізнати справжнє від підробки.

## LESSON 2

### THEY JUST KEPT ROLLING ALONG

#### PART1



1. Match the verbs and adjectives in column A with their antonyms in column B.

Verbs		Adjectives	
A		A	B
1. command	a. repel, revolt	1. perennial	a. glorious
2. lure	b. take off (a play)	2. annual	b. primitive
3. feature	c. stay behind	3. notorious	c. one-day
4. run	d. take, waste	4. elaborate	d. depressed
5. produce	e. hold back, hush up	5. elated	e. daily
6. predict	f. fail		
7. outstrip	g. lose		
8. reap	h. have a small part		

Match the nouns in column A with their synonyms in column B.

NOUNS	
A	B
1. revenue	a. rival
2. show	b. renewal, reappearance
3. audience	c. earnings, profit
4. contender	d. distinguished person
5. celebrity	e. performance
6. holdover	f. boards
7. revival	g. extremely popular (film, show)
8. stage	h. spectators
9. megabit	i. postponement
B	



**2. Match the words in column A in Activity 1 with the definitions below.**

a. income	i. famous or honoured person	q. competitor
b. deserve and get	j. have a prominent part for	r. attract, tempt
c. kind of public entertainment	k. raised platform on which actors appear	s. bring before the public, put on the stage
d. coming or happening every year	l. carefully prepared and finished, complicated	t. continuing throughout the whole year, lasting for a very long time
e. something that has an extraordinary success with the audience	m. coming back into use or knowledge, to strength or an earlier state	u. gathering of people for the purpose of hearing a speaker, singer, etc.
f. do better than somebody, overtake somebody in a race	n. widely known (especially for something bad)	v. gather in a crop, profit
g. high-spirited	o. tell in advance	
h. have a series of performances	p. moving an event to a later date	

**3. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 1.**

1. After a visit to the conservatory she always feels \_\_\_\_\_ and inspired. 2. I like films that \_\_\_\_\_ Bruce Willis, because he is my favourite actor. 3. How could you let this upstart \_\_\_\_\_ you in your run for the position? 4. Nobody could predict this low-budget thriller to become a \_\_\_\_\_. 5. This film is the number-one \_\_\_\_\_ for the Academy Awards this year. 6. No one can explain the \_\_\_\_\_ success of this show - it's been running for 2 decades already! 7. Do you happen to know who was invited to \_\_\_\_\_ this overhyped play in our theatre? 8. This issue will be raised at the \_\_\_\_\_ meeting of the shareholders. 9. She went on the \_\_\_\_\_ at the age of 19 and has become a living legend for the 40 years spent at the theatre. 10. It's one of the best \_\_\_\_\_ I've seen lately. 11. Agatha Christie's "Mousetrap" has been \_\_\_\_\_ with considerable success for over 60 years, longer than many other plays. 12. He is \_\_\_\_\_ the rewards he doesn't deserve - he hasn't stirred a finger to produce this sensation! 13. His books have always been considered to be too high-brow - they're too \_\_\_\_\_ for an average reader. 14. Another \_\_\_\_\_ of the pay will drive the actors crazy. 15. His unique voice is what \_\_\_\_\_ admirers from all over the world to his concerts. 16. All the \_\_\_\_\_ of the London theatre took part in the ceremony. 17. Critics \_\_\_\_\_ a good harvest of awards for the film at the annual Academy ceremony. 18. Despite all the actors' efforts, the \_\_\_\_\_ remained indifferent. 19. Now we can witness the \_\_\_\_\_ of the national theatre in Ukraine. 20. The newspapers are full of articles about this \_\_\_\_\_ director and his latest erotic show. 21. The producers are utterly disappointed - the \_\_\_\_\_ is much lower than they expected. 22. The show \_\_\_\_\_ the success it has with the audience.

**READING**

**4. Read the headline of the article below. What do you think the article is about? Explain your answer.**

# **THEY JUST KEPT ROLLING ALONG**

**5. Read the subtitle of the same article below. Can you answer the question?**

**On sudden-death Broadway, what makes musicals  
like *Cats* and *Les Miserables* so durable -  
and why do they last so much longer than hits of the past?**

**6. You are going to read the article by W. A. Henry III from the *Time* on Broadway musicals. 6 fragments have been removed from the article. Choose from the fragments (A- F) the one that fits each gap (0-5). There is an example at the beginning (0).**

A	almost never feature anyone with a significant recognition factor	
B	and others in the industry believe they will	
C	as for more than a third of the tourists who visit the city	0
D	noteworthy only because of its gay theme	
E	especially because the show is so elaborate	
F	and almost a third of the revenues	



0. When the Nygaard family of Cupertino, Calif, went to New York City for vacation this month, they didn't visit the Statue of Liberty\* or the Empire State Building\*. For them, \_\_\_\_\_, the lure was the Broadway\* stage. They had already seen *Cats* twice and *Les Miserables* three times, mostly in London and San Francisco, so they headed straight for *The Phantom of the Opera* and *Miss Saigon*. They emerged elated-and ready, despite the \$100 ticket prices, to go back and see the shows again.

**0 Fragment:**

1. The Nygaards and their fellow out-of-towners, from Omaha\* or Oslo\* or Osaka\*, account for nearly half of Broadway's ticket sales. They go in search of brand names. Although the season that ended June 2 offered 28 new shows and 21 holdovers (some admittedly short-lived), the perennial Big Three-Cate, *Phantom* and *LesMiz*-accounted for a quarter of the audience \_\_\_\_\_. On the road, where commercial theater reaps much more income than on Broadway, the Big Three were even more dominant: of \$449 million in average ticket sales in each of the last two years, they commanded about 54%. (For investors, these shows are better than striking oil: they pay annual returns of up to double the amount originally put in.) Among newer offerings, only *Miss Saigon*, which arrived in March to a record \$37 million advance sale and has already paid off half its \$11 million start-up cost, is regarded as a solid contender to join the gilded trinity.

**Fragment:**

2. The top three shows have become institutions, seemingly permanent in a business that is notoriously ephemeral. They attract more excited younger audiences than most other Broadway shows, including many first-time theatergoers, and draw a volume of repeat business more common for kiddie films or rock bands. In a celebrity-conscious world, the Big Three are star-proof and \_\_\_\_\_. Yet *Cats*, which advertises itself as "now and forever," will celebrate its ninth anniversary on Broadway in October, having run longer than its main rivals *Oklahoma!* and *The Sounds of Music* put together. *LesMiz*, at 4,5 years, will soon pass *South Pacific*, while *Phantom*, at 3,5 years, is way ahead of *Guys and Dolls* and *Annie Get Your Gun*.

**Fragment:**

3. This popularity seems unwavering. Cameron Mackintosh, who produced all three and also *Miss Saigon*, projects that *Cats* "will run another two years or so in New York." He predicts "four to five years" of additional life for *Les Miserables* and "certainly at least five years" more for *Phantom*. About *Saigon*, he says it is too soon to tell, \_\_\_\_\_. "With weekly operating costs close to \$500,000," says Mackintosh, "*Miss Saigon* only breaks even when it makes what *LesMiz* does selling every seat."

**fragment:**

4. Producers have always dreamed of long runs, but the semi-eternal run is a phenomenon of recent years. The four most enduring Broadway shows - *A Chorus Line* (6,137 performances), the revival of *Oh! Calcutta!* (5,959), *Cats* (3,709 through last week) and *42nd Street* (3,486) - attained all or most of their runs during the '80s. If Mackintosh's projects prove right (\_\_\_\_\_), *Les Miz* and *Phantom* will outstrip *Hello, Dolly!* and *My Fair Lady* for the ninth and 10th spots among all-time long-runners.

**fragment:**

5. Yet the phenomenon reaches beyond Mackintosh's megabits. *Me and My Girl*, a '30s Cockney\* farce that no one bothered to revive or import until the mid-'80s, ran longer than the revered, Pulitzer-prize\* winning *How to Succeed in Business Without Really Trying* a quarter-century before. *La Cage aux Voiles*, \_\_\_\_\_, played nearly half again as long as the exquisite *The King and I*.

**Fragment:**



**NOTES**

- Statue of Liberty - a bronze figure (almost 150 ft high) of a woman holding up a torch, on Liberty Island in New York harbor, designed by Bartholdi
- Empire State Building - a skyscraper (1,250 ft high, 102 stories) in

Manhattan, New York City, built in 1930

- Broadway - a street in New York, famous for its theatres
- Omaha - the largest city (c. 336,000) in Nebraska on the Missouri river
- Oslo - the capital of Norway
- Osaka - the second largest city (c.2,700,000) in Japan

- Cockney - a dialect spoken in London or a Londoner who speaks it
- Pulitzer-prize - a monetary prize (\$3,000) which has been awarded annually in the USA since 1917 for distinction in journalism, letters and music

**7. Analysis of ideas and relationships. Circle the letter next to the best answer.**

1. Paragraph 0 is about
  - a) New York sights;
  - b) Broadway shows;
  - c) lures of New York;
  - d) vacations in New York.
2. In paragraph 1 the author says that
  - a) out-of-towners bring the greater part of revenues to theaters;
  - b) theatre has become very profitable;
  - c) new shows are not a great success with the audience;
  - d) commercial theatres have to go on the road to pay off start-up costs.
3. It is mentioned in paragraph 2 that
  - a) theatrical performances are ephemeral;
  - b) you can hardly ever see a star in the top shows;
  - c) young people have to see some shows several times;
  - d) *Guy and Dolls* has had a very long run.
4. According to the author (paragraph 3)
  - a) *Miss Saigon* is too sophisticated;
  - b) *Miss Saigon's* operating cost are about \$ 2 mln. per month;
  - c) all Mackintosh's shows are sure to have a long run;
  - d) *Les Miz* can hardly break even with *Miss Saigon*.
5. In paragraph 4 the author tells us that
  - a) not all the shows are enduring;
  - b) semi-eternal run is sometimes better than a long run;
  - c) the most successful shows have thousands of performances;
  - d) Mackintosh has a real talent.
6. In paragraph 5 the author claims that
  - a) success of the show is not always explicable;
  - b) phenomenon of eternal runs is not new;
  - c) Pulitzer Prize is a guarantee of success;
  - d) gay theme may guarantee the show's success.

**8. Explain the meaning of the following words in the text.**

fellow out-of-towners (paragraph 0), brand names (paragraph 1), on the road (paragraph 1), ticket sales (paragraph 1), commercial theater (paragraph 1), striking oil (paragraph 1), originally (paragraph 1), advance sale (paragraph 1), start-up cost (paragraph 1), gilded trinity (paragraph 1), shows have become institutions (paragraph 2), repeat business (paragraph 2), kiddie films (paragraph 2), rock bands (paragraph 2), celebrity-conscious world (paragraph 2), star-proof (paragraph 2), significant recognition factor (paragraph 2), will soon pass (paragraph 2), is way ahead of (paragraph 2), operating costs (paragraph 3), close to (paragraph 3), all-time long-runners (paragraph 4), Cockney farce (paragraph 5), gay theme (paragraph 5),

**9. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 8.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the play had the title "Warriors", which was later changed at the suggestion of the director. 2. Several pop singers and \_\_\_\_\_ took part in the concert on the central square of the city. 3. Very often consumers are attracted by well-known \_\_\_\_\_, and not so much by the price of the goods. 4. Having no donations from the state, only a \_\_\_\_\_ can survive nowadays. 5. Our actors spend the greater part of their year \_\_\_\_\_, visiting different cities and countries. 6. The investors are disappointed as the revenues are barely \_\_\_\_\_. 7. The film is absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ - not a single celebrity! 8. We live in a \_\_\_\_\_, especially when it comes to the world of fashion and art. 9. The \_\_\_\_\_ of tickets for the latest show by the notorious director shows audience's growing interest in his work. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ featuring animals are extremely popular. 11. Never before have we dealt with such a high \_\_\_\_\_ - almost \$200 mln. 12. *Cats, Phantom, Les Miz* - is there anyone who has never heard of these \_\_\_\_\_. 13. No doubt, many of these pop groups with voiceless singers \_\_\_\_\_. 14. I would have never believed that theatre can be as profitable as \_\_\_\_\_. 15. Critics often say that this director \_\_\_\_\_.

## 10. Find in the text the phrasal verbs meaning

head for	aim to travel in the direction of
	to be or give a reason for
	place one's money in something in the hope of profit
	pay the whole of (a debt)
	have hope for
	combine
	spread to something else
	keep going; continue without stopping

## 11. Complete the sentences below with the verbs from activity 10.

1. Upon his arrival in Milan, he \_\_\_\_ La Scala to secure tickets for the evening performance. 2. Despite all the criticism of experts in press, the show just keeps \_\_\_\_, drawing crowds. 3. When staging the play, he couldn't even \_\_\_\_ such a long run for it. 4. The producer was warned against \_\_\_\_ his money \_\_\_\_ the film, made by this notorious director. 5. The director could not \_\_\_\_ the failure of the show that had cost so much money and effort. 6. He got more money for this role than all the other actors \_\_\_\_\_. 7. How soon do you hope to \_\_\_\_ the mortgage?

## 12. Find in the text the words meaning:

Any period of rest and freedom from work (paragraph 0), directly, without delay (paragraph 0), looking thoroughly at, for or into sth, examination, investigation (paragraph 1), without denial by general recognition (paragraph 1), quantity, total sum (paragraph 1), view as (paragraph 1) apparently (paragraph 2), large mass, amount or quantity (paragraph 2), show neither profit nor loss (paragraph 3); deserving to be noted, remarkable (paragraph 5), remarkable or unusual person, thing, happening etc (paragraph 5).

## 13. Complete the sentences below with the words whose definitions were given in Activity 12.

1. We need to raise 5,000 \$ for each performance just to \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Though \_\_\_\_\_ quiet, she was tense and concentrated. 3. \_\_\_\_\_, our company spends more time on road than in our home theatre. 4. Critics can't explain the \_\_\_\_\_ of his having been the most popular playwright for 2 decades already. 5. After classes she always goes \_\_\_\_\_ home. 6. They invested \$100 mln into the project and have already returned half the \_\_\_\_\_. 7. You won't find him in town - he's on \_\_\_\_\_ in Florida. 8. Though the \_\_\_\_\_ of work has increased considerably, the salary remains the same. 9. About a hundred policemen and volunteers spent the night in the forest in \_\_\_\_\_ of the missing child. 10. This show is \_\_\_\_\_ not only because of the brilliant actors engaged in it. 11. The director \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ the best candidature for the leading part in his musical. 12. His fame \_\_\_\_\_ far \_\_\_\_\_ our country.

## 14. Find in the text the synonyms and antonyms to the following words.

**Synonyms: Verbs:** command; lure (2); feature; run; produce; predict; outstrip (2); reap (3);

**Adjectives:** perennial (5); annual; elaborate; elated;

**Nouns:** revenue(3); show; audience; contender; celebrity; revival; stage; megabit;

**Antonyms:** perennial (2); produce; holdover; notorious.

## 15. Translate the following words and word-combinations using the collocation table, on page 105.

**1. Театр:** у ляльковому театрі; квиток до літнього (відкритого) театру; ходити до музичного театру; те атральний критик; постановка молодіжного вуличного театру; працювати в сучасному експериментальному театрі; вивчати класичний театр; переповнений театр; трупа маленького аматорського театру; продюсер комерційного театру; режисер професійного театру; театральна публіка; працівники театру.

**2. Сцена:** робітник сцени; на сцені; піти зі сцени; сцена, що обертається; спектакль (постановка, вистава); головна роль; стати актором; помічник режисера; освистати; страх перед публікою (хвилювання перед виступом); з'явитися на сцені; сценічне ім'я; розставляти мізансцену; постановник; декорація; за кулісами.

**3. Ставити (спектакль):** ретельно, продумано.

**4. П'єса:** одноактна п'єса про ...; рецензувати різдвяну п'єсу; ставити музичну п'єсу; відвідати чудову п'єсу; драматична п'єса на тему моралі; телевізійна п'єса; містерія.

**5. Спектакль, вистава, шоу:** подивитися моно-спектакль; шоу бізнес (індустрія розваг); з популярного спектаклю; зірка шоу; у шоу бере участь...; ток-шоу; благодійна комедійна вистава; радіовистава; сімейна вистава; шоу у прямому ефірі (наживо); телевікторина.

**Study the collocation table and then proceed to the tasks**

<b>Noun</b>	<b>Adjectives</b>	<b>Verb + Word</b>	<b>Word + Noun</b>	<b>Preposition</b>	<b>Phrase</b>
<b>Theatre</b>	large/small; overcrowded/packed; open air, puppet; amateur/ commercial, professional; classical, street, contemporary/ modern, youth, experimental, music (al)	go to, visit, work in, study	ticket, production, audience, staff, producer, director, company, group, critic	at a/the ~; in a/the ~	
<b>Stage (n)</b>	center (fig), revolving	go on, take, leave, boo somebody off, set	manager, direction, play, production, show, set, name, fright	off-on-	
<b>Stage (v)</b>	carefully, elaborately				
<b>Play (n)</b>	one-act; drama, television; musical, miracle, morality, mystery, nativity	review, give, put on, attend, go to		~ about	
<b>Show (n)</b>	live, family, popular, radio, TV, charily, talk, quiz, comedy, musical, one-man, somebody's own	see, watch, feature somebody, star somebody	business	from a/the ~; in a/the ~; on a/the ~ (only about radio and TV shows)	the star of the-
<b>Act (n)</b>	opening, first, last, variety			In the ~	
<b>Act (v)</b>	brilliantly, well, badly				
<b>Scene</b>	opening, climatic, final, dramatic, touching, battle, death, love	act, play, rehearse, run through, film shoot, change, take place, shift	change	In a/the ~; between ~ s	behind the scene
<b>Hit</b>	big, greatest, huge, real, smash, immediate, instant, box-office, chart	promote, create	album, film, movie, record, show, single, song, parade	-with	
<b>Acting</b>	brilliant, excellent, good, poor, wooden	do	career, profession		

**6. Акт, дія, номер:** у першому/останньому акті; виступ, що відкриває програму; танцювальний номер; номер програми вар'єте.

**7. Грати:** добре; погано; блискуче.

**8. Сцена, епізод, ява:** зміна сцени; знімати любовну сцену; між сценами битви та смерті; за лаштунками; в кульмінаційній сцені; дія переміщується ...; зіграти заключний епізод; репетирувати драматичну сцену, що розпочинає спектакль; зворушлива сцена має місце...; сцена змінюється.

**9. Хіт, щось дуже популярне, що має великий успіх:** створити дуже популярний альбом; хіт-парад; запис, дуже популярний серед молоді; надзвичайно популярний касовий фільм; сингл, що мав миттєвий успіх; рекламувати популярне шоу; пісня, що має величезний успіх; справжній хіт.

**10. Гра:** добра/погана гра; кар'єра актора; відмінна гра; акторська професія, блискуча гра; дерев'яна гра.

**16. Find in the text the words related to:**

1. titles of musicals: *Cats*,
2. description of musicals and the theater business: *run*,
3. people involved in the theater business: *producer*,
4. verbs used to describe the theater business: *produce*,

**17. Work in pairs. Use Activity 16. Add at least three words to each of categories 2-4. Discuss your additions with your partner. What is the subject of the article? What are the author's general feelings and attitudes to it? What arguments does he give to support his point of view? Do you agree? Why or why not?**

18. Work in pairs. Compare the popularity of musicals in the USA and Ukraine. Do you see any difference? What other genres of theatrical production are there in Ukraine? Which are the most popular ones? Give some examples.

19. Write a 200-word essay on your visit to the theatre. Read the explanations below first.

## WRITING FIRST-PERSON NARRATIVES

This is a piece of writing about the events that happened to you. It usually has three parts: (1) **an introduction** (1 paragraph) where you set the scene (time, place, who was involved) (2) **a main body** (several paragraphs) where you present the events in the order they happened; (3) **a conclusion** (1 paragraph) where you report the end of your story, yours or other people's feelings etc.

### Recommendations:

(1) Make your story interesting to make the readers go on reading; (2) Use past tenses; (3) Use a variety of adjectives and adverbs to make your story look better; (4) Give a catching title to your story; (5) Decide on the plot line before you start writing; (6) Present the events in the order they happened.

### To begin your story you may:

- ask a rhetorical question (e.g. *Why did I come here in the first place?*)
- refer to you feelings: (e.g. *I was elated as I was looking forward to the opera tonight*)
- address your reader: (e.g. *I am sure you know what it means to . . .*)
- use direct speech: (e.g. *'How about a night at the theatre?' , my boyfriend asked...*)
- refer to senses: (e.g. *The first thing I saw was the bright poster...*)

### To end your story you may:

- ask a rhetorical question (e.g. *Have you ever seen the Swan Lake?*)
- refer to you feelings: *{We were leaving, tired but happy}*
- address your reader: (e.g. *I am sure you would like it, too*)
- use direct speech: (e.g. *'How about next weekend?' , my boyfriend asked...*)
- describe the reaction to the event (e.g. *My boyfriend was happy, so was I*)

To report the events use linking words: *first, next, then, as, as soon as, before, while etc.*

## 18. Translate using your active vocabulary for the italicized words and word combinations.

1. Номер програми вар'єте, що розпочинав шоу, був поставлений дуже ретельно. 2. Він з дитинства мріяв про акторську професію, зараз працює в експериментальному театрі і ще не збирається залишати сцену. 3. Продюсери професійних театрів перш за все піклуються про прибутки. 4. Він і сам не сподівався, що його фільм буде мати такий касовий успіх. 5. Її батьки були акторами лялькового театру, тож її дитинство пройшло за кулісами, серед акторів, режисерів і працівників театру. 6. Зараз шоу-бізнес є надприбутковим. 7. Найвідоміші люди країни беруть участь у ток-шоу, присвячених актуальним проблемам сьогодення. 8. Їй вдалося блискуче зіграти заключну сцену. 9. Для сімейної вистави було обрано одноактну комедійну п'єсу. 10. Режисер вирішив знімати любовну сцену на тлі сонця, що сідає. 11. Він ніколи не стане актором, якщо не переборе свій страх перед публікою. 12. Усі його пісні миттєво стають популярними і надовго залишаються в хіт-парадах. 13. Робітники сцени мали швидко змінити декорації між сценами битви та смерті. 14. Труп цього маленького аматорського театру зараз працює над постановкою музичної п'єси. 15. Усі знають сценічне ім'я, яке він обрав, коли розпочинав акторську кар'єру. 16. Вона мріє стати постановником і зараз вивчає класичний театр. 17. Спеціально для проведення міжнародного пісенного конкурсу було побудовано сцену, що обертається, заввишки 15 метрів. 18. Подивитися моно-спектакль відомого актора прийшло багато його прихильників, і театр був переповнений. 19. Скільки б не коштували квитки до відкритого театру, я все одно хочу подивитися виступ цього співака. Усі його пісні дуже популярні серед молоді. 20. В останньому акті мізансцени були ретельно продуманими. 21. Зірка шоу відмовилася викопувати танцювальний номер. 22. Наближається Новий Рік, тож було б доречніше поставити різдвяну п'єсу, а не драматичну п'єсу на теми моралі. 23. Ця телевікторина залишається

популярною вже більше 20 років і завжди йде у прямому ефірі. 24. В Україні мюзикли ще не набули такої популярності як у США. 25. Навіть блискуча гра акторів не врятувала телевізійну виставу від провалу. 26. В місті пройшов фестиваль молодіжних вуличних театрів. 27. Немає тут\>\$Ємрекламувати це популярне шоу, на нього й так неможливо придбати квитки. 28. Коли він з 'явився на сцені у першому акті, його просто освистали. Театральна публіка не пробачила йому політичної зради. 29. Він довго працював помічником режисера, доки йому не запропонували місце режисера професійного театру, але у провінційному містечку. 30. Актори репетирували цю зворушливу сцену дуже довго, але режисер залишився незадоволеним. 31. Хто викопує головну роль в цій містерії] 32. Усі кошти від благодійної вистави будуть перераховані у фонд боротьби зі СНІДом. 33. У другому акті дія переміщується до саду, де зібралася вся родина.

**PART 2 AS**  
**ROBUST AS EVER**



**1. Match the verbs and adjectives in column A with their antonyms in column B.**

<b>Verbs</b>		<b>Adjectives</b>	
<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>
<b>1. veer</b>	a. talk out of	<b>1. effective</b>	a. careless
<b>2. enjoy</b>	b. decline, vanish	<b>2. hesitant</b>	b. present
<b>3. depict</b>	c. dislike, detest	<b>3. major</b>	c. resolute, determined
<b>4. market</b>	d. contradict, deny	<b>4. splendid</b>	d. alike, similar
<b>5. persuade</b>	e. pursue course	<b>5. memorable</b>	e. non-productive
<b>6. avoid</b>	f. give in your own words	<b>6. meticulous</b>	f. mediocre, unimpressive
<b>7. affirm</b>	g. confuse, distort	<b>7. shrewd</b>	g. unrelated, unimportant
<b>8. quote</b>	h. meet, encounter	<b>8. bygone</b>	h. minor



**9. arise**

i. buy

**9. relevant**

**10. customary**

**11. diverse**

i. ignorant, dull

j. unusual

k. worthless, insignificant

**Match the nouns in column A with their synonyms in column B.**

**Nouns**

**A**

**1. award**  
**2. review**  
**3. trademark**  
**4. staging**  
**5. artist**  
**6. album**  
**7. tune**  
**8. technique**  
**9. experience**

**B**

a. method  
b. disorganization  
c prize  
d. head  
f. charm, pull  
g. painter  
h. occurrence  
i. commerce  
j. words set to music

**A**

**10. marketing**  
**11. lyrics**  
**12. attraction**  
**13. spectator**  
**14. chairman**  
**15. mess**  
**16. critic**  
**17. event**

**B**

κ. melody  
l. practice, feeling  
m. production  
n. sb finding fault  
o. collection of songs  
p. viewer  
q. commentary  
r. distinguishing characteristics

## 2. Match the words in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| a. verses of a song  | m. disorder   | y. past   |
| b. convince  | n. get pleasure from  | z. change direction   |
| c. declare positively, state   | o. greater, more important                                      | aa. happening (usually important)                                     |
| d. allure, something pulling towards                                       | p. various, of different kinds                                  | bb. succession of related notes                                       |
| e. show, describe, paint   | q. fearful, full of doubt                                       | cc. escape, keep away from  |
| f. deserving to be remembered  | r. usual and generally accepted                                 | dd. way of achieving a purpose  |
| g. onlooker  | s. acute, intelligent, observant                                | ee. sell (in a market)  |
| h. repeat somebody else's words; give reference to                         | t. magnificent, brilliant, superb, dazzling                     | ff. knowledge or skill gained; sensation, episode                     |
| i. closely connected with what is happening or discussed                   | u. person, presiding at a meeting, president of a company       | gg. (method of) presenting a play on the stage of a theatre           |
| j. theory and practice of (large-scale) selling                            | v. something given or granted by official decision              | hh. person, practising one of the fine arts (esp. painting)           |
| k. person who forms and gives judgments, esp. about literature, art, music | w. long-playing record with several pieces by the same musician | ii. account of a new book, etc. for (newspaper and other) periodicals |
| l. showing great attention to details, precise                             | x. able to bring about the result intended                      | jj. come into existence, result from                                  |
| kk. design, special name, etc. used to                                     |   |   |

## 3. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 1 (Column A). distinguish a manufacture's goods from others

1. The \_\_\_\_ pointed out in his report that the company's sales had dropped dramatically. 2. Their hit \_\_\_\_ disappears from the shelves of the shops the moment it appears there. 3. To our surprise, the \_\_\_\_ spoke highly of the musical. 4. The \_\_\_\_ portion of time was spent on rehearsing the closing scene. 5. If you're incapable of \_\_\_\_ scenery and clothes your product, whatever it may be, you can't survive in the competition. 6. The \_\_\_\_ of the actors contrasted starkly with the shabby faded curtain. 7. If you fail to hush up the conflict in the company, serious problems may \_\_\_\_\_. 8. She had never been to a musical show before, so it was an absolutely new \_\_\_\_ for her. 9. He's been studying \_\_\_\_ for 3 years already and has managed to find a good job with a commercial company. 10. Though I didn't remember the lyrics, the \_\_\_\_ lingered in my mind the whole day. 11. A \_\_\_\_ on the goods is not always a guarantee of authenticity. 12. I'm ready to listen to any, even the most absurd, version, \_\_\_\_ to the case. 13. After his triumph as Hamlet he doesn't look a \_\_\_\_ amateur any more. 14. In the \_\_\_\_ days spectators were much more likely to see a tragedy than a comedy. 15. You won't be able to survive in the market without taking \_\_\_\_ measures. 16. Is it \_\_\_\_ for audience in your country to eat or drink during performances? 17. His stage remarks are always so \_\_\_\_ that sometimes it's quite annoying. 18. Though we sometimes find the same reflections in his latest books, it's clear that the author \_\_\_\_ from high-brow to low-brow fiction. 19. The actors knew nothing could avoid the \_\_\_\_ eyes of the critics attending the first night show. 20. Nobody can \_\_\_\_ her out of staging this play, though we're sure it'll end in a flop. 21. When asked about his work at the art theatre, he would tell about the \_\_\_\_ episode with the greatest director of those times. 22. I'm happy to hear you've \_\_\_\_ our new variety show. 23. The new production at the Drama Theatre is the chief \_\_\_\_ in the theatrical life of our city this year. 24. The repertoire of this amateur theatre is extremely \_\_\_\_ - from classical to vanguard. 25. You can't achieve a desired result if you don't know the \_\_\_\_ to do so. 26. Before the opening night the theatre was a \_\_\_\_, with everybody rushing back and forth busy with the last minute arrangements. 27. He's an \_\_\_\_ and he has his own very peculiar apprehension of the world. 28. I don't think the \_\_\_\_ go well with the tune. 29. "Titanic" won 11 Academy \_\_\_\_, including the one for the best director's work. 30. Rural population is often devoid of \_\_\_\_ of big cities - cinemas, theatres, fine shops, etc. 31. It's your task to follow all the \_\_\_\_ of our shows in the media and analyze them. 32. The \_\_\_\_ met the performers with a storm of applause. 33. His \_\_\_\_ are absolutely unique - you'll never mistake his work for anybody else's. 34. I've got dozens of posters \_\_\_\_ scenes from my favourite movies. 35. Do you happen to know that he is the author most frequently \_\_\_\_ from? 36. The theatre managed to \_\_\_\_ bankruptcy only by considerably reducing the operating costs. 37. The producer \_\_\_\_ that the company would have to spend several months on the road to return the money invested in the show.

## READING

1. You are going to read the second part of the article. Choose the best suitable heading from the list (A - G) to each part (0 - 5) of the article. There is one extra heading which you don't need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A	Visuality and interpersonal communication come first	
B	A novel tourist attraction	
C	Full of life and vigor	
D	Musicals: state of the art	0
E	Fascinated by the extraordinary	
F	A new media of promotion	
G	Theatre for everybody	

0. Are today's shows so much better? Not according to critics. Are they more obviously relevant? Hardly. *Cats* owes as much to bygone British music hall and pantomime as it does to rock. *LesMiz* and *Phantom* are stories of 19th century France told in traditional operatic style. Are they meticulously maintained, avoiding the decay of energy and skills that often besets long runs? Well, yes and no. Based on recent visits, *Phantom* and *LesMiz* are in splendid condition, better in some respects than on opening night. *Cats*, however, is a mess. The trademark feline movements erratically come and go. Most of the performers can dance, but only three or four sing adequately. Despite a deafening sound system, the diction is so bad that a spectator familiar with the lyrics often found them incomprehensible from the fourth row center.

### 0 **Headline: D**

1. What, then, accounts for the current era of long runs? One major factor is the rise of consumer air travel. Once tourism became another means of keeping up with the Joneses, or the Tanakas\*, seeing particular Broadway hits entered into the scorekeeping. Says Harvey Sabinson, executive director of the League of American Theaters and Producers: "It was not until at least the mid-'70s that we on Broadway began to think of ourselves as a tourist attraction and market that way. Once we did, it gave us a bigger audience and shows a longer life."

### **Headline:**

2. Another factor is the spread of TV commercials depicting action from shows. For the first time, the infrequent or hesitant theatergoer could get a tiny advance taste of the Broadway experience. The technique is effective, if costly. It arose, ironically, from Broadway's loss of musical influence. When its tunes were at the heart of the pop mainstream, Broadway enjoyed bountiful promotion via radio play both of original-cast albums and of recordings by other artists of the biggest ballads and showstoppers. As musical taste veered toward rock, however, producers had to find other lures. It turned out that showy staging and scenic spectacle were ideally suited to being sold via TV, so the look began to replace the score as a show's signature.

### **Headline:**

3. A third factor, shrewdly in keeping with the anti-elitist temper of the times, is Mackintosh's marketing. While most producers build their promotion around quoting reviews and citing awards, Mackintosh all but ignores critics. Instead he develops a memorable thematic image for each show-the stylized face of the waif Cosette for *LesMiz*, a shimmering white mask for *Phantom*, a big pair of yellow eyes amid darkness for *Cats*, a helicopter rendered like a Chinese character for *Saigon-and* highlights it everywhere. To keep ads and posters clear of anything they might visually compete with, he negotiates with the shows' creators to omit or downplay customary credits. Mackintosh believes quote ads, or any other kind, are of minimal help: "You can remind people of your existence, but you cannot persuade. Word of mouth does that. In a long run, that is what any show depends on."

### **Headline:**

4. This marketing affirms a musical as something special, says Gerald Schoenfeld, chairman of the Shubert Organization, which owns or operates 17 of Broadway's 36 theaters, including those housing Mackintosh's hits. Canny showmanship, Schoenfeld adds, gets the media to convey the same idea: "When we cut a hole in the roof of the Winter Garden\* for *Cats*, it became news in hometowns across America. Events are what the public responds to. They want a sense of occasion."

### **Headline:**

5. What the public truly wants is, of course, impossible to fathom-especially when it is as varied as the 10 million people who have seen the Big Three on Broadway or the 72.5 million who have attended worldwide. Mackintosh says, "I have no formula. Any man is lucky to be involved in one major success in a lifetime. To be involved in four defies explanation." One clear lesson does emerge. Certain theatrical tastes may be passe, certain

critics disgruntled. For all the doomsaying about the Fabulous Invalid, the joy of theatergoing-to the right show, done in the right way for the right audience-remains as robust as ever.

**Headline:**

## **NOTES**

- \* keep up with the Joneses, or the Tanakas      not to lag behind the neighbors (friends etc)
- \* Winter Garden - a Broadway theater

### **2. Analysis of ideas and relationships. Circle the letter next to the best answer.**

1. In paragraph 0 the author:
  - a) criticizes today's shows;
  - b) looks for the reasons for the shows' success;
  - c) analyzes the history of musicals;
  - d) reviews critics on the shows.
2. In paragraph 1 the author states that:
  - a) the era of long runs has set in forever;
  - b) consumer air travels increased because of the musicals;
  - c) theatre has become a major tourist attraction;
  - d) the Joneses haven't missed a single Broadway show.
3. The main idea of paragraph 2 is that:
  - a) audiences prefer rock nowadays;
  - b) promotion via radio has never been effective;
  - c) Broadway tunes are at the heart of the pop mainstream;
  - d) TV commercials have contributed to the shows' long run.
4. According to the author (paragraph 3):
  - a) Mackintosh is leading anti-elitist;
  - b) Mackintosh has developed a new marketing approach;
  - c) Mackintosh is a genius of negotiating;
  - d) Mackintosh's ads are based on award-winning principle.
5. In paragraph 4 the author:
  - a) tells us about Jerald Schoenfeld;
  - b) describes the role of the media;
  - c) stresses the importance of creating a sense of an extraordinary event;
  - d) states that Americans are fond of news.
6. The main idea of paragraph 5 is that:
  - a) theatre nowadays is as healthy as ever;
  - b) millions of people have attended Broadway shows recently;
  - c) Mackintosh has a magic formula;
  - d) on the whole, theatrical tastes remain the same.



### **3. Explain the meaning of the following words and word-combinations in the text.**

according to (paragraph 0), music hall (paragraph 0), pantomime (paragraph 0), rock (paragraph 0), traditional operatic style (paragraph 0), decay of energy and skills (paragraph 0), long runs (paragraph 0), in some respects (paragraph 0), opening night (paragraph 0), feline movements (paragraph 0), deafening sound system (paragraph 0), fourth row center (paragraph 0), the rise of consumer air travel (paragraph 1), entered into the scorekeeping (paragraph 1), executive director (paragraph 1), once we did (paragraph 1), advance taste (paragraph 2), ironically (paragraph 2), at the heart of the pop mainstream (paragraph 2), via radio play (paragraph 2), original-cast (paragraph 2), musical taste (paragraph 2), sold via TV (paragraph 2), the look began to replace the score (paragraph 2), show's signature (paragraph 2), if costly (paragraph 2), loss of musical influence (paragraph 2), in keeping with (paragraph 3), memorable thematic image (paragraph 3), stylized face (paragraph 3), shimmering white mask (paragraph 3), Chinese character (paragraph 3), quote ads (paragraph 3), word of mouth (paragraph 3), anti-elitist (paragraph 3); in a long run (paragraph 3), showmanship (paragraph 4), a sense of occasion (paragraph 4), major success (paragraph 5), defies explanation (paragraph 5), Fabulous Invalid (paragraph 5).

#### 4. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 3.

1. Sitting in the stalls, in the \_\_\_\_\_, I could follow every move, every gesture of the great actress. 2. Unfortunately, \_\_\_\_\_ often make up for singers' absence of voice. 3. Do you happen to know how many \_\_\_\_\_ there are in Chinese? 4. Your behaviour at yesterday's party \_\_\_\_\_ - what was eating you? 5. What he is working at now \_\_\_\_\_ is much more important than anything he has done before. 6. My \_\_\_\_\_ was formed mainly due to my mother's preferences in music - she's a great admirer of opera. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ shows have always meant something gorgeous for me - luxurious costumes and scenery, great music and a lot of dancing. 8. If you're too lazy or busy to go shopping, there're so many things \_\_\_\_\_ nowadays. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ historians, theatre originates from hunting and agricultural rituals of our ancestors. 10. Today's musicals are made in \_\_\_\_\_. 11. Your high spirits aren't \_\_\_\_\_ the mournful atmosphere. 12. Actually, the fund is run by the \_\_\_\_\_. 13. \_\_\_\_\_ is a form of entertainment, in which the story is conveyed by gesture only, without words, but often accompanied by music. 14. The new methods of treatment are effective, \_\_\_\_\_. 15. It's difficult to say which exactly musical style is \_\_\_\_\_ nowadays. 16. Modern art may be characterized as having a strong \_\_\_\_\_ temper. 17. Cinema and theatre festivals are usually meant for those having an \_\_\_\_\_ in art. 18. \_\_\_\_\_ is a style of popular music of Afro-American origin, characterized by a heavy rhythm and overpowering volume. 19. The actors are fed up with the show. No wonder, we can see \_\_\_\_\_. 20. In this country only plays by classical authors can boast of \_\_\_\_\_. 21. The last-minute arrangements having been made, everything was ready for the \_\_\_\_\_. 22. Step by step, with each new movie he made, he was approaching the \_\_\_\_\_ of his director's career. 23. For the last several decades pop singers' appearance has \_\_\_\_\_ rather than their voice, so the \_\_\_\_\_ has begun to \_\_\_\_\_. 24. Her noiseless footsteps and \_\_\_\_\_, combined with slanting green eyes and jet black hair, reminded of a panther. 25. \_\_\_\_\_ in the 20<sup>th</sup> century made tourism a multiprofitable industry. 26. \_\_\_\_\_ for each of his hit albums, developed by the best ad experts, are easily recognised by the fans. 27. The emblem of the *Tokyo* restaurant is the \_\_\_\_\_ of a Japanese woman. 28. Before the elections there were a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on the billboards, especially in the capital. 29. Tough sometimes he tends to be snobbish, \_\_\_\_\_ he's a nice sort of fellow. 30. \_\_\_\_\_ the requirements of the times, higher educational establishments in this country introduce new approaches and methods of teaching.

#### 5. Find in the text the phrasal verbs meaning

arise from	result from something
	base on
	try to win, struggle against
	be influenced or decided by
	cause to be part of or mixed with
	be suitable to
	avoid
	remain level with
	believe result from something be the result of
	make sure that someone does not forget
	have the right qualities to become result from something or please somebody
	result, develop or end

#### 6. Complete the sentences below with the phrasal verbs from Activity 5.

1. If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ with the time, nobody will take an interest in your works. 2. Did his latest play \_\_\_\_\_ well? 3. The success of the show \_\_\_\_\_ on so many various factors. 4. In \_\_\_\_\_ the festive atmosphere I felt abso lutely elated. 5. Critics claim he's a genius, you can hardly \_\_\_\_\_ him. 6. You needn't \_\_\_\_\_ me my respon sibilities, I know my job perfectly well. 7. Problems in art in any country often the economical situation. 8. You'll never be \_\_\_\_\_ acting unless you cope with your stage fright. 9. I don't approve of all those speculations \_\_\_\_\_ his revelations. 10. The play \_\_\_\_\_ its success \_\_\_\_\_ the talent and hard work both of the actors and the director. 11. Try to \_\_\_\_\_ foreign words or involved explanations when you're working with children. 12. How many actors are \_\_\_\_\_ the rehearsal?

#### 7. Find in the text the words meaning:

accompany (paragraph 0); pronunciation (paragraph 0); line (paragraph 0); clearly (paragraph 0), unsteadily (paragraph 0), a very long period of time (paragraph 1), anger (paragraph 3); orphan (paragraph 3), providing a

place to happen at (paragraph 4); manage (paragraph 4); also said (paragraph 4), in the whole world (paragraph 5), recommendation (paragraph 5), took part (paragraph 5), go to see (paragraph 5); be clear (paragraph 5), gone (paragraph 5), prediction of a coming catastrophe (paragraph 5), theater attendance (paragraph 5).

## 8. Complete the sentences below with the words whose definitions were given in Activity 7.

1. It is historical novels that have brought this writer a \_\_\_\_\_ fame. 2. It's often extremely difficult even for mature people to resist all the temptations and attractions that \_\_\_\_\_ them in everyday life. 3. Unfortunately, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ all the performances at this theatre, but I do my best to see as much as possible. 4. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ in the show was ready to make their entrance upon the stage. 5. I don't have the slightest idea how you manage to \_\_\_\_\_ this small theatre so efficiently. 6. You can't help crying listening to the story of a miserable \_\_\_\_\_ struggling for survival in this cruel world. 7. If you are thinking of taking up acting as your career, you should first do something about your \_\_\_\_\_. 8. Our seats were in the back \_\_\_\_\_, so we could hardly see what was going on on the stage. 9. The audience was so \_\_\_\_\_ enjoying themselves and the play, that the anxious author felt relieved. 10. The illness of the prima donna only \_\_\_\_\_ to our difficulties. 11. The actors seemed to be moving \_\_\_\_\_ as if performing some wild dance. 12. I have to admit that sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ becomes a very expensive entertainment. 13. Though we are living in the \_\_\_\_\_ of hi tech entertainments, nothing can give me as much satisfaction as a really good intelligent book. 14. One can hardly enjoy working with him - he can't control his \_\_\_\_\_! 15. We were lucky to find an affordable \_\_\_\_\_ for our amateur theatre. 16. Nobody knows the \_\_\_\_\_ of his success. 17. With all the \_\_\_\_\_ about the end of literature and theatre with the advance of TV and the Internet, they seem to be more alive than ever. 18. No new ideas \_\_\_\_\_ from our heated discussion. 19. His manners, especially speech, seem quite \_\_\_\_\_ to me - remind of the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

## 9. Study the collocation table on the next page and then use it to translate the following words and word-combinations.

**1. Продюсер, режисер-постановник, директор кіностудії:** незалежний голлівудський продюсер, роль продюсера, режисер-постановник на радіо/телебаченні, кінопродюсер, помічник режисера.

**2. Режисер, режисер-постановник:** кінорежисер, роль режисера, художній керівник театру, театральний режисер.

**3. Критик:** видатний театральний критик, дошкульний критик, критикан, літературний критик високо оцінив...; впливовий теле критик, критики привітали...; гарний критик.

**4. Актор/актриса:** (не)професійний актор, майбутні голлівудські актори, погана людина, природжена актриса, прослуховувати акторів для виконання епізодичних ролей, відбрати досвідчених талановитих акторів, актриса, що грає характерні ролі, відомий актор зіграв...; провідні актори, блискучі актори репетирують... , безробітна актриса.

**5. Знаменитість, видатна людина:** зробити когось місцевою знаменитістю, статус знаменитості, щось на кшталт знаменитості, прокинутися відомим, національна телезнаменитість, видатний спортсмен, запрошена знаменитість.

**6. Зірка:** зірковий статус, зірка телесеріалів, зіркові виконавці, справжня велика зірка, зіркова роль, голлівудська зірка, безумовна поп-зірка, зірка екрану, принада для зірок, засіб, щоб стати зіркою; зіркова якість; зірка, що сходить.

**7. Глядачі, публіка, аудиторія:** звертатися до великої аудиторії, грати для елітної публіки; перед невеликою, але вдячною аудиторією; приваблювати потенційну кінопубліку, справити враження на радіослухачів, захоплені (фанатичні) глядачі підтримують..., зачарувати телеглядачів, заволодіти увагою глядачів, тримати публіку в напрузі, неприязна публіка освистала/осміяла..., зворушити зачаровану публіку, глядачі сміються та аплодують, залучення глядачів до театральної дії.

**8. Глядач:** збирати вдячних глядачів, глядачі аплодують і підбадьорюють, пасивний глядач, прийшли зацікавлені глядачі, вдячні глядачі стояли вздовж усієї траси, видовищний вид спорту, глядачі освистали, ефектна (видовищна) подія.

**9. Демонстрування, показ, перегляд:** репетиція (випробування), не сходити зі сцени тривалий час, розпочати успішний показ п'єси, закінчити комерційно-успішний показ, восьмижневий показ.

Noun	Adjectives	Verb + Word	Word + Noun	Preposition	Phrase
Producer	film, radio, TV, assistant, Hollywood, independent				the role of ~
Director	film, theatre, artistic				the role of ~
Critic	good, incisive, theatre, distinguished, TV, influential, drama, literary	hail something, praise something			an armchair
Actor/ actress	born, experienced, talented, Hollywood, character, celebrated/ famous/ well-known, leading, bit-part, out-of-work/ unemployed, aspiring/would-be, amateur, brilliant, professional	audition, cast, Word + Verb act, perform, play, rehearse			bad actor
Celebrity	local, national, overnight, guest/ visiting, sporting, television	make somebody ~	status		something of a~
Star	big, true, undisputed, pop, Hollywood, screen, film/movie, soap, TV		quality, status, role, vehicle, actor, player, performer, attraction		rising star
Audience	big/large/vast/packed, select, small, appreciative, captive enthusiastic, hostile, target, potential, cinema, radio, TV	address, perform to, play to, attract, draw, pull in, reach, thrill, captivate, grip, move Word + Verb applaud, cheer, boo, jeer, laugh	participation	before/ in front of a/the ~	
Spectator	mere, passive, interested, paying	gather, turn up, applaud, boo, cheer, line something			
Run	long, short, eight-week, successful, sell-out	have, begin, end			a dry run

**10. Find in the text the synonyms and antonyms to the following words from activity 1.**

**Synonyms:**

*Verbs:* veer; depict; market; persuade; avoid; affirm; quote; arise.

*Adjectives:* effective; hesitant; major; splendid; meticulous; shrewd; relevant; diverse.

*Nouns:* marketing; award; review; trademark; staging; artist; album; tune; technique; experience; attraction; lyrics; spectator; chairman; mess; event.

**Antonyms:**

*Verbs:* avoid; enjoy.

*Adjectives:* customary; bygone; memorable; major; effective.

*Nouns:* spectator; critic.

**11. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 10.**

1. She couldn't keep back tears hearing she had been granted the \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Contemporary teenagers have to resist many more \_\_\_\_\_ than their parents or grandparents did. 3. Feeling guilty, she \_\_\_\_\_ looking in her mother's eyes. 4. I'm afraid the evidence you've produced isn't \_\_\_\_\_ to the case. 5. In this canvas the artist \_\_\_\_\_ Parisians strolling through the park. 6. The closer to the opening night they were, the more problems \_\_\_\_\_. 7. The famous director was suspicious of critics, as he couldn't forgive their \_\_\_\_\_ criticism and offences. 8. In fact, there's only one \_\_\_\_\_ scene in the film, I can't understand why everybody is so crazy about it. 9. You needn't tell her what

to do - she's her own sever \_\_\_\_ ! 10. The audition proved to be a terrifying \_\_\_\_ for her - she had never felt so awkward and humiliated before! 11. The president had to \_\_\_\_ to the company board that the situation was critical. 12. You won't regret the money paid - he's the best at \_\_\_\_ stuff like that. 13. She's so \_\_\_\_ in her dress that you'll never find anything about it to find fault with. 14. The acting being poor, the \_\_\_\_ booed the performers off the stage. 15. Those \_\_\_\_ lawyers of his saved him from bankruptcy. 16. How did you manage to \_\_\_\_ not to invest her money in this project, she was so intent upon it. 17. If you don't \_\_\_\_ getting in the papers this time, your reputation will be ruined for ever. 18. Nobody knows why the plane \_\_\_\_ from the course and crashed into a mountain. 19. What everybody thought to be the \_\_\_\_ success of his life, turned out to be only the starting point of his brilliant career in show business. 20. The music is too heavy for these romantic \_\_\_\_\_. 21. He likes \_\_\_\_ from Shakespeare. 22. The medicine wasn't sufficiently \_\_\_\_, so he had to repeat the course of treatment. 23. Nowadays women aren't satisfied with performing only \_\_\_\_ roles both in the family and in society on the whole. 24. Who else can boast of having 5 platinum \_\_\_\_? 25. She is quite \_\_\_\_ about signing a contract with this film company. 26. He has a fine clear voice and a perfect singing \_\_\_\_, so the audience always \_\_\_\_ his concerts enormously. 27. When I have to take an exam. I always panic, my thoughts are a \_\_\_\_, and I'm absolutely unable to concentrate. 28. The whole company was so anxious before the matinee, but it turned out absolutely \_\_\_\_\_. 29. Nightlife in cities is extremely \_\_\_\_ with nightclubs and discos, restaurants and casinos, etc. 30. \_\_\_\_ of a play like this takes up to 6 months in the natural course of \_\_\_\_\_. 31. Only those \_\_\_\_ that are easy to remember become popular. 32. Having failed to make the intended impression, he was afraid of reading the \_\_\_\_ in the papers. 33. You can be sure that any goods bearing this famous \_\_\_\_ are of top quality. 34. Though this youth theatre is very young, the artistic director has managed to attract a lot of gifted \_\_\_\_\_.

## 12. Find in the text (including Notes) the words related to:

1. quality, relevance and maintenance of today's shows:
2. factors (3) which account for the current era of long runs (give the list of factors):
3. factor 1 (from the list in category 2):
4. factor 2 (from the list in category 2):
5. factor 3 (from the list in category 2):
6. musicals marketing techniques:
7. future of theatergoing:

13. Work in pairs. Use Activity 12. Discuss the factors in category 2. Do you agree they play a role in the musicals' long run? Why or why not? Are the marketing techniques described in category 6 used in Ukraine to promote theatrical production? Give some examples.

14. Work in pairs. What would you suggest to attract people to the theatres in Ukraine?

15. Write a 200-word essay on your favourite theatrical performance. Read the explanations below first.

## WRITING DESCRIBING PERFORMANCES, CEREMONIES, FESTIVALS

This is a descriptive piece of writing about an events. It usually has three parts: (1) an **introduction** (1 paragraph) where you set the scene (name of the event time, place) (2) a **main** body (several paragraphs) where you present the preparation and the actual event; (3) a **conclusion** (1 paragraph) where you give yours or other people's feelings together with some argumentation etc.

### Recommendations:

(1) Use present tenses to describe an annual event; (2) Use past tenses to describe a single event in the past; (3) Use passive to describe the preparations; (4) Use a variety of adjectives and adverbs.

## 16. Translate using your active vocabulary for the italicized words and word combinations.

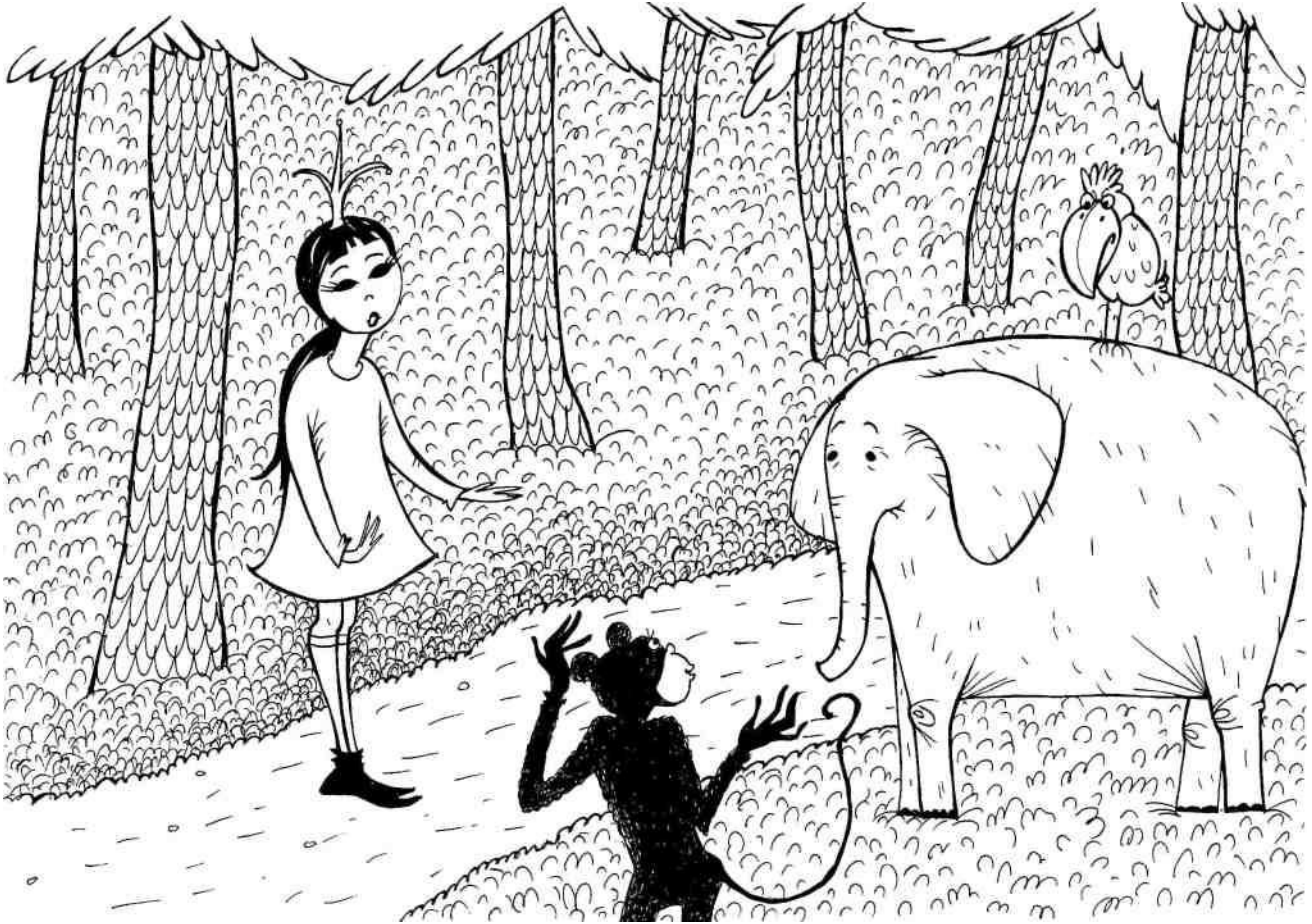
1. *Актори-аматори* ніяк не могли звикнути до свого нового *зіркового статусу*. 2. Перш ніж стати *художнім керівником театру*, він працював і *помічником режисера*, і *режисером-постановником на телебаченні*, і навіть *кінорежисером*. 3. *Фанатична публіка* зібралася на трибунах, щоб *підтримати спортсменів*, які брали участь у цьому *видовищному змаганні*. 4. *Провідні актори театру* підтримали свого *режисера*. 5. *На якого глядача розрахована* ваша вистава? 6. Він виявився *непідготовленим до ролі продюсера*. 7. Мені було дуже приємно прочитати *рецензію видатного театрального критика*, який *високо оцінив нашу роботу*. 8. Після цього він став *чимось на кшталт місцевої знаменитості*. 9. Життя *молодої талановитої актриси* перетворилося на казку, коли одного ранку вона *прокинулася відомою*. 10.



Вона більше не хоче бути зіркою телесеріалів і мріє про запрошення на зіркову роль від голлівудського продюсера. 11. Вона - природжена актриса, до того ж досить досвідчена, і її полюбляє публіка. Коли вона з'являється на сцені, глядачі стежать за нею, мов зачаровані. 12. В репетиції урочистого вечора зайняті багато відомих акторів, що грають не тільки в цьому театрі. 13. Дошкульні критики розглядають його останню режисерську роботу як засіб стати голлівудською зіркою. 14. Помічник режисера заклопотаний прослуховуванням акторів для виконання епізодичних ролей у фільмі. 15. Аби бути гарним літературним критиком, а не критиканом, треба дійсно любити і знати мову та поважати акторів. 16. Усі телепродюсери прислуховуються до цього впливового телекритика. 17. В усьому світі розпочалося успішний прокат нової серії про Гаррі Поттера. 18. За якими принципами ви відбирали акторів для виконання характерних ролей! 19. Я товаришую з деякими майбутніми акторами. Як на мене, серед них є зірки, що сходять. 20. Зазвичай вона дає концерти перед невеликою елітною аудиторією. 21. Безробітні актори погоджуються на виконання будь-яких ролей перед будь якою, навіть неприязною, аудиторією. 22. Цей мюзикл має такий тривалий прокат, що здається, він ніколи не закінчиться. 23. Зіркові виконавці одразу заволоділи увагою великої аудиторії і тримали її в напрузі до останніх хвилин вистави. 24. Участь у цьому шоу миттєво зробила його національною телезнаменитістю. 25. Восьмитижневий прокат його останньої комедії виявився комерційно-успішним. 26. Глядачі аплодують і підбадьорюють нашу команду, яка нарешті виходить уперед. 27. Бенефіс видатного актора зібрав тільки вдячних глядачів. 28. Запрошені знаменитості є обов'язковим компонентом різноманітних телешоу. 29. Мені здається, ніщо не може зацікавити або зворушити пасивного глядача. 30. Навіть одержавши статус безумовної поп-зірки, вона не зупиняється на досягнутому. 31. Він зробив серію передач, присвячених зіркам екрану минулих років. 32. Якщо глядачі незадоволені тим, що вони бачать на сцені, вони можуть висміяти або освистати акторів. 33. Глядачі, що прийшли привітати видатних спортсменів, стояли уздовж: проходів. 34. Її голос справив велике враження на радіослухачів. 35. Можливо, він і справжня зірка у світі кіно, але дуже погана людина.

## ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 4

### PREPOSITIONS OF TIME



**1. Read Part 1, match the meanings of the prepositions with those shown in Picture 11A (p. 118) and give their definitions below. Choose from the following.**

For **AT, ON, IN**: (1) not late; (2) part of 24 hours; (3) a particular period and not just a date; (4) exactly at the appointed time; (5) a day or a date (or an occasion); (6) during a certain time; (7) sometimes; (8) once; (9) how long something takes; (10) after a certain length of time.

For **DURING, FOR, THROUGHOUT, WITHIN**: (1) inside the limits of a period of time (formal); (2) the period from the beginning to the end; (3) when (duration is emphasized); (4) the period including its final point in time; (5) how long.

For **SINCE, UNTIL (TILL), TOWARDS, BY, TO**: (1) not later than a certain point of time (and perhaps before); (2) stopping at a point of time when that point is reached; (3) the point of time when the action (which continues up to a certain moment) started; (4) the period nearly at a stated time; (5) towards a certain time.

### EPISODE 4

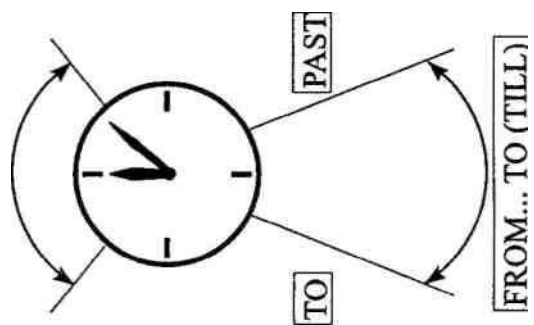
#### PART 1

"Excuse me," said the princess who had been waiting patiently **throughout** (1) the argument, "can you tell me the time?" "The time?" the Monkey and the Elephant looked puzzled. The pause lasted/or (2) a while.

"You see," started the princess again, "I have to be back to the castle **in** (3) time for lunch, because my father doesn't like me to be late. He always says, 'The princess should not only be **in** (4) time, she must always be **on** (5) time.' So I should be home **by** (6) 3.30 **at** (7) the latest. I really can't stay any longer, **until** (8) 4 or 5, you know, I can only stay **herefrom** (9) 12 **to** (10) 3, just **within** (11) that period. I left the castle **at** (12) about midday... No, I think it was **at** (13) half **past** (14) twelve or maybe even **at** (15) quarter **to** (16) one. Anyway, it was **towards** (17) one o'clock. I got here **in** (18) about an hour so I've been here/or (19) an hour, right?" "What's an hour?" asked the Parrot. Now it was the princess who was puzzled.

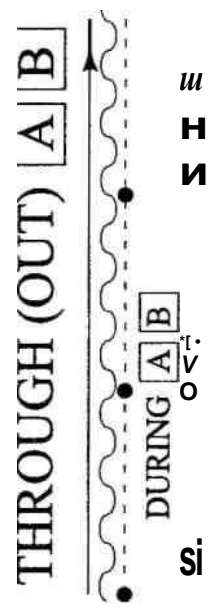
H

P3j



CQ

PQ



III H N

U PA O 1/4

Я H

E N 00

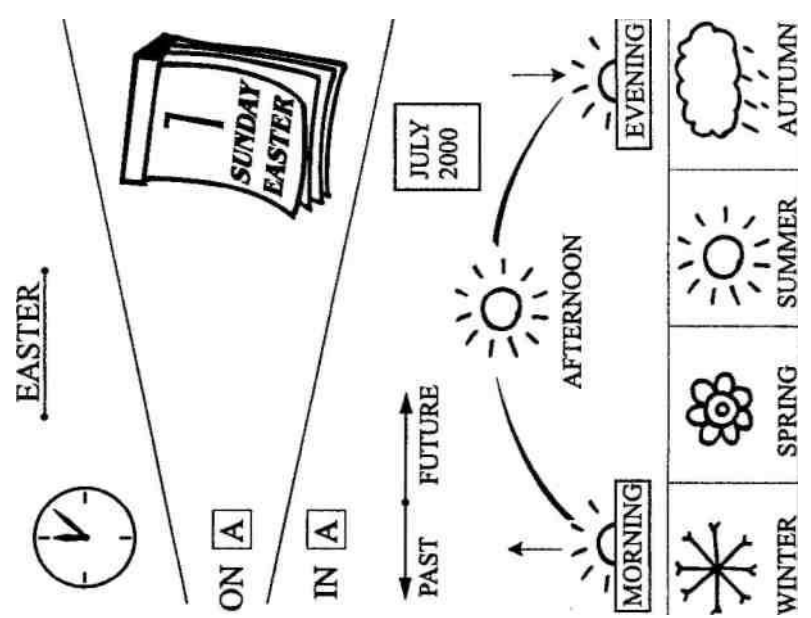
v4 H

W

O

a

to m PQ



∞ C c

Picture 11A. Temporal prepositions. 2. Complete the

following with the prepositions from the box. Use picture 11A and Part 1.

- throughout for in on by at until from...to within towards past to
1. The princess was not sure when she had left the castle, but she thought it had been \_\_\_\_\_ one o'clock.
  2. The King wanted the princess not only to be \_\_\_\_\_ time for any occasion but to be always \_\_\_\_\_ time.

3. The princess expected to stay in the woods \_\_\_\_\_ the period \_\_\_\_\_ 12 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ 3 o'clock.

4. The princess had to be home \_\_\_\_\_ half past three \_\_\_\_\_ the latest.
5. The princess did not speak \_\_\_\_\_ the animals' conversation.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ midnight the day before the princess was sleeping peacefully at the castle.
7. The princess said she had planned to stay in the woods only \_\_\_\_\_ three hours.
8. If the princess did not come \_\_\_\_\_ lunchtime, her father would be angry.
9. The princess could not stay \_\_\_\_\_ the evening because she had to be present at lunch.
10. The princess thought she had left the castle \_\_\_\_\_ about quarter \_\_\_\_\_ one.
11. When the princess was leaving the castle, she was planning to come back \_\_\_\_\_ about three hours.

**3. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part 1.**

1. The princess, who was silent within the argument, enjoyed the opportunity to speak at last.
2. The animals stopped talking and the pause lasted during several seconds.
3. The king was not sure that the princess had come exactly in time, but he remembered well that she had been on time because she had not been late.
4. By the latest, the princess had to come back in lunch.
5. The princess could not stay in the wood by 5 o'clock, because she only could be there since 12 towards 3 o'clock, just throughout that period of time.
6. The princess got to the tree with the coconut by an hour, and she thought she had left the castle on 1 o'clock.
7. She thought she had stayed in the woods during an hour.

**4. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 1 on the part of a) Princess; b) Monkey; c) Elephant; d) Parrot. Use the clues below.**

Princess - wait - argument: Excuse - time? Monkey + Elephant - puzzled. Pause - last - a while. Princess: have - back - castle - time - lunch: king - not like - late. King: princess - must - always - not only - not late - but - exactly - time. Princess: have - be home - 3.30 - the latest. Princess: can't stay - longer - 4 or 5: can - stay - 12—>3 - that period. Princess: leave - castle - midday - or 12.30 - or 12.45: anyway—>1 o'clock. Princess - got here - about 1 hour - she - be - here - about 1 hour. Parrot: hour? Princess - puzzled.

**5. Read Part 2. See the instructions to exercise 1.**

## PART 2

"There is no time in Pencader Hollow," a little man in blue jeans and a red T-shirt with a miniature guitar under his arm suddenly perched upon the stone near the princess. He was the smallest man the princess had seen *in* (20) her lifetime *since* (21) she had been born. He was the size of her palm. "What do you mean by 'no time'?" protested the princess. "I left the castle *on* (22) Sunday, *on* (23) Sunday afternoon, *on* (24) June 25<sup>th</sup>..." "When I say 'no time'," interrupted the man, "I mean 'no time': *at* (25) present, *in* (26) the past or *in* (27) the future. In fact, we have no past or future, just the present. They say that *at* (28) one time we used to have..." Suddenly the princess heard a ring and to her surprise the man took a cellular phone out of his pocket. "Excuse me," he said, "I'll be with you *in* (29) a moment," and disappeared. The princess hardly managed to wink as the man reappeared.

**6. Complete the following with the prepositions from the box. Use the picture and Part 2.**

\_\_\_\_\_ in since on at \_\_\_\_\_

1. The princess has never been alone in the woods \_\_\_\_\_ she was born.
2. The princess did not leave the castle \_\_\_\_\_ Monday morning. She did it \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
3. Never \_\_\_\_\_ her life had the princess done what she did \_\_\_\_\_ June 25<sup>th</sup>.
4. The princess did not want the tiny man to come back even \_\_\_\_\_ an hour, but he reappeared \_\_\_\_\_ a second.
5. They might have had time in Pencader Hollow \_\_\_\_\_ one time, but then something happened, so \_\_\_\_\_ present they don't have it.
6. People might have got into Pencader Hollow \_\_\_\_\_ the past and they might get there \_\_\_\_\_ the future.

**7. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 2.**

1. The princess had never seen such a tiny man for her lifetime.
2. The man promised to come back after a moment and disappeared.
3. Nobody remembered exactly, but the man thought that they used to have time in one time in Pencader Hollow.

4. In the present nobody in Pencader Hollow had any idea about time.
5. At the past things might have been very different in Pencader Hollow.
6. The princess was sure she had left the castle in Sunday afternoon.
7. The princess has never left the castle alone from the time she was born.
8. The king was sure that the princess had disappeared in June 25.
9. The princess sometimes left the castle at Sundays, but there had always been somebody else with her.
10. The princess thought that she would never be so careless again at the future.

**8. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 2 on the part of a) Princess; b) the man. Use the clues below.**

Little man - jeans - T-shirt - guitar - arm - perch - stone - princess: No time - Pencader Hollow. He - smallest - princess - see - lifetime - born. He: size - palm. Princess: why - no time? Princess: leave - castle - Sunday - Sunday afternoon - June 25. Man: no time - mean - no time: present - past - or future: no past - no future - just present. They say - once - time - but... Princess: hear - ring: surprise. Man: take - cellular phone - pocket. Man: Excuse - moment - disappear. Princess - hardly - wink: man - reappear.

**9. Write your own story (200 words), using as many prepositions of time as possible.**

**10. Read Part 3. See the instructions to exercise 1.**

### PART 3

The man was smiling and it started getting on the princess' nerves. "What do you mean 'no time'?" she started again. "Don't you have coffee *in* (30) the morning and lunch *in* (31) the afternoon? Don't you watch TV *in* (32) the evening *at* (33) times? Don't you ski *in* (34) winter and sunbathe *in* (35) summer, sing carols *at* (36) Christmas and enjoy rolling Easter eggs *at* (37) Easter? Have you never got up *at* (38) dawn to see the sunrise or sneaked into the garden *at* (39) night to watch the gorgeous stars in the sky? Don't you have fun when you are *on* (40) holiday *in* (41) the last two summer months? Don't you get presents *on* (42) your birthday and enjoy the warm sea *in* (43) July? Don't you work Monday *through* (44) Friday to have your rest *at* (45) the weekend? Don't you go to church *on* (46) Christmas day?"

**11. Complete the following with the prepositions from the box. Use Part 3.**

**through    at    in    on**

1. The king used to work Monday \_\_\_\_ Friday, but he would always have fun with his family \_\_\_\_ the weekends.
2. The princess usually had a cup of coffee \_\_\_\_ the morning, but she was not allowed any coffee \_\_\_\_ the evening.
3. The princess seldom watched TV \_\_\_\_ the afternoon because she used to have her classes \_\_\_\_ that time.
4. Christmas the king's relatives used to come to his castle and they all had lunch together \_\_\_\_ Christmas Day.
5. The princess was expected to be inside the castle \_\_\_\_ sunset.
6. \_\_\_\_ holiday the princess skied \_\_\_\_ winter and swam in the sea \_\_\_\_ summer.
7. The princess would get a lot of presents \_\_\_\_ her birthday \_\_\_\_ July.
8. The princess did not have any classes \_\_\_\_ the first three days of the week because her teacher had fallen ill.

**12. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part 3.**

1. The princess got used to people working Monday to Friday.
2. She could not imagine not having holidays for the last two summer months.
3. On Christmas day the princess used to go to church but at other days on Christmas she would have fun.
4. On times the princess was allowed to watch TV within the evenings.
5. In Easter she would visit her relatives in Saturday evening and at Sunday.
6. On summer days the princess liked to sunbathe, but on winter she enjoyed skiing.
7. Sometimes she could not sleep in night so she would sneak into the garden.
8. It happened at summer and the princess was during her holiday.
9. She had always had her holidays on July and August.
10. The princess used to get a lot of presents at her birthday.

**13. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 3 on the part of a) Princess; b) the man. Use the clues below.**

Man: smile - get - princess' - nerves. Princess: How - no time? Don't you: have - coffee - morning - lunch - afternoon? Watch TV - evening - times? Ski - winter - sunbathe - summer? Sing - carols - Christmas - enjoy

- eggs - Easter? Get - dawn - see - sunrise? Sneak - garden - night - watch - stars - sky? Have - fun - holiday
- last - two - summer - months? Get - presents - birthday? Enjoy - warm sea - July? Work - Monday - Friday
- have rest - weekend? Go - church - Christmas day?

**14. Read Part 4. See the instructions to exercise 1.**

**PART 4**

"The church?" the man looked bored *at* (47) once. "We have no church in Pencader Hollow, and no TV either." "But what do you do *during* (48) all this endless present, *at* (49) a time of complete timelessness which looks so queer *in* (50) 2005, *in* (51) the 21<sup>st</sup> century, and what do I do here?" the princess lost her patience.

"Your presence is absolutely essential *on* (52) an occasion like that," replied the man seriously. "As to what we do here..." he smiled again. "We try to have some fun. Just wait *until* (53) everyone's here. And *in* (54) the meantime..." he ran his fingers over his tiny guitar and the music made the princess' hair stand on end.

**15. Complete the following with the prepositions from the box. Use Part 4.**

in during at until on

1. The man said they had to wait and suggested playing the guitar \_\_\_\_\_ the meantime.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ their conversation the Princess got more and more irritated.
3. The king could not relax \_\_\_\_\_ a time when his daughter was absent.
4. The king wanted to continue the search \_\_\_\_\_ his daughter had been found.
5. The old legends did not make much sense \_\_\_\_\_ the 21<sup>st</sup> century, at least for the king.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the occasion of the princess' birthday there were fireworks at the castle.
7. The princess was born \_\_\_\_\_ 1985 and the king has been very happy \_\_\_\_\_ now.
8. The king was very nervous \_\_\_\_\_ the search for the princess.
9. As soon as the man started playing, the princess got excited \_\_\_\_\_ once.

**16. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 4.**

1. The man was unlikely to be very religious because he lost his interest for once when he heard about the church.
2. The man probably could not remember when he had been born: on 1970 or on 1975 - it did not make any difference in Pencader Hollow.
3. The man was waiting for somebody and suggested to relax at the meantime.
4. The princess understood they had to wait until all the visitors had arrived.
5. The princess could not understand how something like that could be happening within the 21<sup>st</sup> century.
6. She could not realize either what one could do in all that endless present.
7. The princess did not quite understand why her presence was important during an occasion like that, and she was not sure what kind of occasion it was.

**17. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 4 on the part of a) Princess; b) the man. Use the clues below.**

Man: Church? - bored - once. We - no church - Pencader Hollow - no TV. Princess: what - do - all - endless - present - time - complete - timelessness: queer - 2001 - 21<sup>st</sup> century. Princess - lose - patience: What - I - do - here? Man - reply - seriously: your presence - essential - occasion - like that. Man: what - we - do - we - try - have - fun. Man - smile: wait - everybody - here. Man: meantime - run - fingers - guitar: music - make - princess' hair - stand - end.

**18. Complete the following with the prepositions in the box.**

at in on through (out) towards

1. The princess goes to her classes \_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning Monday \_\_\_\_\_ Friday.
2. The princess was born \_\_\_\_\_ 1985, \_\_\_\_\_ 8 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ 30 June, 1985, to be precise.
3. The princess liked watching the stars \_\_\_\_\_ night.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Easter children would have a lot of fun, and \_\_\_\_\_ Easter day they usually went to church.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ summer and \_\_\_\_\_ this time of the year ( \_\_\_\_\_ early September) the weather is usually warm.
6. The princess usually got up early \_\_\_\_\_ the morning, but not \_\_\_\_\_ the weekends. She would usually stay in bed late \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday mornings.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ one week \_\_\_\_\_ June \_\_\_\_\_ 2005 hundreds of people searched the princess in the woods.
8. The princess left the castle \_\_\_\_\_ June 25<sup>th</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the morning \_\_\_\_\_ about midday or rather \_\_\_\_\_ one o'clock.





9. The princess used to wake up \_\_\_\_\_ sunrise \_\_\_\_\_ weekdays, but she did not get up early \_\_\_\_\_ the weekends.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the sunset the search party lit the fire, cooked dinner and went to bed \_\_\_\_\_ midnight. They all slept very well \_\_\_\_\_ night. Nothing happened \_\_\_\_\_ the night.

**19. Study the table and then fill in the blanks in the sentences below with *in, on, by, at, before, after***

The King's relatives were all expected to arrive at 12.

RELATIVE	TIME OF ARRIVAL
1. King's brother	12.15
2. King's sister	12.00
3. King's cousin	11.45
4. King's uncle	Not sure but not late

1. The king's brother didn't arrive \_\_\_\_\_ time. He was late. He arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 12, \_\_\_\_\_ 12.15, to be precise.
2. The king's sister arrived \_\_\_\_\_ time. She arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 12 sharp.
3. The king's cousin was not late. She arrived \_\_\_\_\_ time, even \_\_\_\_\_ 12, \_\_\_\_\_ 11.45, to be precise.
4. Nobody noticed when the king's uncle had arrived. But he was not late. He certainly arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 12, that is he certainly arrived \_\_\_\_\_ time, or maybe \_\_\_\_\_ time. He certainly did not arrive \_\_\_\_\_ 12. He may have arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 12 or \_\_\_\_\_ 12 sharp.

**20. Complete the following with the prepositions in the box.**

| at during from for in on since throughout to until |

1. The king ruled his country \_\_\_\_\_ 1989 \_\_\_\_\_ 2005. \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning he surprised everybody with his ability. \_\_\_\_\_ the first years of his rule he had introduced a very progressive economic system which had been effective \_\_\_\_\_ all his reign \_\_\_\_\_ he resigned \_\_\_\_\_ July 2005. It happened \_\_\_\_\_ a Monday morning and was very unexpected. The king became the most popular monarch \_\_\_\_\_ George III \_\_\_\_\_ the eighteenth century.

2. The search for the princess lasted \_\_\_\_\_ more than a week, from June 25<sup>th</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ July 5<sup>th</sup>. It had been the most significant operation \_\_\_\_\_ more than 100 years - \_\_\_\_\_ the Black Rose War. It had lasted \_\_\_\_\_ some new information became available.

3. They finished the operation \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks. The whole operation lasted \_\_\_\_\_ 15 days. \_\_\_\_\_ this period a lot of things have been done. Every inch of the woods has been searched \_\_\_\_\_ the operation started. Some search parties worked \_\_\_\_\_ the day, others - \_\_\_\_\_ night, still others stayed in the woods \_\_\_\_\_ the night.

4. After everything was over, the king went away \_\_\_\_\_ a week \_\_\_\_\_ the summer. He went to Italy. He had already been there \_\_\_\_\_ 1998, but only \_\_\_\_\_ three days. It was \_\_\_\_\_ Easter and it was crowded. He stayed in Rome just \_\_\_\_\_ a few hours. That's why he wanted to go there \_\_\_\_\_ August. Of course, you can't see much of Rome \_\_\_\_\_ several days, but he is planning to stay there Monday \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday. He is sure he can see most of the sights \_\_\_\_\_ four days. And he is going to the seaside \_\_\_\_\_ the other days, and he even hopes to get some tan \_\_\_\_\_ three days. At least he did \_\_\_\_\_ his last holidays in France last year.

**21. Write your own story (200 words), using as many prepositions of time as possible.**

## LESSON 3

### PART1 THE

### SILVER SCREEN

James is playing with Lappy. Below is Lappy's first task. Help James do it.



#### 1. Read the following text and put the paragraphs in the correct order.

- A. In 1922, new technology allowed filmmakers to attach to each film a soundtrack of speech, music and sound effects synchronized with the action on the screen. These sound films were initially distinguished by calling them "talking pictures", or *talkies*.
- B. The emergence of celluloid film and the motion pictures camera led quickly to the development of a motion picture projector to shine light through the film and magnify these "moving picture shows" onto a screen for an entire audience. These reels came to be known as "motion pictures".
- C. When films began to tell stories, exhibitors sometimes provided a commentator to narrate the action, but this became unnecessary with the development of printed intertitles containing the actors' dialogue and other written, descriptive material as a part of the visual experience. Theater owners would also hire a pianist or organist or a full orchestra to play music fitting the mood of the film at any given moment. By the early 1920s, most films came with a prepared list of sheet music for this purpose, with complete film scores being composed for major productions.
- D. Cinema is considered to be an important art form. The varied genres of films - newsreels, documentaries, travelogues, animated films, feature films (drama and melodrama, comedy and fantasy, action and thriller, western and horror, mystery and gangster, adventure and children's films, film noir) - entertain, educate, enlighten and inspire audiences. The visual elements of cinema need no translation, give the motion picture a universal power of communication. Any film can become a worldwide attraction, especially with the addition of dubbing or subtitles that translate the dialogue. Films are also artifacts created by specific cultures, and, in turn, affect them.
- E. The next major step was the introduction of color. While the addition of sound quickly eclipsed silent film and theater musicians, color was adopted more gradually. When color processes improved and became as affordable as black-and-white film, more and more movies were filmed in color, as the industry in America came to view color essential to attract audiences in its competition with television, which remained black-and-white until the mid-60s. By the end of the 1960s, color had become the norm for filmmakers, and by the 1980s, an expectation of the younger generations by then comprising the majority of the audience. Only in rare exceptions is black-and-white film now used; the choice is motivated by artistic reasons. Film presented today in black-and-white, tends to have a grater dramatic tone.
- F. Mechanisms for producing artificially created, two-dimensional images in motion were demonstrated as early as the 1860's. These machines would display sequences of still pictures at sufficient speed for the images on the

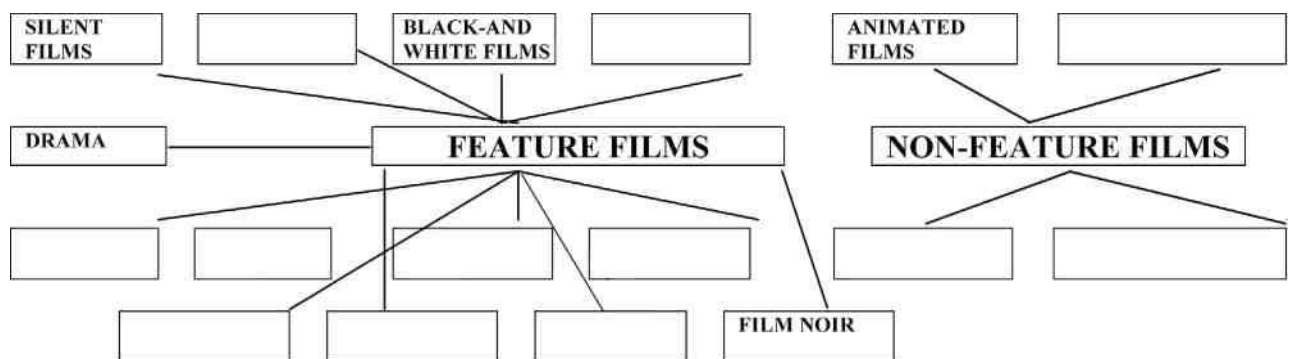
pictures to appear to be moving. Naturally, the images needed to be carefully designed to achieve desired effect - and the underlying principle became the basis for the development of film animation.

**2. Work in pairs. Find in the text the words meaning:** someone who makes films, the recorded music and other sounds for a film, sounds produced artificially for a film, film with a soundtrack (2), appearance, piece of equipment to shoot a film, piece of equipment to show a film, short notices regularly displayed on a screen to explain the content of a silent film, match the frame of mind, music printed on single sheets instead of being fastened together in a book, music for the whole film, most important film, inform, encourage, film (n), film popular all over the globe, record a soundtrack in another language, words printed over a film in a foreign language to translate the dialogue, work of art, overshadow, film without a soundtrack, non-color film, contest (n), infrequent, creative, flat, order (n), motionless, cartoon.

**3. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations you have found in the previous exercise.**

1. The action \_\_\_\_\_ are the best side of the film. 2. At the dawn of cinematography films were called \_\_\_\_\_, and after the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sound - \_\_\_\_\_. 3. The unreleased footage, as well as new visual \_\_\_\_\_ full version of the film will include previously \_\_\_\_\_ for many of Spielberg's major \_\_\_\_\_ and a stereo \_\_\_\_\_ that became the not decided yet whether they preferred worldwide \_\_\_\_\_. 5. They have \_\_\_\_\_ the film into Ukrainian or just supplying it with Ukrainian \_\_\_\_\_ enabled to solve the problem of producing a lot \_\_\_\_\_. 6. The invention of the motion pictures of \_\_\_\_\_ photo images required by \_\_\_\_\_ to produce a movie. 7. In the early days of the cinema films were supplied with printed \_\_\_\_\_ to help the audience to understand the action, while the theatre owners got \_\_\_\_\_ music from distributors and hired musicians who played live to \_\_\_\_\_ the mood of the film. 8. In spite of a fierce \_\_\_\_\_, TV failed to \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema. 9. Due to its \_\_\_\_\_ value, \_\_\_\_\_ an \_\_\_\_\_ film be- \_\_\_\_\_ educates, \_\_\_\_\_ the audience. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ Being very time-consuming, film \_\_\_\_\_ was used in \_\_\_\_\_ cases.

**4. Work in pairs. Fill in the scheme below with the words from the text that indicate different genres of films. Match the definitions below with the genres on the scheme.**



A. film that deals with moral problems etc, and made in a way that seems dark or filled with shadows

C film based on imagination but not on facts

B. film that has a lot of exciting scenes where people fight, chase, and kill each other

D. film about a murder where the audience do not know who the murderer is until the end



5. Work in pairs. Classify the following films into appropriate genres. Explain why.



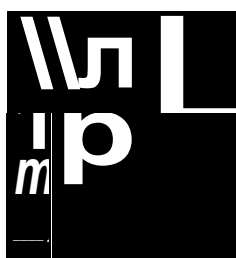
**THE PROMISE** China/Japan/South Korea/Hong Kong (2005), 128min. Directed by Kaige Chen. Starring Dong-Kun Jang, Hiroyuki Sanada, Cecilia Cheung.

An orphaned girl, driven by poverty at such a young age, makes a promise to an enchantress: in return for beauty and the admiration of every man, she will never be with the man she loves. This spell cannot be broken unless the impossible happens: snow falling in spring and the dead coming back to life. Now a grown and beautiful princess, she regrets her promise, for all of the men she's loved have always been met with tragedy.



**PIRATES OF THE CARIBBEAN: DEAD MAN'S CHEST.** USA (2006), 150 min. Directed by Gore Verbinski. Starring Johnny Depp, Orlando Bloom, Keira Knightley.

Once again thrown into the world of the supernatural, Captain Jack Sparrow finds out that he owes a blood debt to the legendary Davey Jones, Captain of the ghostly Flying Dutchman. With time running out, Jack must find a way out of his debt or else be doomed to eternal damnation and servitude in the afterlife.



**LOWER CITY.** Brazil (2005), 98 min. Directed by Sergio Macado. Starring Alice Braga, Jose Dumont, Lazaro Ramos.

From a small town in Brazil, Karinna is trying to get to Salvador where she has ambitions of being an exotic dancer. Best friends, Deco and Naldinho, offer to take her on their boat as long as she has sex with them both. Just before Salvador, Deco gets into a brawl during a cockfight and Naldinho, trying to protect him, gets stabbed in the stomach. Karinna stays to help, nursing Naldinho in her lap.



**COLOUR ME KUBRICK.** UK/France (2005), 86 min. Directed by Brian W. Cook. Starring John Malkovich, Tom Allen, Scott Baker, Nick Barber and Angus Barnett. In London of 1989 a man pretending to be legendary director Stanley Kubrick got into many of the city's most exclusive parties, restaurants and nightclubs. Playing on his willing victims' star-struck desire to believe, he was successful despite bearing no resemblance to Kubrick, who was working on his last film "Eyes Wide Shut" at the time.



**OMEN 666.** USA (2006), 110 min. Directed by John Moore. Starring Julia Stiles, Liev Schreiber, Mia Farrow, David Thewlis and Carlo Sabatini.

On 6.06.06, the omen is revealed...and humanity's darkest fears are realized... Robert Torn is unaware of these dark prophecies. But as he becomes the U.S. ambassador to Great Britain and his family settles in an estate outside London, strange events begin revolving around his son, five-year-old Damien: boy's nanny hangs herself at the youngster's birthday party and a trip to the zoo results in a panicked frenzy.



**X-MEN: THE LAST STAND.** USA (2006), 105 min. Directed by Brett Ratner. Starring Hugh Jackman, Patrick Stewart, Halle Berry, Famke Janssen and Shawn Ashmore.

A 'cure' for the mutant X gene has been discovered, which threatens the very existence of mutants such as Magneto and Professor X. Magneto insists on a violent revolution to stop humans from exterminating their kind, while X prefers tolerance and working with the government on a compromise. But the balance is shifted by the shocking return of Dr. Jean Grey.

**THE DA VINCI CODE.** USA (2006), 149 min. Directed by Ron Howard. Starring Tom Hanks, Audrey Tautou, Jean Reno, Ian McKellen and Alfred Molina.

While in Paris on business, Harvard expert in symbolic script Robert Langdon receives an urgent late-night phone call: the elderly curator of the Louvre has been murdered inside the museum. Near the body, police have found a baffling cipher. Solving the enigmatic riddle, Langdon finds out that it leads to a trail of clues hidden in the works of Da Vinci. Langdon joins forces with a gifted French cryptologist, Sophie Neveu, and discovers the late curator was hiding dangerous secrets.



6. What kind of professionals are involved into the film production process (e.g. directors, actors etc)?  
 Read the text below. In most of lines its there is one unnecessary word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-12, find this word. Some lines may be correct. The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).

0 After months or even **year** of development, delays, and rewrites, the final script years  
 0 is set and the film goes into pre-production. During this phase, budgets are -  
 1 detailed, scenes are planned and designed, and a shooting schedule is being  
 2 prepared. Storyboards - a visual representations of every shot-are prepared by  
 3 a storyboard artist in consultation by the director, director of photography,  
 4 and designer. Before a single frame is shot, the film has been planned from  
 5 beginning to end on a paper. The final stages of pre-production include weeks of  
 6 rehearsal, set construction, and location scouting. One shooting begins, you'll  
 7 need to continue to communicate your vision of the film with the actors and  
 8 crew. You'll too need to be able to improvise on the set and troubleshoot if  
 9 necessary. This flexibility must make the difference between an acceptable  
 10 production and an exceptional ones. On average, you will be able to complete  
 11 filming for about three script's pages per day, or the equivalent of about  
 12 three minutes of screen time.

7. Match the shots with their names in the box and their definitions below.

establishing shot	long shot	medium shot	over-the shoulder shot	close up
-------------------	-----------	-------------	------------------------	----------



- A. A shot that frames actors from the waist up. It is used to focus attention on an interaction between two actors, such as an embrace etc.
- B. A shot of one actor taken from over the shoulder of another actor. It is used when two characters are interacting face-to-face.
- C. A shot taken at close range to focus on an actor's expression, or to direct to an important element.
- D. A shot taken from a great distance or from a "bird's eye view." It is to show where the action is about to occur.
- E. A shot that shows a scene from a distance, but not from a "bird's eye view". It is to stress the setting of a scene.

Now describe the beginning of any film to your partner: e.g. *The film begins with an establishing shot of Paris with the Eiffel Tower in the distance. Then the camera switches over to a medium shot and we see...*

8. For questions 1-15, read the text below and then decide which word best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Directors have many \_\_\_\_\_ (0) and techniques that can shape the look and feel of a film. You can vary a shot's perspective, lighting, location, or other qualities to \_\_\_\_\_ (1) certain effects. One powerful way to communicate your \_\_\_\_\_ (2) is through camera angles. Shooting a movie monster, for example, from far away will achieve a very different look than if you were to \_\_\_\_\_ (3) it up close.

During the \_\_\_\_\_ (4) stages of a film, the director and possibly the director of photography may meet with a storyboard artist to illustrate the flow of shots that will best tell the story. There are a number of camera angles that a director has at his \_\_\_\_\_ (5). The most common of these are the establishing shot, long shot, medium shot, over-the-shoulder shot, and close-up.

Once the shoot is over, hundreds of thousands of feet of film need to be \_\_\_\_\_ (6) into a \_\_\_\_\_ (7) story. Days or weeks of shooting result in only a few minutes of screen time. In the editing room, the director's vision will either come to life or \_\_\_\_\_ (8). With his guidance, the film and sound editor will complete the detailed \_\_\_\_\_ (9) work required at this stage. The "director's cut" of the film (the one he works with the editor to create) may not be the final one the audience sees. The film's producers may decide to cut certain scenes or use a different film clip for a certain effect. Editing is a \_\_\_\_\_ (10) process, the final step in the difficult work of bringing your vision to life.

His \_\_\_\_\_ (11) as a director (as well as the \_\_\_\_\_ (12) of his contract with the studio) determines how much say the director has in determining what version of the film is \_\_\_\_\_ (13) to the public. \_\_\_\_\_ (14), a director dislikes the final cut and decides not to be listed in the credits. If this happens, the credits list Alan Smithee as the director. Alan Smithee is not a real person, but an \_\_\_\_\_ (15) used as a substitute when a director refuses to be linked to a film.

0	<b>tools</b>	instruments	utensils	apparatuses
1	complete	get	achieve	pull off
2	eyesight	vision	foresight	image
	discharge	squirt	score	shoot
4	basic	planning	intermediate	final
5	headquarters	disposal	camera	will
6	collected	assembled	gathered	reunited
7	coherent	articulate	reasoned	reliable
8	expire	pass away	depart this life	perish
9	technological	specialized	technical	procedural
10	collaborative	mutual	shared	two-way
11	prominence	stature	distinction	eminence
12	terminology	stipulations	requisites	terms
13	discharged	issued	released	emitted
14	occasionally	irregularly	eventually	intermittently
15	alas	alias	interalia	alliance

## 9. Work in pairs. Look through exercises 6 and 8 and do the following tasks:

- **Describe the functions of the following professionals:** *director, director of photography, designer, film crew, film editor, sound editor, producer, storyboard artist, Alan Smithee.*
- **Explain the meaning of the following words and word combinations:** **Exercise 6-***script, shooting schedule, storyboard, frame, set construction, location scouting, shooting, troubleshoot, acceptable production, exceptional production, filming, screen time;* **Exercise 8 -** *editing room, director's cut, cut scenes, film clip, collaborative process, bring to life, alias.*

## 10. You will hear a text on the role of different kinds of professionals in filmmaking. As you listen, complete the sentences below.

Screenwriters:

■ Their fee \_\_\_\_\_

■ Their \_\_\_\_\_

■ They may also\_ Producers:

■ hire \_\_\_\_\_

with the exception of \_\_\_\_\_

Production designers: ■ \_\_\_\_\_

are responsible for \_\_\_\_\_

director's and producer's like \_\_\_\_\_

other writer's books. to make \_\_\_\_\_

their ideas come true/ \_\_\_\_\_

Directors of Photography:

■ plan \_\_\_\_\_ and supervise \_\_\_\_\_ .

Casting Directors:

■ help in \_\_\_\_\_ suitable for \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ acting.

Editors:

■ arrange the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ and arrange them to \_\_\_\_\_ .

■ assemble the \_\_\_\_\_ for the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ to view.

## 11. Write summaries of your favorite three films of different genres. Use exercise 5 as a model.

## 12. Translate

Кіновиробництво проходить кілька етапів, перш ніж роботу над фільмом буде закінчено. На допостановочному етапі сценарист подає остаточну версію сценарію, яку кіновиробники затверджують разом з принципами, на яких ґрунтується його реалізація. Вони також деталізують бюджет, планують сцени фільму, складають розклад зйомок. Композитор пише музичний суировід. Художник готує план візуального ряду, тобто зображення кожного кадру, у тій послідовності, яка буде в реальному фільмі, а потім обговорює цей план з режисером і режисером-оператором. Перш ніж почати знімання, фільм ретельно розписується кадр за кадром на папері. На цьому етапі проводяться також останні репетиції, приготування декорацій і рекогносцирування місця зйомок.

Після початку зйомок режисер намагається пояснити своє бачення фільму усім акторам - й тим, які грають головні ролі, й тим, що працюють у взаємодії з іншими акторами, - а також знімальній групі. Режисеру часто доводиться імпровізувати під час зйомок, самостійно шукати і виявляти недоліки, наглядати за вірною реалізацією задуму. Якість роботи режисера є визначальною у тому, вийде кінець кінцем пристойний чи винятковий або навіть визначний фільм, що може стати світовим хітом. Звичайно, для експорту кінопродукції слід вирішити проблему дублювання або субтитрування фільму. У середньому за день знімають кілька роликів кіноплівки, але це ледве покриває три сторінки сценарію, тобто приблизно три хвилини екранного часу.

До складу творчого колективу входять найрізноманітніші фахівці, кожен з яких відповідає за конкретну ділянку роботи. Продюсер забезпечує фінансовий бік справи, режисер-оператор і оператори знімають сцени, варіюючи перспективу та точку і, відповідно, плани зйомки: панорамний, загальний, середньокрупний, знятий через плече актора і крупний. Режисер, що відповідає за акторський склад, має знайти акторів, організувати репетиції і вирішувати усі проблеми, що виникають у акторів. Художник по декораціях, художник-постановник та художній режисер - усі вони вирішують різноманітні питання художнього оформлення фільму.

Після завершення зйомок десятки тисяч метрів целулоїдної стрічки слід змонтувати у цілісну історію, яку оповість фільм. Режисер-постановник, редактор фільму, звукорежисер та звукоредактор, які накладають звукову доріжку і звукові ефекти, а також редактор візуального ряду фільму працюють у монтажній кімнаті, аби здійснити редагування та монтаж. Вони вирізають з фільму цілі сцени і фрагменти, заново монтують їх, вирішують, які будуть переходи між відредагованими сценами, аж поки нарешті не одержують попередній (або режисерський) монтаж. Це не означає, що саме цю версію побачить нубліка, оскільки режисерський монтаж може й далі редагуватися. Продюсер може вирішити вирізати деякі сцени, або додати нові фрагменти - це залежить від авторитету режисера та умов його контракту. Трапляється, що режисеру-постановнику настільки не подобається остаточна версія монтажу фільму, що він забороняє ставити власне ім'я в титрах з переліком імен усіх учасників виробництва фільму. Тоді глядачі прочитають, що фільм поставив Алан Сміті - це псевдонім, який використовують у таких випадках.

Коли кіно було ще німим і чорно-білим, кіновиробники вставляли між сценами написи, які пояснювали дію, і додавали до стрічки ноти музичного супроводу на окремих аркушах. Організатори показу наймали музикантів або й цілий оркестр для його виконання. Кіно, яке спочатку просто реєструвало звичайні події, наприклад, прибуття потягу на залізничний вокзал, з часом розвинулося у надзвичайно різноманітні жанри, і сьогодні включає неігрове (кіножурнали, фільми про подорожі, документальні та мультиплікаційні фільми), та ігрове кіно. Сучасна кіноіндустрія у цілому світі щорічно виробляє тисячі художніх фільмів - драми і мелодрами, комедії і трагедії, дитячі фільми і фільми для дорослих, вестерни і детективи, де ім'я убивці стає відомим лише наприкінці фільму, трилери і фільми в жаїрі екшн, пригодницькі і фантастичні і навіть фільм жажів та з життя гангстерів. Якісні фільми є матеріальними продуктами культури, вони розважають, просвіщають, надихають, несуть освіту в маси.



## PART 2

### MILD INNUENDOS GO OVER THE VIEWERS' HEADS

James keeps playing with Lappy. Below is Lappy's task. Help James do it.



**1. Read the following review and put the paragraphs in correct order. Read about the review structure in Lesson 1, Part 3 of this Unit first. Which paragraphs belong to *Introduction*, *Main Body* and *Conclusion*? Is the review generally positive or negative? Why?**

A. The first Disney movie with a PG-13 rating is intended for teens and adults. Many scenes are intense and violent. Sensuality is mostly limited to low-cut period gowns. There are a few mild innuendoes that will go over most younger viewers' heads. Language is limited to a few uses of the term 'bloody'. The CGI involved is impressive, but younger children will be frightened by skeletons. These figures are very creepy and sometimes horrific, thus my encouragement that only older children be allowed to attend.

B. The script is actually far more complex than a simple summary might surmise. Full of surprising plot twists, witty dialogue, excellent swordplay, and some truly astonishing CGI battles, *Pirates of the Caribbean* deserves a sailor's welcome. Much has been made over actor Johnny Depp 'improvising' the character of Jack Sparrow. He really goes out on a limb with his interpretation of a slightly batty, overall likable, and sometimes downright sinister former pirate captain. The thing is, it totally works. His gold-toothed smile, his half-slurred speech, and his 'sea legs on land' stride never fails to engage a laugh. His own entrance to the film is particularly memorable, one of the movie's best comic moments.

C. It's been years since a pirate has sailed into the box office and made movie making history. But the applause must go to Disney for this grand achievement which can truly be deemed an 'epic' *Pirates of the Caribbean* is in the grand old style of Errol Flynn. Not only are the sword fights grand, the escapes harrowing, and the cast top-notch, but the plot is truly brilliant and the two and a half hour pace never seems to lag. Most viewers will find themselves swept into an adventure unlike any other with a beautiful damsel in distress, a handsome rogue as her rescuer, and a motley crew of bloodthirsty buccaneers to provide the backdrop.

D. I never felt uncomfortable with this film, and I doubt many others would find it unsavory either. There's enough humor to elevate some of the darker elements, and for once it's eye candy, which pays off for the two-plus hours spent in a cramped theatre seat.

E. The story begins on the deck of a British royal navy ship under the command of young Captain Norrington (Jack Davenport) and the Governor of Jamaica (Jonathan Pryce). His daughter Elizabeth is standing at the stern singing one of her favorite romantic odes about pirates. But as the mist parts, she sees a half-dead boy clinging to a piece of driftwood. Tending to the boy, she discovers a gold piece stamped with a skull and crossbones. She takes it, believing him to be a pirate. Years later, Elizabeth's fate collides with the mysterious Captain Jack Sparrow (Johnny Depp). Captured by Norrington's men and sentenced to hang for his crimes against humanity, Jack Sparrow is the only one who can help when Elizabeth is kidnapped by a dangerous crew of pirates. The piece of gold she possesses is the only link, which will release the pirates from a terrible curse.

F. This is one of the most stunningly visual movies I've ever seen. The costuming is beautiful, the backdrop romantic, and some of the cinematography, like a pirate ship sailing under a full moon, downright jaw-dropping. This film deserves a number of Oscar nominations for merit alone, and that's not including the excellent performances by Geoffrey Rush, Orlando Bloom, and British beauty Kiera Knightley.

**2. Work in pairs. Go back to the review and write out the words and word combinations belonging to the categories given below.**

*Positive characteristics of the film:* CGI is impressive,...

*Negative characteristics of the film:* scenes are intense and violent,...

*Characterising the plot:* the plot is truly brilliant,...

*Characterising actors:* he improvises the character of...,...

*Conclusions:* most viewers will find themselves swept into an adventure unlike any other,...

*Film ratings:* only older children be allowed to attend,...



**3. Some films are not allowed to be viewed by underage audiences. What kind of film ratings do you know? Match the ratings below with their explanations.**

RATING	MEANING
British Board of Film Classification	
Unrestricted (U)	films that can only be seen by people over 15
Parents' Guidance (PG)	films that can only be seen by people over 18
12	films that can be shown to anyone
15	films that may include parts that are unsuitable for children
18	films that can only be seen by people over 12

**4. Listen to the text about the history of film rating in the USA and fill in the table below. The problems concerning the rating of motion pictures in the USA are dealt with by the organisation that is called the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA).**

Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA)

1968-1970

G I  
R  
M  
X

Nowadays

G I  
PG PG-  
13 NC-  
17



5. Work in pairs. Read the article by Adam Sherwin from *the Times* about the new Harry Potter film. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations from the box. Then write out the words and word combinations used for a negative characterisation of the film.

scene disposition character (2) gory viewed rating (2) frightening permit legislation warning  
swearing adolescent tone banned concern ruling inappropriate nudity  
category accompanied fantasy scary certificate censors

Death Eaters have claimed a victory after \_\_\_\_\_ (1) ruled that the new Harry Potter film was too \_\_\_\_\_ (2) for children under 12. The British Board of Film Classification (BBFC) has given *Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire* a 12A \_\_\_\_\_ (3). Children under that age can watch only if \_\_\_\_\_ (4) by an adult. The previous three Harry Potter films were all given a G \_\_\_\_\_ (5) allowing children of all ages to watch them unaccompanied.

The censors ruled that the darker, more intense world of the now- \_\_\_\_\_ (6) wizard was too much for younger children of a sensitive disposition. Aware that the \_\_\_\_\_ (7) could leave thousands of children disappointed, David Cooke, the BBFC director, personally \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the film and approved the classification.

J. K. Rowling gave \_\_\_\_\_ (9) before the book's publication in 2000 that Harry and his chums would face some disturbing challenges, including the murder of a popular \_\_\_\_\_ (10). The tone is faithfully reproduced in Mike Newell's film. Scenes of \_\_\_\_\_ (11) to the BBFC examiners included "a gang of hooded Death Eaters" invading the Quidditch World Cup.

A graveyard battle between Harry and the Death Eaters was deemed too \_\_\_\_\_ (12) for some young children as well as a \_\_\_\_\_ (13) being dragged below ground by a tangle of plant roots. There are also too many scary spiders, which can cause nightmares, for a PG \_\_\_\_\_ (14). The language is stronger than in the earlier films, reflecting the maturation of its central characters. The long-awaited death \_\_\_\_\_ (15) may also disturb some.

The film is in the same \_\_\_\_\_ (16) as Spielberg's *War of the Worlds*. The censor's advice for parents is that the Potter film contains "moderate \_\_\_\_\_ (17) violence, threat and horror". The BBFC said: "The \_\_\_\_\_ (18) of the film is much scarier and darker than its predecessors. We expect most parents will still take their children but they should be aware that youngsters of a nervous \_\_\_\_\_ (19) might be upset."

In America, the film has been given a PG-13 rating, signifying that it may be \_\_\_\_\_ (20) for pre-teens. The 12A rating was introduced after councils invoked \_\_\_\_\_ (21) allowing them to alter BBFC ratings in response to parents' complaints that their children were \_\_\_\_\_ (22) from watching *Spider man*. The guidelines for a 12A film \_\_\_\_\_ (23) "moderate threat and menace with occasional \_\_\_\_\_ (24) moments only". Infrequent \_\_\_\_\_ (25), including the "f" word and "discreet" \_\_\_\_\_ (26) are allowed.

Negative characteristics of the film: too scary,



6. What are the advantages and disadvantages of going to the cinema as opposed to watching the same film at home?

7. Work in pairs. Read the opinions of UK cinema-goers below and write out the words and word combinations that illustrate the factors which (a) encourage people to visit the cinema; (b) discourage them from doing it.

**Encouraging factors**

**Discouraging factors**



**Archie Robin, London.** In London's Leicester Square, the cost of a movie ticket is £11 and can go up to £17 for "front circle" seats in one theatre. Add a 50p "booking fee" per ticket, £3-6 for drinks and popcorn, the cost of transport and/or parking, and multiply by the number of seats. Now, compare that with the cost of buying the DVD three months later (£10 -20) or renting it (£1-3) and there's your answer.



**Vinay Mehra, Surrey.** Despite the advance of technology to view a movie at home I still like to visit the cinema. However, the frequency of my visits has declined in recent years mainly because of the monopoly of cinema owners, high prices, tolerance of badly behaved people and concentration of Hollywood movies at the expense of variety from around the globe.



**Charles Macy, Spain.** I like the idea of a night at the movies. The reality though is somewhat different. We are lucky enough that we don't have to pay for parking which could cost you more than buying the DVD. Unless it is just me I seem to always get to sit behind the tallest person while his friend seems purposely to be rustling his sweetie bag or answering his mobile.



**Mary Maloney, Wales.** I haven't been to the cinema for 15 years. 1. Because there aren't that many films I want to see (I'm not particularly keen on watching sex and violence). 2. Because I can't put up with my fellow citizens who have lost all sense of how to behave in a public space. For us now home cinema wins hands down simply for the privacy and the control it gives you.



**Chip Norman, Derby.** I'm 17 and have the full stress of A levels to deal with and yet I'm going to cinemas far more than I have ever done. I think there is no shortage of entertaining movies around at the moment, even if we are said to be in a poor time for films. I find the cinemas more popular than ever, and think that watching a film first at the cinema does not compare to watching it at home.



**Ann William, London.** In recent years the likelihood that the latest "blockbuster" is in fact just another predictable, repetitive eye-candy fest of CGI has become overwhelming. Most of the films with any substance to them go straight to DVD anyway. The growth of DVDs and home cinema have severely reduced the need to visit the cinema. For the first time in cinema history, people have a genuine alternative.



**James Paterson, Whitney.** Remember the thrill of going to the cinema when you were a kid? Well, that thrill may be slightly diluted as an adult but it's still an experience that can't be replicated at home. The atmosphere is more exciting, the sound is better and films just look better on a big screen. Yes, it costs a bit, but no more than an evening spent down the pub (and it still makes the ideal first date - where else can you go on a date and not have to make conversation for two hours!).



**Barbara Shine, Bath.** Three reasons for me: 1. Out of town multiscreens being owned by the big production studios, e.g. Odeon/Time Warner. This makes for a limited choice of mainly low-grade flicks. 2. The ever increasing prices of tickets. 3. Poorly designed theatres with uncomfortable, cramped and badly laid-out seating. Who in their right mind puts the aisle in a cinema down the centre anyway?



**Jim Jones, Leicester.** There are a number of reasons why I don't go to the cinema anymore. Cinema tickets costs about £6-7 each. For two people, that's £14. A DVD costs less, and you keep it forever. Get a decent hi-fi and TV and you needn't bother going. You can even make your own microwave popcorn without needing to take out a bank loan! Cinemas have become greedy and are suffering for it.



**Mary Smith, Spain.** A visit to the cinema should be an enjoyable evening out, enabling you to appreciate the excellent audio-visual effects of modern cinematographic technology. The problem however, is that you're usually surrounded by yobs, big-mouths and scum-bags of an assorted variety. Thankfully, DVD technology, pay-per-view home cinema and plasma screens at least allow you to see good films in the comfort of your living-room miles away, as it were, from the public.



**John Copperfield, Leads.** Cinema is a communal experience; no film is as funny, moving or scary when you view it alone in your home with, at best, a few companions. The medium needs to adapt to the changing demands of a market fighting against Internet and gaming (which often ties in with movies), but cinema is a unique and often memorable evening in a way that video nights are not. It will survive.



**Kate Williams, Oxford.** Viewing films as they were meant to be seen at the cinema is a markedly different experience from viewing at home. The collective and palpable atmosphere in an auditorium always enhances the film for me. Moreover, even if the film is mediocre, I always enjoy the experience of going to the cinema; it still retains its magic.

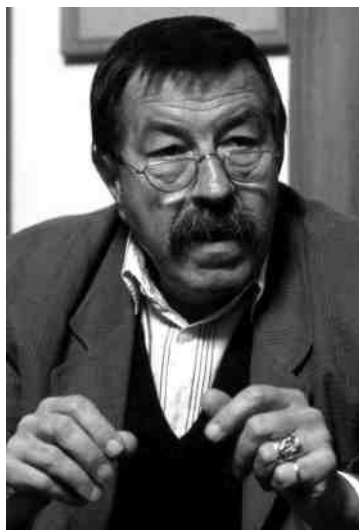
**8. Match the word combinations in column A with their meanings in column B.**

A		B	
1	state of the art	(a)	a wide-screen version of a film
2	bring something to a scratch	(b)	easy solution
	multiplex (multi screen)	(c)	using the most modern methods, materials or knowledge
4	Dolby sound system	(d)	a cinema where you can see a film before it is shown to the general public
5	70-mm print	(e)	make something good enough for a particular standard
6	preview theatre	(f)	a cinema with several different halls to show films in
7	quick fix	(g)	a system for reducing unwanted noise when you record

9. You will hear a fragment of the radio programme in which three people (A-C) recall their cinema experience. For questions 1-15 match the statements with the people (A-C).



A. Ann Stone, London



B. David Pine, London



48&

£дяВo№:

C Joan Cusak, Wellington

#### WHICH OF THE PEOPLE

1	admits involvement into illegal activity	C	9	disapproves of multiplexes	
2	has changed own cinema-going habits		10	was put off the habit because of a shock	
	used to be very pragmatic		11	is disappointed about the changes	
4	used to have low opinion of local cinemas		12	believes things might have been different but for the place	
5	mentions the theatre innovations made for a specific film		13	argues for the high quality of equipment in the past	
6	used to yield to temptation		14	is nostalgic about the past	
7	appreciates the standards of modern cinemas		15	does something s/he would not have done in the past	
8	liked to see things before other people did				

10. Write a review of a film you have seen lately. Read about the review structure in Lesson 1, Part 3 of this Unit first.

#### 11. Translate

Щойно випущений блокбастер, "Гаррі Портер і Кубок Світу", має категорію 12A (PG-13 у США) і продовжує серію стрічок, які вже увійшли до історії кінематографа, ставши в один ряд з найвідомішими фільмами століття. Нова робота зроблена у старому славетному стилі: чудові костюми, розкішний другий план, дотепні діалоги, несподівані повороти сюжету, карколомні втечі - справжнє свято для очей. Сценарій цього фільму набагато складніший за попередні, тут достатньо гумору, аби пом'якшити гнітючий вплив окремих похмурих елементів, динаміка розвитку сюжету не уповільнюється ні на мить - наші оплески як сценаристу, так і режисеру Незрівнянню комп'ютерна графіка стрічки по-справжньому вражає, деякі сцени так захоплюють, що глядачі сидять з відкритим ротом - фільм можна по праву назвати епічним, це надзвичайне досягнення усієї знімальної групи. Бездоганна якість зображення і звуку (нещодавно встановлена стереофонічна система Долбі) у сучасному залі найбільшого мультиплексу, який привели у відповідність до сучасних вимог, спричинює солідні черги до кас. Практичну відсутність технічних недоліків у новій стрічці змушені визнати навіть перебірливі прихильники кіно.

Дія починається в Богварті. Пройшли роки, наші герої подорослішали, а з ними змінилися і їхні жінтя. Доля Гаррі перехрещується з долею Тома. Хтось включив Гаррі четвертим учасником змагання "Тривізард", у якому зазвичай змагаються лише три чарівники. Це переповнило чашу терпіння Тома. Він не вірить, що це відбулося без відома Гаррі і підозрює його у закулісних іграх. Між тим Гаррі в рамках змагань має битися з вогненним драконом (одна з найкращих сцен фільму), щоб зняти прокляття, а тому



не може відмовитися від участі. Аби не псувати задоволення глядачам, не буду далі переповідати зміст, скажу лише, що *сюжет є дійсно цікавим* - будуть там і відважні рятівники, і викрадення людей, і п'янке відчуття перемоги.

*Акторський склад є безперечно першокласним.* Ральф Фішер, у ролі князя темряви Вальдемара, *грає по-справжньому блискуче.* Хоча зовні він виглядає зловісним, трохи несповна розуму, але загалом приємним відчайдухом, його манера імпровізувати, ковтати половину слів при мовленні, широко крокувати ходою моряка на суші є досить ризикованою інтерпретацією образу. Однак ця манера цілком спрацьовує. Вже його перша поява у фільмі справляє сильне враження, а кожна наступна незмінно викликає сміх. *Строката банда кровожерливих прибічників* володаря зла створює тло, яке вигідно відтіняє головних героїв.

Доросліший вік персонажів *прискорив появу* певних проблем, пов'язаних з аудиторією, для якої *призначений* фільм. На відміну від попередніх стрічок серії, усі з яких були віднесені до категорії (U) у Великій Британії і категорії (G) у США, тобто не мали жодних вікових обмежень, Британський комітет з питань класифікації фільмів присвоїв новій стрічці категорію 12A (Кіноасоціація США - категорію PG-13), а це означає, що фільм може бути неприйнятним для дітей, молодших за 13 років. Критики, що досі ховалися у засідці, спробували підняти галас щодо неприйнятності нової стрічки для дітей взагалі, вчепившись у деякі її ознаки. По-перше, з їхньої точки зору, *напружений сюжет містить сцени насильства, погроз та жахів у стилі "фентезГ", що може бути занадто для молодших дітей з підвищеною чутливістю.* Трапляються епізоди з оголеними тілами, а в деяких випадках можна почути лайку. Звичайно, персонажі не користуються словами з трьох літер чи іншими нецензурними словами. Немає у стрічці й жодного випадку богохульства. Вживання ненормативної лексики зводиться до застосування дещо понижених зворотів. Місцями, на погляд критиків, *фільм є страшним і похмурым,* внаслідок чого молодші діти з підвищеною чутливістю можуть відчувати пригніченість. Стрічка містить також: окремі погрози та загрози, а сцена смерті може стривожити деяких молодших глядачів. В одному з епізодів, як можна припустити, дітей налякають привиди, що можуть виявитися занадто страшними. Вони й справді такі *страхотливі, аж мурашки по тілу* - погоджуюсь, що це може спричинити нічні кошмари. Що стосується чуттєвості, то фільм аж ніяк не можна віднести до *хтивих*, а тим більше - до *порнографічних.* Еротичність переважно обмежується відносно сміливими впрізами на сукнях деяких жіночих персонажів, а м'які приховані *натяки* швидше за все *пройдуть повз вуха* молодших глядачів. Таким чином, я б обмежився рекомендацією, аби цей фільм могли переглядати лише старші діти.

Загалом же картина *заслужує висунення на премію "Оскар"* у кількох номінаціях тільки за художню цінність, не кажучи вже про блискучу гру акторів і казковий музичний супровід. Глядачі *опиняються у вирі пригод, яких вони ще не знали.* З моєї точки зору, це один з найбільш вражаючих за красою сцен фільмів, які я будь-коли бачив. Не було навіть миті коли б мені стало нудно під час сеансу. Гадаю, що й для переважної більшості інших глядачів фільм буде цікавим. Заради такого видовища варто просидіти понад дві години у тісному глядацькому кріслі.



# ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 5

## PREPOSITIONS TO EXPRESS OTHER MEANINGS - I



### AT and BY

**1. Read Part 1 of Episode 5 and then proceed to the tasks.**

## EPISODE 5

### PART I

"What do you mean *by* (1) Pencader Hollow?" James felt *at* (2) ease, the radio playing *at* (3) low volume *at* (4) his request, his tiredness slipping away bit *by* (5) bit. He had always liked this room, seven yards *by* (6) five *at* (7) a guess, where he was sitting now *by* (8) candlelight sipping *at* (9) his wine, delighted *at* (10) the quality of the food and his grandma's company. In a way, he had been brought up *by* (11) her.

*By* (12) nature she was a long-range planner and *by* (13) temperament - a detective. So it was not *by* (14) chance that *by* (15) day she was an average housewife, quite well off *by* (16) local standards, doing most things *by* (17) herself, but *by* (18) night she turned into an ardent explorer, doing crosswords and puzzles bought *by* (19) the dozens *at* (20) discount prices. She had always been good *at* (21) logical thinking and intellectual exercises, easily multiplying, say, 87 *by* (22) 36 or dividing 337 *by* (23) 28 without any calculating machine. She seemed to do her puzzles *at* (24) random, but she did not. With years her skills had even improved *at* (25) least *by* (26) half.

**2. Study the sentences in Part 1 and complete the following rules with the prepositions *at* or *by*. Put the number of the corresponding usage in brackets. There is an example at the beginning.**

When we want to indicate: the

price, we use **at** (20)

the volume, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the doer of the action, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the means or method, we use \_\_\_\_\_

as a result of something, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the circumstances (intentional / unintentional), we use \_\_\_\_\_

the explanation of the meaning, we use \_\_\_\_\_

that something / somebody is in a particular state or condition, we use \_\_\_\_\_

how something is being done, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the meaning "according to", we use \_\_\_\_\_

that something is done in a tentative (trying) way, we use \_\_\_\_\_

that something is done without anybody else's participation, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the process of multiplication or division, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the measurements (of a room, etc.), we use \_\_\_\_\_

guessing or estimating something, we use \_\_\_\_\_

- that something is made / dealt with in the quantity mentioned, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the speed at which something happens, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the amount of increase or decrease, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- a classification by job, character, etc., we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something happens during the day / night time, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the level of ability to do something, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that someone likes or dislikes something, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the following questions.**

1. How did James feel at his grandma's house? Why?
2. The radio was not playing loudly. Why?
3. Approximately how big was the room James and his grandma were sitting in?
4. Grandma was very intelligent. Why? Give examples.
5. There was not a lot of light in the room. Why?
6. James was not in a hurry. Find the fragments in the text which prove it.
7. Grandma's character had two sides. How?
8. Grandma used to buy a lot of crosswords. How many would she buy? How much would she pay?
9. Did grandma depend on anybody? Did she need any help?
10. How had her skills improved with years?
11. How did she seem to do her puzzles?

**4. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part I.**

1. James did not understand what his grandma meant about Pencader Hollow.
2. By James' request grandma turned the radio volume down.
3. The music was not playing on a high volume.
4. By a guess the room was not very big - about four yards for three.
5. James relaxed sitting in candlelight and sipping on his wine.
6. Delighted by his grandma's company, James was enjoying his meal.
7. Broadly speaking James was brought up with his grandma.
8. Grandma was a born manager in her nature.
9. But from her temperament she was an investigator.
10. In this pleasant atmosphere James was relaxing bit for bit.

**5. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 1.**

1. Because of her nature, grandma was a detective.
2. Because of her temperament, she was a mathematician.
3. She turned into an ardent explorer accidentally.
4. She was doing her crosswords all day long.
5. Grandma used to buy one de-lux crossword book every Saturday.
6. Grandma bought expensive crossword books.
7. Like many people of her age, grandma used to have occasional problems with logical thinking.
8. She seemed to do her puzzles unsystematically.
9. With years her intellectual skills got two times worse.
10. Grandma's skills had improved maximum by half.

**6. Complete the following sentences with the prepositions *at* or *by*.**

1. The king belonged to the elite \_\_\_\_\_ birth.
2. Grandma usually had the radio playing \_\_\_\_\_ full volume.
3. The king was glad \_\_\_\_\_ James' arrival.
4. Grandma had lost her key, so James had to enter the house \_\_\_\_\_ the window.
5. Grandma estimated her house \_\_\_\_\_ £150,000.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the king's request the Security Minister has resigned
7. Watson was a doctor \_\_\_\_\_ trade.
8. Search parties were sent \_\_\_\_\_ the scores.

138

- the purpose of an object or an action, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of "by", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- comparison, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- relation to people, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the ratio, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the price at which something can be bought, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- emotions in general, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- people etc. towards whom emotions are experienced, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the general subject, field or activity, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of "because of", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the reason or cause, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- an approximate amount or number, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- support for somebody or something, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- an approximate age, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- representation, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- opinion or experience, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- employment by somebody, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the way of communication, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- that something is fashionable, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of "instead of", we use \_\_\_\_\_

**12. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the following questions.**

1. What kind of feeling did grandma have when she understood that James had forgotten her tales?
2. How old was grandma? How did she look like?
3. What colours were in fashion that year?
4. How many tales did grandma tell James in his childhood?
5. James wanted grandma to tell her story quickly. Right?
6. What kind of feeling did James have toward his grandma? Find the fragments in the text to prove it.
7. What is the ratio of illiterate people in the world?
8. Why did James come to his grandma's place?
9. James is sorry. Why?
10. Grandma supports James' idea. What kind of idea?
11. Grandma has preferences in terminology. What kind?
12. James does not represent an organization. What kind?

**13. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part 2.**

1. Grandma looked at James by surprise as she had not expected him to forget her tales.
2. She was not on shock, but she pretended to be.
3. James protested with a friendly voice as he felt tenderness to his grandma.
4. Though grandma was at her seventies, she looked quite well to her age.
5. James wanted grandma to tell her story with a few words.
6. Grandma could not believe her grandson had come about a few words.
7. Grandma believed that the ratio of illiterate people in Britain was even worse than five women on every three men.
8. Grandma was talking with a mockingly offensive manner.
9. James could buy the dictionary by £8.95.
10. It was not easy to grandma to look offensive.

**14. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 2.**

1. James did not like grandma's remark so he protested rudely.
2. James came to grandma's place to get some information.
3. James was hungry so he went to his grandma's place. That was the reason.
4. James was tired and wasn't sorry because of being impolite.
5. James regretted he had not taken a course in Modern History at university.
6. Grandma did not support James' idea about taking a course.

7. Grandma viewed the words "legends" and "folklore" as full synonyms.
8. James was a secretary at the English Language Society.
9. James spoke on behalf of the English Language Society.
10. Having accepted grandma's remark, James did not admit his mistake.

**15. Complete the following sentences with the prepositions *in* or *for*.**

1. They set off \_\_\_\_ Paris \_\_\_\_ hundreds rather than \_\_\_\_ dozens.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ his twenties he used to vote the radicals.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ my experience he used to be Labour MP (member of Parliament) \_\_\_\_\_ South London, and now he works \_\_\_\_ IBM.
4. Nine people \_\_\_\_ every ten have never seen such words \_\_\_\_ print.
5. \_\_\_\_ his old age he had no real ground \_\_\_\_ optimism.
6. She teased him \_\_\_\_ being an expert \_\_\_\_ astrology.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ using "egg plant" \_\_\_\_ "aubergine" he displayed his Americanism.
8. Purple T-shirts are the \_\_\_\_\_ -thing at the moment. You can buy them here \_\_\_\_ £14.95.
9. Seeing her \_\_\_\_\_ distress, he felt a strong pity \_\_\_\_ her.
10. Though it was a difficult experience \_\_\_\_\_ her, she replied \_\_\_\_\_ a polite way. She was too educated \_\_\_\_\_ all these arguments.

**16. Choose the correct preposition in each of the sentences below.**

1. *At/by/in* all the excitement she used the word "fall" *by/in/for* "autumn" and nobody understood her.
2. Even *by/in/for* her young age she was all *at/in/for* such ideas, and she could reason *at/in/for* the opposition.
3. *By/in/at* her view, she was a bit old *at/in/for* the recent advances *at/by/in* fashion.
4. Things *by/In/for* fashion are usually sold *by/in/for* more money they are really worth.
5. Write everything *at/by/fin* brief here. *At/by/for* more information, please, contact my secretary.
6. Though she was working *at/in/for* the government, she was speaking *by/in/for* the opposition.
7. Ten men *by/in/for* every two women serve prison sentences *by/in/for* crimes.
8. The only thing that mattered *by/in/for* her was the people kept coming *at/by/in* hundreds.
9. *At/in/for* refusing to communicate he displayed his being *at/by/in* great distress.
10. *At/in/by* her opinion, he was really sorry *by/in/for* her.

**17. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 2, using the clues below on the part of a) James; b) grandma**

1. Grandma: remember -tales? - surprise - pretending - shock; it - difficult - look angry.
2. James: tenderness - dear woman - late seventies - looking well - her age.
3. Grandma: wear - bright dress - fashion - this year.
4. James: tell - dozens - hundreds; tell - a few words.
5. Grandma: few words? - mockingly offensive manner; You - read - dictionary = £9.99. Ratio - illiterate people - world = 5 women: 3 men; this country - opinion.
6. James: protest - friendly voice; here - pleasure - company; this - reason - coming; sorry - impolite; should - take - course - Celtic folklore.
7. Grandma: I - the idea - prefer "legends"  $\Phi$  "folklore".
8. James: not work - not speak - English Language Society.
9. Grandma: You - accept - you - admit - mistake - can - tell - Pencader Hollow.

**18. Write your own story (200 words), using the prepositions *for* and *in* in the meanings you have just learned.**

## LESSON 4

### PART 1 THE BRITISH ARE COMING

James keeps playing with Lappy. Below are Lappy's tasks. Help James do them.



#### 1. Match the verbs and adjectives in column A with their synonyms in column B.

Verbs		Adjectives and Adverbs			
A	B	A	B	A	B
1. outstrip	a. hit	1. premature	a. in the air	6. uplifting	f. rapidly growing
2. conjure	b. search	2. sheer	b. earning	7. hip	g. interesting
3. flock	c. surpass	3. aloft	c. rough	8. burgeoning	h. inspiring
4. pound	d. do magic tricks	4. gritty	d. total	9. engaging	i. unpopular
5. trawl	e. gather	5. grossing	e. hasty		

#### 2. Match the words in column A in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

I. making you feel happier and more hopeful; 2. strike something continuously and very hard; 3. the very; 4. pleasant and attracting one's attention; 5. perform clever tricks; 6. do something better than someone else; 7. gaining an amount of money as a total profit; 8. done too early; 9. developing quickly; 10. investigate to find out information;  
 II. high up; 12. not liked by most people; 13. realistically showing a difficult or unpleasant situation; 14. come somewhere in large numbers to see something interesting.

#### 3. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 1.

1. Students \_\_\_\_\_ (1) to the film shooting locations, looking for jobs as understudies. 2. Even in this case, the director seems in no mood for \_\_\_\_\_ (2) actions, he is unwilling to hurry. 3. For such a \_\_\_\_\_ (3) film, the box-office results are quite good. 4. When the profit exceeded \$50 million, the film became the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ (4) production in the history. 5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (5) for advice and information from lawyers, who specialise in movie contracts. 6. The film was of happy Hawaiian girls, dancing with garlands held \_\_\_\_\_ (6). 7. She soon gave up scriptwriting, \_\_\_\_\_ (7) by far more inventive competitors. 8. To some viewers the film is just an \_\_\_\_\_ (8) fantasy, but for others it creates the whole new world. 9. She wished she had not gone to see that horror film - her heart was \_\_\_\_\_ (9), and she felt sick. 10. The film turned out to be a \_\_\_\_\_ (10) dark drama from the life of unemployed youngsters. 11. Memories fade, and the half-forgotten scenes of the film become harder to \_\_\_\_\_ (11) with. 12. The \_\_\_\_\_ (12) name of the director and lead actors incited excitement among the movie-goers. 13. Experts predicted the \_\_\_\_\_ (13) market for action movies in the nearest future. 14. The scriptwriter was told to find some \_\_\_\_\_ (14) ending for the film.

4. Work in groups of 4-5. Try to write a list of British films, directors, producers, actors and actresses that you know. Discuss your list with other groups.

5. UK film industry had been in the shadow of the powerful Hollywood for decades. 1998 was the year when British productions started competing successfully with American ones, both in Britain and overseas. In the article from *Study UK* Jane-Ann Purdy puts you in the picture about the British cinema of that period. 6 fragments have been removed from the article. Choose from the fragments (A- F) the one that fits each gap (0-5). There is an example at the beginning (0).

- islands off the west coast of Scotland as doubles for the planet Jupiter
- B the pool of talented technicians
- C\_ fine British actresses were also nominated for awards
- D\_ Madonna and Michael Jackson are rumoured to be looking for dream European bases here
- U\_ sand to the uplifting sounds of Vangelis in *Chariots of Fire*
- F well-developed characters and engaging plots



0 When the scriptwriter of the film *Chariots of Fire*, Colin Welland, held his Oscar aloft at the 1981 Academy Awards ceremony and declared, 'The British are coming,' he was arguably somewhat premature. However, the sheer number of Brits present at every year's Oscars mean that finally it can be said that, in film-making terms, the British have arrived. This year *The Full Monty* was nominated for best picture and \_\_\_\_\_

1 It's true that the big money for movies is still coming out of the United States, but the number of films with a UK connection seems to be rocketing. Last year's nominations for best picture are a case in point: four out of five had a UK association. *Shine* and *Fargo* had British producers, while *Secrets and Lies* and *The English Patient* had British directors and cast. At a time when growing numbers of Hollywood blockbusters are falling into the category of event movies, for example, *Independence Day*, *Men in Black*, *Batman and Robin*, and more recently *Starship Troopers*, films made in the UK are doing better overseas. Often, the reason for their success is that they don't have any special effects. What they do have, however, is \_\_\_\_\_

2 While marketing budgets are threatening to outstrip those for production, *The Full Monty*, a film about a gang of unemployed factory workers in the gritty northern town of Sheffield, was about as low-tech as they come. However, it's taken millions at the box office and has become the biggest grossing British production ever. But this is no flash in the pan, it follows other recent UK successes such as *Bean*, *The English Patient*, *Four Weddings and a Funeral*, *Mrs Brown*, *Shallow Crave* and *Trainspotting*. These films have made their stars internationally famous and are proving to Hollywood executives that you don't need the likes of Demi Moore or Arnold Schwarzenegger to fill cinemas. Robert Carlyle, Ralph Fiennes, Hugh Grant, Kristin Scott-Thomas and Kate Winslet are names to conjure with, while one of the stars of *Trainspotting*, Ewan McGregor, hasn't stopped working all year and even landed his dream job as the young Obi-Wan Kenobi in the new trilogy of *Star Wars* prequels that hit the screens in 1999. Another Oscar-winning triumph, *Braveheart*, directed by and starring Mel Gibson, blazed a trail for US movies located in the UK. Indeed you'd be hard pressed to stumble over an area of ground that hadn't felt the step of one or other of Hollywood's top stars. Did you know for example, that Stanley Kubrick's *Full Metal Jacket* was shot at a disused gas works in London? Or that *2001: A Space Odyssey*, another of his classics, used \_\_\_\_\_?

3 People are beginning to flock to film locations as holiday destinations and the British Tourist Board produces a map detailing who shot what where. Unsurprisingly, London and the south east of England have seen the most movie activity recently, and have played host to such epics as *Spiceworld*, *The Movie*, *Chaplin* and *The Crying Game*. *Four Weddings and a Funeral* was also shot in the south east and makes use of five churches, a hotel and a stately home (Luton Hoo in Bedfordshire) all within easy distance of the capital. Oxford, a city previously famous just for its highly respected university and breathtaking architecture, contains many of the locations for the John Cleese movie *A Fish Called Wanda*, while students at St Andrews University can enjoy the beautiful sandy beaches where runners pounded the \_\_\_\_\_. Scotland is a popular location, which has doubled for many countries around the world including Canada, France, India, the United States, while in *Monty Python and the Holy Grail* it even appeared as England. The film was shot at locations near Stirling such as Doune Castle and Sherrifmuir while Dunnottar Castle, close to Aberdeen, doubled as the Prince of Denmark's castle in Mel Gibson's *Hamlet*.

4 Further south, Liverpool, home to many of the places frequented by *The Beatles*, was also the locations for 1990s biopic *Backbeat*, which told the story of the band's early life. While Scotland has its castles frequently inhabited by filmmakers, England is home to an amazing collection of stately homes which have opened their doors for the cameras. Knebworth House, in Hertfordshire, famous for hosting rock concerts, starred as Wayne Manor in Tim Burton's *Batman*, while the classic *Sense and Sensibility*, with Emma Thompson, used ancient houses in the west including Saltram House, near Plymouth. But if it's a contemporary feel you're looking for, visit Edinburgh and take a leisurely stroll around the streets that Ewan McGregor dashed along in *Trainspotting* or check out the Sheffield venues where Robert Carlyle famously got undressed in *The Full Monty*. Some filmmakers seem to come back to the UK time and time again. Veteran director, Stanley Kubrick is here again, working on *Eyes Wide Shut* with Tom Cruise and Nicole Kidman at Pinewood Studios, just outside London. In fact, Britain has never been hipper among superstars: it seems there isn't a single week without a famous face trawling the estate agents looking for property. Cruise and Kidman already keep a house in London while \_\_\_\_\_

5 UK studios are doing big business, too. Shepperton, owned by director brothers Ridley (*Blade Runner*) and Tony (*True Romance*) Scott, played host to the live action version of *101 Dalmatians* with Glenn Close, *Evita* starring Madonna, *The Borrowers*, with John Goodman, and *Lost in Space*. While Pinewood, which housed the massive Gotham City set for *Batman* has also been busy with *Interview With A Vampire* and *Mission Impossible* with Tom Cruise (again!), *The Saint* with Val Kilmer, and *The Jackal* with Bruce Willis and Richard Gere. These, and the other established British studios, were so busy that when the Bond movie, *Goldeneye* was looking for space they were forced to convert an old Rolls-Royce hangar at Leavesden, also close to the capital. It was so successful that it was immediately booked by George Lucas as the base for his new *Star Wars* trilogy, displacing this year's Bond epic, *Tomorrow Never Dies* which had to go elsewhere. The reason for the popularity of these studios has much to do with exchange rates, most importantly the strength of the dollar, but there is also \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, which is thought to even eclipse the expertise of Hollywood's finest. Ironically, Britain is also playing host to a burgeoning special effects industry, while it is arguably the lack of these that is making Brit movies so popular all over the world.



6. Work in pairs. From the options below choose an appropriate headline for each of the paragraphs (1-5) of the text in Activity 5. Explain your choice.

- A. All set for a British holiday?
- B. Making it big.
- C. Quality comes first.
- D. The silver screen is now red, white and blue.
- E. New tourists' attractions.



7. Work in pairs. Read the continuation of the text on the British cinema below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text. There is an example at the beginning (0).

### CINEMA COMPLEXES GO MEGA

0 It isn't just film making (0) that's enjoying a boom in Britain though, cinema  
 1 \_\_\_\_\_ are reaching record levels: there were 158 million cinema visits last year,  
 2 the \_\_\_\_\_ since 1974. Paul Biggins, Marketing Director of UCI Cinemas thinks  
 3 the quantity and quality of films is contributing to this \_\_\_\_\_, but says, 'The  
 4 other thing is that the cinema itself is a far \_\_\_\_\_ place to go than it was ten years  
 5 ago due to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the multiplex. Before the multiplexes, cinemas were  
 6 \_\_\_\_\_ rundown and supported just two or three screens in towns and cities.  
 7 The new wave of cinemas proved that \_\_\_\_\_ eight or more screens in large  
 8 out-of-town sites could be \_\_\_\_\_. Although most of the films shown are  
 9 blockbusters, there is also the scope for \_\_\_\_\_ the more modest independent films  
 10 previously \_\_\_\_\_ as art house and left to small independent cinemas to showcase.  
 11 Following the multiplex \_\_\_\_\_ many high street cinemas in town or city centres  
 12 have now converted their \_\_\_\_\_ to encompass more screens, and new cinemas  
 13 are springing up all over Britain. It's \_\_\_\_\_ that around 500 screens opened last  
 14 year, and there is even a megaplex \_\_\_\_\_ for the site of London's Battersea  
 15 Power \_\_\_\_\_ which will have 52 screens, while UCI has plans for two 20-screen  
 16 cinemas to be \_\_\_\_\_ in Manchester.

MAKE  
 ATTEND  
 HIGH  
 RESURGE  
 GOOD  
 CREATE  
 GENERAL  
 RUN  
 PROFIT  
 SHOW  
 TERM  
 REVOLVE  
 BUILD  
 ESTIMATE  
 PLAN  
 STATE  
 DEVELOP

8. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-21, find this word. Some lines may be correct. The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).

#### Example

0 showing  
 00

0 At the opposite end of the scale, the art house cinemas **show** films of a less commercial nature,  
 0 which include a large proportion of foreign language movies, are also benefiting from the upturn in  
 1 cinema attending. Ironically, television, once thought to signal the death knell for cinema, is  
 2 suffering reduced ratings thanks to the increase in popularity of other forms in entertainment,  
 3 cinema included.  
 4 Jim Hamilton, is manager of Film House, an independent cinema in Edinburgh, a city with a large  
 5 student's population (which makes up around 30 % of the audience), always keeps an eye on demand  
 6 for what the art house crowd are looking for. 'We've got a big Scandinavian audiences in Edinburgh  
 7 so I always make sure there are Scandinavian films and more towards spring and summer there's a  
 8 big influx of Spaniard and Italian students into the city, and I always make sure there're films on  
 9 for them, but by and large we try and cover so many countries as possible,' he says.  
 10 Fans of French films, will find these are particular popular in art house cinemas. Last year, for

11 example, *Ma vie en rose* sold off every weekend at the Film House for its entire eight-week run.  
 12 And foreign language films are only rare dubbed over with English-speaking voices in UK  
 13 cinemas, so you have to enjoy them in their original glory.  
 14 International films can not only found on the art house circuit but also make an appearance at film  
 15 festivals around the country, sometimes receiving their world premieres, as did, for example,  
 16 *Ma vie en rose* in the Edinburgh Film Festival.  
 17 This event is the oldest continuous running film festival and 2006 is its 60th year. Held every  
 18 August and internationally famous as part of the biggest arts festival in the world, it differs from  
 19 the overhyped affairs like as Cannes due to its embrace of film makers, stars and the cinema-  
 20 going public who are permitted to attend the most screenings.  
 21 Often festivals give you the chance to experience films before their general released, which means  
 22 for the true movie buff they are paradise. Other UK cities host their own film festival include  
 23 Aberystwyth (November), Bradford (March), London (November) and Manchester (February).

**9. Work in pairs. Look through the texts in Activities 5, 7 and 8 and find the words and word combinations with the meanings given below.**

**Activity 5:** 1. a good example of the subject of discussion; 2. do something new that no one has done before; 3. film which mostly focuses on visual effects; 4. have difficulty doing something; 5. come across; 6. use something instead of something; 7. the place someone is going to have his vacations at; 8. provide the place, food etc for an event; 9. large house of historical interest in the British countryside; 10. film that tells the story of someone's life; 11. film that tells what happened before the story told in a previous film; 12. sudden success ending very quickly and unlikely to happen again; 13. the name of a very important person; **Activity 7:** La cinema that shows non-commercial films, mainly foreign ones; 2. opportunity to do something; 3. main street; 4. include; 5. suddenly appear; **Activity 8:** 1. sign that something will soon fail; 2. sudden arrival of large amounts of something; 3. generally; 4. advertise something too much; 5. one who is interested in cinema and knows a lot about it.

## WRITING

### SURVEY REPORT

This is a formal piece of writing based on research. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) **an introduction** (1 paragraph) where you identify the purpose and content of your report; (2) **a main body** (several paragraphs with subheadings) where you present the collected information in detail; (3) **a conclusion** (1 paragraph) where you summarize the information and give a recommendation and/or suggestion if relevant in your particular case.

#### Recommendations:

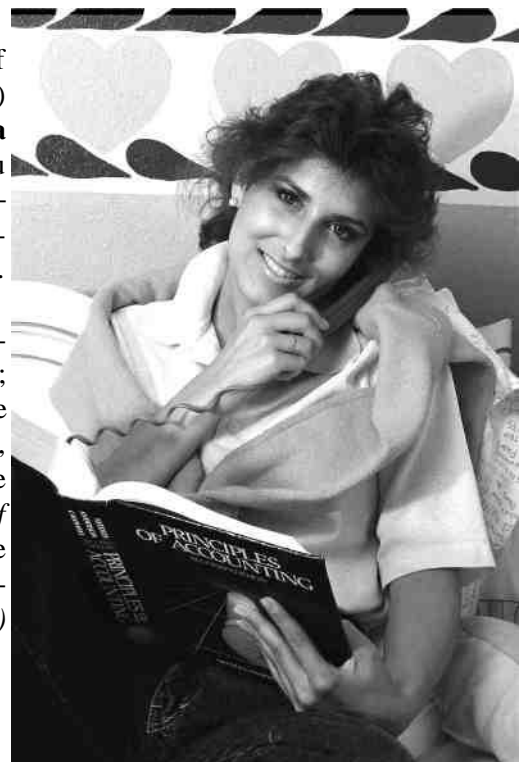
(1) Use formal language; (2) Use numbers or letters to separate portions of information; (3) Think of the main heading of your report; (4) Carefully analyze the information and break it up into appropriate subheadings; (5) Use present tenses to introduce generalizations, otherwise use past tenses if appropriate; (6) Use expressions like 20 %, *every second film*, *the majority of films*, *a large proportion of actors* to report the results of your survey; (7) Present facts in the form of percentages or proportions if applicable; (8) Link generalizations to the facts either by active (*This demonstrates/ indicates*) or passive (*It is demonstrated/indicated by...*). **Useful phrases:**

**To introduce:** *This research/survey was done... The aim of this survey is... As requested by...*

**To generalize:** *On the whole... In general... Overall...*

**To introduce other people's opinions:** *Many experts believe/assw ... Some people claim/argue...*

**To conclude:** *To sum it up... All in all... In conclusion... All things*



10. Your teacher has asked you to conduct a survey into the history of the British cinema before World War II. Listen to the text on the topic, write down the relevant information and then write your report. Use the information on the previous page and the suggestions for structuring your report below.



## BRITISH CINEMA BEFORE WORLD WAR II

Introduction

Stage 1. British Cinema Before 1914

Stage 2. 1914 - 1927

Stage 3. 1928 - 1936

Stage 4. 1937 - 1941

Conclusion

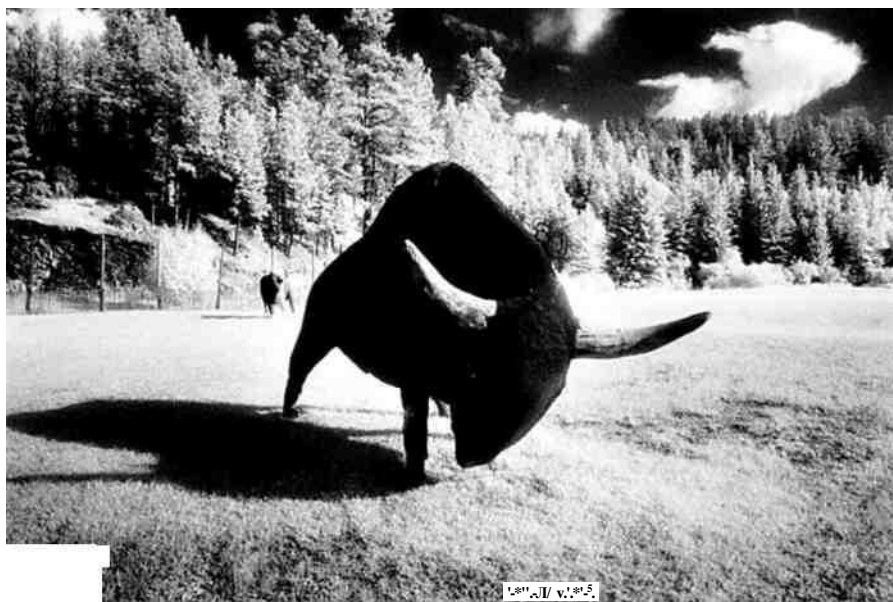
### 11. Translate

Кіно у Великій Британії бурхливо розвивається. Нові мультиплекси виростають, як гриби після дощу. Кінотеатри на головних вулицях міст і містечок терміново реконструюються, торуючи новаторські шляхи, аби виглядати привабливо і задовольняти зрілі запити прихильників кіно, які юрмляться біля кас, щоб побачити стрічку, що передусе наступній серії фільму, або її продовження. Мультиплекси вирішили проблему некомерційного кіно. Мультиплекс включає в себе кілька залів і це дає можливість показувати у більшому залі фільми, які апелюють переважно до відеоряду (й не переймаються глибокою психологічною розробкою образів). Одночасно, у менших залах, демонструються некомерційні стрічки, біографічні фільми і таке інше, які проте можуть зацікавити частину кінолюбителів. До речі, раніше цим займалися невеликі кінотеатри, що показували некомерційні стрічки, але власники таких кінотеатрів загалом зазнавали значних труднощів і їм доводилося вигадувати різні речі, аби в цілому хоча б не потерпати від значних збитків. Проте, зважаючи на обмеженість фінансових джерел, такі кінотеатри не могли не те, що рекламувати свій репертуар без міри, але мали проблеми навіть з простими афішами. Тож годі було й сподіватися, що ці осередки культури перетворяться на улюблені місця проведення відпустки або вихідних, очікувати великого напливу людей, які протопчуть власними ногами широку дорогу сюди. Суворая правда полягала в тому, що сюди заходили переважно люди, які випадково натрапляли на непопулярний серед широких мас кінотеатр і, побачивши на афіші відоме ім'я, починали терзати запитаннями господаря, який у піднесеному настрої радо приймав гостей. Ось тоді він забував про усі попередні невдачі, про те, що інші вже давно випередили його, про передчасні, але такі неприємні попередження банку, які виглядали, як провісники смерті старого доброго елітарного кіно, як похоронний дзвін на його могилі. Таке життя - хвала Господу, хоч залишився цей старовинний особняк. Кіностудії вже записуються у чергу на його використання, як натури під час зйомок.

## PART 2

### SHADOWS OF FORGOTTEN ANCESTORS

James keeps playing with Lappy. Below are Lappy's tasks. Help James do them.



#### 1. Match the verbs and adjectives in column A with their synonyms in column B.

Adjectives and Adverbs		Verbs		Nouns	
A	B	A	B	A	B
1. freelance	a. very difficult	1. spark off	a. plot	1. revival	a. barrier
2. prolific	b. dangerous	2. vanish	b. surrender	2. revelation	b. undertaking
3. haunting	c. weird	3. probe	c. stop	3. burden	c. honesty
4. resilient	d. in brief	4. beam	d. trigger	4. equation	d. recovery
5. acclaimed	e. mocking	5. contrive	e. grieve	5. hurdle	e. problem
6. relentless	f. self-employed	6. stall	f. disappear	6. venture	f. disclosure
7. sardonic	g. creative	7. mourn	g. search	7. sincerity	g. task
8. perilous	h. unforgettable	8. knuckle (to)	h. smile		
9. bizarre	i. highly praised				
10. dire	j. strong				
11. pithy	k. uncompromising				

#### 2. Match the words in column A in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

1. new business activity that may involve risks; 2. disappear suddenly and mysteriously; 3. said intelligently, strongly and in a few words; 4. one that produces many films etc; 5. when something becomes strong again; 6. stop making progress; 7. not easily damaged by difficulties; 8. very unsafe; 9. task including different factors that all affect a situation; 10. give up; 11. determined; 12. fact that was previously secret; 13. smile in a happy way; 14. working independently; 15. extremely serious or terrible; 16. difficult or worrying thing; 17. feel sad because someone is dead; 18. staying in one's mind for a long time; 19. ask questions to find something out; 20. praised by many people; 21. provoke; 22. problem you have to solve before you can do something; 23. showing your disapproval of something in a humorous way; 24. meaning what one is saying; 25. succeed in something in spite of difficulties; 26. very unusual.

#### 3. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 1.

1. In the film the main character \_\_\_\_\_ a scheme to make the bad guy invest into the project. 2. The contract may sound fantastic, but your signature may have \_\_\_\_\_ consequences. 3. Finding the money for the film-shooting project is only the first \_\_\_\_\_. 4. The actress's image has already firmly lodged in his mind. 5. Being extremely itself, like some \_\_\_\_\_ vision, she decided on a new career - as a movie actress. 6. Johnson \_\_\_\_\_ a scandal. 8. If you plan to become a professional actress, rehearsal should be part of the \_\_\_\_\_. 9. The yellow press have been criticised for \_\_\_\_\_



ceremoniously into the actress's private life. 10. Due to the new problems the film production process has \_\_\_\_\_. 11. The money intended for the film seems to have \_\_\_\_\_ into air. 12. The curtains opened and the lead actress stood next to the director, both \_\_\_\_\_ proudly. 13. Carrying the \_\_\_\_\_ of financing a film has never been easy. 14. Have you seen the screen adaptation of the Broadway \_\_\_\_\_ of "A Streetcar Named Desire"? 15. This soap opera is one of the most critically \_\_\_\_\_ TV series in Britain. 16. \_\_\_\_\_ this season, The lead actor has been a \_\_\_\_\_ and he is still pushing for success. 17. Shooting a new prequel was a most \_\_\_\_\_ venture, but he had no alternative. 18. Consistency and \_\_\_\_\_ are very important in the actor's profession. 19. Whipped by bad weather, the film crew was forced to \_\_\_\_\_ to the circumstances. 20. Film reviews must be \_\_\_\_\_, and full of clear comment. 21. The characters in the movie are quite old and sometimes \_\_\_\_\_. 22. The actress's \_\_\_\_\_ laugh, though justified in the text, sounded annoying. 23. Her brilliant success in the film is due to her \_\_\_\_\_ pursuit of perfection. 24. None of the group was willing to disclose their investment in the new \_\_\_\_\_. 25. She tried to make a little money by \_\_\_\_\_ scriptwriting, she had no desire to do it on a permanent basis. 26. The death of the famous actress was \_\_\_\_\_ by millions of movie buffs all over the world.

**4. Work in groups of 4-5. Try to write a list of Ukrainian films, directors, producers, actors and actresses that you know. Discuss your list with other groups.**

**5. Ukrainian film industry had been incorporated into the Soviet film-making process for decades before it became independent in 1991. 1996 was the year when cinema in Ukraine found itself in a very difficult situation. In the article from *British News from Ukraine* Philip Kemp, a freelance British film critic, shares his impressions of the Ukrainian cinema of that period. 6 fragments have been removed from the article. Choose from the fragments (A - F) the one that fits each gap (0-5). There is an example at the beginning (0).**

A	the examples I saw were anything to go by.	
B	the old political censorship had vanished, and costs were still low	
C	film studios had been set up in Kyiv and Odesa	0
D	the director was gunned down in the street	
E	production and distribution were in the hands of the government	
F	the cinemas were so poorly equipped, you can't blame them	



0 My first visit to Ukraine opened my eyes to a whole distinct tradition of Ukrainian filmmaking that had started a full century ago. As early as 1896 Ukrainian filmmakers were shooting epics like *Train Arriving at Kharkiv Station*. And by 1915 \_\_\_\_\_

Like most of the former Soviet Union countries, Ukraine had to struggle to maintain its cultural identity. Although the Kyiv studios (now the Dovzhenko Studios) were the third largest in the USSR, much of their prolific output was Ukrainian only in name. It was left to a Georgian-born director of Armenian descent, Sergei Paradzhanov, to spark off a revival of a specifically Ukrainian school of filmmaking. His 1964 film, *Shadows of Our Forgotten Ancestors* (based on a novel by Mikhailo Kotsyubynsky), came as a revelation to a whole generation of filmmakers. Lyrical, mythic, openly non-naturalistic, the film alarmed the authorities, but inspired younger directors like Yuri Illienko (who worked as cameraman on *Shadows*) and Leonid Osyka.

1 When independence lifted the double burden of political censorship, it must have seemed as if Ukrainian cinema could at last come into its own. And for a while, apparently, it did. "After independence," says Alex Rodnyansky, one of Kyiv's leading producers, "we had a few happy years. Production levels were high, \_\_\_\_\_. You could make a feature film for \$50,000. A single deal with French or German television would be enough to recoup your costs. A lot of new film-making companies sprang up."

2 But when inflation sent production prices rocketing, admission prices didn't follow suit. "Ukrainian audiences," says Rodnyansky, "refused to pay more than \$1.00 a seat. And \_\_\_\_\_. They'd rather stay home and watch pirate videos." Of which there's no shortage. Walking along Kreshchatyk, I was struck by the way street traders openly display huge trays of pirated video tapes. And if picture quality is often terrible, that's hardly surprising, since many of them are filmed straight off the screen in a movie house. The film-makers care, of course, since they're faced with a near-impossible equation. With audiences at an all-time low, they've no way of recouping their costs from ticket sales. The average budget for a modest feature film is now \$500,000.

But even if it gets maximum distribution right across Ukraine and Russia, it can scarcely hope to earn more than \$100,000 in box-office receipts. And with the videotape market dominated by pirates, films can't earn much from tape sales either.

3 Pre-independence, things were very different. The cinemas were full. Pirate tapes hardly existed. The \_\_\_\_\_, and a filmmaker could count on having 100 % of his budget met out of state funds, assuming he was allowed to make his film. Once over the double censorship hurdle - in Moscow and in Kyiv - the money would be there. Today, Ukrainian filmmakers can make whatever films they like. Except, there's no money to make them. At the Dovzhenko Studios production is at a standstill. The huge sound stages are currently given over to more profitable ventures such as staging all-night discos.

4 Yet still, amazingly, films do somehow get made. And good ones, if \_\_\_\_\_. Before he turned producer, Alex Rodnyansky directed a series of acclaimed documentaries, exploring some of the less creditable corners of recent Soviet history. *The Mission of Raoul Wallenberg* examines the case of the Budapest-based Swedish diplomat who saved thousands of Jews from the Holocaust. When the Red Army arrived, he was arrested - and vanished into the Gulags. Rodnyansky's film relentlessly probes the mystery, pausing occasionally to scan the faces of Communist leaders as, beaming with insincerity, they deny all knowledge of Wallenberg's fate.

Mikhailo Illienko's *Foochow* is very different. A sardonic take on the Ukrainian "poetic cinema" tradition, it starts off tracing a star-crossed love affair in the turn-of-the-century Dnieper Basin, then moves to a schooner off the US coast where the action takes on a tone of Brechtian high-farce. Ghosts, witches and a mad village painter figure prominently, and, despite the title, the action never goes anywhere near China. 'Foochow' stands for a state of mind.

Mikhailo Illienko's elder brother Yuri, formerly Paradzhanov's cameraman, is one of Ukraine's finest directors, yet for years he's been unable to get a film financed. In 1990 his film *Swan Lake: The Zone* won a prize at the Cannes festival. "Since then," says Mikhailo, "each year the Cannes organisers write to my brother inviting him to enter a new film. And each year he has to tell them he hasn't got one to enter."

Perhaps because they're more resilient, younger filmmakers are still contriving to make films. Recent hits on the international festival circuit have included Natasha Andreichenko's intense war-saga "*Shamara*" and Alyona Demyanenko's haunting fable "*Cruel Fantasy*". Both films were widely acclaimed, yet both directors currently have new projects stalled for want of finance.

5 Such finance as there is may have perilous strings attached - as witness the fate of Alexander Shumovich, one of the country's most talented young cinematographers. Shumovich worked on Sergei Masloboishikov's *Josephine the Singer and the Mouse People*, a bizarre allegory based on Kafka short stories. It looks superb, thanks not least to Shumovich's atmospheric photography. Earlier that year, unable to find work in Ukraine, Shumovich went to Moscow to work on a Russian film whose director had sought funds from the mafia. Problems arose: \_\_\_\_\_ and Shumovich also died.

"Things aren't as bad here," says Masloboishikov, mourning not only a valued colleague but a personal friend, "but here too, if I want to find funding, I must deal with criminals. That's why I'm looking abroad." Most of his fellow filmmakers are looking the same way. Co-production with other European countries is widely seen as the Ukrainian industry's best hope for survival. My own feeling is that it will survive, despite everything. Talking with Ukrainian film-makers I felt a sense of determination, of sheer bloody-minded refusal to knuckle to circumstances, however dire. Mikhailo Illienko sums up the situation pithily. "It's a catastrophe," he says. "But we're not finished yet."

**6. Work in pairs. Write out the key words from each of the sections (0-5) of the text. Then retell the text paragraph by paragraph to your partner using the key words. Paragraph 0 has been done for you. Then discuss if there have been any changes in Ukrainian cinema since 1996.**

**Paragraph 0:** 1st visit - Ukrainian tradition - 100 years. 1896 - *Train* - Kharkiv - 1915 - studios - Kyiv, Odesa. Ukraine - struggle - identity. Dovzhenko studios = 3d - USSR - output = Ukrainian. Paradzhanov - revival - Ukrainian school - 1964 - *Shadows of Our Forgotten Ancestors* = revelation - filmmakers - alarmed - authorities - inspired directors (Yuri Illienko, Leonid Osyka).

**Paragraph 1:**

**Paragraph 2:**

**Paragraph 3:**

**Paragraph 4:**

**Paragraph 5:**

7. Work in pairs. Read the opinion of foreigners on good and bad sides of cinemas in Kyiv. Do you agree to them. Add to this list anything that you think is relevant. Compare your list to those of the other students in class.

Good	Bad
<p><i>r-mj f^</i> ~ Beer or wine in the theater</p> <p><i>Γ vwJ^</i> ~ ^he ^eS W^ ^e ^e&lt;^ 011"</p> <p><i>J J^f ^tf\</i> ions and salsa at <i>Butterfly</i></p> <p><i>i^^SL^tJjS^</i> ~ ^e ^Pi^e d ^uts at <i>Odesa</i></p> <p><i>^SrrtL iM 1</i> - English-language movies</p> <p><i>r^Jvy) f^k V</i> at <i>Odesa</i>, and the theater's</p> <p><i>^eaEWe J</i> - Super-comfy bean-bag chairs in the front row at <i>Zhovten</i></p> <p>-Way more foreign films and international film festivals than back home (at least if you're from western Canada)</p> <p>- That cozy little lounge upstairs at <i>Kyiv</i> cinema</p> <p>- Cool old Soviet facilities, like at <i>Kinopanorama</i> on <i>Shota Rustaveli</i></p> <p>- Hand-painted movie posters</p> <p>- The all-night movie marathons at <i>Zhovten</i></p> <p>-A new DVD rental place - and they are online</p>	<p>—<i>JZ-^P f) III W^ ~ ^o^ P^P^com&gt; wi^lno</i> but-</p> <p><i>z^J _ ^/^^^3^^</i> ~ People who take cell phone ^^ I i</p> <p><i>V W/W^</i> calls, and talk for minutes <i>j4 ^ ШтДГ</i> -</p> <p>Movies play for only two</p> <p><i>Зчд ^Г</i> - Oversold screenings of for-</p> <p>- You still can't watch English- language films at any time of day like you can in Prague, Warsaw, or Budapest</p> <p>- No Ukrainian movies</p> <p>- The security guards at <i>Ukraina</i> cinema are punks</p> <p>- No Milk Duds or Junior Mints</p>

8. You will read four fragments from Kyiv Post articles on four different cinemas (A-D) in Kyiv. For questions 1-8 match the statements with the cinemas (A-D).

### WHICH OF THE CINEMAS

#### A. Orbita

#### B. Leningrad

#### C. Florentsia

#### D. Ekran

1	had organisational problems	10	is not just a cinema
2	looks much better inside than outside	11	has a staff who mind manners
3	has the most comfortable chairs	12	plays the movies that other cinemas do not
4	does not take advantage of its superb location	13	has its own unique taste
5	has not changed for over 15 years	14	offer other types of entertainment
6	has the most expensive tickets	15	has ticket prices exceeding \$2
7	has a gloomy foyer	16	uses outdated advertising techniques
8	has the least comfortable chairs	17	has the cheapest tickets
9	offers discount for ticket prices	18	does not have a well-trained staff



At the luxurious movie theaters in downtown Kyiv, you pay Western prices for a Western movie-going experience, complete with plush seats, first-run flicks, big concession stands, and 100-watt Dolby sound.

But what if you want to pay not Western, but Ukrainian, prices? What if you don't care if a movie's new? What about the dozens of other, cheap movie theaters scattered around the city that ex-pats never visit? We decided to check them out.

**A. ORBITA.** Orbita, on Kreshchatyk, occupies some of the best real estate in Kyiv. That prime corner deserves better. Instead, what it gets is an old Soviet facility on the first floor of a dust-brown Stalinka. Inside the huge lobby, the faded walls are brown. The floor is brown. The gloomy friezes are brown. The air is brown. The air is stuffy. There's a stained cash exchange window, an inhospitable sign that announces that you have to pay to use the bathroom, and a bunch of unplugged one-armed bandits, which on a cold night I found one of the most melancholy sights I'd ever seen. The door hits the frame with a brain-shattering smack. Inside it's a little better.



At least it's warm. Still, there's that funeral Soviet elegance, and the young woman who sells tickets comes out from behind her stand and sits on the couch with her friend and gossips and looks at you too much. In addition, ticket prices inch up into the teen range, which approaches (if merely approaches) real money. No, there are better choices for cheap movie-going in Kyiv than this. Unless you're 3D movies, which is almost exclusively what Orbita plays. Currently the 1983 American 3D flick "Treasure of the Four Crowns" is playing.



**Q** **B. LENINGRAD.** When I saw heavy construction work going on outside the Leningrad theater, I was reminded not of Leningrad, but of Stalingrad. Inside, however, the cinema is worlds apart from its surroundings; it's hardly the dingy, run-down Soviet-era theater it appears from the outside. The 925 seats and screen are new, the old smell is gone, and the lobby lounge actually sort of resembles the nicer theaters in the city center. However, they still tack up the film schedule in the front window using construction paper and scotch tape. Tickets

at Leningrad are typically from Hr 9 to Hr 12 per show, but if you order tickets online you can get them for as little as Hr 6. I sat down on a Monday night for a late screening of "Blade: Trinity" starring Wesley Snipes. The irony was obvious as I watched this American-made vampire horror, with all its sword-fighting and gun battles, in a theater that likely once represented the height of Soviet planning and design. One thing that deserves mention regarding the Leningrad: it doubles as a hotel, the motto of which is "We're always waiting for you!" They charge \$50 per night, or from \$5 to \$10 per hour.



**C. FLORENTSIA** sits awkwardly in the cheerless bedroom residential area known as Troyeshchyna, far from any metro station. We were surprised at the theater's modern interior, which is nearly plush enough to justify its Italian namesake. Downstairs, in the poorly-lighted ticket area, confusion set in, as the screening times listed didn't match the ones posted outside. Still, the theater impressed, especially the stadium seating and the chairs that are beyond comfortable - which helps quite a bit when you want to take a nap through a really boring movie. Florentsiya is a bit more expensive as the theaters in this down-and-out category go: you pay Hr 20 for a decent seat and slightly less for off-centered ones, although I suppose you could just buy a cheap seat and move toward the center. During the climatic fight scene at the movie's end, we were

interrupted by the staff, who politely told me to remove my feet from the chair in front of me. High-class, indeed. If movies aren't your gig, waste a few hours in the rather awesome arcade (Hr 2 per token; most games cost one or two tokens).



**D. EKRAN** is a squat windowless little white brick bunker with a flat roof, resembling a strip joint on the outskirts of Anchorage. When I got in, I was back in the Soviet Union of poor regular people, trying to enjoy themselves. The door opened on a tiny ante-room, with dusty divans and seedy yellow paint, old as time, and a faded poster on the wall. Everything was ancient, sepia-tinged, warmly lit. In this foyer and the small, homely theater beyond it, common people stood around in groups, chatting. You could see cans of paint in the broom closet. That must be the paint with which they make the handmade posters that advertise the movies. The screening room is a rotting, gray-tiled little place with weak old chairs and a dull curtain covering the screen. In fact I reacted positively

to Ekran. It offers the opposite of the super-glossy, super-loud, super-amplified American-style movie-going experience that you get at the big downtown theaters. There's sometimes joy in that experience, but there is never any mood. Ekran brings the mood. It probably brings the joy, too, at least when it's playing a good movie. This shapeless, small-scale, little known time-wrap of a place is the revolt against the meganess that is coming to Kyiv. And movies cost a mere Hr 4.

**8. Work in pairs. Take any other cinemas that you know well. Have there been any changes there? Have they been for the better or the worse? Describe your favorite cinema. Why do you like it?**

**9. Study the collocation table and then translate the word combinations below the table.**

Noun	Adjectives	Verb + Word Word + Verb	Word + Noun	Preposition	Phrase
Film / movie	long, short, full-length, late, exciting, good, interesting, successful, funny, hard-boiled, mass-market, awful, bad, boring, epic, violent, naughty, X-rated, sad, self-indulgent, slasher, silent, talkie, black-and-white, low-budget, Hollywood, independent, television, video, drama, adventure, children's, comedy, documentary, feature, gangster, horror, pornographic, biopic, news-reel, animated (cartoon), English - version, feel-good -, - noir, filmed on location	see, watch, go to (see), take sb to (see), direct, make, produce, shoot, take, cut, edit, distribute, release, screen, show, ban, censor, come out, open, premiere, be based on sth, be called sth, be entitled sth, capture sth, contain sth, include sth, depict sth, present sth, represent sth. show sb, star sb, record sth, deal with sth, open, end, appear in a-	-maker; cult - figure, crew, director, editor, maker, people, producer, team, unit, writer, world, actor, actress, legend, star, part, role, career, debut, work, credits, critic, buff, fan, premiere, censor, censorship, screenplay, script, music, score, soundtrack, narrative, scene, stunt, poster, studio, props, adaptation, version, classic, genre, clip, footage, sequence, report, series, archives, library, business, company, industry, mogul, distributor, making, production, festival, show, awards, camera, equipment, projector, recorder, rights, school, student	in a/the -, on-, - about, -of	beginning / end of the-be in - s (work in the film industry), a - with subtitles, screening /showing of a-

В основі фільму, що має назву "На руїнах імперії почуттів", лежать реальні події. Знімальній групі вдалося чудово відтворити атмосферу того часу, а актори, що грали головні ролі, перетворилися на культові постаті. Цей фільм був першим, у якому Мері Джонсон з'явилася у головній ролі. Вона на той час була ще студенткою останнього курсу факультету кінематографії, хоча й знімалася в епізодичних ролях у кількох серіалах. Одразу після дебюту вона зробила карколомну кар'єру і стала легендою кіно. Режисер, для якого це був перший повнометражний фільм, який він ставив у якості режисера, на той час знімав лише короткометражні фільми, що часто містили сцени насильства або відверті епізоди. Критики класифікували ці стрічки як "ризиковані" або "жорстокі". Загалом він мав репутацію оригінала, що потурає лише власним уподобанням. Йому казково пощастило, коли один кіномагнат, що пропрацював у кіновиробництві добрих чверть століття і був шпироко відомим у світі кінематографії, вирішив, що любителі кіно потребують якогось нового жанру, і що саме цей режисер здатний втілити цю ідею в життя. Він заснував незалежну кінокомпанію, надав йому кіностудію, доступ до кінематографічних архівів і бібліотек, а також повну свободу творчості щодо придбання будь-якої кіноапаратури і реквізиту, підбору акторів, визначення сюжетної лінії картини, змісту відеоряду, необхідних кінотрюків, послідовності сцен у фільмі, принципів монтажу епізодів тощо. Головною проблемою було те, що це мав бути фільм, розрахований на масового глядача, але з витонченою естетикою. Цим він мав відрізнятись від голлівудських блокбастерів. Кінодистриб'ютори, загалом скептично налаштовані щодо ідеї, усе ж розраховували на інтуїцію магната - і не помилилися.

Коли стрічка вийшла, виявилося, що це була кінематографічна версія призабутого роману середньовічного японського письменника, що розповідав про витончений чуттєвий світ головних героїв на тлі безупинних кривавих міжусобних війн. Зняті на плівку неймовірно досконалі за естетикою інтимні сцени різко контрастували з жорстокими і кривавими, але по-своєму теж естетичними, батальними сценами, химерно переплітаючись і доповнюючи одні інших, сплітаючись у могутню симфонію, що сягала свого апогею наприкінці фільму, увічнюючи торжество кохання над війною, навіть ціною смерті героїв. Кінематографічна асоціація мала певні проблеми з присвоєнням категорії - деякі вимагали цензурувати або навіть заборонити кінематографічну адаптацію, мотивуючи це тим, що вона занадто відверто зображує інтимні епізоди, та й у батальних сценах знаходили забагато жорстокості. Однак невдовзі проблема вирішилася сама собою. На кінофестивалі у Каннах фільм мав нечуваний успіх, забравши усі головні нагороди, і ставши класикою кіно. Глядачі днями стояли у чергах, аби побачити картину на фестивалі, ходили легенди про те, як довго йдуть титри наприкінці стрічки з переліком усіх, хто брав участь у його виробництві. До кінотеатру ходили на кілька сеансів, брали й родичів та знайомих. Демонстрація фільму кожного разу перетворювалася

на триумф. Аби полегшити розуміння різномовною аудиторією, англомовна версія стрічки була доповнена субтитрами французькою мовою. Ажіотажу також сприяли ефектні плакати, розклеєні по усьому місту та щоденні повідомлення у засобах масової інформації про шалений успіх прем'єрного показу. Кінодистриб'ютори почали переговори з власниками авторських прав щодо умов продажу прав на показ стрічки. Громадськість почала вимагати винуску картини у прокат і Кінематографічна асоціація врешті присвоїла стрічці категорію NC17, встановивши низку додаткових обмежень, зокрема заборонивши показувати її по телебаченню.

**10. Your teacher has asked you to conduct a comparative survey into the history of the British and Ukrainian cinema. Listen to the text on the history of the British cinema since World War II, write down the relevant information and then write your report. Use the text on Ukrainian cinema in this Lesson and the information on the survey structure in Part 1 of this Lesson.**



**Introduction**

**Similar features in the history of the British and Ukrainian cinema**

**features in the history of the British and Ukrainian cinema**

**Conclusion**

### **USEFUL PHRASES**

**To compare similar objects:** *Similar to... Like... Much in the same way as... As \_\_\_\_ as... Resembling... Comparable to... Identically to...*

**To compare dissimilar objects:** *Dissimilar to... Unlike... In an absolutely different way... Differently from... In contrast to... As opposed to... Streets apart...*

**ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 6**  
**PREPOSITIONS TO EXPRESS OTHER MEANINGS - II**



from of on to with  
like as about as for

**1. Read Part 1 of Episode 6 and then proceed to the tasks.**

**EPISODE 6**

**PART I**

"I'm not going to talk **on** (1) Pencader Hollow legends," started grandma, "I'll tell you what happened a month ago.

My neighbour, Old Jacob, who served **on** (2) the Royal Council, and used to work **as** (2b) advisor **to** (3) the king, still has such a lot **on** (3a), that he always has his hands full. Well, one afternoon he heard the furious barking **of** (4) his dog. **To** (4) his surprise, when he got out, he saw a stranger **with** (5) a beard who was full **of** (6) anger. The stranger was wearing weird clothes made **of** (7) unknown material which looked **like** (8) rags. He was jumping **to** (9) the barking **like** (10) **to** (11) music waving around a stick **cut from** (12) a heavy branch. The stranger was shouting at the dog, 'Get out, you ugly brute! I'm a master here!' Relieved that there had been no real damage **to** (13) the stranger, Old Jacob melted to sympathy. He could see/ram (14) the stranger's face that he was honest. Old Jacob had always been able to tell a good fellow **from** (15) a bad one.

'Don't be afraid,' he shouted. 'I am **with** (16) you. Who are you, poor man?' he asked **with** (17) a smile."

**A. Study the text above and complete the following rules with the prepositions/ram, of on, to, with, like, as. Indicate the number of an example from the text after each rule.**

**When we want to indicate:**

- the subject matter in a formal style, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the genitive case, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the dative case, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the manner of doing something, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the origin of something or somebody, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the material something is made of, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- a cause of an emotional reaction, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- a position to work for a person or group, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of "similar to", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of support, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of separation or distinction, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of something happening now, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning "in the role of, we use \_\_\_\_\_

the meaning of possession, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the cause of conclusion, etc., we use \_\_\_\_\_  
being member of something, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
doing something in accordance with something, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**2. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Episode 6, Part 1.**

1. Old Jacob served in the Royal Council and later worked an advisor of the king.
2. Grandma was going to talk of Celtic folklore.
3. One day Old Jacob heard the furious barking from his dog.
4. With surprise Old Jacob saw a stranger in his yard.
5. This was a man with a beard on him.
6. The stranger seemed to be full with anger.
7. The stranger's clothes were made from weird material.
8. The stranger was jumping with the barking like with some music.
9. The stranger's clothes looked rags.
10. Old Jacob saw on the stranger's face that he was a good fellow.
11. Old Jacob could tell a good man of a bad one.
12. "I am for you!" shouted Old Jacob to the stranger.

**3. Read Part 2 and then proceed to the tasks.**

**PART 2**

The stranger answered in an unfamiliar accent. "I know who I was, but I don't know who I am, though I've been absent/ram (18) home just for a few hours. I used to be the son *of* (19) a shoemaker who lived in this place this morning. I don't recognize it now, but I know some headstones in the cemetery across the road, though they've changed a little. Everything has been taken *from* (20) me and I don't want to live. I thought I would die *of* (21) old age, but alas!"

"Poor fellow," said Old Jacob, "you've lost your senses. *As for* (21A) this house, it had been bought *on* (22) credit by my great-grandfather, repaired by my grandfather, father and myself. It's an improvement *on* (23) what it used to be, but when you think *about* (24) all the money spent *on* (25) it... Anyway, come *with* (26) me and refresh yourself *with* (27) some food and tell me what happened. The food is *on* (28) me."

And Old Jacob took him to the verandah where the stranger feasted *on* (29) steak and pies *with* (30) meat. And when Old Jacob switched on his radio *on* (31) batteries, the poor fellow almost choked *on* (32) his food. Old Jacob's odds are a million *to* (33) one the man had never seen a radio.

**4. Study the sentences in Part 2 and complete the following rules with the prepositions/ram, of on, to, with, about, as for Indicate the number of an example from Part 2 after each rule.**

**When we want to indicate:**

the subject matter in an informal style, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
a comparison, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the meaning of possession, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
a cause of injury, damage, etc., especially to someone's body, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the meaning of being away, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the form of power / system that makes something work, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
an instrument using which something is done, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
a result of something, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the meaning of being taken away, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
an agreement of sale or purchase, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
an accompaniment, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
a ratio, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the meaning of "who pays", we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the ingredients or contents of something, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
what one eats, drinks, lives on, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
the aim of doing something, we use \_\_\_\_\_  
to introduce a topic that is different from what has just been said, but related to it, we use \_\_\_\_\_

**5. Complete the following sentences with the prepositions in the box.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ from like of on to with by as \_\_\_\_\_
1. "He cut himself \_\_\_\_\_ the door \_\_\_\_\_ solid steel!" she stated \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure \_\_\_\_\_ my horror.
  2. If the company buys the factory \_\_\_\_\_ a 99-year lease, it would have to pay a compensation \_\_\_\_\_ every shareholder in a town \_\_\_\_\_ 20,000 people.
  3. They questioned everybody \_\_\_\_\_ the subject \_\_\_\_\_ the accident in which an old woman had been killed \_\_\_\_\_ a train.
  4. They work \_\_\_\_\_ interpreters \_\_\_\_\_ a group of US Senators \_\_\_\_\_ a rota principle, \_\_\_\_\_ we used to work last year.
  5. She used the situation \_\_\_\_\_ her advantage trying to teach him right \_\_\_\_\_ wrong \_\_\_\_\_ much hope to succeed.
  6. She was having a cake filled \_\_\_\_\_ walnuts watching a film which had been \_\_\_\_\_ for about an hour, and her eyes had already hurt \_\_\_\_\_ watching it.
  7. The visiting team won \_\_\_\_\_ two \_\_\_\_\_ nil. The local fans got furious crashing everything around and launching an attack \_\_\_\_\_ the police station. The police stroke back and stripped all weapons \_\_\_\_\_ the crowd.
  8. You aren't \_\_\_\_\_ a diet any more, why don't you have a steak \_\_\_\_\_ French fries? The food is \_\_\_\_\_ me and what do you feed your dog \_\_\_\_\_? Shall I get something for him too? He was absent \_\_\_\_\_ home for six hours.
  9. Your results are 30 % down \_\_\_\_\_ a year ago. And no wonder. You should do something! \_\_\_\_\_ nothing comes nothing.

**6. Choose the correct preposition in each sentence below.**

1. He cut the stick *with /by /of* a knife *by/with/to* his own liking.
2. He has been absent *from /of to* work for a week and has nothing to *li\Qfrom/of/on*. He even has nobody to borrow *money from/of/by*.
3. She was a ballet dancer *on /to/by* the Paris Company and knew nothing about cars. She could not tell a Ford *of/from /to* a Renault. She had a vague idea that most cars ran *on /with /by* petrol.
4. She said silly things *from/of/by* nervousness *to/with /by* a chorus *of/with/by* laughter.
5. He cut his arm *of/on /to* the window and nothing good is going to result *from /of to* by it.
6. The exchange rate *by/of/on* French franc is about 6 francs *on /to/by* 1 dollar, so you'd better get some legal advice *on /to/by* it.

**7. Work in pairs. Reproduce Parts 1 and 2, using the clues below on the part of a) Old Jacob; b) the stranger.**

*Part 1.* Grandma: not talk - legends - talk - happen - month. Grandma: neighbour - Old Jacob - serve - Royal Council - work - Advisor - King - has - a lot - always - hands - full. Old Jacob: afternoon - hear -barking - dog. Old Jacob: surprise - get out - see - stranger - beard - full - anger. Stranger: wear - weird - clothes - made - unknown material - look - rags. Stranger: jump - barking - music. Stranger: wave - stick - cut - heavy - branch. Stranger: shout - dog: get - ugly brute: I - master - here! Old Jacob: relieved - no damage - stranger: melt - sympathy. Old Jacob: see - face - honest. Old Jacob: can tell - good fellow - bad one. Old Jacob: shout: not afraid: -I - you. Old Jacob - ask - smile: Who you - poor man?

*Part 2.* Stranger: answer - unfamiliar accent: I - know - who - was - not know - who - am -I - be absent - home - few hours. I - son - shoemaker - live - here - morning. I - not recognize - place - but - know - head stones - cemetery - not want - live. I - thought - die - old age - alas!

Old Jacob: poor - lose - senses. House - buy - credit - great-grandfather; repair - grandfather + father +1. It - improvement - what - was - but - think - money - spend - it... Old Jacob: come - me - refresh - food -tell - what - happen; Food - me. Old Jacob - take - stranger - verandah. Stranger: feast - steak - pies - meat. Old Jacob: switch - radio batteries. Stranger: almost - choke - food. Old Jacob: odds - million - one - stranger - never see - radio.

**8. Write your own story, using the prepositions *from, of on to with, like, about* in the meanings you have just learned.**

9. Read Part 3 and then proceed to the tasks.

PART3

The stranger, who was sitting at the table made by Old Jacob **out of** (1) old orange boxes had been silent for a while **out of** (2) embarrassment or worry. He was eating **without** (3) enthusiasm, but his face was relaxing even **against** (4) his will, **except** (5) his eyes, which remained full of concern. Old Jacob would never run **out of** (6) patience so he just waited for the story **about** (7) the stranger's adventures **without** (7a) a sign of displeasure.

"I've taken my sheep to Pencader Hollow this morning as usual," started the stranger. "It's **but** (8) an hour since I was on yonder rock, robbing a hawk's nest".

Old Jacob shook his head - there had never been any hawks around, not in his lifetime. He was really worried **about** (9) this fellow.

"Just as I was getting ready to go back to the low lands with my sheep," went on the stranger, "there suddenly appeared, perched upon a rock near me, a very little man, **about** (10) the size of my palm, in moss breeches **with** (11) a fiddle under his arm. He was the tiniest man, compared **against** (12) anybody else. His coat was made of birch leaves. **Besides** (13) it, upon his head he wore a helmet, which consisted of a flower. His feet were encased in shoes made of beetles' wings. **Despite** (14) his size, the little man looked very confident.

"Good day, Jack," he said **without** (15) hesitation.

"Good day," replied Jack, a little confused, "but how..."

"One never comes to us by chance," smiled the little man and ran his fingers over the fiddle. The music made Jack's hair stand on an end.

10. Study the prepositions in part 3 and complete the following rules with the prepositions *except, besides, about, against, despite, but, out of, with, without* Put the number of the corresponding usage in brackets.

When we want to indicate:

- absence of manner, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- opposition, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of "concerning", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- "apart from", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- "approximately", we may use \_\_\_\_\_
- a comparison, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- "in addition to", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of no longer possessing", we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of "in spite of, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the material or origin, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of 'only', we may use \_\_\_\_\_
- a motive or cause of something, we may use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of possession, we use \_\_\_\_\_
- the meaning of non-possession, we use \_\_\_\_\_

11. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the following questions.

1. The stranger was sitting at a table. What kind of table?
2. Why had the stranger been silent for a while?
3. How was the stranger eating?
4. What was happening to the stranger while he was eating?
5. Old Jacob was not in a hurry to ask questions. Why?
6. How long did the stranger think he had been absent?
7. Old Jacob shook his head. Why?
8. How big was the man the stranger saw on a rock?
9. Describe this man.
10. Was the man in a hurry to start the conversation?

**12. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part 3.**

1. Old Jacob made his table of orange boxes.
2. The stranger did not speak from embarrassment.
3. The stranger's face was relaxing without his will.
4. Everything on his face has relaxed besides his eyes.
5. Old Jacob has never run from patience in his life.
6. The stranger was eating against enthusiasm.
7. Old Jacob was waiting for the story despite any sign of displeasure.
8. Old Jacob was seriously worried of this poor fellow.

**13. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 3.**

1. The stranger did not think he had been away for more than an hour.
2. The man who appeared on the rock was quite tall.
3. The man was without anything in his hands.
4. It was difficult to describe the man: he was like anybody else.
5. The man had nothing but a coat of birch leaves on.
6. Because of his size, the man was very confident.
7. Old Jacob would often lose his patience.
8. As soon as the stranger started eating, he relaxed at once.
9. The stranger had been silent for a while because was very tired.
10. The little man hesitated for a while before addressing Jack.

**14. Complete the following sentences with the prepositions from the box.**

about against besides but despite except out of without

1. The odds \_\_\_\_\_ another attack were astronomical, \_\_\_\_\_ one to a billion.
2. Jane is the only woman in the company \_\_\_\_\_ her.
3. All \_\_\_\_\_ one of the prisoners who had escaped were caught.
4. A woman \_\_\_\_\_ a man is like a fish \_\_\_\_\_ a bike.
5. He was silent \_\_\_\_\_ concern: the company ran \_\_\_\_\_ stock and had no chance to get a new supply soon. \_\_\_\_\_ it, the cost of the goods had risen \_\_\_\_\_ a decline in their quality.
6. It was \_\_\_\_\_ his principles to make clothes \_\_\_\_\_ old ones.
7. It's been \_\_\_\_\_ a week since he started walking \_\_\_\_\_ help.

**15. Choose the correct preposition in each sentence below.**

1. He was **without / out of / against** breath as he had been running for half an hour.
2. He made a table **from / out of / with** his head.
3. Have you got any evidence **against / across / at** him.
4. It's trivial compared **against / at / about** what she had done before.
5. It hurt nobody **but / despite / without** himself.
6. She was confused out of/ except / with embarrassment.

**16. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 3, using the clues below on the part of: a) Old Jacob; b) the stranger.**

Stranger: sit - table - made - old orange boxes - Old Jacob. Stranger: silent - a while - embarrassment - worry. Stranger: eat - no enthusiasm - but face - relax - not his will - but his eyes - remain - full - concern. Old Jacob - never - run - patience: wait - story - stranger - adventures - no sign - displeasure. Stranger: I - take - sheep - Pencader Hollow - morning - usual. Only - 1 hour - rock - rob - hawk - nest. Old Jacob: shake - head - no hawks - lifetime: worry - fellow. Stranger: when - get ready - go back - low lands - sheep: rock - perch - little man - size - palm: moss breeches - fiddle - arm. He - tiniest man - compare - anybody else. Coat - made - birch leaves. Plus - head - helmet- consist - flower. Feet - encased - shoes - made - beetle wings. Though - size - man - look - confident. The man: Good day - no hesitation. Jack: Good day - confused: how? The man: Never - come - chance: smile - run - fingers - fiddle: music made - hair - stand - end.

**17. Write your own story using the prepositions *about, against, besides, but, except, despite, out of, without* in the meanings you have learned in this part of Unit 6.**



# UNIT 3

## LESSON 1

### PART 1. BOMB DOGS ON THE CONCRETE APRON

James is getting ready for travelling. He needs to do some preparations. As usual, he turns to Lappy, which always has a handful of tasks. Help James do them.



1. Work in groups of 4-5. Try to make a list of things you can see at the airport?

Compare your list with those of the other groups.

2. Work in pairs. Read the text and then find in it the words to match the definitions given below.

At 4 : 30 Jessica Chalstrey arrived at the concourse in front of Pier A, which is sticking out of the Baltimore Washington airport administration building. In spite of the odd hours, the terminal was busy. Several planes were standing in the loading position and the passengers could be seen boarding the plane through the gates, trotting along the transparent passenger loading bridges (a new invention in the fight against terrorists). Two planes on the apron were being taken care of by the service vehicles, while the third one was slowly rolling along the apron taxiway. The baggage loaders, water tankers, galley loaders and the ground power unit were all busy with their routine operations. An aircraft tug, looking ridiculously miniature as compared to the huge Boeing behind it, was stubbornly pulling it somewhere. Further down the airfield a plane was standing on the taxiway waiting for the permission from the control tower to proceed to the runway and to take off. Another aircraft has just landed smoothly to the cheers and applause from the spectators' terrace on top of the pierhead. Except for the hour and her cheerful smile, Jessica - 47, blond, dressed in a pantsuit - looked like any other business traveler and would be organic in the airport lounge or at the assembly point. At least she did until she reached down to pat a bomb dog, then greeted a guard standing at the checkpoint. Jessica was there for the debut of the largest agency launched to date in the history of the government - the Transportation Security Administration, which that morning began its rollout of federal security agents to replace the private guards that had screened (and often not screened) passengers at the nation's 429 airports. Jessica, who oversees training and quality-control programs at TSA, listened as the supervisor went over a checklist with his squad.

1. long concrete strip where aircraft land and take off; 2. road along which an aircraft drives on to get to and from the runway; 3. concrete part of an airfield where the planes are turned around, loaded and unloaded; 4. flat area on the roof of the airport from where you may watch the planes; 5. plane location that enables the passengers to board; 6. specialized automobiles to maintain the planes; 7. service vehicle to load and unload the passengers' luggage; 8. service vehicle to pump water into the plane; 9. service vehicle to load food and drinks into the plane; 10. service vehicle to supply electricity into the plane; 11. small strong tractor to pull planes around the airfield area; 12. sitting area in front of the airport gate; 13. structure that sticks out of the airport administration building so that people can walk along it to their gates; 14. the farthest point of the pier; 15. telescopic connection between the pier and the plane through which the passengers board; 16. airport's

departure building; 17. part of the airport where the management sit; 18. tall building at an airport from which aircraft movements are directed; 19. waiting room; 20. door through which you leave the airport building to get on a plane; 21. large hall in an airport; 22. get on the plane; 23. rise into the air; 24. move safely down onto the ground; 25. dog that has been trained to find explosives; 26. place where an official person examines passengers; 27. check whether things are acceptable; 28. place where planes can fly from.

**3. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations you have found in the previous exercise.**

1. The first step as you approach the \_\_\_\_\_ (1) is to get ready with your documents. 2. From the \_\_\_\_\_ (2) on the roof of a \_\_\_\_\_ (3) she could see the planes \_\_\_\_\_ (4) and \_\_\_\_\_ (5). 3. Any airport has an \_\_\_\_\_ (6), where you can see an \_\_\_\_\_ (7) (i.e. a concrete area where the planes stand between the flights); an \_\_\_\_\_ (8) (i.e. the part of an apron where the planes taxi before they stop on the apron); a \_\_\_\_\_ (9) (i.e. a concrete stripe where the planes take off and land), a \_\_\_\_\_ (10) (i.e. a concrete lane where the planes taxi before they take off). After the plane lands, it taxis to the airport building where there are \_\_\_\_\_ (11). The plane taxis up to one of those bridges and stands in the \_\_\_\_\_ (12). In this position the passengers can go through the plane's exit door directly into the passenger loading bridge, and through it - into the airport. The door between the bridge and the airport building is called "a \_\_\_\_\_ (13)". 4. There may be several \_\_\_\_\_ (14) (a kind of bridges, which stick out of the \_\_\_\_\_ (15) at the airport. On top of everything there is a \_\_\_\_\_ (16) from which the airport personnel give instructions to the pilots. 5. While the plane is on the apron, you can see all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ (17) around it. The \_\_\_\_\_ (18) load and unload the baggage, the \_\_\_\_\_ (19) pump water into the plane, the \_\_\_\_\_ (20) load food and drinks, and the \_\_\_\_\_ (21) supply electricity into the plane. If you need to take the plane to another section of the airport area, they use an \_\_\_\_\_ (22), which pulls the plane there. 6. A runway has been added to the airport and a new pier - modern, expensive shops dot the \_\_\_\_\_ (23). 7. The bus service between the airport \_\_\_\_\_ (24) for a while before we proceed to the \_\_\_\_\_ (25) and the downtown area. 8. We'll have to stay at the airport's \_\_\_\_\_ (26).

9. Nowadays specially trained \_\_\_\_\_ (27) are used to \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the passengers at the airports.

**4. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-16, find this word. Some lines may be correct. The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).**

**EXAMPLE**

0	adjacent	
00		



0 Aerosweet Airlines has acquired land directly **adjacentive** to Boryspil airport, a move that airport  
0 officials say will impede planned development. The land recently leased consists of more than  
1 35 hectares on either side of the road to Boryspil, 27 hectares of which were already been purchased  
2 by the airline. According to a diagram provided by the airport, some of the land is locating on the  
3 airfield itself (including portions of runway, apron and taxiways) and around the airport's  
4 maintenance building. The airport's first deputy director, said that because the land now belonged  
5 to Aerosweet, Boryspil cannot procede with its own plans for expansion to increase the number of  
6 take-offs and landings. "It is almost like have the land at your doorstep taken away," the deputy  
7 said. The airport is set to secure a 30-year low-interesting loan from the Japanese government  
8 for the construction of the new terminal completed with an administration building, control tower,  
9 concourse, lounges and spectator's terrace. The project also includes the supply of up-to-date  
10 service vehicles (baggage loaders, water tankers, galley loaders, ground power units, aircraft tugs),  
11 as good as some smaller equipment. The loan deal, worth a total of \$172 million, could be inked  
12 so early as this year, with the construction scheduled to start in 2007 and finish in 2009. The total  
13 cost of the project is estimated at \$236 million, the remainder of whose is to be covered by the  
14 airport. The terminal was to be built on the very land now own by Aerosweet. The airline  
15 paid over Hr 2.2 million for the land it owns, and pays 10 percent of the value on the land  
16 each year to lease it.



5. Match the people and organizations in column A with their actions in column B.

A	B
check-in clerks	stick checks to each piece of the baggage
airport clerks	pick their baggage at the baggage retrieval area
passengers	weigh the passengers' baggage
airlines	check in the passengers' baggage
*%*U	check the passenger's baggage checks at the exit
	check the passenger's ticket
	declare excessive value of the baggage
	have limited liability for the loss or damage to the baggage
	have limitations on the amount of free baggage for one passenger
	never permit having dangerous things in the baggage
	have to pay extra for the baggage with higher value

6. Read the information on Delta Airlines liability for the loss or damage to the baggage and find in it the words to match the definitions given under the picture. Then fill those words into the gaps in the sentences below.



**BAGGAGE LIABILITY  
LIMITATIONS.  
DELTA AIRLINES**

Liability for loss or damage to baggage is limited unless a higher value is declared in advance and additional charges are paid. For most international travel (including domestic portions of international journeys) the liability limit is approximately US \$9.07 per pound (US \$20.00 per kilo) for checked baggage and US \$40.00 per passenger for unchecked baggage. For travel wholly between US points Federal rules require any limit on an airlines baggage liability to be at least US \$1,250.00 per passenger. Excess valuation may not be declared on certain types of articles. Some carriers assume no liability for fragile or valuable articles. Delta does assume liability for such articles.

1. legal responsibility; 2. destruction; 3. cost; 4. baggage left at the check-in desk to be put into the plane; 5. baggage taken by the passenger into the cabin; 6. extra assessment; 7. thing; 8. air transportation company; 9. take upon yourself; 10. easily broken.

(1) if it happened to some of our more

1. It could have done a much more considerable \_\_\_\_  
 (2) equipment 2. Whatever \_\_\_\_ (3) they choose, they will \_\_\_\_ (4) full responsibility for the damage to the baggage if any. 3. The company's liability limit is \$20.00 per kilo for \_\_\_\_ (5) and \$40.00 per passenger for \_\_\_\_ (6). 4. There is an extra \_\_\_\_ (7) for adults, but children get on board free. 5. a range of other \_\_\_\_ However, there are \_\_\_\_ (8) for which no reliable \_\_\_\_ (9) can be provided, that is why the company can not \_\_\_\_ (10).

7. Work in pairs. Read the article below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text.



1 Airports have to meet tougher standards for \_\_\_\_ (1) baggage  
 2 this \_\_\_\_ (2) season. Passengers are advised to get ready for a  
 3 big mess. Deep below the bright and \_\_\_\_ (3) concourse at  
 4 Seattle Airport, there exists a place that few \_\_\_\_ (4) ever  
 5 choose to visit. Conveyor belts thunder \_\_\_\_ (5) as workers  
 6 in coveralls lift suitcases into creaky, \_\_\_\_ (6) crates. Drivers  
 7 guide tugs through the crowded boomerang- \_\_\_\_ (7) "bag well,"  
 8 past squeaking pulleys and through the un \_\_\_\_ (8) smell of  
 9 exhaust and grease. \_\_\_\_ (9) three times as many workers  
 10 labor in the \_\_\_\_ (10) than upstairs at the ticket  
 11 \_\_\_\_ (11) and check-in desks. Built in the 1940s, this  
 12 \_\_\_\_ (12) system processes luggage for 27 million a year.

**CHECK  
 HOLY  
 POLISH  
 TRAVEL  
 HEAD  
 CLINK  
 SHAPE  
 PLEASE  
 ROUGH  
 BASE  
 COUNT  
 CHAOS**



e box.

# 8. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the text with the words from tl

rate hired system travel detection bag wells clogged takeoff surrender devices lobby screeners I  
 miserable smuggling clogging screening explosives checking in accommodate  
 airline airports scanners encounter deadlines apparatus terminal threat  
 | \_\_\_\_\_ checked subjected minivan equipment lines \_\_\_\_\_



Imagine the airport turned inside out, the depths of Seattle International  
 raised to the surface, and you start to get an idea of what you could \_\_\_\_\_  
 (1) during the busy holiday- \_\_\_\_\_ (2)  
 season. It won't just be the usual huge  
 crowds that make air travel \_\_\_\_\_ (3). The  
 task of getting tens of millions of  
 people through the \_\_\_\_\_ (4) will be made  
 that much more difficult because  
 of new \_\_\_\_\_ (5) imposed by Congress.  
 After September 11, lawmakers  
 created the Transportation Security Administration (TSA), and ordered it to  
 hire federal \_\_\_\_\_ (6) for all 429 U.S.  
 airports by Nov. 19, just in time for  
 Thanksgiving, and to scan all \_\_\_\_\_ (7)  
 luggage for \_\_\_\_\_ (8) by  
 the end  
 of the year.

The TSA insists it's almost ready, and has already \_\_\_\_\_ (9) more than  
 44 000 screeners. But the nation's \_\_\_\_\_ (10) clearly aren't; crowded \_\_\_\_\_ (11)  
 often need extensive renovations to \_\_\_\_\_ (12) the equipment. In the short  
 term the TSA will likely to resort to placing the bulky \_\_\_\_\_ (13) in lobbies  
 at some big airports over the New Year holiday, \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the small spaces.  
 The result? Lobbies this winter could look like "the fall of Saigon."

Part of the problem is that the technology is not quite ready for \_\_\_\_\_ (15). Bulky, \_\_\_\_\_ (16) -size  
 explosive- \_\_\_\_\_ (17) machines (CTX), which work like CAT \_\_\_\_\_ (18), are said to have an error \_\_\_\_\_ (19)  
 of as much as 30 percent. That means some bags will have to be opened and \_\_\_\_\_ (20) to another round of  
 "trace detection" machines - smaller \_\_\_\_\_ (21) that swab for hints of explosives.

After \_\_\_\_\_ (22), passengers at some airports may have to double back through the \_\_\_\_\_ (23) with  
 their bags, navigating an obstacle course of screening \_\_\_\_\_ (24). Others will \_\_\_\_\_ (25) bags to out-of-sight  
 screeners who will need to break locks and open luggage - a prospect that raises all kinds of liability issues.  
 "It's going to be like 'I Love Lucy,' with all these bags piling up," says one senior \_\_\_\_\_ (26) ecutive. And  
 long \_\_\_\_\_ (27) snaking out the \_\_\_\_\_ (28) door present a security \_\_\_\_\_ (29) in themselves. Why would  
 terrorists bother \_\_\_\_\_ (30) a bomb onto a plane when they could attack a \_\_\_\_\_ (31) airport lobby, where  
 there is almost no security at all?

# 9. You will hear a radio interview with a journalist, who has been investigating the situation in the air transportation industry after September 11. For questions 1-30, complete the statements. You will hear the recording twice.

The problem of baggage screening may be solved by \_\_\_\_\_ (1)

Congress may postpone \_\_\_\_\_ (2)

One of the problems is that all airports are \_\_\_\_\_ (3)

To solve the problem you need:

- to reinforce the \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ CTX machines (4)
- to reconfigure \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ (5)





to study the \_\_\_\_\_ for each airport (6)  
 Salt Lake City International airport has been \_\_\_\_\_ since the Olympics (7)  
 Salt Lake City International airport uses both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ (8)  
 Salt Lake City airport screened bags for \_\_\_\_\_ passengers a day \_\_\_\_\_ during the Olympic (9)  
 The screening process took less \_\_\_\_\_ per bag at Salt Lake City airport (10)  
 Boston's Logan airport spent \_\_\_\_\_ to improve its screening system (11)

The Seattle Airport plans \_\_\_\_\_ that would  
 to build \_\_\_\_\_ CTX machine (12)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ to be completed in time (13)  
 support \_\_\_\_\_ ; \_\_\_\_\_ (i4)  
 This construction project \_\_\_\_\_  
 Placing of equipment in The Seattle Airport's lobby is \_\_\_\_\_  
 Airport people admit that the agency's work \_\_\_\_\_ lately (15)  
 Executives think that Congress was too \_\_\_\_\_ to improve security (16)  
 Executives want \_\_\_\_\_ to solve the problem (17)  
 Victims of September 11 demand \_\_\_\_\_ ~ \_\_\_\_\_ (18)  
 Baggage screening chaos may \_\_\_\_\_ the air transportation industry (19)  
 Advice to ease the pain the holiday season: \_\_\_\_\_

## 10. Translate

А. Аеропорт - це лише частина складної структури. Там є летовище, велике бетоноване поле. На ньому є злітно-посадочна смуга. Літаки злітають та сідають на неї, коли прибувають. Після посадки літаки їдуть доріжкою руління до бетонованого майданчика навкруги будівлі аеропорту. Літак під'їжджає до телескопічного трану, робітники аеропорту фіксують його і пасажери виходять через двері літака трапом до будівлі аеропорту. Через сектор посадки вони виходять до чекальї. Пасажири, що відлітають, збираються у місці збору перед сектором посадки. Таке місце можна знайти, якщо йти естакадою до її голови і дивитись направо та наліво, аж поки не побачиш свій сектор. Поки пасажири чекають, технічні автомобілі обслуговують літак. Багажні завантажувачі розвантажують багаж, камбузний завантажувач завантажує харчові продукти, наземні пересувні електростанції постачають електрику, а водоналивна цистерна - воду до літака. Декому подобається спостерігати, як літаки злітають. Це можна зробити на спеціальній терасі для глядачів. У великих аеропортах мають десятки рейсів на день. Тому літаки буксують спеціальними тракторами до інших ділянок аеропорту, де вони стоять між рейсами, якщо мають час. Диспетчерська, що розташована у адміністративній будівлі, повідомить коли літак повинен під'їхати до трапу для посадки пасажирів.

Б. 1. Літак пришвартований до трапу. Коли вже почнуть виходити пасажири? - Гадаю, хвилин за десять. 2. Пробачте, де тут п'ятий термінал? - Ви бачите он ту будівлю з баштою? - Там, де стоянка автомобілів? - Так, це і є ваш термінал. 3. Тобі видно злітно-посадочну смугу? - Так, якийсь літак саме приземляється. Здається це літак компанії "Дельта" - Тоді це має бути літак з Чикаго. 4. Учора я запізнилася на свій рейс. 5. Нарешті ми поставили автомобіль на стоянку і зайшли до терміналу, Рейс із Лос-Анджелеса запізнився і ми пішли до чекальї. 6. Це бетон чи асфальт? - Звичайно, бетон. Асфальт занадто м'який для літаків, вони дуже важкі.

В. Перед відльотом пасажири повинні зареєструвати багаж. Вони йдуть до сектору реєстрації і здають багаж реєстратору. Він зважує багаж і наклеює багажну квитанцію на кожне місце багажу пасажирів. Він також вклеює квитанції до квитка пасажирів. Коли пасажир прибуде до пункту призначення, він забере свій багаж у пункті його одержання. Біля виходу працівник аеропорту може перевірити багажні квитанції пасажирів. Якщо пасажир має цінні речі у своєму багажі, йому краще задекларувати їх при реєстрації. Звичайно, пасажир має за платити за додаткову цінність багажу. Але якщо пасажир цього не зробить, а компанія загубить або пошкодить його багаж, то пасажир може і не одержати повну вартість своїх речей. Авіакомпанії можуть мати обмежену відповідальність у таких випадках. Деякі компанії також мають обмеження щодо багажу, що провозять безкоштовно. Наприклад, "Дельта" дозволяє безкоштовно провозити два місця багажу, який повинен бути не важчим за 32 кілограми. Якщо кількість місць пасажирів більша за два, або якщо він має надлишкову вагу багажу, то він має сплатити вартість додаткового місця або за кожен надлишковий фунт ваги. Авіакомпанії не дозволяють провозити літаком небезпечні речі, такі як зброя, боєприпаси, вибухові речовини, наркотики тощо. Пасажир може взяти з собою до літака одне місце незареєстрованого багажу. Зазвичай це невелика валіза тощо.

## PART 2 ARE WE THERE YET?



### TICKETS AND BOARDING PASSES

**1 Work in groups of 4-5. Make a list of the kind of information you can expect in a ticket for a plane. Then compare your list with those of the other groups.**

**2. Work in pairs. Find in the ticket below the information given under it. Some information may be missing in this ticket. Is it a one-way or a return ticket? Why?**

AIR UKRAINE							SITI 89100012 09JUL6		
AIR UKRAINE MENVINSKOHO, 1									
VALID ONLY ON 6U							KYIV		UA
Passenger's Name	Carrier	Flight	Class	Date	Time	Status	Fare basis	Not valid before	Not valid after
SMITH / MR									
From VOID		= VOID =							
To VOID		= VOID =							
To KYIV BORYSPIL	6U	105Y		14 JUL	1045	OK	YHE6M		14 JUL
To CHICAGO O'HARE	6U	106Y		24JUL		OK	YHE6M	24JUL	14 JUL
To KYIV BORYSPIL									
FARE	AIRLINE form and serial number CK CODE								
TAX									
TAX									
	891	4450008938 4							

1. name of the airline; 2. coded name of the carrier; 3. passenger's name; 4. passenger's sex; 5. date of ticket's purchase; 6. place of ticket's purchase; 7. name of the departure airport; 8. name of the arrival airport; 9. point of destination; 10. names of stopping places; 11. name of the airport you return to on your flight back; 12. number of flight; 13. first class; 14. business class; 15. economy class; 16. date of departure; 17. local time of departure; 18. date before which you can not flight; 19. date after which you can not flight; 20. sum paid for the ticket; 21. payment by bank order; 22. payment by credit card; 23. payment by cash.

**3. Work in groups of 4-5. What is the difference between a ticket and a boarding pass? Make a list of the kind of information you can expect in a boarding pass. Then compare your list with those of the other groups.**

4. Work in pairs. Match the indications in the boarding pass below with the information given under it. Some information may be missing in this boarding pass.

AIR UKRAINE					
CABIN  Y	SEAT NUMBER 16B	FLIGHT 6U106	DEST KBP	GATE M-16	BOARD TIME 6:00
	NAME SMITH	DATE 28 JUL			NO 16
BOARDING PASS					

1. order of this boarding pass (shows how many passengers got boarding passes before you); 2. window seat; 3. flight number; 4. non-smoking section; 5. first class; 6. date of the departure; 7. gate number; 8. name of the arrival airport; 9. seat number; 10. name of the airline; 11. aisle seat; 12. name of the passenger; 13. name of the departure airport; 14. business class; 15. economy class; 16. coded name of the carrier; 17. passenger's sex; 18. date the pass was issued; 19. point of destination; 20. names of stopping places; 21. mode of payment (cash, credit card or bank order); 22. smoking section; 23. time you get on the plane.

#### 5. Translate

A. Пасажири реєструються біля секторів реєстрації. Кожен перевізник має свій сектор. Коли пасажир реєструється, він повинен пред'явити свій квиток. Квитки можна купити в аеропорту або в офісах авіакомпанії. Пасажир може заплатити за квиток готівкою, банківським переказом або кредитною карткою. Якщо пасажир бажає бути певним, що він матиме квиток, йому краще зарезервувати його телефоном. У багатьох країнах пасажири платять менше, якщо резервують квиток задовго до вильоту літака. Деякі компанії вимагають від пасажирів підтвердження про виліт за 2-3 доби до вильоту.

У квитку зазвичай вказують ім'я та стать пасажирів. Там ще можна побачити відмітки про дату та місце, де пасажир купив квиток, а також назви аеропортів, де літак сідає по дорозі до пункту призначення. Якщо це квиток в один бік, у ньому вказують назву аеропорту вильоту та аеропорту прибуття. У зворотному квитку зазначають також аеропорт прибуття при поверненні. Квиток містить кодовану назву вашої авіакомпанії, номер рейсу та клас, яким ви летите. Крім того, ви побачите там місцевий час вильоту та прильоту до кожного аеропорту. У квитку також є дати до яких та після яких квиток недейсний. Реєстратор вписує до квитка інформацію про кількість місць вашого зареєстрованого та незареєстрованого багажу, а також його вагу. У квитку ви навіть знайдете інформацію про те, скільки ви заплатили за квиток та як ви це зробили (готівкою, переказом чи кредитною карткою).

Б. 1. Пробачте, я маю реєструвати квиток? - Звичайно. - Де це можна зробити? - Літаком якої компанії ви летите? - "Дельта". - Сектор реєстрації "Дельти" праворуч. 2. Пробачте, можна мені зареєструватись? - Так, пред'явіть ваш квиток, будь ласка. Скільки місць багажу? - Я взагалі не маю багажу, лише оця невелика валіза. Можна її взяти з собою як незареєстрований багаж? 3. Ви зарезервували квиток до Сан-Франсиско на післязавтра? - Ні, я ніколи не резервую квитки, а завжди куную їх прямо у аеропорту перед вильотом. - Але ж кунувати квитки наперед дешевше? - Так, але я рідко знаю наперед, що буде навіть завтра. 4. Як будете платити за квиток: готівкою чи кредитною карткою? - Банківським переказом. 5. Який клас найдешевший та найдорожчий? - Перший клас найдорожчий, а економічний клас найдешевший. Бізнес-клас дешевший за перший, але дорожчий за економічний. 6. Пробачте, але усі посадочні талони вже видані. Місць у літаку більше немає. - Але ж я маю квиток. - А ви підтверджували свій виліт за 2 доби до вильоту? - Ні, я не знав, що маю підтверджувати. - Перепрошую, сер, але це написано у вашому квитку. Нічим не можу допомогти. Доведеться вам легіти іншим літаком. 7. Навіщо ви купили зворотний квиток? Вам же легіти лише в один бік. - Справа в тому, що у той день зворотний квиток коштував дешевше, ніж квиток в один бік. Таке інколи трапляється. - Справді? 8. Пробачте, ви не знаєте, що означають ці числа ось тут? - Це кодована назва вашої авіакомпанії та номер рейсу, - А ця літера? - Літера "Y" означає, що ви летите економічним класом. - Чому він так називається? - Бо він найдешевший.

В. 1. В літаках вашої компанії можна курити? - Ні, не можна. - А які компанії дозволяють куріння? - Деякі дозволяють, але лише в останніх рядах. 2. Це пряма рейс, чи треба робити пересадку? - Слід пересаджуватись у Парижі. - А довго чекати на пересадку? - Біля трьох годин. 3. Цей рейс має якісь зупинки? - Так, він зупиняється у аеропорту Шеннон в Ірландії, а потім ще в Монреалі. 4. Якщо я запізнюся на літак, мій квиток буде дійсним на інші рейси? - Так, квиток дійсний протягом року. 5. Тут щось написано у скороченій формі. - Це назва компанії або аеропорту. - Аеропорту прибуття чи відбуття. - Вам краще запитати реєстратора. 6. Минулого тижня я кувала квитка до Цинцинаті, але економічного класу вже не було, лише бізнес-клас. - Можна летіти літаком нашої авіакомпанії до Цинцинаті через Цюрих. - А коли він відлітає з Києва? - У вівторок та п'ятницю. Прибуває до Цинцинаті біля двох годин дня. 7. У вас сьогодні багато клієнтів? - Ні, не дуже багато. Ось ваш посадочний талон. - Коли починається посадка? - За півгодини. Вже час іти до місця збору пасажирів біля сектору посадки. 8. Який у вас ряд? - Дванадцятий. - А місце? - 12А. - Це біля вікна чи у проході? - Біля вікна. Чи не можемо ми обмінятися місцями? Я люблю сидіти біля вікна. 9. Що вказують у посадочному талоні? - Назву авіакомпанії, номер місця, номер рейсу, час початку посадки, клас, час відльоту, номер сектору посадки, назва аеропорту прибуття, ім'я пасажирів, порядковий номер цього посадочного талона.

## AIRPORT SERVICES

6. Work in groups of 4-5. Make a list of the kinds of services you can expect at an airport. Then compare your list with those of the other groups.

7. Match the symbols below with the names of airport services on the next page. There are fewer symbols than the names.



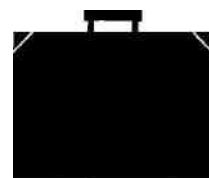
1



2



3



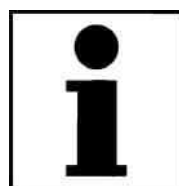
6



7



8



20



11



12



13



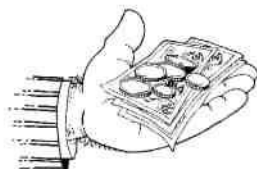
14



fcAT



16



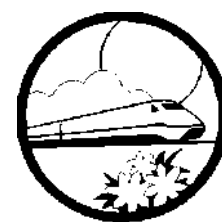
17



18



19



- |                                     |                                    |                                |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A airport                           | L. ladies' toilet (ladies)         | Y. spectators' terrace         |
| B departures                        | M. chapel                          | Z. information.                |
| C arrivals                          | N. restaurant                      | AA. taxis                      |
| D transit passengers                | O. change                          | AB. car hire                   |
| E. waiting room (lounge)            | P. duty free shop                  | AC. trains                     |
| F. assembly point                   | Q. hairdresser/barber              | AD. buses                      |
| G baggage carts                     | R. automated banking               | AE. ticket purchase            |
| H entrance                          | S. passport check                  | AF. diaper-changing facilities |
| I. exit                             | T. press facilities                | AG. dentist                    |
| G baggage retrieval                 | U. doctor                          | AH. health club                |
| H baggage lockers                   | V. chemist (AE druggist)           | AI. rooms by the hour          |
| I. telephone - emergency calls only | W. showers                         | AJ. children's playroom        |
| J. emergency exit                   | WW. gentlemen's toilet (gentlemen) |                                |
| K security check                    | X. escalators                      |                                |



**8. Match the names of airport services in the previous exercise with their definitions given below.**

**Model: the place where you go out -----> exit (I)**

1. place where you go if you fall ill; 2. place where you get out in emergency; 3. women's restroom; 4. area where you wait for your plane; 5. establishment where you go if you are hungry; 6. place where you go if you want to find something out; 7. area where people gather before boarding the plane; 8. place where you can rent a car; 9. shop where you can have your hair cut; 10. way where people who fly further should go; 11. men's restroom; 12. place where people can watch the planes; 13. facility where you can wash yourself; 14. place you go to for religious service; 15. device you can make an urgent telephone call with; 16. area where you pick your baggage; 17. shop you go to to get some medicine; 18. way you go to meet arriving passengers; 19. place where you get into a building etc; 20. section of the airport where your passport is checked; 21. way you go to depart; 22. place where you can lock your baggage; 23. way you go to get a taxi; 24. shop where you can get small change; 25. way you drive to get to the terminal; 26. premises where you can use a fax, a computer, etc., 27. shop where you can buy things without paying taxes; 28. door you can get out through in case of fire; 29. direction you should in to change for a train; 30. area where the airport police check the passengers; 31. counter where you can buy a ticket; 32. area where you can hire a baggage cart; 33. moving stairs; 34. direction you should go in to change for a bus; 35. automatic machines you can get cash from. 36. room where people can do physical exercise; 37. place where you can change baby's wet nappies.

9. In the two texts in exercise 10 find the words and word-combinations that have the same meaning as those presented below.

Set of boards built into a structure for workers to stand on when they are working on the outside of a building; bus etc that makes regular short journeys between two places; every hour beginning at 12:30; make the driver of a taxi stop by waving at him; every hour beginning at 12:00; road like a circle connecting all terminals of an airport; passenger who turned up late; place where you can buy tickets; slow down; take passengers by car to a place and leave them there; horizontal escalator; baggage registration right in front of the terminal's building; money you have to pay to use a private road; bridge etc; boat that makes regular short journeys between two places; every hour; depart from; postponed; departures that happened after the arranged time; arrival that happened after the arranged time; postponing the take-off in the final stage of the plane's preparations; situation that prevents something from happening.

10. Work in pairs. Read the text about New York's two biggest airports and fill in the table below.

Airports	LA GUARDIA	JFK
Characteristics		
Volume		
Hub		
Making connections		
Roadblocks		
On time		
Getting to town		
Amenities		
Degree of pain		

More than a third of a billion people flew to and through the nation's 10 busiest airports last year. Ask any of these fliers for a tale of woe and stand by for recitations of impossible connections, lines without end, amen, and airport food that only the famished would swallow. So *U.S. News and World Report* undertook to rank the major national airports on a "pain scale" from 1 to 10 - the higher the number, the greater the inconvenience the airport imposes on travelers. Six factors were judged, from connections and lines (which weighed heavily) to diversions during layovers (which counted for less). Since numbers without details mean little, each airport is profiled below-along with ways to ease the pain.

### LA GUARDIA, NEW YORK



**Volume:** 27.2 million passengers **Hub:** None

La Guardia is embroiled in a messy renovation that airport officials liken, with only faint exaggeration, to open-heart surgery performed on a marathoner while running. Rows of cranes and gaping pits separate the arrivals roadway from the main terminal, and passengers thread through dimly lit plywood-encased walkways to the street. Narrowed roads cause long traffic jams and even longer taxi queues. Inside, the work has crowded out some ticket counters and produced lots of scaffolding. New York's backyard airport will be under the knife until summer at least. Flight delays doubled two years ago and eased only somewhat during the concluding nine months of last year. •

**Making connections.** The Pan American and Trump shuttles to Boston and Washington, D.C., account for about 1 in 6 La Guardia flights. Experienced commuters who miss Pan Am's shuttles, every hour on the half-hour from the Marine Air Terminal, flag down cabs and head for the Trump Shuttle terminal a mile away, where flights leave every hour on the hour. The ride costs about \$4, but waiting for the free airport bus can eat up 20 minutes. Very few passengers change planes at La Guardia, and the only tough connections involve busing from one terminal to another; an entire airport loop can take up to an hour. But Delta keeps private vans parked on the departure road nearby. They can rush latecomers to distant terminals in 10 minutes, traffic permitting.

- **Roadblocks.** Lines can snake out the front doors at American Airlines ticket counters, where construction, due to end by mid-December, has closed several positions. Of the three separate taxi lines outside the main terminal, the one by the American entrance moves quickest because it's closest to the airport exit and thus less hampered by clogged roads. On the upper level, the departures road will be narrowed soon to 2,5 lanes. Avoid the congestion by dropping off your passengers inside the main-terminal garage, where a moving sidewalk will carry them inside. They should travel light; there is no curbside baggage check-in there.

- **On time.** La Guardia's on-time arrival record was among the worst in the nation in September, and winter will add to the pain. Last December, only 65 percent of arrivals and 70 percent of departures were on time. Delays balloon after about 10 a.m.

- **Downtime.** The deli in the Marine Air Terminal sells a mean pastrami hero for \$4.10. The main terminal's fancier Terrace Restaurant is a calming pool of quiet at raucous La Guardia. Regulars recommend the \$12.95 grilled tuna. Getting to town. Taxi to mid-town, 8 miles, \$20 plus tolls; express bus, \$7.50; Pan Am water shuttle to Wall Street, 45 minutes, \$25, hourly in early morning and late afternoon.

- **Amenities.** Diaper-changing facilities, children's playroom,

- **Degree of pain - 5.7.**

## JOHN F. KENNEDY (JFK), NEW YORK



**Volume:** 29.4 million passengers **Hub:** Pan Am, TWA

The Ellis Island of the Jet Age, JFK handles 18 million overseas passengers a year, nearly twice as many as any other U.S. airport. But its busy skies cause one of the worst on-time records in the nation, and with \$30 cab rides to New York and customs delays of up to 90 minutes, JFK has been losing European and Far Eastern business to Newark Airport and the Los Angeles and Miami airports. Still, the cheapest flights to Europe, Africa and post-Soviet countries leave from here, and with the greatest frequency.

- **Making connections.** With nine terminals and a mix of domestic and international flights, finding the right building at JFK is problem No. 1. Passengers typically assume that all American Airlines gates are in one terminal, but American's flights to St. Croix and San Juan leave from the United terminal next door. Pan Am has gates in two buildings, and ticket agents say passengers constantly come to the wrong one. Calling an airline on the day of departure to ask which gate and terminal you'll connect from is wise.

- **Roadblocks.** Many TWA passengers face a special challenge. Although most domestic TWA flights leave from Terminal B, some leave from TWA's international Terminal A. But passengers on those flights with bags to check should head for B anyway, since there's no curbside check-in at A, and agents there are so busy with international passengers that they'll send you back to check in at B. Shuttle buses connecting JFK's nine terminals run at about 15-minute intervals; the full loop takes 40 minutes at rush hour, from about 4 to 7 p.m.

- **On time.** A full 80 percent of flights arrived more than 15 minutes late in September; 84 percent of take-offs were delayed, too. Last winter, both figures were 10 to 15 percentage points worse. The largest percentage of late departures occur between 9 p.m. and 10 p.m., and the odds of a late arrival are greatest between 4 p.m. and 5 p.m. Runway delays - holdups because of weather or heavy traffic - average nearly 19 minutes, the worst of any U.S. airport.

- **Downtime.** The juicy hamburgers may cost \$5.25 at the cafeteria on the top floor of TWA's Building A, but the balcony views of Eero Saarinen's futuristic, saddle-shaped terminal are the best around. Or follow the airport employees to the food truck outside the International Arrivals Building, where they line up for pita sandwiches and \$5 chicken-and-broccoli dinners. A stop at the Western-wear shop in the international terminal, with its \$70 bullwhips and \$15 bow-and-arrow sets, makes for fascinating conversation with strangers.

- **Getting to town.** Taxi to mid-town, 15 miles, \$30 plus tolls; express bus, \$9.50.

- **Amenities.** Chapel, diaper-changing facilities, dentist.

- **Degree of pain - 5.1.**

**11. Using the table you have just finished, write a report assessing good and bad points of the two New York's airports. Read the explanation below first.**

## ASSESSING GOOD AND BAD POINTS

This is a formal piece of writing in which good and bad points of a particular topic are discussed. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) an **introduction** (1 paragraph) where you state the aim and topic of your report; (2) a **main body** where you may present good and bad points under sub-headings; (3) a **conclusion** (1 paragraph) where you summarise the information presented in the main body and give your personal opinion.

### Recommendations:

(1) Do not use informal language; (2) Prepare a list of 'good' and 'bad' points before you begin writing; (3) Decide on the heading of your report; (4) Decide on the number and wording of the sub-headings for the main body; (5) present both the positive and negative information under the relevant sub-heading; (6) Use contrastive words to introduce the negative information (*however ...on the other hand... in contrast...*); (7) Use a formal impersonal style, short sentences, present tenses, passive voice and do not use contractions of the verb forms

### Useful phrases:

**To introduce the topic:** *The purpose of this report is to ... As requested...*

**To list good points:** *The house is conveniently located in ... The restaurant is in a beautiful house ...*

**To list bad points:** *However ... Nevertheless s... In addition ... As a result...*

**To introduce the conclusion:** *To conclude ... To sum it up ... All things considered... On the whole ...*

## 12. Translate

Аеропорт, можна сказати, це невелике місто. Частина аеропорту призначена для пасажирів, що прибувають, а інша частина - для тих, хто відлітає. Ще інша - для транзитних пасажирів. Пасажири, що відлітають, можуть відпочивати у чекальні. Коли наближається час посадки, вони йдуть до місця збору пасажирів (колектора) біля сектору посадки. Тут є сектор реєстрації, де реєстратор видає пасажирам посадочні талони, з якими вони проходять до літака через сектор посадки. Для тих, хто чекає відльоту, аеропорт має досить багато послуг. Наприклад, можна залишити свої речі у камері схову, а потім поїсти у ресторані та відвідати крамницю безмитної торгівлі. В аеропорту є також перукарня, каплиця, кабінет лікаря та аптека. В душових можна прийняти душ, а в нунках розміпу грошей одержати дрібні монети для автоматів, що продають газети, напої тощо. Якщо ви маєте кредитну картку, то можна одержати готівку через банкомати. Кореспонденти газет, радіо та телебачення можуть користуватися відповідним устаткуванням (комп'ютери, факси, електронна пошта) для комунікації. Тут також можна пересісти на поїзд або автобус чи взяти авто напрокат. Пасажири, що прибувають, беруть багажні візки, забирають свій багаж у місці його одержання, кладуть на візок та йдуть до виходу. Пасажири можуть швидко пересуватися ескалаторами. У надзвичайних випадках можна повідомити про ситуацію спеціальним телефоном, призначеним для таких випадків. У випадку пожежі, пасажири можуть користуватися запасним виходом. Довідкова бюро надасть вам будь-яку інформацію. Служба охорони аеропорту увесь час спостерігає за роботою аеропорту. Вони перевіряють багаж та усіх пасажирів, коли ті сідають до літака і прибувають з інших частин світу.

Б. 1. Якщо ви захворіли під час подорожі, можна відвідати кабінет лікаря у аеропорту або аптеку, де продаються ліки. 2. Якщо у аеропорту почнеться пожежа, слід скористатися запасним виходом. 3. Якщо у аеропорту трапилося щось надзвичайне, пасажири можуть скористатися телефоном, призначеним для таких випадків. 4. Якщо ви бажаєте відвідати релігійну службу, можна піти до каплиці. 5. Якщо пасажири зголодніли, вони можуть відвідати ресторан. 6. Якщо хтось потребує дрібних грошей для автоматів, можна розмінити гроші у аеропорту. 7. Якщо хочете заощадити гроші, кунуйте речі у крамниці безмитної торгівлі. 8. Коли бажаєте зробити зачіску, до ваших послуг перукарня - чоловіча і жіноча. 9. Якщо ви ирибули з іншої країни, вам слід иройти паспортний контроль. 10. Кореспонденти газет, радіо чи телебачення мають нагоду користуватися устаткуванням для преси (комп'ютером, факсом, електронною поштою тощо). 11. Якщо бажаєте спостерігати як злітає літак, можна піти на терасу для глядачів. 12. Коли потребуєте довідки, мусите йти до довідкового бюро. 13. Бажаючі взяти таксі, мають йти на їхню стоянку. 14. Коли захочете взяти автомобіль напрокат, слід йти до пункту прокату. 15. Якщо виникне потреба пересісти на по-тяг, мусите йти до нункту пересадки. 16. А коли треба пересісти на автобус, то треба йти до іншого пункту пересадки. 17. Якщо маєте важкі валізи, вам краще взяти багажний візок. 18. Коли ви ирибули з іншого міста, слід пройти перевірку служби охорони аеропорту. 19. Якщо потребуєте готівки і маєте кредитну картку, можна одержати її через банкомат. 20. Коли ви втомилися і вам важко йти пішки, користуйтеся горизонтальним ескалатором. 21. Якщо ви не встигли придбати квитка заздалегідь, можна купити його безпосередньо в аеропорту.



В. Вчора вона приїхала до аеропорту на таксі. Водій помилково приїхав до тієї частини аеропорту, де зустрічають прибулих пасажирів. Але вона мусила відлітати сама, тому приїхала ескалатором до частини аеропорту, яка призначена для пасажирів, що відлітають. Зареєструвавшись, вона одержала багажні квитанції і пішла до чекальні. Мала досить багато часу, а тому подалася до перукарні, потім до книжкової крамниці. Купила там газети, журнали та бестселер у м'якій обкладинці. Потім зайшла до аптеки і придбала ліки. До лікаря вона не ходила, бо не хвора, а ліки їй потрібні для мами. Заскочила ще до крамниці безмитної торгівлі й купила подарунки для родичів та друзів. Потім уточнила в довідковому бюро початок посадки на свій рейс. Часу, аби їхати до міста було обмаль, навіть якщо взяти таксі, не кажучи вже про човникові рейси поїздів, які їздили кожну годину, починаючи з 12.00, та автобусів, які також їздили кожну годину, але починаючи з 12.30. А брати авто напрокат взагалі безглуздо. Тож вона вирішила придбати сеїдвічі та напої через автомати, що продають їх. Не мала готівки, то ж пішла до банкоматів і одержала нятидесятидоларову купюру. Розміняла її на дрібні гроші у пункті розміну, а потім придбала все що хотіла. Навіть після цього ще мала досить часу, а тому подалася на терасу для глядачів. Там було досить багатолюдно. Усі спостерігали як злітають літаки. Вона трохи подивилася, а потім пішла до сектору посадки. По дорозі проходила повз каси для продажу квитків. Там стояла черга. Деякі люди кунують квитки прямо в аеропорту. Дивно...

## PART 3

### ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 7 VERBS

#### FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS AND COMMON FIXED EXPRESSIONS - I



#### EPISODE 7

##### 1. Read part 1 and then proceed to the tasks.

##### PART I

"You are *fond of* (1) dancing, Jack," the little man *delighted in* (2) the conversation. "At *present* (3) you'll *acquaint yourself with* (4) the best dancers in this country. And I am the musician," he evidently *prided himself on* (5) it.

"Then where is your harp?" *peered* Jack *at* (6) him. "The dancers can't dance *out of* (7) doors without a harp. It's *out of* (8) the question."

"*On* (9) the contrary" *responded* the little man *to* (10) him. "I can *play my tunes on* (11) my fiddle." "Can you *rely on* (12) that *out-of*-(13) date stringed wooden spoon?" *rebelled* Jack *against* (14) the idea, for he had not been *accustomed to* (15) such instruments, and *on* (16) the whole that idea did not *appeal to* (17) him. He had never been *involved in* (18) and had not *got used to* (19) anything like that.

"*For* (20) heaven's sake" *persisted* Jack *in* (21) his enquiries, "can you read the notation *at* (22) least? "By (23) all means and *under* (24) all circumstances" the little man was *getting tired of* (25) the questions, "I *play by* (26) ear and know all my tunes *by* (27) heart, so I just play them *from* (28) memory, not to be *confined to* (29) any limitations all composers have," he *hinted at* (30) something Jack could not *decide on* (31), being quite sceptical about the abilities the little man *attributed to* (32) himself.

##### 2. Match the verbs followed by prepositions in exercise 1 with their equivalents below.

- having much liking for something \_\_\_\_\_
- become familiar with somebody \_\_\_\_\_
- look carefully at something, bending forward \_\_\_\_\_
- to need something and depend on it \_\_\_\_\_
- to get used to something \_\_\_\_\_
- be accustomed to something/somebody \_\_\_\_\_
- to limit (somebody) to (doing) something \_\_\_\_\_
- to choose from several possibilities \_\_\_\_\_
- to improvise \_\_\_\_\_
- enjoy doing something \_\_\_\_\_

- to be proud of something and show it to everybody \_\_\_\_\_
- to produce a melody on some instrument \_\_\_\_\_
- to fight against something to change it \_\_\_\_\_
- to be attractive \_\_\_\_\_
- to take part in something \_\_\_\_\_
- keep (on) doing something \_\_\_\_\_
- get bored with something \_\_\_\_\_
- to suggest indirectly \_\_\_\_\_
- to suggest having certain qualities \_\_\_\_\_
- to answer \_\_\_\_\_
- memorized \_\_\_\_\_

### 3. Replace the italicized word-combinations with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 1.

1. Jane *likes* shopping *very much*. 2. John *enjoyed* playing tennis. 3. Jack tried to *become familiar* with the local customs. 4. The restaurant *was proud of its* oriental cuisine and made a lot of publicity about it. 5. Jack *bent forward and looked at* the musician *carefully*. 6. The musician was ready to *produce* his favourite tune on his instrument. 7. Trying to escape, Jack *needed* fast feet - he *depended on them*. 8. The prisoners *fought against* the conditions in the jail. 9. Jack was not *used to* dancing out of doors. 10. The idea of dancing out of doors *was not attractive for* Jack at first. 11. Jack was not sure whether he should *take part in* dancing. 12. It was difficult to *get accustomed to* the idea of dancing without a harp. 13. Jack still *kept on* thinking the musician was no good for dancing. 14. The musician *was bored with* answering Jack's endless questions. 15. They *limited themselves to* talking about dancing. 16. By all his manner the little man *suggested indirectly that he was* a very important person there. 17. Finally Jack *chose to stay on*. 18. Jack kept *answering* the little man's questions. 19. Jack had no idea what was going to happen, so he decided to *improvise*. 20. Jack did not see any point in *memorizing* those out-of-date tunes.

### 4. Match the fixed expressions in exercise 1 with their equivalents below.

- Now \_\_\_\_\_ at present (3) \_\_\_\_\_
- impossible and not worth considering \_\_\_\_\_
- quite the reverse \_\_\_\_\_
- for God's sake \_\_\_\_\_
- most definitely \_\_\_\_\_
- outside, in the fresh air \_\_\_\_\_
- old-fashioned \_\_\_\_\_
- in general \_\_\_\_\_
- at the minimum \_\_\_\_\_
- in any case \_\_\_\_\_
- without looking at anything written \_\_\_\_\_

### 5. Replace the italicized words or word combinations with the fixed expressions from exercise 4.

1. "I am unwilling to dance *now*" said Jack. 2. Jack knew it was so cold that dancing out of doors was *impossible and not worth considering*. 3. "This is rather an *old-fashioned* instrument," thought Jack. 4. Jack has never been against dancing, *quite the reverse*, he has always been fond of it. 5. One or two were all right, but *in general* Jack was not fond of going to discos. 6. "What am I doing here^or *God's sake*^ thought Jack to himself. 7. "*At the minimum* I'll have some fun," decided Jack at last. 8. "If you feel like asking any further questions, *most definitely* do so," responded the little man to Jack. 9. "Sooner or later, but you are going to dance with us *in any case*" smiled the little man as if he were hinting at something. 10. The little man has always played his tunes *without looking at any written notation*.

### 6. Fill in the blanks with the verbs followed by prepositions and the fixed expressions from exercises 2 and 4.

You could hardly say that Jack delighted \_\_\_\_\_ (1) the conversation with the little man, or that \_\_\_\_\_ (2) least he was fond \_\_\_\_\_ (3) talking to him. \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the contrary, Jack got tired \_\_\_\_\_ (5) listening to this dwarf, attributing the supernatural abilities \_\_\_\_\_ (6) himself. \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the whole, Jack's mind rebelled \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the involvement \_\_\_\_\_ (9) anything he had not been accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ (10). \_\_\_\_\_ (11) different circumstances he would, \_\_\_\_\_ (12) all means, try not to be confined \_\_\_\_\_ (13) just listening to any body, priding himself \_\_\_\_\_ (14) remembering all his tunes \_\_\_\_\_ (15) heart and playing them \_\_\_\_\_ (16) his \_\_\_\_\_ (17) date instrument just \_\_\_\_\_ (18) ear or \_\_\_\_\_ (19) memory. No, it was completely \_\_\_\_\_ (20)

the question, the idea of getting acquainted \_\_\_\_\_ (21) a bunch of similar lunatics did not appeal \_\_\_\_\_ (22) him at all.

But \_\_\_\_\_ (23) present, instead of responding \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the minstrel or at least hinting \_\_\_\_\_ (25) his being fed up with the situation, he just kept peering \_\_\_\_\_ (26) the little man and could not decide \_\_\_\_\_ (27) his course of action. " \_\_\_\_\_ (28) heaven's sake," he thought, "what am I doing here standing \_\_\_\_\_ (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (30) doors in the middle of nowhere? I have to think of something to rely \_\_\_\_\_ (31)"

**7. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Parti.**

1. When Jack saw the musician's instrument, he rebelled on the idea of dancing to it.
2. The little man prided himself of being a musician.
3. It was out from the question to dance without a harp.
4. Jack probably was fond in dancing.
5. In the whole Jack had not got used of such things.
6. The little man always played to ear because he did not want to be confined with any limitations.
7. The little man hinted to something but Jack could not decide about what it was.
8. "By heaven's sake", said Jack, unable to believe that he had been involved with such things.
9. The situation did not appeal at Jack as he had not been accustomed against such things.
10. "By the contrary," said the little man, persisting with his conversation.
11. The little man delighted with the conversation and he was sure he could rely to his tiny instrument.

**8. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 1, using the clues below on the part of: a) Jack; b) the man.**

Little man (delighted - talk): you - fond - dancing; present - you - acquaint - best dancers - country;  
I - musician - prided himself.

Jack: peer - little man: harp? - dancers - can't - out - no harp - no question.

Little man: respond - Jack: contrary - I - play tunes - fiddle.

Jack: not rely - old - instrument; rebel - idea - not accustomed - instruments - whole - idea - not appeal - him;  
never involved - not used - anything like that; heaven's sake - persist - inquiries; read - notation - least?

Little man: get tired - questions: all means - all circumstances - play - ear - know - tunes - heart; I play - memory  
- not confined - limitations - all composers - hint - something.

Jack: couldn't - decide - skeptical - abilities - man - attributed - himself.

**9. Write your own story, using the verbs followed by prepositions and the fixed expressions you have learned in this part of the unit.**

## PART II

**1. Read Part 2 and then proceed to the tasks.**

*Engaged in* (1) the conversation, Jack was suddenly taken *by* (2) *surprise*: hundreds of little spirits, *smelling of* (3) the sweetest flowers and *compared in beauty to* (4) no one, started *emerging from* (5) everywhere *in* (6) *style*. *In (l)fact* they were so *out of* (8) *the ordinary* that Jack felt *out* (9) *of place*. They were coming *in* (10) *haste*, *one at* (11) *a time*, *looking forward to* (12) having fun. Though the colours of their dresses were different, they had something *in* (13) *common in* (14) *a way*, and they knew one another *by* (15) *sight*. *At* (16) *any rate*, they bowed to each other and to Jack, too, and Jack bowed to them *in* (17) *reply*. Though they came *on* (18) *foot*, neither of them was *in* (19) *pain*, *in* (20) *difficulty* or *in* (21) *trouble*, because they moved so lightly that not a blade or a flower was crushed under their weight.

Hardly had Jack *recovered from* (22) his stupor, as the little minstrel *indulged in* (23) playing. He drew his bow across the strings, and the music produced was so enchanting that Jack understood he had been *prejudiced against* (24) the musician.

At the sound of the sweet melody the spirits arranged themselves into groups and started dancing and singing, *inviting him to* (25) the merry crowd:

Singing, singing through the light,  
Dancing, dancing with all our might,  
Those who dance are always right,  
Happy ever we!

Jackie, where have you been?  
 We are proud to be seen,  
 Singing, dancing on the green,  
 Happy ever we!

**2. Match the expressions below with the verbs followed by prepositions in exercise 1.**

- involved in \_\_\_\_\_ *engaged in (1)* \_\_\_\_\_
- to liken something to something \_\_\_\_\_
- to wait for something impatiently \_\_\_\_\_
- to start doing something enjoyable \_\_\_\_\_
- to ask somebody to come somewhere \_\_\_\_\_
- to remind the odour of something \_\_\_\_\_
- to come out from somewhere \_\_\_\_\_
- to become well again \_\_\_\_\_
- to have an unreasonable dislike or preference for something \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Replace the italicized word combinations with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 2.**

1. For some unknown reason Jack *had an ungrounded dislike* o/the musician. 2. Though the spirits kept *asking* Jack *to come to* their merry crowd, he was not sure whether he should do it. 3. Jack *allowed himself to spend* a few minutes daydreaming. 4. At that moment hundreds of spirits started *coming out* from nowhere. 5. The merry crowd of the dancers could be *likened to* a river. 6. Jack hesitated whether to get *involved* in the dancing or not. 7. The coming spirits' *odour reminded that* o/the sweetest flowers.

**4. Match the expressions below with the fixed expressions from exercise 1.**

- to happen unexpectedly \_ *to be taken by surprise (2)* \_
- unusual \_\_\_\_\_
- hurriedly \_\_\_\_\_
- to look alike \_\_\_\_\_
- by appearance \_\_\_\_\_
- in an answer \_\_\_\_\_
- to have serious problems \_\_\_\_\_
- to be in a situation in which you are struggling \_\_\_\_\_
- elegantly \_\_\_\_\_
- actually \_\_\_\_\_
- inappropriate in the situation \_\_\_\_\_
- in turn \_\_\_\_\_
- to a certain degree \_\_\_\_\_
- anyway \_\_\_\_\_
- by walking \_\_\_\_\_
- to feel ache or unhappiness \_\_\_\_\_

**5. Replace the italicized word combinations with the fixed expressions from exercise D.**

1. Jack could not overcome the feeling of being *inappropriate* among the dancers. 2. Everything happened so suddenly that Jack *did not expect it*. 3. In spite of being prejudiced against the spirits, Jack had to admit that they were moving *elegantly*. 4. *Actually* Jack enjoyed their dancing. 5. The spirits' dancing was *unusual*, there was no question about that. 6. The spirits were arranging themselves into groups *hurriedly*. 7. The spirits emerged from nowhere *in turn*. 8. The spirits were all different but *somehow they looked alike*. 9. Though Jack had some doubts about the company he was in, he was looking forward to the party *to a certain degree*. 10. *Anyway* Jack could not leave the party at his will so why bother? 11. Jack had nothing to do but to bow *in an answer* to the invitation. 12. As the spirits had no transport, they had to travel *by walking*. 13. Jack could not say he *had serious problems* or *the feeling of deep unhappiness*, but still it looked like he was *in a situation where he was struggling*.

**6. Fill in the blanks with the verbs followed by prepositions and with the fixed expressions from exercises 2 and 4.**

At first Jack was not \_\_\_\_\_ (1) any pain or \_\_\_\_\_ (2) trouble. \_\_\_\_\_ (3) fact, he was not even \_\_\_\_\_ (4) difficulty. He had not been prejudiced \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the musician and was engaged \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the talk with him when he was taken \_\_\_\_\_ (7) surprise by the spirits. \_\_\_\_\_ (8) a way, Jack felt \_\_\_\_\_ (9) place when he saw so many \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the ordinary creatures emerging \_\_\_\_\_ (11) everywhere. They were moving \_\_\_\_\_ (12) style, smelling \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the sweetest flowers and kept coming one \_\_\_\_\_ (14) a time. Jack could not compare them \_\_\_\_\_ (15) anybody. \_\_\_\_\_ (16) any rate, though they had all something \_\_\_\_\_ (17) common and knew each other \_\_\_\_\_ (18) sight, they were not \_\_\_\_\_ (19) haste to indulge \_\_\_\_\_ (20) dancing. But they were looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ (21) it, bowing to each other and to Jack, too. Having recovered \_\_\_\_\_ (22) his astonishment - they were so graceful though they moved \_\_\_\_\_ (23) foot - Jack started bowing \_\_\_\_\_ (24) reply playing with the idea to invite one of these heavenly creatures \_\_\_\_\_ (25) the dancing floor.

**7. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 2.**

1. As Jack was not talking, he was not surprised when hundreds of spirits started coming out.
2. The spirits were not different from average people.
3. While the spirits kept coming, Jack was at ease.
4. The spirits were not in a hurry.
5. The spirits were coming all at once.
6. The spirits did not look like coming for fun.
7. The spirits hardly knew each other.
8. The spirits had to walk so they were dead tired.
9. The musician did not start playing for about an hour after everybody had come.
10. As soon as the musician started playing, Jack understood that he had been right being skeptical about the minstrel's abilities.

**8. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 2, using the clues below on the part of: a) Jack; b) the minstrel; c) a spirit.**

Jack: engaged - conversation - take - surprise - not belong.

Spirits: hundreds - smelling - flowers - compared - beauty - no one - emerging - everywhere - style -  
- not ordinary; coming - haste - one - time - look forward - fun; dresses - different - common - knew - sight;  
anyway - bowed - Jack - bowed - reply; came - foot - no: pain / difficulty/ trouble: moved lightly - no crash.

Jack: recover - stupor.

Minstrel: indulged - playing - drew - bow - strings; music: enchanting.

Jack: understood - prejudiced - musician.

Spirits: sweet melody - arrange - groups - started - dancing/singing - inviting - crowd.

Song:

Sing - sing - light  
Dance - dance - might  
Those - dance - right  
Happy ever we!

Jackie - where - been?  
We - proud - seen Sing  
- dance - green Happy  
ever we!

**9. Write your own story, using the verbs followed by prepositions and the fixed expressions you have learned in Episode 7.**

## LESSON 2 PART 1.

### ANYTHING TO DECLARE?

James keeps getting ready for travelling.

Lappy is never tired of supplying the tasks. Help James do them.



### I. UKRAINE

**1. Work in groups of 4-5. Make a list of the kind of information you can expect in a customs declaration, an official form that every person who arrives from abroad has to fill in. Then compare your list with those of the other groups.**

**2. Work in pairs. In the Ukrainian customs declaration on the next page find the words and word combinations that fit the definitions in the box.**

1. length; 2. such that can be replaced; 3. untrue; 4. find oneself (in a certain situation); 5. present; 6. type; 7. relating to something which has just been mentioned; 8. treat something in order to improve it; 9. unprocessed; 10. materials which are not used for the original purpose, but can be used in some other way; 11. realize; 12. official document which certifies that a company has borrowed money and will pay it back; 13. check up; 14. poultry; 15. killed for meat; 16. official document issued by the treasury ordering to pay particular amount of money; 17. anything that can be fired from the gun; 18. piece of equipment; 19. ticket that can be used instead of money for a specific purpose; 20. official document issued ordering to pay particular amount of money; 21. traveller's cheque; 22. shares in a company; 23. one of the equal parts into which the ownership of a company is divided; 24. type of money used by a particular country; 25. rare and worth a lot of money; 26. official document confirming the ownership rights; 27. published articles; 28. piece of writing before it is printed; 29. source.

**3. Complete the sentences below with the words you have found in Activity 2.**

1. They kept on firing at the plane until they ran out of \_\_\_\_\_ (1). 2. The company may also get some cash from the bank, using the \_\_\_\_\_ (2) as security. 3. A lot of chicken have been \_\_\_\_\_ (3) because of a suspected bird flu. 4. The red jungle \_\_\_\_\_ (4) is the ancestor of the domestic chicken. 5. The airlines' investigators conducted a three-day \_\_\_\_\_ (5) of the airplane crash site. 6. The air traffic controllers were no longer \_\_\_\_\_ (6) of the people around them, only of the planes and the storm. 7. The airlines sold their old planes to a \_\_\_\_\_ (7) dealer. 8. Planes can't use diesel as fuel as it comes from \_\_\_\_\_ (8) oil, and it is less refined than kerosene. 9. Millions of workers are employed \_\_\_\_\_ (9) goods for air transportation industry. 10. The airlines shall never make any law against any religion, or prohibiting the free exercise \_\_\_\_\_ (10). 11. The airlines' losses can be minimised by writing the \_\_\_\_\_ (11) under a suitable trust provided by the insurance company. 12. Passengers of all \_\_\_\_\_ (12) were queuing for the transatlantic flight. 13. Everybody was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ (13) their own projects or comments. 13. After both runways had been made useless by enemy bombings, they \_\_\_\_\_ (14) themselves extremely vulnerable. 15. The \_\_\_\_\_ (15) of your visa may be up to 28 days, but if you are

admitted to school, it may be up to six months, and in addition it'll become \_\_\_\_\_ (16). 16. Taken as they were, the immigration officer's words could convey a \_\_\_\_\_ (17) impression like some second-rate comedy. 17. The clock was very expensive as it was encrusted with \_\_\_\_\_ (18) metals and stones.. 18. The airlines' regulations require that every product arriving at the airport should show its country of \_\_\_\_\_ (19). 19. Travellers unwilling to travel with a lot of cash may take a \_\_\_\_\_ (20) for a fixed amount that can be exchanged for the money in a foreign country. 20. At the moment the airlines are printing a special \_\_\_\_\_ (21) to boost the sales 21. The air transportation company's advertisement leaflets were in \_\_\_\_\_ (22) and the text was illustrated with lively pen-and-pencil sketches. 22. He is a specialist in the design of \_\_\_\_\_ (23), anything that is published by the airlines. 23. Some of the stolen \_\_\_\_\_ (24) were later discovered in an empty hangar. 24. The pilot wondered what the local \_\_\_\_\_ (25) in Moldavia was. 25. The air transportation company entered the stock exchange at the peak and, like those who buy \_\_\_\_\_ (26) at their peak, they suffered badly. 26. The airlines' shareholder must deal in \_\_\_\_\_ (27) on a recognized stock exchange. 27. He has been left with a heap of \_\_\_\_\_ (28), good for nothing, too. 28. The airport guards reported they had seized narcotics and \_\_\_\_\_ (29) to use them during a routine check.

Keep for the duration of your stay in Ukraine or abroad. Not renewable in case of loss.

Persons giving false information in the Customs Declaration or to Customs officers shall render themselves liable under laws of Ukraine.

### CUSTOMS DECLARATION (UKRAINE)

Full name \_\_\_\_\_ Citizenship \_\_\_\_\_ Arriving from \_\_\_\_\_  
Country of destination \_\_\_\_\_ Purpose of visit (business, tourism, private, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_  
My luggage (including hand luggage) submitted for Customs inspection consists of \_\_\_\_\_ pieces. With me and in my luggage I have:

- I. Weapons of all descriptions and ammunition.
- II. Narcotics and appliances for the use thereof
- III. Antiques and objects of art (paintings, drawings, icons, sculptures, etc.)
- IV. Ukrainian currency, Ukrainian State Loan bonds
- V. Currency other than Ukrainian (bank notes, exchequer bills, coins), payment vouchers (cheques, bills, letters of credit, etc.), securities (shares, bonds, etc.) in foreign currencies, precious metals (gold, silver, platinum, metals of platinum group) in any form or condition, crude and processed natural precious stones (diamonds, rubies, emeralds, sapphires and pearls), jewelry and other articles made of precious metals and precious stones, and scrap thereof, as well as property papers.

Description	Amount/quantity		
	in figures	in words	
U.S. Dollars			
Pounds Sterling			
Euros			
Japanese Yens			

VI. Ukrainian and other currency, payment vouchers, valuable and any objects belonging to other persons

I am aware that, in addition to the objects listed in the Customs Declaration, I must submit for inspection: printed matter, manuscripts, films, sound recordings, postage stamps, graphics, etc., plants, fruits, seed, live animals and birds, as well as raw foodstuffs of animal origin and slaughtered fowl. I also declare that my luggage sent separately consists of \_\_\_\_\_ pieces

(Date) \_\_\_\_\_ 2006

Owner of luggage (signed) \_\_\_\_\_





#### 4. Translate

А. Пасажири, що подорожують до інших країн, мають проходити митний та імміграційний контроль. Мета імміграційного контролю - перевірити паспорт та візу пасажирів. Між деякими країнами існують угоди, відповідно до яких, громадяни цих країн можуть подорожувати до тих країн без віз. Наприклад, громадяни України можуть подорожувати до Росії без візи, а громадяни Росії - до України. Але коли ви подорожуєте до інших країн, наприклад до Великобританії чи США, ви повинні одержати візу у посольстві цих країн. Якщо на шляху, наприклад до Великобританії, ви проїжджаєте через територію інших країн, вам може знадобитися транзитна віза також. Коли ви прибуваєте до США, працівник імміграційної служби може запитати вас про вашу адресу у США, скільки часу ви збираєтесь залишатися там тощо.

Митник може перевірити ваш багаж. Слід заповнити митну декларацію, коли виїжджаєте або прибуваєте до будь-якої країни. Зазвичай у декларації необхідно вказати своє ім'я; громадянство; країну, з якої ви прибули, а також країну, куди їдете; мету приїзду (ділова, приватна, туризм тощо); кількість багажних місць (включаючи багаж, посланий окремо); будь-які види зброї та боєприпасів; наркотики та пристосування для їхнього вживання; старовинні вироби та витвори мистецтва; валюта; цінні папери; дорогоцінні метали та коштовне каміння. Деякі країни забороняють ввіз харчових продуктів.

Б. 1. Що треба вказувати у митній декларації? - Ім'я; дату народження; країну, де народився пасажир; країну, де він проживає; рід занять; номер паспорта; дату видачі паспорта; країну, де виданий паспорт; країну та місто, де видана віза; адресу в країні прибуття тощо. 2. Пасажир має зберігати митну декларацію протягом усього перебування в Україні або за кордоном. При поверненні пасажир має здати декларацію митнику. Якщо пасажир загубить декларацію, вона не відновлюється. 3. У випадку, якщо пасажир дає неправдиву інформацію митнику або працівникові імміграційної служби, він може нести відповідальність перед законом. 4. У митній декларації звичайно вказують країну призначення та мету приїзду (ділова, приватна, туризм тощо). 5. Пасажир не може перевозити у власному багажі зброю, наркотики та пристосування для їхнього вживання, небезпечні речовини. 6. Пасажир може провозити предмети старовини та витвори мистецтва (картини, малюнки, ікони, скульптури тощо), але для їх привозу може знадобитися сертифікат експерта. 7. Пасажир має задекларувати будь-яку валюту, банкноти, казначейські білети, монети, а також цінні папери (облігації тощо), платіжні документи (прості векселі, векселі державної скарбниці, акції, чеки, акредитиви тощо). 8. Пасажири також повинні задекларувати дорогоцінні метали (золото, срібло, метали платинової групи) у будь-якій формі чи стані, оброблене чи необроблене коштовне каміння (діаманти, рубіни, смарагди, сапфіри та перли), ювелірні вироби з дорогоцінного металу та/або коштовного каміння чи металевий лом з них, а також папери, що свідчать про право на власність. 9. Пасажири повинні вказати в декларації кількість американських доларів, британських фунтів стерлінгів, євро та японських йєн, які вони мають з собою. 10. На додаток до всього пасажири мають пред'явити для перевірки будь-яку друковану продукцію, рукописи, плівки, звукозаписи, поштові марки, графічні й інші витвори мистецтв, рослини, фрукти, живі тварини та птахи, насіння, а також напівфабрикати тваринного походження і бити птицю.

## II. USA-1



5. Work in pairs. Read the Warning to visitors arriving in the USA. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text. There is an example at the beginning (0).

### WARNING

0 The smuggling or unlawful importation of controlled substances regardless of  
 1 amount is a violation of US law. \_\_\_\_\_ of your declaration may be verified  
 2 through \_\_\_\_\_ and physical search. AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTS: To prevent  
 3 the entry of dangerous agricultural pests the following are restricted: fruits, plants,  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_, plant products, soil, meats, meat products, birds, snails, and other live  
 5 animals or animal products. \_\_\_\_\_ to declare all such items to a Customs/  
 6 Agriculture Officer can result in fines or other \_\_\_\_\_. CURRENCY AND  
 7 MONETARY INSTRUMENTS: The transportation of \_\_\_\_\_ or monetary  
 8 instruments, \_\_\_\_\_ of amount, is legal; however, if you take out of or import into  
 9 (or are about to take out of or \_\_\_\_\_ into) the United States more than \$10,000  
 10 (US or foreign \_\_\_\_\_, or a combination of the two) in coin, currency, travelers'  
 11 checks or \_\_\_\_\_ instruments such as money orders, checks, stocks or bonds, you are  
 12 by law to file a report on a Form 4790 with the US Customs Service. If you  
 13 have \_\_\_\_\_ else carry the currency or instruments for you, you must also file the  
 14 report. Failure to file the required report or false \_\_\_\_\_ on the report may lead  
 15 to \_\_\_\_\_ of the currency or instruments and to civil penalties and/or criminal  
 16 \_\_\_\_\_. MERCHANDISE: In item 11, US residents must declare the total value  
 \_\_\_\_\_ of ALL articles acquired abroad (whether  
 whether obtained by purchase, as a gift, or new or used, whether \_\_\_\_\_  
 made in DUTY FREE stores in the US or \_\_\_\_\_; those pu  
 17 \_\_\_\_\_, which are in their family's  
 18 \_\_\_\_\_ at the time of arrival. Visitors must declare in item 11 the total value of  
 19 all gifts and items, including samples they are bringing with them. The  
 20 amount of duty to be paid will be \_\_\_\_\_ by a Customs officer. US residents  
 21 are normally entitled to a duty free \_\_\_\_\_ of \$400 on those items accompanying  
 22 them; \_\_\_\_\_ are normally entitled to an exemption of \$100. Both residents  
 23 and non-residents will \_\_\_\_\_ be required to pay 10% duty on the first \$1,000  
 24 above the exemptions. If the value of goods declared in item 11 \_\_\_\_\_ \$1,400 per  
 25 person, then list all \_\_\_\_\_ below and show price paid in US dollars or, for gifts,  
 26 their retail value. If \_\_\_\_\_ space is needed, continue on another Customs  
 27 6059 B.  
 28  
 29

LAW  
 ACCURATE  
 QUESTION  
 ENTER  
 VEGETATION  
 FAIL  
 PENAL  
 CURRENT  
 REGARD  
 PORTABLE  
 EQUAL  
 BEAR  
 REQUIRE  
 SOME  
 STATE  
 SEIZE  
 PROSECUTE  
 DUTY  
 OTHER  
 BROAD  
 POSSESS  
 COMMERCE  
 DETERMINE  
 EXEMPT  
 RESIDE  
 NORMAL  
 EXCESSIVE  
 ARTIFICIAL  
 ADD  
 FORMAL

**6. Work in pairs. Explain the meanings of the following words and word combination from the Warning above.**

1. smuggling; 2. unlawful importation; 3. controlled substances; 4. regardless of amount; 5. violation of law; 6. accuracy of declaration; 7. verify; 8. questioning; 9. physical search; 10. entry; 11. agricultural pests; 12. restricted; 13. soil; 14. snails; 15. failure to declare; 16. item; 17. Customs Officer; 18. Agriculture Officer; 19. result in fines; 20. penalties; 21. transportation of currency; 22. monetary instruments; 23. legal; 24. foreign equivalent; 25. travelers' checks; 26. bearer instruments; 27. money order; 28. file a report; 29. on a form; 30. false statements on the report; 31. seizure; 32. civil penalties; 33. criminal prosecution; 34. merchandise; 35. used articles; 36. dutiable articles; 37. acquired abroad; 38. obtained by purchase; 39. obtained as a gift; 40. be in the family's possession; 41. total value; 42. commercial items; 43. otherwise; 44. sample; 44. US resident; 45. duty free exemption; 46. non-residents; 47. exceed; 48. retail value

**7. Translate**

**A.** Служба імміграції та натуралізації США попереджає: контрабанда або незаконне перевезення речей, що підлягають контролю, незалежно від їхньої кількості, є порушенням законів США. Правдивість декларації пасажирів може бути перевірена шляхом допиту або обшуку.

Для запобігання ввозу небезпечних сільськогосподарських шкідників, перелічені далі речі є обмеженими для ввозу: рослинні продукти, фрукти, овочі, ґрунт, м'ясні продукти, птахи, равлики та будь-які інші живі тварини або тваринні продукти. Неспроможність задекларувати усі подібні речі може спричинити штрафи та інші покарання.

Ввезення валюти чи платіжних засобів, незалежно від їхнього обсягу, є законним. Однак, якщо ви ввозите або вивозите суму, більшу за \$10 000 або еквівалентну суму в іншій валюті, вам слід подати відомості до митної служби США за формою 4790. Якщо хтось інший перевозить ваші цінності, ви також повинні вказати про це у цій формі. Неспроможність подати відомості, що вимагаються або подача неправдивої інформації може спричинити конфіскацію валюти або фінансових документів, а також може привести до адміністративних покарань чи судового переслідування.

Американські резиденти мають вказати сумарну вартість усіх речей, які вони придбали за кордоном. Вказувати треба як нові, так і вживані речі; як ті, що облягаються митом, так і ті, що ним не облягаються; як ті, що ви придбали у крамницях, так і подарунки. Декларуванню підлягають також речі, які ви придбали у крамницях безмитної торгівлі на території США чи за кордоном.

**Б.** Коли американські резиденти прибувають з-за кордону до першого американського аеропорту, вони повинні вказати у митній декларації усі речі, що знаходяться у власності родини на момент прибуття. Громадянам інших країн слід вказати у декларації сумарну вартість речей, що призначені для подарунків та продажу. Вони також повинні вказати вартість зразків товарів, які вони мають при собі.

Розмір мита, яке має сплатити пасажир, визначає працівник митної служби США. Зазвичай американські резиденти звільняються від оплати мита, якщо вартість речей, призначених для подарунків або продажу не перевищує суму \$400. Нерезиденти мають звільнення від сплати мита, якщо така вартість не перевищує суму \$100. Якщо вартість товарів, які провозять резиденти чи нерезиденти перевищує згадані суми, то вони сплачують мито у розмірі 10 %. Таке мито сплачується, якщо перевищення менше \$1000. Якщо перевищення більше за \$1 000, то резиденти чи нерезиденти сплачують 10 % мита з першої тисячі доларів, а розмір мита з наступних сум визначає митник.

Якщо вартість речей, що має у своїй власності сім'я на момент прибуття, перевищує суму \$1 400 на особу, глава сім'ї повинен вказати у митній декларації усі речі, які родина купила або одержала у подарунок за кордоном. Він чи вона має також вказати ціну (у американських доларах), яку він чи вона заплатили за кожну річ. Також слід вказати роздрібну ціну речей, які були одержані як подарунки. Якщо пасажир має будь-які запитання щодо того, які речі треба вказувати у митній декларації, він повинен запитати у митника. Наприкінці декларації пасажир ставить свій підпис, як свідчення того, що він прочитав попередження і подав правдиву інформацію.

**В.** Коли ми прибули до аеропорту Нью-Йорка, то пішли на імміграційний та митний контроль. Працівник імміграційної служби перевіряв наші паспорти та візи. Митник попередив нас, що контрабанда або незаконний ввіз речей, що підлягають контролю, є порушенням законів США. Потім, він запитав: "Чи маєте ви речі, які слід декларувати?" Ми не знали. Тоді митник почав нас розпитувати, а ми відповідали. Спочатку він запитав: "Чи маєте ви з собою харчові продукти?" Ми не мали. Далі він поцікавився: "Чи маєте ви небезпечних сільськогосподарських шкідників, равликів, живих тварин чи птахів?" Ми засміялися, бо нічого такого не мали. Митник продовжив: "Чи ввозите ви суму, що перевищує еквівалент \$10 000?" Ми

знову засміялися, бо таких грошей ніколи не бачили. А він не вгавав: "Може хтось інший провозить ваші гроші або фінансові документи?" Ніхто цього не робив. "Чи маєте ви речі, що призначені для подарунків або продажу?" На продаж ми нічого не мали, але подарунки звичайно везли. Митник запитав кожного про сумарну вартість подарунків. Жодний з нас не мав подарунків більш як на \$100, а тому ніхто не мусив платити мито. Митник пояснив нам, що ми мали б платити мито лише якщо така сума перевищувала б \$100. Після цього ми поставили свої підписи та дату наприкінці митної декларації. Митник пояснив нам, що своїми підписами ми підтвердили правдивість наших свідчень у декларації. Потім він посміхнувся і сказав: "Ласкаво иросимо до США".

### III. USA-2

**8. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-18, find this word. Some lines may be correct. The exercise begins with two examples (0 and 00).**

#### Example

0 | Admission

00

#### 0 Admitting Number 758157694 04.1-94 Arrival/Departure

**0 Record - Instructions.** This form must be completed by all  
 1 persons, except U.S. citizens, returning residents aliens, aliens  
 2 with immigration visas, and Canadian citizens visiting or in  
 3 transit. Type or print eligibly with pen in ALL CAPITAL  
 4 LETTERS. Use English. Do not write on the back in this form.  
 5 This form is in two parts. Please complete Arrival Record  
 6 (items 1 through 13) and the Departure Record (item 4 through 17).  
 7 When all terms are complete, present this form to the U.S.  
 8 Immigration and Naturalization Service Inspection. If you are  
 9 entering the United States across land, enter LAND in this  
 10 space. If you are entering the United States on ship, enter SEA  
 11 in this space. A nonimmigrant, who accepts unauthorized  
 12 employment is subject for deportation. Important - retain this  
 13 permit in your possession; you must it surrender when you  
 14 leave the U.S. Failure to do so should delay your entry into the  
 15 U.S. in the future. You are authorized to stay in the U.S. only  
 16 for the date written on this form. To remain past this date,  
 17 without permission from immigration authorities, is a violation  
 18 of a law. Immigration and Naturalization Service



**9. Work in pairs. Explain the meanings of the following words and word combination from the Instructions above.**

1. aliens; 2. resident aliens; 3. aliens with immigrant visas; 4. type or print; 5. legibly; 6. enter LAND in this space; 7. non-immigrant; 8. accept unauthorized employment; 9. is subject to deportation; 10. retain; 11. permit; 12. in one's possession; 13. surrender the permit; 14. failure to do so; 15. delay one's entry into the USA; 16. be authorized to stay in the U.S.; 17. remain past this date; 18. immigration authorities; 19. Immigration and Naturalization Service.

**10. Work in pairs. Study the US Customs Declaration below. Compare it to the Ukrainian Customs Declaration. What is similar and what is different in them. Make a list of similarities and differences. Then compare your list with those of the other students'.**

**FORM APPROVED OMB  
NO. 1515-0041  
WELCOME TO THE UNITED STATES  
DEPARTMENT OF THE TREASURY  
UNITED STATES CUSTOMS SERVICE  
CUSTOMS DECLARATION  
19 CFR 122.27,148.12,148.13,148.110,148.111**

Each arriving traveler or head of family must provide the following information (only ONE written declaration per family is required):

1. Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Last First Middle Initial
2. Date of birth \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Airline / Flight \_\_\_\_\_  
Day Month Year
4. Number of family members traveling with you \_\_\_\_\_
5. U.S. Address: \_\_\_\_\_ City \_\_\_\_\_ State: \_\_\_\_\_
6. I am a U.S. Citizen 1 INO 1 1  
S YE 1 INO 1 1  
If no, Country: \_\_\_\_\_
7. I reside permanently in the U.S. YES  
If no, Expected Length of Stay: \_\_\_\_\_
8. The purpose of my trip is or was BUSINESS I \_\_\_\_\_ I PLEASURE
9. I am / we are bringing fruits, plants, meats, food, soil, birds, other live  
animals, farm products, or we have been on a farm or ranch outside the U.S. YES I \_\_\_\_\_ INO
10. I am / we are carrying currency or monetary instruments  
over \$10,000 U.S. or foreign equivalent. YES I \_\_\_\_\_ INO
11. The total value of all goods I / we purchased or acquired abroad and am / are bringing to the U.S. is (see  
instructions under Merchandise on reverse) \_\_\_\_\_ \$ US Dollars

**1-94 Arrival  
Record**

Family Name \_\_\_\_\_

First (Given) Name \_\_\_\_\_ Birth: Date \_\_\_\_ Mo \_\_\_\_ Yr \_\_\_\_

Country of Citizenship \_\_\_\_\_ Sex: Male or Female \_\_\_\_\_

Passport Number \_\_\_\_\_ Airline and Flight Number \_\_\_\_\_

Country Where You Live \_\_\_\_\_ City Where You Boarded \_\_\_\_\_

City Where Visa Was Issued \_\_\_\_\_ Date Issued (Day / No / Yr) \_\_\_\_\_

Address While in the United States (Number and Street) \_\_\_\_\_

City and State \_\_\_\_\_

**Departure Number  
758157694 04**

Immigration and  
Naturalization Service  
1-94

**Departure Record**

Family Name \_\_\_\_\_

First (Given) Name \_\_\_\_\_ Birth: Date \_\_\_\_ Mo \_\_\_\_ Yr \_\_\_\_

Country of Citizenship \_\_\_\_\_ Sex: Male or Female \_\_\_\_\_



## 11. Translate

А. Кожен пасажир, що прибуває до США, повинен заповнити митну декларацію та картку приземлення. Митна декларація США загалом не відрізняється від митної декларації України, але вона трохи коротша. В американській декларації пасажир повинен вказати своє ім'я, дату народження, номер рейсу та назву авіакомпанії, літаком якої він прибув. Крім того, слід вказати кількість членів сім'ї, що подорожують разом з ним. Далі треба написати адресу, за якою ви збираєтеся жити у США. Якщо ви не громадянин США, треба також вказати країну, громадянином якої ви є. Якщо ви не проживаєте постійно у США, вам слід також вказати, як довго ви збираєтеся перебувати в цій країні. Далі вказуєте мету приїзду (у справах чи для розваги). Потім потрібно коротко ("так" чи "ні") відповісти на запитання: "Чи маєте ви харчові продукти?", "Чи відвідували ви будь-яку ферму за кордоном США?", "Чи ввозите ви грошовий еквівалент, що перевищує суму \$10.000?". Наприкінці декларації слід також вказати суму, на яку ви купили чи одержали у подарунок речі за межами США.

У картці приземлення пасажир повинен вказати своє ім'я; дату народження; громадянство; стать (чоловіча чи жіноча); номер паспорта; авіакомпанію та номер рейса, яким пасажир прибув; країну, де він постійно мешкає; місто, де він сів на літак; місто, де він одержав візу; дату видачі візи; адресу у США (вулицю та номер будинку, місто та штат). У картці відльоту треба вказати лише ім'я, дату народження, громадянство та стать. Вся інша інформація вже є у картці приземлення.

Б. Перед заповненням карток приземлення та відльоту пасажирів слід прочитати інструкції до них. Картку приземлення заповнюють усі пасажирів, за винятком громадян США; іноземців, що постійно проживають у США та повертаються з-за кордону; іноземців, що мають імміграційну візу, а також громадян Канади, що приїжджають до США або є транзитними пасажирів. Пасажирів повинні заповнити картку ручкою, писати розбірливо, друкованими літерами, тільки англійською мовою. Якщо пасажир не володіє англійською мовою, стюардеси у літаку або працівники імміграційної служби допоможуть йому заповнити картку. Картку заповнюють лише з одного боку. Зворотний бік є для офіційного вживання працівниками імміграційної служби.

Картка має дві частини: 1) реєстрація пасажирів, що прибувають; 2) реєстрація пасажирів, що відлітають. Після заповнення усіх нунктів, що є у картці, пасажир має здати картку працівнику Інспекції служби імміграції та натуралізації США. Якщо ви в'їжджаєте до США сушею, ви повинні вказати "суша" у відповідному місці картки. Якщо ви в'їжджаєте морем, вкажіть "море". Особи, що мають неімміграційну візу не мають права найматися на роботу у США. Якщо особа з неімміграційною візою найметься на недозволену роботу, вона підлягає депортації з країни.

Картку приземлення пасажир повинен зберігати під час усього перебування у США. Коли пасажир відлітає із США, він мусить здати цю картку працівникові імміграційної служби. Неспроможність зробити це, може ускладнити одержання американської візи у майбутньому. Пасажир може знаходитися у США тільки до дати, що вказується у картці. Якщо ви без дозволу імміграційної служби залишитеся у США після цієї дати, це буде порушенням закону.

В. Коли ми ще летіли у літаку, стюардеса принесла нам картки приземлення і попросила нас заповнити їх. Я заповнила свою без проблем, але жінка похилого віку, що сиділа поруч ніяк не могла зрозуміти деякі нункти картки. "Що я маю писати ось тут?" - запитала вона мене. "Тут маєте вказати своє громадянство". Вона написала і знову запитала: "А тут?" - "А тут слід написати номер паспорта", відповіла я. Жінка переписала номер із свого документа. "Літаком якої компанії ми летимо?" - знову запитала вона. "Українські міжнародні авіалінії, рейс 812", відповіла я, чекаючи на її наступне запитання. Питання про країну, в якій вона мешкає, та місто, де вона сіла на літак, не викликали жодних труднощів. Зате вона довго сиділа над запитаннями про візу: де та коли була видана. Певно вона не досить добре розуміла англійський еквівалент слова "виданий". Кінець кінцем вона запитала і я їй все пояснила. Потім виявилось, що вона не пам'ятає адресу доньки, до якої летіла, і не може написати її у картці. Нарешті вона знайшла візитну картку свого зятя і переписала адресу з картки. "Що я маю робити з цією карткою тепер?" - запитала жінка. - "Покажіть її працівнику імміграційної служби, сказала я. - Та не загубіть, бо маєте здати її, коли будете відлітати з Америки". Жінка подякувала за допомогу. Наш літак уже приземлявся.

12. From the options (A-C) below choose the one that is closest in meaning to the one in the bold type in sentence.

1. Miami International is a U.S. hub for travel south.  
A. airport                      B. important airport                      C most important airport
2. The airport's **mazelike** concourses make it such a depressing place to begin a vacation.  
A. complicated              B. difficult to find your way through              C magic
3. Get that dog out of the room - he **reeks**.  
A. has a bad smell      B. growls dangerously              C gets ready to pee
4. Many concourses in other terminals are narrow, congested and reek of **mildew**.  
A. mild dew              B. cat's pee              C fungus
5. There is no other airport where smoking bans are more **egregiously** ignored.  
A. outrageously              B. violently              C enormously
6. **Notwithstanding** the airport's reputation, the arrival was egregiously late.  
A. aside of              B. in spite of              C apart of
7. The city's reputation for fiery Cuban cooking notwithstanding, the restaurants are surprisingly **bland**.  
A. plain              B. spicy              C exciting
8. These gates are in a new building a thousand-foot **trek** from the carrier's other gates.  
A. march              B. wander              C walk
9. There are frequent **bottlenecks** near the foreign-airline ticket counters at Terminal E.  
A. blocks              B. drunk passengers      C broken bottles
10. Highways **dump** drivers onto neighborhood streets near the airport.  
A. abandon              B. deposit              C throw out
11. The stoplights in the neighborhood streets near the airport often create **backups**.  
A. support              B. jam              C relief
12. The traffic lights often create backups, especially during evening **commuting** hours on weekdays.  
A. travel              B. substitution              C rush
13. Thunderstorms often create flights' **tie-ups**.  
A. connections              B. delays              C cancellations
14. The **fare** at the airport's restaurants is rather unattractive.  
A. food              B. choice of drinks              C prices
15. Cuban **treats** belong to a few bright spots of the airport's restaurant.  
A. deals              B. performers              C dishes
16. Otherwise, the airport's restaurants are quite **repetitive**.  
A. cyclic              B. having a good repertoire      C monotonous
17. At this airport passengers with a longish **layover** can jog on a track or swim.  
A. stopover              B. overall              C body
18. After a planes' crash there was a **rash** of calls to close the airport down.  
A. hasty reaction              B. violent reaction              C indignant reaction
19. The pilot had a **singular** distaste for medical check-ups.  
A. remarkable              B. the only one              C single
20. Long lines at the customs could **jeopardize** anyone's feeling of comfort.  
A. expose              B. put at risk              C gamble
21. California traffic jams can endanger the incoming passengers' **sanity**.  
A. mental health              B. sanitary condition              C common sense
22. Save the time exiting a mile early at the Santa Barbara **ramp**.  
A. incline              B. rise              C slope
23. The parking lots are serviced by free shuttle buses **on the quarter hour**.  
A. 4 times an hour      B. once an hour at a quarter past              C once an hour at a quarter to
24. There are no signs to the parking lots from the freeway.  
A. highway free of road police      B. highway free of charge      C highway free of cars
25. The airport has a **toll-free number**, where operators - not machines - tell you about flight delays.  
A. number free of machines      B. number free of charge      C number free of listening bugs
26. **Timeliness** is a fair-weather sport at this airport.  
A. correctness              B. being ahead of time              C being behind the time
27. Over 88 percent of flights arrived on time, with United and Continental tied for **promptness**.  
A. being quick              B. being immediate              C being at the right time

13. You are going to hear three texts on three different US airports. For Questions 1-19, choose from the airports (A-C). The airports may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A. Miami International



C. Stapleton, Denver



B. Los Angeles International



**WHICH OF THE AIRPORTS**

has the smallest volume of passengers	0	A does not have enough means for passengers' orientation	10
has the lowest degree of pain	1	has a free parking	11
had a major air crash in the area of the airport	2	has sharp contrast between different parts of the airport	12
has one and the same unfavourable day every week	3	has a modern facility that few passengers are aware of	13
is the hub for the largest amount of airlines	4	has a free telephone service	14
has the biggest problems with queues at the customs	5	has the biggest problems with traffic jams	15
has the greatest amount of amenities	6	has a sports facility available for the passengers	16
is the cheapest to get to town from	7	has parking problems because of the construction	17
is notorious for not keeping to the rules	8	is the most expensive one to get to town from	18
has an art gallery	9	has the highest degree of pain	19



## PART 2. FLEDGLINGS' FEROCIOUS DOG FIGHTS

James keeps getting ready for travelling. Lappy is always ready with the tasks. Help James do them.



1. Work in pairs. Look at the headline of the article you are going to read.

## COME FLY THE UNFRIENDLY SKIES

From the list below choose the things you may expect in the article.

- |             |                |               |                   |             |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|
| 1. Business | 5. Airports    | 9. Police     | 13. South America | 17. War     |
| 2. Holidays | 6. Competition | 10. Students  | 14. Europe        | 18. Pilots  |
| 3. Weather  | 7 Air Crash    | 11. Sports    | 15. North America | 19. Bombing |
| 4. Money    | 8. Terrorists  | 12. Computers | 16. Australia     | 20. Women   |

Explain your choice. Guess what the article may be about, and what other things are going to be there. Discuss your ideas with other students in the group

2. Below you can see a table with various US companies' cost per seat mile, i. e. it shows how much each company has to pay for one seat if the plane travels for one mile.

YEAR	US AIR TRANSPORTATION COMPANIES								
	US Air	Northwest	Delta	TWA	United	American	Continental	America West	Southwest
LAST	10,94	9,36	8,66	9,23	8,1 1	8,06	7,64	7,11	7,13
THIS	10,74	9,70	8,95	8,66	8,32	8,08	7,58	7,09	7,03

Table 1. US AIR TRANSPORTATION COMPANIES' COSTS PER AVAILABLE SEAT MILE (ASM), CENTS



As you can see it in the table, the *US Air's* ASM cost this year decreased (as compared to last year) by 0,20 cents, while the *Northwest's* ASM cost increased by 0,34 cents. How many companies did increase (decrease) their ASM cost and by how much?

2. Which company has the biggest increase (decrease)? Which company has the cheapest ASM cost (second cheapest, third cheapest)? Which company has the most expensive ASM cost (second most expensive, third most expensive)? Is there a connection (from your point of view) between the ASM cost and the price of the tickets in a corresponding company? What kind of connection? Which company may have the cheapest (the most expensive) tickets? Why?

3. Which company in the table do you know? Which do you think are the most famous (popular) of them? Do you think the most popular companies may have the cheapest tickets? Why?

4. Why do you think some companies are cheaper than the others? Do they: have more planes / cheaper planes / smaller planes / not so many employees in the company / employees work longer hours / employees get less money / planes fly longer / shorter distances / not so popular lines?

5. Two of the nine air companies are much smaller than the rest. Are they the cheapest, the most expensive, the average? Why do you think so? Which are these companies?

### COME FLY THE UNFRIENDLY SKIES - 1

3. Work in pairs. Match the words in column A with their synonyms in column B.

Verbs		Adjectives and Adverbs		Nouns	
A	B	A	B		
1. afford	a. divide	1. ignorant	a. classic	1. anxiety	a. investor
2. compete	b. take off	2. competitive	b. minor	2. capacity	b. suggestion
3. cost	c. have enough money	3. anxious	c. unaware	3. competitor	c. earnings
4. discount	d. propose	4. vintage	d. nervous	4. ignoramus	d. decrease
5. ignore	e. grow	5. negligible	e. inexperienced	5. wages	e. growth
6. decrease	f. swap	6. fledgling	f. aggressive	6. discount	f. uninformed
7. increase	g. contest			7. fledgling	g. worry
8. offer	h. cut			8. cost	h. lack of knowledge
9. share	i. reduce			9. shareholder	i. baby bird
10. slash	j. carry on			10. increase	j. money off
11. trade	k. have a particular price			11. reduction	k. price
12. wage	l. disregard			12. offer	l. rival
				13. competition	m. part
				14. ignorance	n. ability
				15. share	o. struggle

4. Match the words in column A in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

1. money people get for their work, especially workers; 2. start and go on doing something; 3. best, and at the best time; 4. exchange; 5. reduce something by a large amount; 6. make a long deep cut with a knife etc; 7. person who has a company's share(s); 8. part of a company's capital; 9. part of something; 10. give part of something to somebody else; 11. use something together with somebody else; 12. something that somebody says they will give you or do for you if you want it; 13. ask somebody if they would like to have or do something; 14. very small and unimportant; 15. not knowing something; 16. state of being ignorant; 17. person who doesn't know anything; 18. act as if you don't notice somebody or something; 19. new and not experienced; 20. young bird that is learning to fly; 21. reduction in the usual price; 22. sell something at a lower price; 23. have a particular price; 24. amount of money you need to buy, do or make something; 25. person who competes; 26. try to get people to buy one's goods or services; 27. ability; 28. maximum possible amount; 29. want something very much; 30. nervous or worried about something; 31. have enough time, energy, money to do something.



## 5. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 3.

1. Different people have different \_\_\_\_\_. 2. He asked for his \_\_\_\_\_ unwilling to remain with nothing. 3. The passengers were unhappy that the air transportation \_\_\_\_\_ increased by 30 %. 4. She noticed some \_\_\_\_\_ about him, he was definitely worried. 5. It's late, you must go home, or your mother will be \_\_\_\_\_. 6. With this money I can \_\_\_\_\_ to buy an airplane ticket. 7. He is an absolute \_\_\_\_\_ in mathematics, no chance to pass the exam. 8. There were several \_\_\_\_\_ for the job. 9. Several famous sportsmen took part in the \_\_\_\_\_. 10. He demonstrated his absolute

\_\_\_\_\_ in business, and the company went bankrupt. 11. We won't be able to cut the \_\_\_\_\_ of the transportation, that's why we'll hardly economize there. 12. The theatre was full to its two thousand

\_\_\_\_\_.

13. I can \_\_\_\_\_ ten per cent for you if you don't have enough money. 14. The boss did not \_\_\_\_\_ our wages, alas. 15. The company's \_\_\_\_\_ went up by 10 per cent. She \_\_\_\_\_ John's question as if he had not asked.

\_\_\_\_\_ a lot. 18. You must get through the \_\_\_\_\_ exams, \_\_\_\_\_ there'll be more applicants

than vacancies. 19. The companies \_\_\_\_\_ to get more customers. 20. The company \_\_\_\_\_ so you can buy it half price now. 21. To the passengers' disappointment, there came a 30 % \_\_\_\_\_ of the fares. 22. It had a \_\_\_\_\_ effect, so it did not affect the company. 23. John \_\_\_\_\_ her his chair as all the seats had \_\_\_\_\_ your watch for mine? 25. He

\_\_\_\_\_ the room with his brother.

26. \_\_\_\_\_ car is a car made between 1919 and 1930. 27. He is absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ in cars, so he can't be a mechanic.

28. He \_\_\_\_\_ his ideas with us. 29. The hooligans \_\_\_\_\_ all the seats in the bus. 30. She is \_\_\_\_\_ to marry

John, it's her dream. 31. She didn't like his \_\_\_\_\_ her home. 32. \_\_\_\_\_ wine is a very good

\_\_\_\_\_ wine, which \_\_\_\_\_ people keep for several years to make it better. 33. As opposed to the veterans, the \_\_\_\_\_ companies didn't know what to do. 34. They \_\_\_\_\_ the anti-war campaign.

35. I can give you a ten per cent \_\_\_\_\_ if you pay cash.

6. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-14, find this word. Some lines may be correct.



- 1 This was a vintage year for cheap travelers. Since late spring America big airlines waged an undeclared price war, offering discounts of up to 50 % on some routes. At the same time, their new services, such as *Continental Airlines' Lite*, competed with cut-price carriers such as *Southwest Airlines* and *ValuJet Airlines*. This slashed fares on some routes to below \$25, making it more cheap to fly than to take a bus. Five years ago fledgling airlines, such as *ValuJet*, *Reno Air*, *Kiwi International Air Lines*, *MarkAir*, *Midway* and *American Trans Air* had a negligible sharing of the industry's domestical capacity. By next year their share will be 4,4 %. Add in *Southwest* and *America West Airlines*, America's two biggest cut-price carriers, and that slice increases to about 15 %. It is the changing nature to the cut-price carriers' market, however, that scares the big airlines most. As recently as three years ago, the old guard could afford to ignore the low-fare airlines, which most picked up business at low-volume or out-of-the-way routes. Now, however, the cut-price earners are competing in up to a third of the domestic markets served with *American Airlines*, *Delta Air Lines*, *USAir* and other giants. And a grown number of passengers - especially business travelers whose bosses are anxious to cut costs - are willing to trade in-flight sendee for a cheap ticket

## COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS

1. This year was a vintage year for air travelers in the USA. Why? There was a war. Who fought with whom? What kind of weapons did they use? How many air transportation companies are mentioned in the text? Read their names. There are fewer companies than names in the text. Which two names belong to the same company? Why? What kind of transport was cheaper in the USA this year: a bus or a plane? Why? Is it the same in Ukraine? Why?

re  
the  
air  
tra  
ns  
po  
rta

2. A

tion companies mentioned in the text big, medium, small? Why? What part of the market did they control five years ago? What part of the market are they going to control by next year. What

part of the market are they going to control together with two other airlines? What can you say about those companies? Are they expanding or losing their control of the market? Is this process slow or fast?

3. Are the big companies afraid of the small ones? Why? Is there anything that they are afraid of most of all? How did the small companies operate three years ago? How do they operate now? Do they compete with each other on all routes? Why? Do the passenger prefer big or small airlines? Why? Is there any difference in service on big and small airlines' routes?

## 7. Translate. Use your active vocabulary for italicized words.

A. 1. Ми не можемо *дозволяти* якимось *жовторотим невігласам* вести таку жахливу кампанію проти нас. 2. Якщо він продовжуватиме *ігнорувати* нашу компанію, я не буду *пропонувати* йому *знижки* на наші послуги. 3. Минулий рік став *по-справжньому святковим* для пасажирів, що подорожували літаками американських авіакомпаній. 4. Все більше пасажирів *палає бажанням обмінати* рівень обслуговування під час польоту на квиток із *знижкою*. 5. Найбільші авіакомпанії США *вели* неоголошену цінову війну, *пропонуючи* фантастичні *скидки* до 50 % на деяких маршрутах. 6. Перевізники, що грають на пониження ціни квитка, *конкурують*, різко *знижуючи* собівартість, *зменшують зарплати*, витрати на одне пасажиро-місце-милю тощо. 7. На деяких маршрутах вартість *проїзду впала* нижче 25 доларів і літати стало дешевше, ніж подорожувати автобусом. 8. Ще якихось три роки тому великі авіакомпанії могли *дозволити* собі *ігнорувати* малих конкурентів, бо вони контролювали *мізерну частку* ринку. Але зараз ця *частка* значно зросла, бо суперники є *конкурентноспроможними*. 9. Великі компанії не хочуть *ділитися* прибутками. 10. *Акціонери* *палають бажанням збільшити* власні прибутки, але вони вважають, що компанія не працює на повну *потужність*.

B. 1. Суперники *змагалися* з палким бажанням. Нарешті суддя *запропонував* їм *обмінатися* місцями. 2. Цей *жовторотик* не може собі *дозволити ігнорувати* таку *знижку*. Він неодмінно *купить акції*. 3. Скільки *невігласів* *приймає* участь у конкурсних екзаменах! 4. Чому ви так *стривожені*? Ніхто не *збирається знижувати зарплату* робітників. Навпаки, наступного тижня ми *збільшимо* її на 10 відсотків. 5. Ви *збираєтеся зменшити місткість* літака? - Так, але це буде *незначне зменшення*. 6. Акціонери вважають, що наша компанія - в руках *нетямущих* людей. Вони *різко зменшили* кількість робочих місць, *вину* *етили* *забагато акцій*, *ведуть* ризиковану кампанію. 7. Це був *найкращий час* для *невігласів*. *Конкуренція зменшилася*, кількість *пропозицій збільшилася*, *нетямущі та недосвідчені* люди займали керівні посади у нових компаніях, кількість яких *зростала*. 8. Джон не *поділяв* думку шефа про те, що *неуцтво* - це дар божий. Шеф *вважав*, що значна кількість *неуків* гарантувала його від *конкуренції*. 9. Якийсь "*зелений*" *невіглас хльостав* коня так, наче *палав бажанням вбити* його. Джон не міг собі *дозволити ігнорувати* цього і *зателефонував* до поліції. 10. *Стривожені конкуренти* *запропонували* фантастичні *знижки*, *зменшили* собівартість та витрати, *скоротили* кількість робочих місць та *підвищили конкурентноспроможність*.

## COME FLY THE UNFRIENDLY SKIES - 2

### 8. Work in pairs. Match the word in column A with their synonyms in column B.

Verbs		Adjectives and Adverbs		Nouns	
A	B	A	B		
1. predict	a. rush	1 crash (helmet)	a. yearly	1. concession	a. benefit
2. survive	b. collapse	2 ∴ predictable	b. on hand	2. advantage	b. beating
strive	c fight	. profitable	c worn out	battering	c agreement
4. stake a claim	d. function	4 . in operation	d. intensive	4. crash	d. endurance
5. be at stake	e. start using	5 pretentious	e. protective	5. operation	e. lucky
6. pretend	f. twist	6 •. annual	f. working	6. operator	f. bet
7. perform	g- forecast	7 . battered	g- expected	7. performance	g- abuser
8. understate	h. act as if	8 available	h. showy	8. performer	h. income
9. scramble	i. J. beat	9 ' . crash (course)	i. useful	9. prediction	i. false claim
1 batter	stay at risk			10. pretender	J-k. guess
1 put into operation	k. claim the right			11. pretence	accident
1 operate	1. attempt			12 profit	1. candidate
1 grapple	m. live on			13 profiteer	m. executor
1 crash	n. minimize			14 stake	n. working
1 wring	0. function			15 survivor	0. worker
				16 survival	P- work

**9. Match the words in column A in Activity 8 with the definitions below.**

state of surviving; say that you have a right to have or own something; hurry in a non-elegant way; money, etc. which you get after you do something (if this amount of money is greater than the amount you spent to do it); such that you can easily predict; person who pretends; person who operates or controls something; sudden loud noise; try to do something (over a long period of time); take something and then to struggle to still have it; person who makes large profits by charging high prices for goods that are hard to get (negative meaning); describe something in a way which makes it smaller or less important than it really is; begin to use something; process of performing; special right to do something; such that you may have or use; act of predicting; get something out of something or somebody by pressure; catastrophe in business; person who performs; act in such a way that could make people believe that something is true, though it is not; such that brings profit; to work; do or to carry out something; which happens once a year or every year; to pound; share of a company; helmet that motorcyclists wear on their heads to protect them in case of a crash; short course in which they teach you the most important things you need to know to do something; hit something with a loud noise; be in a risky position; person who survived; something that puts you in a better position; accident in which a car, a plane, etc. is destroyed; conclude that something will happen; money, etc. that you risk on the result of some kind of competition, like a football match; remain alive in danger.



**10. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 1.**

1. Stop \_\_\_\_\_ your hands, control yourself. 2. The \_\_\_\_\_ are 1 : 10 in favor of our team. 3. The company \_\_\_\_\_ poorly. 4. You can't \_\_\_\_\_ how the things may go. 5. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ into the mountain. 6. He started \_\_\_\_\_ the workers to get the concession from them. 7. She didn't make any \_\_\_\_\_ to be a lady. 8. How was the company's \_\_\_\_\_ last year? 9. Her marriage was easily \_\_\_\_\_. 10. The passengers \_\_\_\_\_ for the seats. 11. How many companies are in \_\_\_\_\_ now? 12. If I find him, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ his neck. 13. His job is at \_\_\_\_\_ now. 14. There was a plane \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. 15. It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ film. 16. The company \_\_\_\_\_ with a serious problem. 17. It was an old \_\_\_\_\_ car. 18. She tried to \_\_\_\_\_ that everything was all right though it was not. 19. What do you know about the company's \_\_\_\_\_? 20. She had to \_\_\_\_\_ all her clothes after that rain. 21. He made several good \_\_\_\_\_. 22. In spite of the heavy bombardment, they managed to \_\_\_\_\_. 23. The Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ to give the impression that they are going to land on the moon. 24. Every body was in a hurry to \_\_\_\_\_ the claims to their territories. 25. Before going to Japan he took a \_\_\_\_\_ course in Japanese. 26. I don't like him, he's a great \_\_\_\_\_. 27. They had to fight for \_\_\_\_\_ day by day. 28. The biggest \_\_\_\_\_ should come from the computer sales. 29. This \_\_\_\_\_ the seriousness of the problem. 30. They have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in oil industry. 31. There was a serious financial \_\_\_\_\_ on the market. 32. We are having the \_\_\_\_\_ meeting of our Association tonight. 33. The US company managed to get the oil \_\_\_\_\_. 34. When did the factory come into \_\_\_\_\_? 35. The waves \_\_\_\_\_ the ship. 36. How much money is \_\_\_\_\_? 37. He managed to \_\_\_\_\_ some promises from the boss. 38. Having a lot of time is a big \_\_\_\_\_. 39. He is a night club \_\_\_\_\_. 40. Our team took the worst \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. 41. She heard a \_\_\_\_\_ of thunder. 42. She has been working as a computer \_\_\_\_\_ for a year. 43. She has \_\_\_\_\_ an invaluable service to the company.

11. Work in pairs. Read the second part of the article. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text.

1 In these discount dog-fights, the cut-price \_\_\_\_\_ are much better. Southwest, which  
 2 made a profit in each of the past 21 years, operates its 95 \_\_\_\_\_, all Boeing 737s.  
 3 *Southwest's* flights, mostly short, don't use high-cost airports, \_\_\_\_\_ the big  
 4 airlines' ports. Its aircraft go in and out of \_\_\_\_\_ in around 20 minutes and a big-  
 5 airline plane takes almost an hour. And the \_\_\_\_\_'s pilots fly 40% longer hours each  
 6 month than the big-airline pilots - for little more than half their \_\_\_\_\_. *Southwest's*  
 7 costs per available seat mile (ASM, the industry's measure of \_\_\_\_\_), at 7.03 cents  
 8 this year, are well below most of its big rivals - and 34 % \_\_\_\_\_ than the worst  
 9 performer, US Air. Moreover, such \_\_\_\_\_ understate *Southwest's* cost advantage,  
 10 as the big carriers costs on short routes are up to 31 % \_\_\_\_\_. And *Southwest's* s  
 11 costs are falling. \_\_\_\_\_, the big carriers are scrambling to cut their operating  
 12 costs; they are finding it hard going. For a start, \_\_\_\_\_ a cent from airline's costs  
 13 per ASM takes a lot of \_\_\_\_\_: in the case of American, for example, it means  
 14 \_\_\_\_\_ \$1,6 billion off annual operating costs. *American's* chairman, Robert  
 15 Crandall, never pretended that it is easy to wring \_\_\_\_\_ from his workforce.  
 16 \_\_\_\_\_ say that even American could not withstand a six-week strike. Delta is  
 17 grappling with a \_\_\_\_\_ aimed at cutting up to 15,000 jobs and \$2 billion in  
 18 annual costs. United has given its workers  
 19 55 % slake in \_\_\_\_\_ rules, but its costs are still rising.  
 20 billion of concessions on wages and  
 21 *USAir*, battered by crashes and striving to reach agreement on pay and \_\_\_\_\_  
 22 concessions with its \_\_\_\_\_, lost \$180 m in the third  
 23 quarter of this year. On \_\_\_\_\_ loss for the third quarter,  
 November 1st *Trans World Airlines*, announced a  
 but some \_\_\_\_\_ still doubt that it will survive.

CARRY  
 AIR  
 SPECIAL  
 PORT  
 CARRY  
 WAGE  
 CAPABLE  
 LOW  
 COMPARE  
 HIGH  
 SURPRISE  
 CUT  
 DO  
 SHAVE  
 CONSENT  
 INSIDE  
 STRUCTURE  
 CHANGE  
  
 WORK  
 PRODUCE  
 UNITE  
  
 NARROW  
 ANALYZE

### COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS



Airlines' \_\_\_\_\_ main \_\_\_\_\_ advantages:  
 planes/airports/time for going in and out of  
 the \_\_\_\_\_ airports/pilots working longer  
 hours/getting less money? Is the Southwest a



profitable company? a new company? How old is it? What is the Southwest's ASM cost? Go back to table 1 and compare the Southwest's ASM cost with the cost of other companies. The advantage of Southwest, which you can see in table 1 is an understatement. Why? What is the real Southwest advantage? Can you say that Southwest was the most successful US company in the past 20 years? Why?

2. What are the big companies scrambling to do? Is it easy? Why? What size of cut does the American company need to reduce the ASM cost by one cent? Why do they talk to the workers about it? What is the company afraid of? Why?

3. What is Delta grappling with? Is it easy? Why? What did the united company do to cut the operating cost? Did it help? The US

Air was in a difficult situation. Why? How much did they lose this year? What was the TWA loss in the third quarter: bigger or smaller than in the first half of the year? What are the analysts' predictions about TWA (Transworld Airlines)?

## 12. Translate

А. Минулий рік був *просто святковим* для пасажирів, що подорожували повітрям. Авіакомпанії *вели запеклу боротьбу* і *пропонували* пасажирам фантастичні *знижки*. Невеликі, *ледве оперені* компанії *намагалися конкурувати* з великими перевізниками-ветеранами і так *урізали* свої ціни, що вони стали чисто *символічними*. Купити квитка на літак могли навіть ті, хто не міг собі *дозволити* подорож автобусом. Це спричинило ситуацію, коли літаки великих компаній не заповнювалися на повну *місткість*. Раніше великі компанії *ігнорували* малі, тому що їхня частка у бізнесі повітряних перевезень *душ мізерною*. Однак зараз "великі" *стривожені*, тому що все більша кількість пасажирів готові промінати обслуговування у польоті на більш дешеві квитки, які зараз *доступні* повсюди. *Річний прибуток* "великих" *падає*, бо для того щоб *знижити витрати* на експлуатацію, їм треба *витиснути поступки* з боку профспілок, поступитися їм частиною *акцій* компанії, а також зробити ще багато речей, якщо вони хочуть *вижити*. При цьому вони не можуть *применшувати переваги* малих компаній, котрі літають сучасними літаками, використовують малі аеропорти, їх не *трусить* від *авіакатастроф*. В цілому вони *функціонують* добре, тобто не мають проблем, з якими постійно *вовтузяться* великі компанії.

Б. 1. Не *прикидайтеся*, що ви нічого не знали про *падіння літака*. Ви добре знаєте, що ніхто з пасажирів не *врятувався*. На карту поставлено майбутнє компанії, а ви все думаєте про власні *прибутки* та *акції*. 2. Ми *вводимо в експлуатацію* новий аеропорт наступного тижня. Наші *прогнози* оптимістичні. *Функціонування* аеропорту повинно принести великі *вигоди*. *Річний прибуток* має бути в кілька мільйонів доларів. 3. *Робота оператора* була такою, яку можна *передбачити*. Вона була *непоказною*, але ефективною. Він *намагався* використати усю *наявну номінальну потужність* комп'ютера. 4. Наступного ранку усі, хто *врятувався*, *улаштували сутичку* біля дверей офісу. Вони *вовтузилися* і *намагалися* пробитися до оператора з тим, щоб *зробити заявки* на свої ділянки. *Спекулянти*, як завжди, були першими. Ті, хто стояли позаду, *ламали з розпуки руки*. 5. Якись два *невігласи* у захисних шоломах *лупцювали* один одного. Може вони боролися за *виживання*, а може *намагалися витиснути* якусь *поступку*. 6. Коли він побачив нашу команду в дії, то зразу ж *прогнозував розгром* у наступному матчі. 7. *Акціонери* *нищівно критикували результати роботи* компанії та *річну доповідь* її президента. 8. Не варто *применшувати* цю виставу. Я певен, що вона може бути *прибутковою*. *Розкритиковані* спектаклі інколи дуже популярні. 9. Він каже, що не може *працювати* на комп'ютері, бо не знає англійської мови. - Але ж він великий *удавальник*. Саме перед приїздом сюди він пройшов *інтенсивний курс* англійської мови. 10. Кажуть, вона така *претензійна!* - Та ні, коли її вчора попросили, вона без будь-яких *претензій* дві години *виконувала* п'єси на фортепіано.

## PART 3

### ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 8

#### VERBS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS AND COMMON FIXED EXPRESSIONS - II



#### EPISODE 8

##### 1. Read Part 1 and then proceed to the tasks.

#### PART I

*In (1) general*, of all the dancing Jack had ever seen *indoors (2)* or out of doors, none was to be compared to what he was *marveling at (3)*. His body got *out of (4) control*, and he could not *refrain from (5)* keeping time with his hands and feet to the merry music, but he *abstained from (6)* joining the dance. *On (7) the one hand*, he had been *out of (8) practice* to dance *in (9) public*. *On (10) the other*, the thought that having fun in this strange place and company to, perhaps, a devil's fiddle, might not be the most direct way to heaven, *prevented him from (11)* dancing for a while. Something within himself *warned him against (12)* and *discouraged from (13)* it. "*Beware of (14)* this party! You might *repent of (15)* it later. That's not what you've been *dreaming of (16)* all your life. *Escape from (17)* here!"

But *in (18) the long run* he found it was *in (19) vain* trying to resist this bewitching music, and he *surrendered to (20)* the temptation and decided to join the capering helter-skelter. *In (21) any case*, he was practically *on (22) fire*. "*On (23) second thoughts* " Jack *turned to (24)* the musician *in (25) a hurry* as he threw his cap into the air, *yielding to (26)* a strange joy, "one has to *comply with (27)* the rules. Play away, old devil!" He felt completely *out of (28) danger*.

##### 2. Match the expressions below with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 1.

be filled with surprise and admiration	_____ <i>marvel at (3)</i> _____
to stop somebody doing something	_____
to advise somebody not to do something	_____
be careful of	_____
to think of something you would like to happen	_____
to allow somebody/something to gain control over you	_____
to avoid something	_____

to hold back from doing something	_____
to make somebody less willing	_____
to do something	_____
to regret something bad you have done in the past	_____
to get away from somebody/something	_____
to ask for help	_____
to stop resisting to something	_____
to do what you are required to do	_____

**3. Replace the italicized word combinations with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise B.**

1. Jack carefully *avoided* looking at the dancing crowd. 2. Jack *was filled with surprise and admiration* about the bewitching music the fiddle produced. 3. Jack's only idea was to *stop* himself from joining the crowd. 4. Jack could not *hold back* from dancing any more. 5. The general atmosphere of the party *made Jack unwilling to join* the dance. 6. Something in the behaviour of the spirits *advised Jack not to participate* in the general helter-skelter. 7. *Be careful of* this cheap imitation - it might be not what you expect it to be. 8. Jack thought he had every prospect of living long enough to *regret* his sins. 9. Jack had always been *thinking of* becoming a famous musician. 10. Jack would have given a lot to *get away from* that weird place. 11. Being unable to resist the temptation any longer, Jack *allowed it to gain control over himself*. 12. Having decided, Jack *asked the musician for help*. 13. "If you want to survive," thought Jack, "you must *do what you are required by* the rules."

**4. Match the expressions below with the fixed expressions in exercise 1.**

on the whole	_____
without any power over something	_____
if you look at it from the other side	_____
in the presence of other people	_____
whatever happens	_____
having changed one's mind	_____
inside a building	_____
if you look at it from one side	_____
without recent experience (in doing something)	_____
after all	_____
without success	_____
very excited	_____
hastily	_____
safe	_____

**5. Replace the italicized word combinations with the fixed expressions from exercise 4.**

1. Jack thought that dancing at that strange party could make him less satisfied *on the whole* and more sinful in particular. 2. Jack was not used to dancing out of doors, he had always been doing it *inside a building*. 3. Jack realized *he did not have any power over his body*. 4. Jack was thinking of God, *if you look at it from one side*, but he could not help liking the bewitching music, *if you look at it from the other side*. 5. Jack *had not had much experience* in dancing lately. 6. Jack was ready to repeat *in the presence of other people* what he had said in private. 7. *After all*, Jack did not manage to resist the bewitching music. 8. "*Whatever happens*," thought Jack, "I just can't miss such dancing." 9. There came the moment when Jack was not just willing to dance, he was *very excited*. 10. *Having changed his mind*, Jack decided to join the dancing spirits. 11. Even in this threatening situation Jack felt completely *safe*.

**6. Fill in the blanks in the text below.**

\_\_\_\_\_ (1) the one hand, Jack was marveling \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the bewitching music, which was something he had probably been dreaming \_\_\_\_\_ (3) all his life, but \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the other hand, he was afraid to comply \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the unwritten rules which seemed to underlie the party. With all his might he was trying to refrain himself \_\_\_\_\_ (6) singing and abstain \_\_\_\_\_ (7) dancing together with the merry crowd. He was doing his best not to surrender \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the weird music and not to yield \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the magic rhythms of the dance. He kept telling himself he had been \_\_\_\_\_ (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (11) practice for a long time, and had been accustomed to dancing \_\_\_\_\_ (12), but not out of doors, and not \_\_\_\_\_ (13) public. And he told himself

many other things to prevent himself \_\_\_\_\_ (14) joining the dancers, because something in his soul kept warning him \_\_\_\_\_ (15) this party, discouraged him \_\_\_\_\_ (16) having fun that he might repent \_\_\_\_\_ (17) later. His inner self kept telling him: "Beware \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the danger! Turn \_\_\_\_\_ (19) God!" Oh, how gladly he would escape \_\_\_\_\_ (20) here, \_\_\_\_\_ (21) a great hurry, only to be \_\_\_\_\_ (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (23) danger! Alas, \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the long run he found that all his attempts had been \_\_\_\_\_ (25) vain, and his body got \_\_\_\_\_ (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (27) his control, and \_\_\_\_\_ (28) general, he got practically \_\_\_\_\_ (29) fire. \_\_\_\_\_ (30) second thoughts, he decided to surrender \_\_\_\_\_ (31) the temptation as he did not have any chance to resist it \_\_\_\_\_ (32) any case.

**7. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part I.**

1. On the long run Jack surrendered with the temptation.
2. Jack's suspicion prevented him against joining the dance for a while.
3. Mesmerized, Jack was marveling on the dancers.
4. Unfortunately Jack's body got from his control and he could not refrain of keeping time to the music.
5. Being on a hurry, Jack yielded with a strange joy.
6. Having joined the dance, Jack felt completely away of danger.
7. On general Jack had been out from practice to dance with public.
8. From the one hand, Jack would like to abstain of dancing, but from the other - he was virtually in fire.
9. The inner self warned Jack on the danger and told him to beware about the party and escape it.
10. It discouraged Jack against joining the dancers as he thought that it probably was not something he had been dreaming on all his life.
11. Jack was afraid he might repent about it later, but at second thoughts he understood that all his efforts had been on vain, and he decided to comply to the rules.

**8. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 1, using the clues below, on the part of: a) Jack; b) the musician.**

**General:** Jack - not see - dancing - can compare - inside or outside - marvel.

Jack's body - get - no control - can't refrain - keep time - hands - feet - merry music.

**Jack:** abstain - join dance; one thing - no practice - in front of people; second - thought - fun - strange - place - company - devil's fiddle - not way - heaven: prevent - dance - a while.

**Something:** beware - party; repent - later; not dream - life; escape - here.

**Long run:** found - vain - try - resist - bewitching music.

**Jack:** surrender - temptation; decide - join - helter-skelter.

**Any case:** Jack - fire.

**Second thoughts:** turn - musician - hurry; throw - cap - air; yield - strange joy; must - comply - rules: play - old devil; Jack - completely - no danger.

**9. Write your own story, using the verbs followed by the prepositions and fixed expressions you have learned in this part.**

## PART II

**1. Read Part 2 and then proceed to the tasks.**

No sooner had he *succumbed to* (1) the temptation, than everything changed. *At* (2) *first* the flower cap vanished from the minstrel's head *at* (3) *once*, and a pair of goat's horns branched out one *at* (4) *a time*. Then his face turned as black as soot; a long tail grew out of his leafy coat, while cloven feet replaced the beetle-wing shoes *at* (5) *the same time*. Jack's heart was heavy, but his feet were light. Horror was in his eyes, but madness in his feet. As if *convicted of* (6) an unknown crime, he was *condemned to* (7) dancing and had to *concentrate on* (8) it.

The fairies changed into animals *in* (9) *turns*. Some became goats, some became dogs, some assumed the shape of foxes, and others that of cats. *Without* (10) *doubt*, it was the strangest crowd that had ever surrounded a human being. The dance became so furious that Jack could not *tell one* dancer *from* (11) *another*. Everybody reeled around so fast that *at* (12) *first sight* they all *amounted to* (13) a big wheel of fire.

Jack went on dancing, *wondering at* (14) the sight *out of* (15) *any bounds and proportion*. He completely *depended on* (16) the devil's fiddle, *afflicted with* (17) the dancing fever. It seemed that the horned figure *embarked on* (18) the rock wanted to *take revenge on* (19) Jack for his disrespect and kept pouring it faster and faster *on* (20) *purpose*. Jack kept reeling around in spite of himself. *For* (21) *the time being* it did not look as if it were

going to *end for* (21) *good*. There seemed to be nothing Jack could *count on* (23) to escape, and there was no use to *beg for* (24) mercy or *apologize for* (25) the misbehaviour.

**2. Match the word combinations below with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 1.**

- to distinguish \_\_\_\_\_
- to yield to somebody/something \_\_\_\_\_ *succumb to (I)* \_\_\_\_\_
- to sentence somebody to a punishment \_\_\_\_\_
- to be surprised and amazed about something \_\_\_\_\_
- to cause severe suffering \_\_\_\_\_
- to punish somebody for having done wrong \_\_\_\_\_
- to ask for \_\_\_\_\_
- to find somebody guilty of doing something \_\_\_\_\_
- to give all attention to something \_\_\_\_\_
- to transform into \_\_\_\_\_
- to need something to be able to survive \_\_\_\_\_
- to climb/get on something (like a ship, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_
- to expect something to happen and include it into your plans \_\_\_\_\_
- to say "sorry" \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Replace the italicized word combinations with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 2.**

1. Jack finally *yielded to* the temptation. 2. Jack was afraid he might be *found guilty of*/having done the wrong thing. 3. It looked as if Jack *had been sentenced to* eternal dancing. 4. Being afraid of losing his balance, Jack *gave all his attention to* the mad dancing. 5. Jack's attitude towards the party *transformed into* some great anxiety. 6. The spirits *were surprised and amazed about* Jack's slowness. 7. As the dancing progressed, Jack seemed *to need* the music more and more *to survive*. 8. Jack did not think anybody could understand what it was like *to suffer from* dancing fever. 9. The musician finally *climbed* the rock and got ready to play. 10. The musician will *punish* anybody who might try to help Jack to escape. 11. There was practically nothing Jack could *expect to happen* to help him to escape. 12. The idea to *ask for* pity or just *to say "sorry"* for being wrong did not look very attractive either. 13. In a few moments Jack was unable *to distinguish the two spirits*.

**4. Match the words and the words combinations below with the fixed expressions in Part 2.**

- initially \_\_\_\_\_ *at first (2)* \_\_\_\_\_
- in turns \_\_\_\_\_
- most certainly \_\_\_\_\_
- at the beginning \_\_\_\_\_
- with a specific aim \_\_\_\_\_
- instantly \_\_\_\_\_
- simultaneously \_\_\_\_\_
- one after the other \_\_\_\_\_
- enormous \_\_\_\_\_
- for a certain period of time \_\_\_\_\_
- once and forever \_\_\_\_\_

**5. Replace the italicized words and word combinations with the fixed expressions from exercise 4.**

1. *Initially* Jack did not realize how everything had changed. 2. Jack *instantly* knew that something was wrong. 3. The spirits kept coming *in turns*. 4. *Simultaneously* the spirits started arranging themselves into groups. 5. The spirits came up to the minstrel *one after another* and bowed. 6. *Most certainly* it was going to be unusual to say the least. 7. *At the beginning* they all looked like some heavenly creatures. 8. In a minute a small circle of dancers

grew *enormously*. 9. Jack was not sure whether it had been done *with a specific aim*. 10. Jack decided to wait *a certain period of time*. 11. Jack wished the tiresome party ended *once and forever*.

#### 6. Fill in the blanks in the text below.

\_\_\_\_\_ (1) the time being Jack managed to stand the pressure which was \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) bounds and all proportion, but he had nothing to count \_\_\_\_\_ (4), and there was no use to beg \_\_\_\_\_ (5) pity or apologize \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the wrong he had not actually done. (7) first sight the spectacle Jack was wondering \_\_\_\_\_ (8), looked like an ordinary merry dance, with dancing couples emerging from the crowd \_\_\_\_\_ (9) turns, disappearing back into the crowd \_\_\_\_\_ (10) once. Each couple came up to the front one \_\_\_\_\_ (11) a time, stopped for an instance and then withdrew back into the crowd \_\_\_\_\_ (12) good. The crowd itself was reeling so fast that it was impossible to tell one couple \_\_\_\_\_ (13) another, and the resulting mess amounted \_\_\_\_\_ (14) one enormous ball of fire. \_\_\_\_\_ (15) first Jack was thinking of trying to embark \_\_\_\_\_ (16) one of the rocks around the clearing. \_\_\_\_\_ (17) doubt it would help him not to depend \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the bewitching music, in which case he might concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ (19) what to do next. \_\_\_\_\_ (20) the same time, he realized that afflicted \_\_\_\_\_ (21) the dancing fever, he was condemned \_\_\_\_\_ (22) the non-stop dancing. It was done \_\_\_\_\_ (23) purpose, by the horned minstrel who had taken his revenge \_\_\_\_\_ (24) Jack and had convicted him \_\_\_\_\_ (25) his misbehaviour to make him succumb \_\_\_\_\_ (26) his decision.

#### 7. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 2.

1. Though Jack had joined the dance, nothing changed.
2. Though everything around had changed, the minstrel did not.
3. The goat's horns branched out of the minstrel's head, both at once.
4. All other changes to the minstrel happened one by one.
5. Jack's heart was light and he enjoyed dancing.
6. All fairies changed into animals at once.
7. Jack doubted whether the dancing crowd was different from any other.
8. The dance was quite slow so Jack could see the dancers well.
9. Jack was dancing without paying much attention to what was happening around.
10. Jack could stop dancing any moment he wished to.
11. The musician was a good-natured fellow who was playing slow music.
12. The situation was calm and Jack could escape any moment he wished to.
13. It was easy to escape: Jack just had to ask the musician and say "sorry" to him.

#### 8. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 2, using the clues below, on the part of a) Jack; b) the musician.

Jack - succumb - temptation.

Everything - change: first - cap - vanish - minstrel - head - once; then - goat horn - branch - one / time; then - face - turn - black - soot; then - tail - grow - leafy - coat; then - cloven feet - replace - pumps - same time. Jack's heart - heavy - feet - light; horror - eyes; madness - feet - as if convict - unknown crime - condemn - dancing - have to - concentrate.

Fairies - change - animals - turn: some - goats - dogs - foxes - cats; no doubt: strangest crowd - surround - human being.

Dance - furious - Jack - not tell - dancers - one another.

Everybody - reel - so fast - first sight - amount - wheel of fire.

Jack: dancing - wondering - sight - bounds and proportions.

Jack: depend - devil's fiddle - afflicted - dancing fever.

Musician: embark - rock - want - revenge - Jack - disrespect - pour - faster - purpose.

Time being - not look - as if - end - good. Jack: nothing - count - escape - no use - beg - mercy - apologize - misbehavior.

#### 9. Write your own story, using the verbs followed by the prepositions and fixed expressions you have learned in this part.



## LESSON 3

### PART 1. THE CUT-PRICE FLEET GOES MARGINAL

1. Work in pairs. Match the words in column A with their synonyms in column B.

A	Verbs B	Adjectives and Adverbs	
1. account for	a. suppose	1. fierce	a. usual
2. bank on	b. convince	2. rare	b. infrequent
3. enter	c. start working	3. regular	c. violent
4. expand	d. push		
5. grab	e. catch		
6. halt	f. assist		
7. launch	g. decrease		
8. marginal	h. minor		
9. pace	i. progress		
10. persuade	j. count on		
11. press	k. enlarge		
12. reckon	l. explain/control		
13. tide over	m. stop		
14. trim	n. start		

#### Nouns

1. clone	a. flood
2. exception	b. exclusion
3. GDP	c. enterprise
4. fleet	d. income/yields
5. pressure	e. answer
6. response	f. stress
7. revenue	g. group
8. tide	h. copy
9. venture	i. gross domestic product

2. Match the words in column A in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

manage to progress with the same speed as something or somebody else; something that doesn't happen often; become involved in a situation; reply; total value of goods and services produced within a country in a year; group of ships or planes; regular rising and falling of the sea level; make believe; get underway; grow bigger; new activity that involves risks; take hold of something suddenly; force down; have an opinion; conventional; money which the company gets over a certain period of time; force that you produce when you press; help through a difficult period; small and unimportant; aggressive; form a particular amount of something; expect something to happen; something that is against the general rule; cut off in small amounts; give an explanation of something; replica; bring to a standstill; money which the government gets through taxes.

3. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 1.

- The company \_\_\_\_\_ this button to switch the TV on.
- 70 per cent of all the goods on the market. \_\_\_\_\_ their victory tonight.
- You have to \_\_\_\_\_ the market only \_\_\_\_\_.
- The company crashed because \_\_\_\_\_.
- I am \_\_\_\_\_ the market only \_\_\_\_\_.
- There is plenty of risk here. \_\_\_\_\_ the market only \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ of a successful Japanese company.
- The managers hope these factors will \_\_\_\_\_ them over \_\_\_\_\_.
- This case is a rare \_\_\_\_\_.
- The government's loss of tax \_\_\_\_\_.
- This year is 70 per cent. \_\_\_\_\_.
- You have to \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ competition.
- I am \_\_\_\_\_ a month ago.
- \_\_\_\_\_ as they try to reduce the prices.
- Their firm is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The new companies \_\_\_\_\_ our customers, so we had no chance to survive.
- This is a \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
- Would you like a \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
- He waited and waited, but \_\_\_\_\_ a year ago.
- How do you \_\_\_\_\_ the plane crash?
- They have the largest fleet of airplanes in the country.
- Finally the rivals cracked under the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The board of the directors started \_\_\_\_\_ jobs to increase profits.
- The company's growth in revenues came to a \_\_\_\_\_.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ a new business here yesterday.
- The company crashed because it had used \_\_\_\_\_ diamond.
- The government will release their estimate of full-year \_\_\_\_\_.



\_\_\_\_\_ or diet Pepsi? 15. The company was not happy with its \_\_\_\_\_  
there was no \_\_\_\_\_. 17. The company started  
routes and old planes. 25. The cheap fares \_\_\_\_\_ business people to change airlines. 26. Being inexperienced, the  
fledglings could not manage to \_\_\_\_\_ the price increase. 27. It is not clear who will take care of the \_\_\_\_\_ of  
foreign companies flowing into the country. 28. The new \_\_\_\_\_ crashed in a few days. 29. He \_\_\_\_\_ her to  
have a cup of coffee with him.

**4. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the text below with the words from the box.**

tide	competing	regular	yields	venture	capacity	clone	carriers	fares	grabbed
offering	response	trimming	capacity	pacing	aircraft	halt	domestic	narginal	fleets
banking on	accounts for	operational	revenues	cut costs	launched	GDP	enter	fierce	exception
	operations	reckoned	increase	expand	pressure	persuade			



Two of the big carriers even \_\_\_\_\_ (1) their own cut-price mini-air lines. *Lite*, which now \_\_\_\_\_ (2) around a third of *Continental's* domestic \_\_\_\_\_ (3), was launched a year ago as a near-\_\_\_\_\_ (4) of *Southwest*.

It should work: *Continental's* \_\_\_\_\_ (5) are the lowest of the traditional carriers. But the mix of \_\_\_\_\_ (6) routes and \_\_\_\_\_ (7) inefficiencies, together with \_\_\_\_\_ (8) price competition, so far made the \_\_\_\_\_ (9) a lossmaker.

Analysts are more optimistic about *United's* low-cost \_\_\_\_\_ (10), known as *Shuttle by United*, which was launched in October and is also \_\_\_\_\_ (11) primarily against *Southwest*. Thanks to the *Shuttle* \_\_\_\_\_ (12) - it too uses only Boeing 737s - its costs will be around 30% lower than *United's* \_\_\_\_\_ (13) short routes. They will need to be: *Southwest's* costs are lower still, and it has already cut \_\_\_\_\_ (14) in \_\_\_\_\_ (15).

The airlines are \_\_\_\_\_ (16) two factors to \_\_\_\_\_ (17) them over as they fight to cut their costs. First, the carriers \_\_\_\_\_ (18) that cheaper domestic fares would \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the overall \_\_\_\_\_ (20) of the industry. In fact, cheap fares simply \_\_\_\_\_ (21) business customers in particular to switch \_\_\_\_\_ (22), rather than take more business trips. So the big airlines' \_\_\_\_\_ (23) (revenues per passenger mile) fell by more than 3% in the past year, as cut-price carriers \_\_\_\_\_ (24) their customers. Far from \_\_\_\_\_ (25) the increase in America's real \_\_\_\_\_ (26), growth in airlines' revenues came to a \_\_\_\_\_ (27).

The second factor had to be fixed \_\_\_\_\_ (28). Most industry analysts expected total \_\_\_\_\_ (29) capacity to remain unchanged in the coming year, as airlines \_\_\_\_\_ (30) costs by cutting their \_\_\_\_\_ (31) count. In the event, most airlines concentrated on \_\_\_\_\_ (32) jobs rather than \_\_\_\_\_ (33) (*American* is a rare \_\_\_\_\_ (30)), and cut-price carriers continued to \_\_\_\_\_ (34) the market and to \_\_\_\_\_ (35). The result is that total domestic capacity could grow by up to 3 % in 1995, pulling \_\_\_\_\_ (36) on those airlines whose prices are too high.

**5. Substitute the italicized words and word-combinations with the words and word-combinations from column A in Activity 1.**

1. Several big companies *started* new mini-airlines, as *near-copies* of small airlines, and some of them *control* more than 30 per cent of the mini-lines, but because of the *unimportant* routes and some other factors this *attempt* has not been very successful. 2. The big companies *have had hopes* for several factors to *help them*. 3. First, they *thought* that cheaper *tickets* would increase *the amount of money they were going to get*. 4. But actually they couldn't *keep up with* the GDP and therefore the growth in their *profit* came to a *stop*. 5. This company now *controls* about half of Delta's capacity. It was *started* only a year ago. It uses *peripheral* routes and small airports. It is a successful *company*. 6. That company *came* to the market only two years ago. But it *had not been successful*. Their competitors *talked them into* selling their shares. The company had to do it because the rivals *had* already *taken* all their customers away. They had nothing to *hope for*. Nothing could *help* them. 7. It was a chance *that doesn't happen often*. We could *increase the amount of planes* by 30 per cent in a day.

**COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS**



1. Several companies launched mini-airlines. How many? What are their names? What are the names of their mini-airlines? Which one of them was more profitable? Why? Which one was less profitable? Why? Compare, the efficiency of those mini-airlines to their competitor *Southwest*. What is the share of mini-airlines in big companies? Which of the traditional airlines has the lowest operating costs? Compare them to the

*Southwest's* costs? Can you see any difference? Which company is better? Why?

2. How many factors did the big airlines bank on? What is the first of those factors? What was the companies' prediction about the first factor? What was the real situation? Did the big airlines' profits per one passenger increase or fall? Why? Compare the big airlines' revenues to US real GDP.

3. What is the second factor? What was the analysts' prediction? What was the real situation? There was one exception from the general rule. What was it? What happened to small companies? Why did the total US fleet grow up? How much did it grow up? What does that mean for big companies? Why?

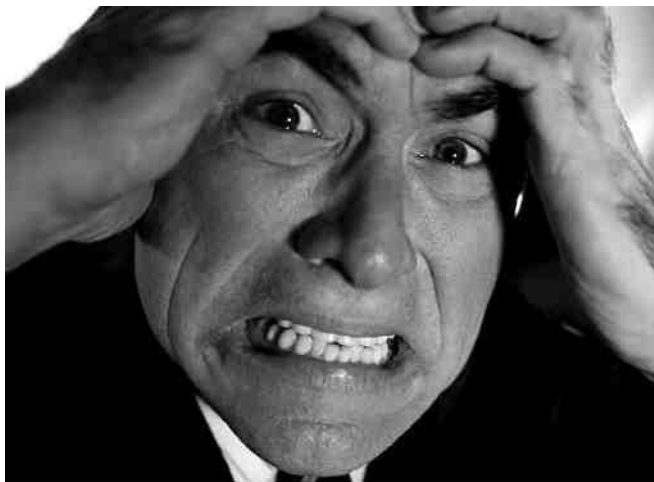
## 6. Translate.

А. 1. Деякі великі авіакомпанії навіть *створили* власні міні-компанії, що грають на зниження ціни квитків. 2. Більшість аналітиків *гадають*, що *обсяг авіап перевезень в межах США* залишиться незмінним, бо вони *вважають*, що авіакомпанії *намагатимуться* *знижити собівартість* шляхом зменшення кількості літаків. 3. Поєднання кількох негативних факторів: *периферійних маршрутів*, *недоліків в управлінні та шаленої конкуренції* призвели до краху *спільного підприємства*. 4. Насправді ж компанії почали *урізати* робочі місця, а не свої повітряні *флоти*, а малі компанії продовжували *вторгатися* на ринок та *зростати*. 5. Завдяки *роботі* власної міні-компанії, *собівартість польотів* на коротких маршрутах на 30 відсотків нижча за собівартість *звичайних* польотів великих компаній на таких же маршрутах. 6. Результатом є те, що загальна *потенційна потужність* ринку *внутрішніх авіап перевезень* зросла на 3 відсотки. 7. Великі авіакомпанії *розраховують* на кілька чинників, що можуть *допомогти* їм *перебороти труднощі* в той час, коли вони *намагаються* *знижити видатки*. 8. Збільшення загальної *потужності* ринку *внутрішніх авіап перевезень* *чинить тиск* на ті авіакомпанії, ціна квитків яких занадто висока, тобто на більшість великих компаній. 9. Спочатку *перевізники* *гадали*, що *дешевші тарифи в межах США* збільшить *річний прибуток*, бо *пасажир* літатимуть частіше. 10. Насправді ж, *дешеві квитки* *схиляли клієнтів* до того, аби користуватися послугами інших, тобто *дешевших авіакомпаній*, замість того, щоб *подорожувати частіше*. 11. Замість того, щоб *зростати такими ж темпами як ВВП*, *прибутки* великих авіакомпаній взагалі *зупинилися у зростанні*. 12. Малі компанії, що грають на *пониження ціни*, *захопили клієнтів* великих компаній і їхні *прибутки на одну пасажиро-мілью* *знизилися* на 3 відсотки.

Б. Минулого року *частка спільних підприємств* в економіці України зросла на 3 відсотки. Однак деякі аналітики продовжують *применювати* їхні *переваги*. 2. Нік *палко бажає* побачити цю *виставу*, але квитки на нього *доступні* лише у *спекулянтів*. Нік *розраховує* на допомогу Джейн. Він *гадає*, що тільки вона має *здібності* купити квитки із *знижкою*. 3. Аби *триматися нарівні* з малими компаніями, довелося трохи *урізати* кількість робочих місць та зробити *поступки* профспілкам. Минулого місяця нас *добре потрусила* ще одна проблема: два *літаки* *розбилися* і тепер наша *ренутація* *стоїть на карті*. 4. Нові власники *поквапилися* *заявити про свої права* на цю *невелику, ледь оперену* компанію, що тільки минулого року *вийшла* на ринок, але працює дуже добре. 5. *Обсяг внутрішніх перевезень* залишився практично незмінним. Деякі компанії *"запустили "* кілька *другорядних* маршрутів, але в цілому *розширення* ринку зупинилося. 6. У *відповідь* Джейн змусила Пітера *обміняти* свій диван на її, хоча той був старий, *пошарпаний та порізаний* ножом. 7. Ви не повинні *звертати увагу на суперника*. *Зробіть вигляд, що його виступ* не має на вас навіть *мізерного впливу*. 8. Минулий рік був для нас *дуже вдалим*. Ми *розгорнули* війну з *палінням*. Найбільші *тютюнові* компанії, що *контролюють* близько 70 % ринку, не зможуть *врятуватися*. 9. Це не *звичайна операція*, а *рідкісний виняток*. Наш пацієнт - чоловік, машина якого *врізалася* у *дерево*. 10. Хто з них *твій чоловік*? - Той, що *намагається* *продертися до нас*. - Йому слід бути *обережним*, а то ще *скрутить собі в 'язи*.

В. 1. З цього правила, є лише один *виняток*. 2. Проблема *повітряного флоту* - одна з головних для нашої компанії. 3. Джон *стриже* свою бороду та вуса майже кожен день. 4. *Оператор* *запустив* ракету і вона з *гуркотом* *врізалась* у літак. 5. *Гадаю, що це дуже рідкісний птах*. 6. Зараз ми маємо багато *спільних підприємств*. 7. У *відповідь* ми повинні *переконати* його *допомогти* нам *подолати труднощі*. Ми збираємося *відкрити* тут *нове підприємство*. 8. Жінка *умовила* дитину *зайти* до кімнати. 9. Компанія *розширюється*. Конкуренти *намагаються* *витиснути* *поступки*. Такий *тиск* може привести до *краху*. 10. Нападник *віддубасив* мотоцикліста по захисному *шоломі*, а потім *схопив* валізу і *втік*. 11. Тут не дуже високий *прилив*, не варто на нього *розраховувати*. 12. Після обіду *дискусія припинилася*. Делегати *стомилися* і *головуючий* легко *переконав* їх щодо оголошення перерви. 13. Дискусія буде *гарячою*, але я *розраховую*, що ніхто не буде *тиснути* на опонентів. 14. Компанія *намагається* *триматися врівень* з *ростом ВВП* у країні. 15. Як ви можете пояснити те, що *державні доходи* *знизились* цього року на 2 відсотки? 16. Пан Сміт є нашим *постійним* клієнтом, а тому він має *знижки* на усі товари. 17. Ця теорія *не варта уваги*, вона є *майже точною копією* теорії Ейнштейна. 18. *Гадаю, що ці акції допоможуть вам подолати кризу та розширити виробництво*. 19. Доведеться трохи *урізати* *заробітну плату*. 20. Хто *відповідає* за *запуск* ракети?

## COME FLY THE UNFRIENDLY SKIES - 4



**7. Work in pairs. Match the words in column A with their synonyms in column B.**

Verbs		Adjectives and Adverbs		Nouns	
A	B				
charge	a. borrow	1. free of charge	1. brand	a. system	
contain	b. mirror	by heart	2. brand name	b. center	
deliver	c. batter	reassuring	3. charge	c. knowledge	
flood	d. assist	tiny	4. delivery	d. deluge	
take heart	e. control	at no cost	5. experience	e. supply	
invade	f. carry	miniature	6. flood	f. scope	
maul	g. flock	memorized	7. glimmer	g. sort	
8. reflect	h. attack		8. heart	h. payment	i.
9. support	i. demand		9. network	trade name	j.
			10. range	twinkle	

**8. Match the words in column A in Activity 7 with the definitions below.**

kind and friendly; expertise in a job, because you have worked there for a while; keep something at the same level; price you have to pay; move in big amounts; enter brutally; distance the car, plane, etc. can go before they need more fuel; central part of something; very small; borrow confidence and courage; take something or somebody to some place; large amount of water etc; agree with an idea etc and help; ask to pay a certain price for something; something that you take to some place; assault fiercely; faint light, sign etc; without paying money; name of the product (company) under which they sell it; set of contacts; trademark; remember something exactly; be a sign of a particular situation;

**9. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 7.**

1. The company's profit \_\_\_\_\_ (1) its work. 2. The lion \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the deer. 3. There is some \_\_\_\_\_ (3) of hope for the company. 4. Have you got any \_\_\_\_\_ (4) of working at a control tower? 5. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (6). 7. The new companies \_\_\_\_\_ (6) of new companies into the market. 6. You have to learn the text by \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the market. 8. In a while the customers \_\_\_\_\_ (8) back to the company's reassuring brand. 9. The new plane has the \_\_\_\_\_ (9) to fly to Europe. 10. Our company has its own \_\_\_\_\_ (10) in Asia. You may pay for your tickets after their \_\_\_\_\_ (10). 11. The company headquarters is in the \_\_\_\_\_ (11) of the country. 12. The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ (12) increased. 13. Please, \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the tickets to the company office. 14. It is difficult even to \_\_\_\_\_ (14) costs, and you want to reduce them. 15. The company couldn't compete with \_\_\_\_\_ (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (16) for it? 17. What is your favorite car \_\_\_\_\_ (17)? but numerous rivals. 16. How much do you \_\_\_\_\_ (19) from our company's experience. 18. Thank you very much for your \_\_\_\_\_ (18). 19. Your firm may \_\_\_\_\_ (19). 20. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ (20) your friends in difficult situations.

**10. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the text on page 203 with the words from the box.**

glimmers costs take heart charges routes maul launch flooded reassuring carriers  
flocked range invading operations brand name profitable compete profits network  
contain match reflect long-term tiny cut-price delivery



Pressure will increase, too, as small cut-price carriers start \_\_\_\_\_ (1) the big airlines' long-distance domestic \_\_\_\_\_ (2). Some, such as Carnival and Kiwi are already doing so: Kiwi, for instance, will this month \_\_\_\_\_ (3) service from Chicago to West Palm Beach, for a one-way fare of \$109; Delta \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \$307. But what really scares the big airlines are the \_\_\_\_\_ (5) plans of Southwest. In three years it will become the "launch customer" for Boeing's new 737-700 aircraft, taking \_\_\_\_\_ (6) of a total of 63 by 2010. The new 737 will have the \_\_\_\_\_ (7) and fuel-efficiency needed to \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the big airlines' coast-to-coast routes.

There are some \_\_\_\_\_ (9) of hope for the big airlines. They can use \_\_\_\_\_ (10) domestic routes and international \_\_\_\_\_ (11) to support loss-making domestic markets: the \_\_\_\_\_ (12) reported by, say, American and Delta for the third quarter of this year \_\_\_\_\_ (13) this. A third of American's profits now comes from its Latin American \_\_\_\_\_ (14). Many small \_\_\_\_\_ (15) have to pull out of routes if they lose money, as Reno Air did last year when it tried to \_\_\_\_\_ (16) on some of Northwest's routes.

The big airlines might also \_\_\_\_\_ (17) from the experience of Compaq, now the world's biggest personal-computer maker. Its powerful \_\_\_\_\_ (18) was worthless when its PCs cost 50 % more than the \_\_\_\_\_ (19) rivals' that \_\_\_\_\_ (20) into the market in the late 1990s. Once Compaq cut its \_\_\_\_\_ (21) and matched the prices, however, buyers \_\_\_\_\_ (22) back to its \_\_\_\_\_ (23) brand. The big airlines hope that once they \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the costs and fares of the \_\_\_\_\_ (25) carriers, their customers will also return. But as the big carriers are finding it hard even to \_\_\_\_\_ (26) costs, that could take years.

# 11. Substitute the italicized words and word-combinations with the words and word-combinations from column A in Activity 7.

1. Small companies start *entering brutally* the big companies' market and with new airplanes, which *can fly longer distances*, they start growing bigger and *fiercely attack* the coast-to-coast lines. 2. The *signs* of hope for big companies may be the *knowledge* of computer giants. 3. Several years ago a lot of *very small* competitors *came in big amount* to the market with low-priced goods. 4. But when the big company cut its costs and matched its prices, the customers *came massively* back to the *kind and friendly sort (of company)*. 5. There is no extra pay if we *take* the tickets to your office, that is *taking the tickets* to your office will be *without any extra pay* 6. I don't think we have to *help* this company. They tried to reduce their operating costs, but they couldn't. That shows that they have a lot of difficulties even to *keep those costs on the same level*, let alone to reduce them.

## COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS

1. The author of the article predicts that the pressure on the market will increase. Why? What small companies started competing with big ones on long-distance routes? Compare the fares on the same routes in different kinds of companies? What are the long-term plans of *Southwest*? What are the big companies afraid of? Explain the word-combination "coast-to-coast routes".

2. The author of the article thinks there are some glimmers of hope for big airlines. What are those glimmers? How can the big companies support loss-making domestic routes? Are any of the big airlines doing it yet? What are small air companies' weak sides? Can you give any example when a big company was better than a small one?



3. What company is the biggest computer maker? Why does the author mention it in an article about airlines? What was the situation on the computer market at the end of the 1990s? What did the biggest computer company do? What happened to the customers? Why? Is the situation the same with big airlines? Why? What do you think the author's prediction about the big airlines' future is? Why? Do you agree to his prediction? If not, make your own prediction.

## 12. Translate

**A. 1.** *Намагаючись перемогти у шаленій конкуренції, компанія "Юнайтед" відкрила нову філію, яка копіює малі авіакомпанії. Це підприємство, що використовує другорядні, а не головні маршрути, є відповіддю "Юнайтед" на спроби малих компаній захопити ринок. На цей час малі компанії контролюють усього 15 відсотків ринку, але вони починають розширюватися і вторгатися на ринки великих компаній. Це створює значний тиск і змушує конкурентів знижувати ціни, бо низькі ціни найкраще переконують клієнтів, коли вони вибирають, літаком якої компанії будуть летіти. Великі компанії розраховують на кілька чинників, які можуть допомогти їм подолати важку ситуацію. Зокрема, вони гадають, що низькі ціни збільшують кількість пасажирів та загальний обсяг прибутків. Далі, компанії, за рідкими винятками, не зменшили свій повітряний флот, а намагаються знизити витрати за рахунок урізання кількості робочих місць. Така стратегія призвела до того, що темп зростання прибутків компанії не встигає за темпом росту ВВП. Це відображається і в тому, що прибутки компаній не зростають, а зупинилися в рості.*

**2.** *Малі компанії з найновішими літаками "Боїнг", що мають велику дальність польоту, вторглися на ринок, иматуючи дальні маршрути великих авіакомпаній. Великі компанії побоюються, що вони не зможуть конкурувати у таких умовах. Однак, навіть у цій ситуації є проблиск надії. Компанії можуть запозичити ентузіазму з досвіду великих компаній в інших галузях підприємництва. Наприклад, одна з найбільших компаній - виробників комп'ютерів, "Компак", кілька років тому була у схожій ситуації, коли крихітні конкуренти заповнили ринок комп'ютерами, що були на 50 відсотків дешевшими за комп'ютери "Компак". Порівняйте цю ситуацію із випадком, коли компанія "Ківі" вторглася на ринок "Дельти" і перевозить пасажирів за \$100 там, де "Дельта" править \$300. У цій ситуації "Компак" реструктуризувала компанію, зменшила видатки та знизила ціну на свої вироби, привела її у відповідність з цінами конкурентів, і юрми клієнтів кинулись назад до знайомої та заспокійливої торгової марки. Якщо великі авіакомпанії зможуть зробити те ж саме, тобто зможуть перевозити пасажирів за цінами, не вище конкурентів, вони переможуть. Однак, для них це буде нелегким завданням, тому що зараз їм важко навіть утримувати ціни на тому ж рівні. І ніхто їх не може підтримати.*

**Б. 1.** *Внутрішній ринок повітряних перевезень постійно розширюється, але аналітики прогнозують, що наступного року цей процес зупиниться, а прибутки авіакомпаній зменшаться приблизно на 2 відсотки. 2. Яка ваша відповідь на нашу пропозицію знизити витрати шляхом незначного скорочення парку літаків? 3. Мандрівник не міг пояснити мерехтіння, яке він побачив посеред лісу. Тільки коли він продрався через кущі, то зрозумів, що це було відображення тисяч крихітних місяців у потоці води. 4. Я не обмінюю свою частку компанії на вашу, бо вона мізерна. - Гадаю, ви принускаєтесь помилки. Ми розраховували на співпрацю з вами, а тепер нам доведеться тиснути, аби переконати зробити поступки. 5. Яка місткість та дальність польоту нового "Боїнгу"? - Цей літак може виконувати міжконтинентальні польоти, маючи на борту 125 пасажирів. З такими перевагами наша компанія вийде на міжнародний ринок і створить власну мережу філій в Європі, Америці та Азії. 6. Я стурбована відносно Пітера. Минулого року лев розшматував тут одну молоду людину, що не мала достатнього досвіду, аби вести з ним сутичку і вижити. 7. Не слід примениувати його роль і прикидатися, наче ти не звертаєш на нього жодної уваги. Він перший заявив власні права на це підприємство, а тепер намагається стримувати конкурентів. 8. Слід віднести йому запрошення на щорічні збори акціонерів. Його підтримка допоможе нам подолати кризу. 9. Намагайся "вичавити" максимум із інтенсивного курсу англійської мови, бо перекладач за кордоном може бути недоступним. 10. Я не розумію, чому він схопив мою валізу. Вона не тільки обшарпана, але й порізана ножом. Сьогодні я не можу дозволити собі купити нову, бо цей рік важко назвати щасливим. Наша недосвідчена компанія зазнала краху після того, як конкуренти розгорнули справжню війну проти неї.*

**В. 1.** *Він не має навіть мізерного досвіду роботи зі студентами. Ось чому він потребує зараз заспокійливої допомоги. 2. Радіус дії нового телефону є набагато більшим. При цьому компанія просить за нього усього 30 доларів. 3. Та бачиш он те мерехтіння? - Гадаю, це десь у квартирі горить світло. - Ні, це місячне сяйво відбивається від скла. 4. Загарбники захопили велику територію. їм вдалося продертися до самого центру країни. 5. Ваш офіціант мусить доставити піццу до мене додому о шостій вечора. - Гадаю, це запізно. У таких випадках офіціант бере на п'ять доларів більше. 6. Повінь зруйнувала багато будинків,*



двадцять людей не змогли *врятуватися*. Аналітики вважають, що це трапилося, бо власті не мали *досвіду* 7. Наша компанія використовує найкращі *сорт* і виготовляє чай *найвищого ґатунку*. 8. Ця монета містить десять грам золота. Вона така *маленька*, але дуже дорога. 9. Розвиток комунікаційних мереж є головним завданням зараз. 10. Коли Джон не вивчив цей текст *напам'ять*, йому навряд чи вдається *умовити* батьків відпустити його на вечірку. 11. "Фаїта" є фабричною маркою компанії "Кока-Кола". 12. Під час полювання ведмідь *розшматував* собаку мого приятеля. 13. *Доставка* товарів в нашій фірмі є *безплатною*. 14. Я не *врятуюся* без *підтримки* своїх друзів. їх *заспокійливі* листи - це *проблеск* надії для мене. 15. Дешеві товари з Китаю та Туреччини *заповнили* ринок.

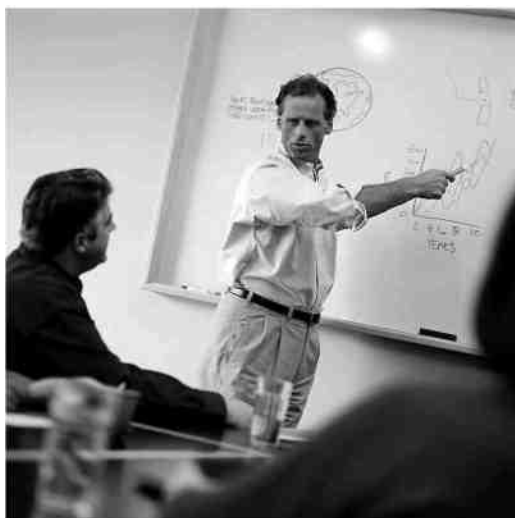
## ACTIVITIES



1. Work in pairs. Explain the headline of the article. Analyze the presentation of the text: Is the author neutral, or does he take sides? Is he in favor of big or small airlines? Why?

2. Work in pairs. Fill in the table below using the information from the article.

Characteristics	Big airlines	Small airlines
1. Prices	Higher than with small airlines, Chicago-W. Palm Beach = \$307	Below \$25(1); 30 % lower on short routes; lower than with big airlines; Chicago-W. Palm Beach - \$107
2. In-flight service		
3. Routes		
4. Planes		
5. Share at the market		
6. Dynamics of development		
7. Airports		
8. Operating costs		
9. ASM costs		
10. In-and-out-of-airporttime		
11. Pilots' flying time	100%	
12. Amount of money pilots get for their work	100%	
13. Cost on short routes	100%	
14. Long-term plans		
15. Actions if the company starts losing money		
16. Predictions for the future		



3. Work in groups of 4-5. Decide on three main advantages of: 1) big companies over small companies; 2) small companies over big companies. Appoint one speaker to speak on behalf of your group. Listen to other speakers and discuss their choice.

4. Fill in the table below using the information from the article.

BIG AIRLINES	WHAT THE COMPANIES DO TO COMPETE, AND WHAT THEY MAY DO
1 DELTA	
2.	
4	
5.	
6.	
SMALL AIRLINES	
1 SOUTHWEST	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	

5. Work in groups of 4-5. Compare the competition methods of small and big airlines. Chose three of the most effective methods and two of the least effective methods. Appoint one speaker from your group to present your opinion. Listen to other speakers and discuss their choice.

6. Work in pairs. Fill in the table below using the information from the article.

THE FACTORS THE BIG COMPANIES BANK ON	
WHAT THEY HAD EXPECTED	WHAT REALLY HAPPENED



7. Work in groups of 4-5. Discuss the reasons why what really happened is different from what the big companies had expected when they tried to compete with smaller companies. Try to find one main reason (for each factor) why it happened. Discuss your ideas with the ideas of other students.

8. Write a 200-word essay on the advantages and disadvantages of big/small airlines. Use the recommendations below.

### ARGUMENTATIVE ESSAYS 'FOR AND AGAINST' ESSAYS

This is a formal piece of writing in which advantages and disadvantages of a particular topic are discussed. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) an **introduction** (paragraph 1) where you state the topic without giving your opinion; (2) a **main body** (2 paragraphs) where you give your points 'for' (paragraph 2) and 'against' (paragraph 3) together with supporting arguments; (3) a **conclusion** (paragraph 4) where you give a balanced consideration of the topic or your personal opinion.

#### Recommendations:

(1) Do not use informal language; (2) Do not use strong language (e.g. *I am absolutely convinced*); (3) Do not use opinion words (e.g. *I believe*; *In my opinion*) in the first two parts of the essay; (4) Prepare a list of 'for' and 'against' points before you begin writing; (5) Make sure there are no paragraphs containing only one sentence; (6) Start each paragraph with a topic sentence (the one which summarizes the content of the paragraph).

#### Useful phrases:

**To introduce the topic:** *Some experts believe that... Are you aware of... Do you know that/how many... Is not it amazing that/how ... Have you ever considered... Every evening thousands of people ...*

**To list the advantages:** *To begin with ... Furthermore ... One point of view in favour of... An additional argument is that... many are convinced that... Finally...*

**To list the disadvantages:** *However there are some disadvantages as well... Nevertheless ... The main drawback is ... In addition ... As a result...*

**To introduce the conclusion:** *To conclude ... To sum it up ... All things considered... Taking everything into account ... In my opinion ... The way I see it ... On the whole ...*

### 9. Translate.

A. 1. Минулого року наша компанія знову боролася зі значними фінансовими проблемами, намагаючись вижити на ринку повітряних перевезень. Наші головні конкуренти "розширювали" латиноамериканську мережу філій компанії і вторглися на велику кількість міжконтинентальних маршрутів. 2. Ви не можете ігнорувати мою пропозицію, бо вона є дуже прибутковою, а ваші акціонери палають бажанням одержати прибуток. Що ви їм скажете на щорічних зборах, коли вони запитують, чому ви не скористувалися з такої переваги. 3. Це дуже претензійна вистава і я не розумію, чому спекулянти просять за квиток так багато. - Не хочу примінювати твою точку зору, але гадаю, що гра акторів є просто блискучою. 4. Чим ви пояснюєте розширення обсягу внутрішніх перевезень? - Гадаю, тим, що багато з нових "жовторотих" компаній були відкриті недавно. Їхні квитки доступні усім, хоч і на другорозрядних маршрутах, а постійним клієнтам вони пропонують значні знижки. 5. Наша компанія горить бажанням трохи урізати кількість

робочих місць. Інакше, як *прогнозують* аналітики, нас чекає фінансовий *крах*. 6. Виступ доповідача *перервався*. Дівчина, що сиділа у першому ряду, не змогла *стримати* власних почуттів і заплакала. Пізніше доповідач сказав, що навіть для нього, людини що має величезний *досвід*, це *був рідкісний* випадок.

Б. 1. Авіакомпанії, які змогли домовитися між собою, збільшили обсяг повітряних перевезень. Це дозволило закінчити реконструкцію злітно-посадочної смуги за три місяці. Адміністрація аеропорту також реконструювала перший термінал. Тепер цей термінал має потенційну потужність у 900 пасажирів замість 200. Адміністрація аеропорту уклала угоди з авіакомпаніями. Це підвищило якість обслуговування. Зокрема, підвищило відповідальність перевізників за втрату та пошкодження багажу. Адміністрація аеропорту, перевізники, а також, імміграційна та митна служба створили координаційний комітет. Тепер імміграційний та паспортний контроль є набагато простішим. Авіакомпанії також спростили процедуру продажу авіаквитків. Тепер квитки можна замовити навіть по телефону, їх можуть доставити вам додому. При цьому доставка є безкоштовною. Якщо ви купили квиток, наприклад, до Нью-Йорка, але з посадкою в Амстердамі, де вам доведеться і ночувати, то готель для вас також буде безкоштовним. З аеропорту до готелю та назад ви доїдете спеціальними автобусами-шатлами, що безплатно доставляють пасажирів.

## PART 3

### ADVENTURES IN PENCADER HOLLOW - 9

#### VERBS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS AND COMMON FIXED EXPRESSIONS - III



#### EPISODE 9

##### 1. Read Episode 9 and then proceed to the tasks.

#### PART I

Suddenly *by* (1) somebody's *mistake* or just *by* (2) *coincidence*, Jack managed to step outside the fairy circle. Such things do happen *at* (3) *times*. And all that magic staff got *out of* (4) *sight* and *reduced to* (5) nothing at once. He was about to *congratulate* himself *on* (6) his luck, when he found *in* (7) *astonishment* that the place which had been so familiar, was now quite strange to him. Here were roads and houses he had never seen. *In* (8) *particular*, in place of his father's cottage there now stood a fine stone farmhouse. There were farmed fields *in* (9) *use* around him instead of the barren mountains he had been used to. Something was definitely *out of* (10) *order*.

"Ah," thought Jack, trying to *convince* himself *of* (11) it, "this is some fairy trick to deceive my eyes. It is not ten minutes since I stepped into that circle, and now when I *got rid of* (12) them, a new house has been built *by* (13) *their order*]. Well, I only hope it's real. I'll go and see."

"And now I am here, *out of* (14) *luck* and *out of* (15) *interest* to anybody," concluded Jack *in* (16) *tears*. "At (17) *one time* I was born here, and not a thing here do I know, and nobody knows me *by* (18) *name*. I have been so *attached to* (19) this place, but I don't *belong to* (20) it any more." And he started crying bitterly.

##### 2. Match the word combinations below with the verbs followed by prepositions in exercise 1.

to change into a less complicated form	_____
to make somebody believe	_____
that something is true	_____
to be proud of having done something	_____
to dispose of something you don't need	_____
to be right for some place	_____
to be very fond of somebody /something	_____

##### 3. Replace the italicized word combinations with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 1.

1. Having taken a different point of view, Jack *managed to change the situation into* just an accident. 2. But then he suddenly realized that he had very little reason *to be proud of* his escape. 3. It took Old Jacob a while to *make* Jack *believe in* the reality of everything around. 4. Jack washed thoroughly to *dispose of* the unpleasant recollec-

tions about the party. 5. Something within Jack told him, "It's not your place. You *are not right for it*. Escape!" 6. The spirits at the party seemed *to be fond of* their rituals.

#### 4. Match the words and the word combinations below with the fixed expressions in Part 1.

because of an error	_____
sometimes	_____
• in amazement	_____
used by people (regularly)	_____
according to someone's instructions	_____
crying	_____
according to one's name	_____
because two or more things	_____
occurred at the same time	_____
not seen any more	_____
specifically	_____
not like it should be	_____
not lucky	_____
not interesting	_____
once some time ago	_____

#### 5. Replace the italicized words and word combinations with the fixed expressions from exercise 4.

1. Jack escaped *because of somebody's error* or maybe *because two or more most improbable things had happened at the same time*, at least he thought so. 2. Even the most unbelievable things do happen *sometimes*. 3. As soon as the mad party *was not seen any more*, Jack relaxed. 4. Jack stared at everything around *in amazement*. 5. *Specifically*, there were quite a few new buildings which he did not recognize. 6. No modern communication technology *was used by people* at the time when Jack was born. 7. Everything looked the same and at the same time *not like it should be*. 8. Jack was surprised at what he saw, but then he thought that perhaps it had been done *according to the fairies' instructions*. 9. "You are *unlucky*," said Old Jacob, "I don't know any of the people you mentioned." 10. Old Jacob tried to tell some jokes to Jack, but they were *not interesting* to him, he was preoccupied with his thoughts. 11. Jack was looking at the familiar and at the same time unfamiliar place *crying*. 12. *Once some time ago* Jack belonged to this place. 13. "Do you know anybody here *according to their names*?" asked Old Jacob.

#### 6. Fill in the blanks in the text below.

Jack could not understand how he had managed to step out of the magic circle. \_\_\_\_\_ (1) one time he was dancing with the fairies, and now everything got \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) sight, and he was standing \_\_\_\_\_ (4) astonishment amidst the familiar and simultaneously unfamiliar place. In fact, he did not care whether his miraculous escape had happened \_\_\_\_\_ (5) coincidence, \_\_\_\_\_ (6) mistake or \_\_\_\_\_ (7) someone's order. He was just glad to get rid \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the dancing nightmare, and congratulated himself \_\_\_\_\_ (9) being back to the place he belonged \_\_\_\_\_ (10) and was attached \_\_\_\_\_ (11). But the more he looked around, the more convinced he became \_\_\_\_\_ (12) something being \_\_\_\_\_ (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (14) order. \_\_\_\_\_ (15) particular, he saw things which had not been \_\_\_\_\_ (16) use before and a lot of people he did not know \_\_\_\_\_ (17) name. The whole world suddenly reduced \_\_\_\_\_ (18) a peanut, and he was standing there \_\_\_\_\_ (19) tears, \_\_\_\_\_ (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (21) luck and \_\_\_\_\_ (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (23) interest to anybody. Things do happen \_\_\_\_\_ (24) times.

#### 7. Work in pairs. Each of the sentences below has mistakes. Correct the sentences according to the content of Part I.

- Jack thought he was without luck and without interest to anybody.
- When Jack got back to his world, he thought it was some fairy trick and tried to convince himself on it.
- Jack was sure that he had managed to escape from somebody's mistake or with coincidence.
- As soon as Jack had stepped outside the fairy circle, the magic got out from sight.
- Before he managed to congratulate himself with his luck, he had realized that something was out from order.
- Standing with astonishment, he saw many things which had not been there before.
- On particular, he saw a new house instead of his old one. He thought it had been built at fairies' order.
- In one time Jack was born there, but now he did not belong with this place.
- Jack was standing with tears: he did not know anybody on name there.
- Jack used to be very attached about this place.

## 8. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 1, using the clues below.

Jack: manage - step - circle- mistake - coincidence; things - happen - times.

Circle: no sight - reduce - nothing - once.

Jack: congratulate - luck - found - astonishment - place - familiar - strange: roads - houses - particular - father's cottage - stone - farmhouse; farmed fields - use - instead - barren - mountains - he - used; something - not - order.

Jack: try - convince - fairy trick - deceive - eyes; 10 minutes - step - circle - now - get rid - new house - fairy - order; hope - it real; go - see.

Now - here - no luck - no interest - conclude - tears;

Time - born - not know - thing; nobody - know - me - name.

I - attach - place - not belong - now; start - cry.

## 9. Write your own story, using the verbs followed by prepositions and the fixed expressions you have learned in this part of the unit.

### PART 2

#### 1. Read Part 2 and then proceed to the tasks.

"Don't *get so upset about* (1) what has already happened, and don't *blame* anybody *for* (2) it, because there's nobody to be *accused of* (5) anything," *commented* Old Jacob *on* (4) Jack's story. "You've been with the fairies. That *accounts for* (5) everything, and it's a kind of disorder. We have to *cure you of* (6) the disease you *suffer from* (7). We'll try to *cope with* (8) it," he continued to *reason with* (9) Jack. "Who was your father?" "Evan y Grydd of Glanrhyd," answered Jack. "I've never heard of such a man," Old Jacob shook his head, "and I haven't heard of such a place as Glanrhyd. *From* (10) *now on*, *just for* (11) *your sake*, I'll *attend to* (12) and start *working on* (13) your predicament. My work will be *based on* (14) facts. We have to *provide for* (15) a systematic approach. *To begin with* (16), we'll step down to the castle, if you don't *object to* (17) it. Moreover, I hope, you'll *approve of* (18) it. There we're going to *communicate with* (19) Catti Shon *in* (20) *private*. We can't *demand* anything *from* (21) her, of course, but we can't *be prohibited from* (22) doing so. Catti is king's grandmother, and the oldest person around, something like a hundred and twenty. She might *help us with* (23) your problem. You never know, we are going to *experiment on* (24) it. Things do happen *at* (25) *times*. But I warn you: no *intrusion on* (26) her private life. She used to *conflict with* (21) her relatives. So they kind of *excluded her from* (28) the family and *hindered from* (29) communicating with most of other people. I am one of the few *entitled to* (30) entering her room, and she has *entrusted* all her thoughts *to* (31) me for forty years or something."

Being *satisfied with* (32) his speech, Old Jacob beckoned poor Jack to follow him and walked across the yard. Hearing behind him the sound of footsteps growing weaker and weaker he turned around and saw Jack sink down upon the porch and weep: "Catti... Catti". Old Jacob's heart went out to him in his grief and he went back to comfort the poor fellow.

But as he put his hand upon his shoulder, lo! The weeping figure, to Old Jacob's horror, crumbled to a handful of black ashes.

There was silence in the room when Grandma finished her story. "The situation *calls for* (33) seeing Catti Shon," said James at last, "and quick.."

#### 2. Match the word combinations below with the verbs followed by prepositions in exercise 1.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| to get unhappy because something unpleasant has happened | _____ |
| to say that somebody has done something wrong or bad     | _____ |
| to make somebody well again after an illness             | _____ |
| to manage to solve some tasks                            | _____ |
| to deal with something                                   | _____ |
| • rely on something                                      | _____ |
| to start from something                                  | _____ |
| to like something  | _____ |
| to insist that somebody does something                   | _____ |
| to assist somebody with something                        | _____ |

to interfere with	_____
omit somebody from a group	_____
pleased about something	_____
say that somebody is responsible for something	_____
to remark about something	_____
to explain something	_____
to be affected by an illness, etc.	_____
try to make somebody agree	_____
to do something using arguments	_____
to spend time and effort	_____
to solve a problem	_____
to make something possible	_____
disagree about something	_____
to speak/write to somebody	_____
to forbid somebody to do something	_____
to do a scientific test to check several variants	_____
to be in serious disagreement	_____
prevent from	_____
having the right to do something	_____
require something	_____
give the responsibility to somebody	_____

### 3. Replace the italicized word combinations with the verbs followed by prepositions from exercise 2.

1. Old Jacob *got quite unhappy because* he was a sympathetic man and took a great pity on Jack. 2. Old Jacob knew perfectly well you could not *say there was anybody responsible for* what had happened. 3. You can't *say that Jack has done* anything wrong or bad. 4. The villagers *kept making their remarks about* what had happened. 5. The fact that Jack had been with the fairies *explained* his behavior. 6. Unfortunately at present there are no drugs, which can *cause his disease to disappear*. 7. Old Jacob thought that it would probably be a good idea to take Jack to hospital as he *was affected by shock*. 8. It was evident that Jack could hardly *manage* the stress. 9. *If we don't deal with* this problem, it will get worse. 10. James' analysis *relied only on* the proven facts. 11. The king's Act *made it possible to impose financial penalties on* all those who violated the law. 12. Old Jacob thought they could step down to the castle *to start from something*. 13. All of the villagers *disagreed about* the strangers' project. 14. Jack's grandfather did not *like* his frequent visits to dancing parties. 15. Old Jacob had not *spoken to* anybody like Jack in all his life. 16. The king's guards *insisted that everybody produced their identifications*. 17. Having found that the visitors had no identification, the guards *forbade them to enter* the castle. 18. Old Jacob spent the day *assisting Jack with* his problems. 19. To tell the truth, Old Jacob did not like the idea of *doing scientific tests to check his theories*, but he did not have a choice. 20. Catti Shon, being a very old woman, did not like any *interference with* her privacy. 21. They say, Catti Shon has been *in serious disagreement with* her relatives for ages. 22. According to the rumours, Catti had been *omitted from* her family long before the king was even born. 23. Catti's father is told to have *prevented* her even from talking to other people. 24. James did not think the king was going to *be pleased about* his report. 25. In James' opinion, the situation *required* seeing Catti Shon as soon as possible.

### 4. Match the words and the word combinations below with the fixed expressions in Part 2.

- from the present moment for the indefinite period into the future \_\_\_\_\_
- not in public, confidentially \_\_\_\_\_
- for somebody's advantage or help \_\_\_\_\_
- sometimes \_\_\_\_\_

### 5. Replace the italicized words and word combinations with the fixed expressions from exercise 4.

1. "You are going to obey *me from the present moment and forever*" said the king. 2. Old Jacob decided to step down to the king's castle for poor Jack's *advantage*. 3. Old Jacob wanted to discuss the situation *confidentially*, taking into account how delicate the matter was. 4. Sometimes Catti Shon would refuse to talk for weeks so nobody was sure whether she would like to talk this time.



## 6. Fill in the blanks with the suitable prepositions.

Watching the fellow suffering \_\_\_\_\_ (1) his enormous grief, Old Jacob felt a deep sympathy to Jack. The situation called \_\_\_\_\_ (2) immediate actions. But before commenting \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the situation, he had been reasoning \_\_\_\_\_ (4) himself for a while. He was sure he could help Jack \_\_\_\_\_ (5) his predicament, and hoped he would be able to cope \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the problem and cure him \_\_\_\_\_ (7) his strange disease. \_\_\_\_\_ (8) least he was ready to experiment \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the matter \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the poor fellow's sake. But he had a few matters to settle before he started working \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the problem. To begin \_\_\_\_\_ (12), he had to provide \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the appropriate conditions for his work. Before attending \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the issue, he had to communicate \_\_\_\_\_ (15) Jack, had him to approve \_\_\_\_\_ (16) his plan based \_\_\_\_\_ (17) a systematic approach which demanded scrupulousness \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the participants. Old Jacob had no wish to intrude \_\_\_\_\_ (19) anyone's privacy or to get in conflict \_\_\_\_\_ (20) anybody to account \_\_\_\_\_ (21) what had happened. He had been entitled \_\_\_\_\_ (22) making investigations \_\_\_\_\_ (23) the king's order and had not been excluded \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the list yet. Thus no regulation prohibited him \_\_\_\_\_ (25) doing it, and no one could object \_\_\_\_\_ (26) it. The only thing that was hindering him \_\_\_\_\_ (27) taking up the case \_\_\_\_\_ (28) once was Jack's psychological condition. It is difficult to keep everything \_\_\_\_\_ (29) private \_\_\_\_\_ (30) times. And as soon as the matter goes public, exactly \_\_\_\_\_ (31) that time \_\_\_\_\_ (32) someone will always be unsatisfied \_\_\_\_\_ (33) something, or get upset \_\_\_\_\_ (34) some thing. Correspondingly there will be someone who will accuse him \_\_\_\_\_ (35) doing something wrong or blame \_\_\_\_\_ (36) not having done right.

## 7. Work in pairs. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences. Use Part 2.

1. Old Jacob immediately identified who was to blame for what had happened to Jack.
2. Old Jacob could not see the reason for Jack's psychological condition.
3. Old Jacob believed Jack was ill.
4. Old Jacob did not promise anything good for Jack.
5. Old Jacob refused to help Jack at once.
6. Old Jacob did not have any systematic approach to what he was going to do.
7. Old Jacob was not sure that Jack would support his plan.
8. Old Jacob planned to talk to Catti Shon at the dances at the castle.
9. Old Jacob did not think Catti could be of any use.
10. Old Jacob did not give any warning about Catti Shon.
11. Catti Shon became isolated from the rest of the world because she had wanted it herself.
12. Catti Shon did not know Old Jacob.
13. Old Jacob did not like his own speech.
14. There was nothing urgent about the situation.

## 9. Work in pairs. Reproduce Part 2, using the clues below, on the part of a) Old Jacob; b) Jack.

Old Jacob - comment - story; not upset - not blame - nobody - accuse; You - fairies - account - everything - disorder. Old Jacob: reason: we - cure - disease - suffer; we - try - cope - it. Your father? Jack: Evan y Grydd of Glanrhyd.

Old Jacob - shake - head: never - hear - man - place; now - on - your sake - I - attend - problem - start work - it: work - based - facts.

We - provide - systematic approach; begin - we - go - castle - not object - it. I - hope - you - approve; We - communicate - Catti Shon; we - not - demand - her; but we - not - prohibit - do - it; Catti - king's grandmother - oldest - around - 120; She - may help - problem; You - not - know; We - experiment; Things - happen - times; I - warn - not - intrusion - private life; She - conflict - relatives; They - exclude - family - hinder - communicate - most - people; I - one - entitled - enter - room; She - entrust - thoughts - me - 40 years. Old Jacob: satisfied - speech - beckon - Jack - follow - walk - yard; hear - sound - footstep - weaker; turn - see - Jack - sink - porch - weep: "Catti..."; Old Jacob's heart - go - him - grief; go - comfort - poor fellow; put - hand - shoulder - figure - crumble - handful - black - ashes. Room: silence - grandma - finish - story; James: situation - call - seeing Catti Shon - quick.

## 10. Write the end of this story using the verbs followed by prepositions and the fixed expressions you have learned in this part.

# UNIT 4

## STARS AND CROWNS

### LESSON 1

#### PART 1. LODGE AND BOARD

James is getting ready for travelling. He decides to research hotel services. Lappy is always ready to help, with a handful of tasks. Help James do them.



1. V  
o  
r  
k

i  
n

p  
a  
i  
r  
s  
.

W  
h  
a  
t

types of hotels do you know?

**2. Work in pairs. Explain the meaning of the italicised word in the sentences below.**

1. What kind of services does this hotel *provide*!
2. Does the company provide *lodging* for the guests?
3. Does your hotel provide any *entertainment*!
4. My plane leaves early in the morning. I'll have to put up at the *airport hotel*.
5. The company president put up at the *downtown commercial hotel*.
6. What *facilities* have they got at a commercial hotel?
7. The *congress hotel* is the best place for our conference.
8. The *bed-and-breakfast hotel* is cheaper than most other hotels.
9. Let's have some beer at the *pub*.
5. On our way to Glasgow we had to put up at a *country inn*.
11. There are no big hotels here, just a *guesthouse*.
12. Truskavets is a famous *spa* in Ukraine.
13. He does not look very well. He may need some medical *treatment*.
14. This hotel provides a lot of *recreational facilities*.
15. You look tired. Why don't you stay at

a *spa hotel* for a couple of weeks? 16. Students often stay at *hostels* when travelling. 17. What *highway* shall I take to get to Glasgow? 18. Let's put up at this *motel* for the night. 19. I don't like motels, let's put up at the *motor hotel* in Manchester. 20. Only very rich people can stay at this *luxury hotel*. 21. There are some very good *resorts* on the Black Sea. 22. This summer I stayed in a *resort hotel*. 23. Does this hotel provide *board too*!

**3. Work in pairs. Match the types of hotels in A with their descriptions in B.**

- A. 1. hotel; 2. airport hotel; 3. commercial hotel; 4. congress hotel; 5. B&B (bed-and-breakfast) hotel; 6. inn; 7. farmhouse; 8. guesthouse; 9. spa hotel; 10. hostel; 11. motel; 12. motor hotel; 13. luxury hotel; 14. resort

hotel.

B. a) hotel with banquet rooms, conference rooms, exhibition rooms, reception rooms. This hotel has all facilities and services for large and small groups' meetings; b) small hotel, where you pay for lodging and breakfast; c) hotel where you can get medical treatment, and other recreational facilities (physical exercise, etc.); d) house where the farmer lives; e) cheap hotel usually with sleeping (and sometimes breakfast) facilities only; f) hotel near an airport. This hotel is mostly for airline people (pilots, air-hostesses, etc.) and the airline passengers who usually stay for one night; g) hotel with parking and other facilities for motorists. It is bigger than a motel and it provides a higher standard of services. This hotel usually has a first-class restaurant; h) building where you can get lodging and usually meals, some entertainment (TV, radio, etc.) and personal services (room service); i) very expensive hotel with all facilities and services that rich people may need; j) a hotel by the sea, in the mountains, etc. for tourists on holiday, who usually stay for longer periods of time; k) a small hotel; l) small old hotel in the country (out of town), usually with a pub; m) hotel for people who are travelling by car. This hotel usually has parking and other facilities for motorists. It also may have a restaurant (or a self-service restaurant) or cooking facilities. This hotel is usually on a highway; n) hotel in the downtown area. This hotel is mostly for travelling business people who usually stay for one or two nights.

4. Work in pairs. What types of customers would put up at what type of hotel. Explain your answer.



student



businesswoman



housewife



lawyer



engineer



professor



family with children



cinema star



pensioner



office clerk

5. Work in pairs. Some hotels provide board in addition to lodge and the number of meals may vary from no meals at all to three meals a day. Match the food plans in column A with their descriptions in column B. Watch out. Some word-combinations in column A have the same meaning.

1. Full Board
2. Continental Plan
3. European Plan
4. Full Pension  
(En Pension)
5. Modified American Plan
6. Demi-Pension
7. Full American Plan
8. Bed-and-Breakfast
9. Half Board



B

- a) the room includes breakfast
- b) the rate for the room includes breakfast and lunch or dinner
- c) the rate for the room includes breakfast, lunch and dinner
- d) the rate for the room includes breakfast and dinner
- e) the rate for the room does not include any meals

6. Work in pairs. What do the following abbreviations stand for: HB, AP, B&B, MAP, EP, CP, FB?

7. Work in pairs. What hotel types (see Activity 3) provide what food plans? Explain your answer.

8. Work in pairs. What food plan would you prefer? Explain your answer.

9. Translate.

1. Радив би вам поїхати на курорт з мінеральними водами, там ви зможете одержати необхідне лікування.

*Готелі на таких курортах звичайно надають усе устаткування та обладнання для відновлювальної діяльності. Вони також надають повний пансіон, тому вам не потрібно думати про харчування. Але якщо ви не бажаєте харчуватися в готелі тричі на день, можете взяти напівпансіон або навіть тільки ліжко та сніданок. Готелі надають будь-який пансіон. - А де можна зупинитися по дорозі на курорті - Ви будете подорожувати автомобілем? - Так. -По дорозі досить багато мотелів. Вони мають устаткування для обслуговування автомобілів. - Чи надають мотелі харчування! - Більшість ні, хоча вони можуть мати устаткування для*

приготування їжі. Деякі мотелі надають сніданок. Проте, якщо ви бажаєте мати більш високий рівень обслуговування, вам краще зупинитися у готелі для автомобілістів. Цей готель має першокласний ресторан, і ви не матиме проблем з харчуванням. Та й номери там кращі. - А якщо поїхати до моря чи у гори, там є готелі? - О так, там є курортні готелі, що бувають різні за класом - від готелів класу люкс до простих готелів, що надають лише ліжко та сніданок. Інші готелі забезпечують повний пансіон, напівпансіон або взагалі не включають вартість харчування до вартості номера. - А ще є заїжджі двори, будинки для приїжджих, які надають послуги для людей, що не мають надто багато грошей. - Вони, мабуть, не пропонують ніяких розваг, чи не так? - Якщо не рахувати, що заїжджі двори зазвичай мають пивні, то ні. - Я ще чув про готелі в аеропортах, конгрес-готелі та бізнес-готелі. Це якісь особливі готелі, чи не так? - Вони спеціалізуються на певних категоріях гостей. Готелі в аеропортах надають послуги пілотам, стюардесам, авіапасажирам, конгрес-готелі - допомагають проводити конференції, а бізнес готелі - пропонують послуги підприємцям у відрядженні. Звичайно, інші люди можуть зупинятися у таких готелях теж.

## TYPES OF ROOMS



**10. Work in pairs. What types of hotel rooms do you know?**

**11. Work in pairs. Explain the meaning of the italicised words in the sentences below.**

1. I'd like a *single room*, please. 2. Would you prefer a *double room*? 3. I'm sorry, we have only *twin rooms*. 4. Is this room *occupied by one person*? 5. Is this a *convertible sofa*? 6. This time they have taken a *studio* to stay at. 7. And last time they lived in a *suite*. 8. A *junior suite* is cheaper than a suite. 9. Have you got a *partition* in your room? 10. Let's go to the *lounge* and relax there. 11. Do all bedrooms have *en-suite bath and W.C.* here? 12. What hotel have you *put up* at? 13. Can you imagine? He has put up in a *duplex*. 14. I like *luxurious* rooms, but they are not cheap! 15. He must have a lot of money, he has put up in a *penthouse*. 16. There were five of them, so they took a *family room*. 17. Have you got any *accommodation*?

**12. Work in pairs. Match the types of rooms in A with their descriptions in B.**

A. 1. single room; 2. double room; 3. twin room; 4. studio (room); 5. suite; 6. junior suite; 7. lounge (parlor- *Am. E.*); 8. bedroom with en-suite W.C. (bath, shower); 9. connecting (adjoining) rooms; 10. duplex; 11. penthouse; 12. family room.

B. sitting room where guests may read, watch TV, relax, etc; b) sitting room plus one or more bedrooms; c) room occupied by one person; d) room with two single beds for two people; e) room with one large bed for two people; f) two or more rooms with doors between them; g) two storied suite connected by stairs; h) large room with a partition which separates the sitting area from the bedroom area; i) room with one single bed and a convertible sofa. It can be used as a single or a twin room; j) luxurious suite at the top of the hotel; k) room with four or more beds; 1) bedroom plus W.C. (bath, shower).

**13. Work in pairs. Look at the pictures below and tell what kinds of rooms they show. Explain your answer. Describe the equipment in each of the rooms.**





14. Work in pairs. What types of customers (see Activity 4) would book what type of room? What type of room would you take? Explain your answer.

15. Work in pairs. Big hotels may have some rooms, which are not for hotel guests' accommodation, but for other aims. Look at the names of such rooms below, match them with the photos and descriptions below.



- A. Ballroom
- B. Banquet room
- C. Conference room

- D. Exhibition (display) room
- E. Reception/hospitality/function room
- F. Fitness room

1. a room for physical exercises; 2. a room for big meetings; 3. a room for dancing; 4. a room for a special meal for a large group of people; 5. a room to display goods and products; 6. a room for cocktail parties and other social activities.

16. What kind of equipment can you expect in the types of rooms that are not show on photos?

17. Translate.

A. 1. Ви вже маєте якесь *помешкання*! - Так, я *зупинився* у готелі "Хілтон". - Маєте *номер* на *одного* чи на *двох*? - Я не знаю, я лише залишив речі в номері і пішов до *конференц-залу* аби зареєструватися. - Не пам'ятаєте, скільки ліжок у вашому номері? - Мені здається, одне. - Тоді це точно не номер на *двох* з *двома ліжками*. - А не пам'ятаєте, ліжко на *двох* чи на *одного*? - Мені здається, там дуже велике ліжко. Я ще подумав, що на ньому можна грати у волейбол. - Тоді це *номер на двох з ліжком на двох*. Мабуть, готель не мав *номерів на одного*. - Може бути. Вони ще питали, чи не погоджусь я жити у *номері з чотирма ліжками*. Але я відмовився. Не люблю коли у кімнаті багато людей. Минулого разу я займав *студію*. - Це такий номер? - Так, це кімната з ліжком на одного та диваном, що *розкладається*. - Номер був з *ванною та туалетом*? - Так, номер був зручний, але я дуже стомився від свого сусіда по кімнаті. Він усю ніч дивився телевізор, а я не міг заснути. - Такі речі трапляються, буває й гірше. Сподіваюся, цього разу все буде набагато краще. - Я теж. Здається, вже час іти до *конференц-залу*, чи не так? - Так, чи не знаєте, яка сьогодні програма? - Зараз будуть виступи на пленарному засіданні (*plenary session*), а потім маємо йти до *виставочного залу*. Конференція продовжиться там.

В. 1. Минулого року я виграла конкурс і мене запросили на Всесвітній з'їзд перекладачів до Парижа.

- Фантастика! Ти була у Парижі? Де там мешкала? - Оргкомітет конференції зарезервував для учасників конференції номери у *розкішному* готелі "Жорж V". - Це в центрі Парижа? - О так, це біля Єлисейських полів (*Champs Elysees*) - класичний готель, що має усі сучасні зручності та відмінне обслуговування. - А який у тебе був номер? - Розкішний *люкс*: вітальня та дві спальні. - Хто ще жив у твоєму номері? - Джейн, перекладачка з Англії, відмінна дівчина, така весела та проста. - Інші також мешкали в таких розкішних номерах? - Більшість так. Два перекладачі з Німеччини мешкали у *люксі "джуніор"*. - Це ще що таке?

- Це звичайний люкс, але з тонкою *перегородкою* замість стіни між вітальнею та спальними кімнатами. Ще чотири перекладачі з Бельгії, Швеції та, здається, Фінляндії взагалі мешкали у *дуплеkсі*. - У дуплеkсі?

- Так, це такий двоповерховий люкс. А президент міжнародної асоціації перекладачів жив у *пентхаусі*. - А це що? - Це великий люкс на даху готелю з великими вікнами на всі боки. Звідти видно геть увесь Париж. Особливо гарно вночі, коли внизу сяють тисячі вогнів. Президент запрошував до себе усіх учасників на прийом. Були ще зустрічі у залі для проведення прийомів, збори у *конференц-залі*, а насамкінець - велика вечерея у *бенкетному залі* та бал у *танцювальному залі*. Це було так чудово! Я танцювала з усіма перекладачами - чоловіками. Правда, їх було не так багато - переважно жінки. - Це тому, що жінки краще засвоюють мови та краще перекладають? - Не знаю, може й так.



## PART 2. DON'T CALL A VALET IF YOU NEED A BULB



### HOTEL SERVICES AND FACILITIES

1. Work in pairs. What types of hotel services can you think of?

2. Work in pairs. Explain the meaning of the italicised words in the sentences below.

1. Is there a 24 hour *access* at this hotel? 2. Is this a new *establishment*? 3. Is this hotel *suitable* for non-smokers. 4. This motel is not suitable for *disabled*. 5. Take this *elevator* to go to the top floor. 6. Is there *room service* at this hotel? 7. Televisions are *available* in all bedrooms. 8. Can I speak to the *waiter*, please. 9. This is a *self-service restaurant*. 10. Do they have *special weekend breaks* at this hotel? 11. Is there a lounge for the *residents* of the hotel? 12. Does the restaurant *cater* for special diets here? 13. Do you like *outdoor* games. 14. I prefer *indoor* games. 15. You can get some drinks from the *night porter* after the bar has closed. 16. My chair has broken, I have to *mend* it. 17. Is there a *valet* service here? 18. I've got some *valuables* here: a golden ring, silver earrings. 19. You may leave your valuables at the *deposit box*. 20. You may *cash* your cheque here. 21. Where can I cash my *traveller's cheques*. 22. Can I change foreign *currency* here? 23. Is there a *dry cleaner's* at this hotel.

3. Work in pairs. Match the facilities and services in A with the icons and their descriptions in B.

A. 1. 24 hour access; 2. Parking; 3. Establishment may be suitable for disabled; 4. Lift; 5. Room Service; 6. Television in bedrooms/available; 7. Coffee and tea making facilities; 8. Restaurant facility; 9. Self service restaurant; 10. Building of historical interest; 11. Special weekend breaks; 12. Non-smoking establishment; 13. Residents' lounge; 14. Telephone in all bedrooms; 15. Telephone available for guests' use; 16. Conference facilities; 17. Special diets catered for; 18. Indoor/Outdoor swimming pool; 19. Other sporting activities available; 20. Night Porter; 21. Laundry Service; 22. Shoe Cleaning Service; 23. Doctor; 24. Valet Service; 25. Valuables Deposit; 26. Traveller's Cheques; 27. Currency Exchange; 28. Dry Cleaner.



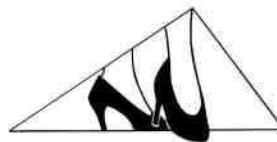
24hr



P

WB

RS



B. a) Hotel is for non-smokers; b) Restaurant may cook diet food; c) Guests may have a TV in their rooms if they like; d) Conferences may be organized there; e) There is a special programme at weekends; f) Tennis courts, gyms, etc; g) All services which you can get in your room; h) Medical help is available; i) Hotel building is historically important; j) There is night duty at the hotel; k) Hotel guests' clothes may be mended or pressed; l) Elevator; m) Very expensive things may be left there; n) Hotel guests' clothes may be washed; o) Invalids' needs are taken care of at this hotel; p) Traveller's cheques may be cashed there; q) Hotel guests' clothes may be cleaned there; r) There is no waiter service at the restaurant; s) Foreign money may be exchanged there; t) Place where you may park your car; u) Guests may telephone from their rooms; v) Hotel guests' shoes may be cleaned; w) Guests may enter the hotel any time, day or night; x) There is a public phone which all guests may use; y) There is a restaurant at this hotel; z) Open air or a covered swimming facility; aa) There is a special room for hotel guests' rest and entertainment; ab) Guests may make tea or coffee in their rooms.

4. Work in pairs. Explain the meaning of the italicised words in the sentences below.

1. What classification do they *operate* here? 2. The king had a golden *crown* on his head. 3. What does this star *indicate*. 4. I won't speak for a long time, I'll be *brief*. 5. You won't understand it without this *guide*. 6. The *range* of facilities is not very wide here. 7. The range of facilities is rather *limited*. 8. Can I have some *assistance* with my luggage. 9. I've got an *easy chair* in my room. 10. What is the *length* of this room? 11. This hotel has no crowns, but it is *listed*.

5. The Tourist Boards of England, Scotland and Wales (ETB, STB, WTB) now operate a national classification scheme for all hotels, guesthouses, motels, inns, farmhouses and B&Bs. The new Crown Classification indicates the level of facilities and services provided. For your information here is a brief guide to what the symbols mean.

Match the classifications in column A with their descriptions in column B

A	B
Listed	A wider range of facilities and services including morning tea/coffee, bedside lights, colour TV in lounge or bedrooms, assistance with luggage.
	At least three quarters of the bedrooms with en-suite W.C. and bath or shower plus colour TV, radio and telephones in all bedrooms, 24 hour access and lounge service until midnight.
<u>AAAAAJ</u>	At least one third of bedrooms with en-suite W.C. and bath or shower, plus easy chair and full length mirror in all bedrooms, shoe cleaning facilities and hair dryers available, a quiet separate lounge.
УВАЖИТЕЛЬНО ВНЕШНЕЕ Уютно	All bedrooms having W.C, bath and shower en-suite, trouser press (or valet service), plus a wide range of facilities and services, including room service, all night lounge service, laundry service
<u>AAAJ</u> Уютно, чисто, комфортно VAAAAAJ	Clean and comfortable accommodation, although the range of facilities and services may be limited
Высокое качество обслуживания, дополнительные удобства	Accommodation with additional facilities, including washbasins in all bedrooms, a lounge area and the use of a telephone.

6. Explain the difference between 1) a listed and a one-crown hotel; 2) a one-crown and a two-crown hotel; 3) a two-crown and a three-crown hotel.

7. Mr. Brown lives in a four-crown hotel and Mr. White - in a five-crown hotel, but their rooms are identical. Is it possible? Explain your answer.

pit

**ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО** "ШКОЛНИК"

ШИР-- г

## La Mill

*ШШЙ^Ш*

tl'jnf

$$\bullet C^*_{\sim} \langle i \rangle^{\wedge} V \sim \mathcal{S}^{\wedge} \mathcal{S} i^{\wedge} \parallel z^y \wedge$$

1ц

' !iJW. ■

ИТАЛ : ИИ  
Р5\*Я^И»ЯИ2 '

## ■ VIII.

 $\sim^r kJ\%$ [illegible]

**EVESHAM, Worcestershire, PARK VIEW HOTEL,**  
Waterside, Evesham, Worcestershire WR11 6BS. Waterside,  
Evesham. Tel (0386) 44639. 26 Bedrooms. Single B&B from  
£25.50. Double B&B from £45.00. AA\*, ETB-2 crown, RAC\*,  
Birmingham Airport, B.R. - Evesham, Visa, Amex, Access. P  
(40), rstrnt, lounge, phone, cnfrnce felts, diets.

**HEREFORD, Herefordshire, SOMERVILLE HOTEL, 12**  
Bodenham Road, Hereford, HR1 2TS. Tel: (0432) 273991,  
Fax: (0432) 266723, 10 Bedrooms, 6 en suite. Single B&B from  
£39.50. Double B&B from £29.00 p.p. AA\*\*, ETB-3 crown  
commended. Bristol, Birmingham Airports, B.R. - Hereford.  
Visa, Amex, Access. P(12), RS, TV, tea/cfe, rstrnt, gdn, WB,  
lounge, phone, diets.

i) Which hotel would you put up at? Give reasons in favour of your choice. Listen to the reasons your partners would give. Agree or disagree to their choice.

\*p.p. - per person

## 9. Translate.

Яку класифікацію готелів для автомобілістів *використовують* комітети з питань туризму Англії, Шотландії та Уельсу? - Вони *користуються* коронами для *позначення* класу готелю. Найвищий клас - 5 корон, найнижчий - *включений до класифікації*. Звичайно, є і готелі, що взагалі не включені до класифікації. Готелі, які *включені до класифікації*, але не мають корон, *надають* чисте та зручне *помешкання*, хоча діапазон послуг та обладнання може бути обмеженим. Готелі з однією короною надають помешкання з додатковим обладнанням/устаткуванням, включаючи умивальники в усіх номерах, вітальню для відпочинку гостей, а також *телефон загального користування*. Готелі з двома коронами мають дещо ширший *діапазон послуг та обладнання* (устаткування, включаючи лампи для читання в номерах, кольоровий телевізор у вітальні для відпочинку гостей або в номерах, *допомогу* з багажем гостей та чай або каву вранці. Готелі з трьома коронами повинні мати щонайменше третину номерів з ванними/душом та туалетами. Крім того, в таких готелях в усіх номерах повинно бути крісло та дзеркало у повний зріст, а готель має забезпечити *чищення взуття* гостей, *фени для сушіння волосся*, а також тиху окрему вітальню для відпочинку гостей. На додаток до всього цього, готелі з чотирма коронами повинні мати щонайменше три чверті номерів з ванними/душом та туалетами. Крім того, у кожному номері повинен бути кольоровий телевізор, радіоприймач, телефон, Такі готелі повинні забезпечити *цілодобовий доступ*, а також роботу кімнати для відпочинку гостей до півночі. В готелях найвищого гатунку (п'ять корон) усі номери повинні бути з ванними, душем та туалетом. Такі готелі зобов'язані надавати *широкий діапазон устаткування та послуг*, включаючи обслуговування в номерах, *цілодобову роботу кімнати для відпочинку гостей*, прання білизни, *чищення та прасування одягу* гостей. Деякі готелі надають також додаткові *послуги*: *погашення акредитивів*, *зберігання цінних речей*, *спеціальні програми у вихідні дні*, *закритий або відкритий басейн*, *хімчистку*, *обмін валюти* тощо.

## HOTEL STAFF (PERSONNEL)

### 10. What hotel personnel can you think of?



**11. Explain the meaning of the italicised word in the following sentences.**

1. Any hotel begins with a *reception hall*. 2. If you want to put up at a hotel, you have to *check in*. 3. The hotel guests check in at the *reception desk*. 4. If your room is not clean, call the *housekeeping department*. 5. When you *check out*, you must pay for your room. 6. When you check out, you must pay your money to the *cashier*.

**12. Work in pairs. Match the hotel departments in column A with their descriptions in column B.**

**A**

1. Restaurant/kitchen
2. Hall
3. Cashier
4. Reception
5. Housekeeping



**B**

- a) the department which takes care of the hotel guests' coming in and out, reservations, etc.
- b) the department which takes care of the hotel guests' food
- c) the department which takes care that the hotel rooms are clean, and everything in them is in order
- d) the department which takes care of the hotel guests' baggage, clothes, etc.
- e) the department which takes care of payment for the hotel rooms and services.

**13. Work in pairs. What above can you think of?**

**14. Work in pairs. sentences below.**

1. You can telephone from the general manager, he is laundry. 4. The Telephone the the *conciierge* to reserve a going *sightseeing* today? order. Call the restaurant? 11. The *mditre* the *head chef* and order a luggage to the room. 14. reception hall. 15. Tell the *bellboy* to *attendant* here. 17. My Where's the *cloak room*? *cashier*. 20. This is the



**hotel personnel working in the departments given**

**Explain the meaning of the italicised word in the**

your room through the *switchboard operator*. 2. He is not an *assistant* manager. 3. Take the dirty *linen* to the *housekeeper* told to take the linen to the laundry. 5. *chambermaid* and tell her to bring the blankets. 6. Ask table at the restaurant for 6 o'clock tonight. 7. Are we 8. Our hotel *maintains* high standards. 9. The lift is out of *maintenance engineer*. 10. Who is *in charge* of this *d'hotel* is in charge of this restaurant. 12. Please telephone special diet meal for me. 13. Call the *porter* to take your The head porter is *responsible* for all services in the



bring the mail to our room. 16. Have they got a *lift* wife's got a coat. 18. Big hotels have *doormen*. 19. Pay the money to the problem

that only our *accountant* can deal with. 21. The hotel *controller* controls both the cashier and the accountant. 22. Can I see the *general manager*, please? 23. Have you got the *organization chart* of your hotel? 24. Call the *valet*, please, he'll press your trousers.

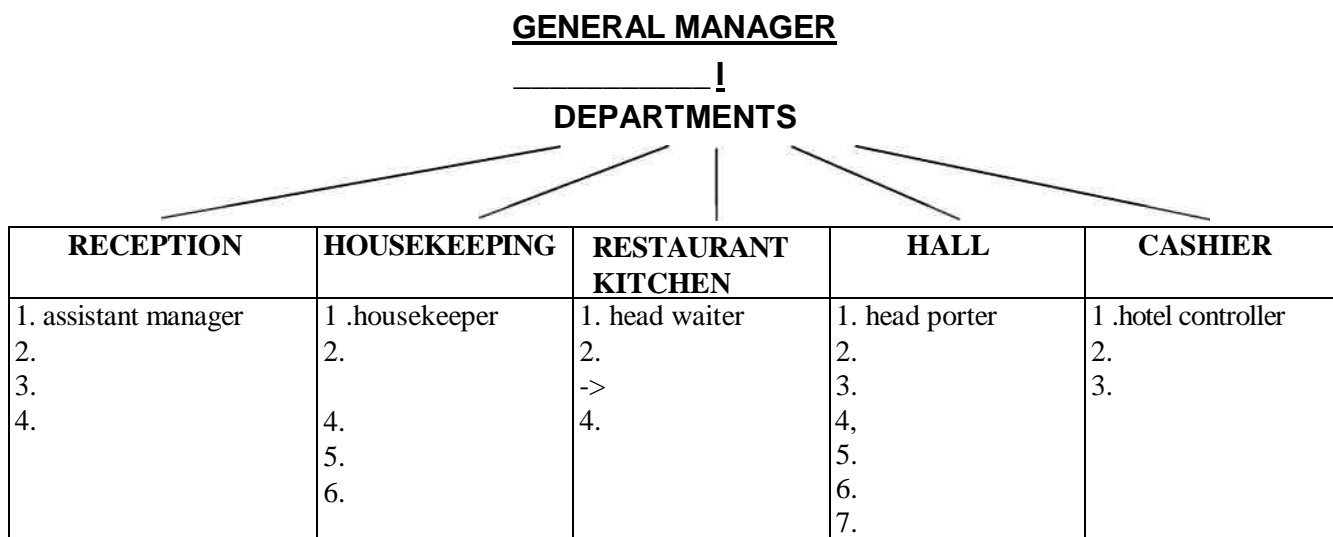
**15. Work in pairs. Match the names of the hotel personnel in A with the pictures and their descriptions in B.**

A. 1. receptionist; 2. telephonist (a switchboard operator); 3. night porter; 4. assistant manager; 5. housekeeper; 6. floor maid; 7. chambermaid; 8. laundry maid; 9. concierge; 10. maintenance engineer; 11. head waiter (maitre d'hotel); 12. barman (barmaid); 13. head chef; 14. head porter; 15. porter; 16. bellboy; 17. lift attendant; 18. cloak room attendant; 19. doorman; 20. cashier; 21. accountant; 22. hotel controller; 23. general manager; 24. valet.



a) is in charge of the restaurant; b) takes the hotel guests to the rooms, carries their baggage, takes messages and mail to the room; c) takes care of the hotel in general (linen, decorations, cleaning, etc.); d) is responsible for the lifts (elevators); e) lets the hotel guests in and out of the hotel, orders a taxi, etc; f) connects the hotel guests' telephone calls; g) takes care of all hotel technical equipment; h) mends and presses the hotel guests' clothes; i) responsible for the room service and the cleanliness of a certain floor; j) works at the reception desk, checking the hotel guests in and out, receiving room reservations, etc; k) takes care of hotel guests' coats, hats, umbrellas, etc; l) assists with tickets for sightseeing, theatre, cinemas, table reservations, etc; m) is responsible for all money paid to or by the hotel; n) the top person at the hotel; o) serves drinks in a bar; p) takes care of the hotel guests' laundry; q) is responsible for all services in the reception hall; r) deals with the accounts of the hotel; s) takes care of the reception area during nighttime; t) is in charge of the kitchen; u) is responsible for all financial operations at the hotel; v) cleans the guests' rooms, etc; w) takes care of the hotel in general (helps the general manager); x) takes the hotel guests' baggage to and out of the rooms.

16. Below is the organization chart of a hotel. Look at the table above and decide which department each of the hotel personnel works in.



17. Look at the list of words and word combinations below. Which of the people and objects they stand for can be expected to be found in the hotel lobby?

a hotel bill, a key rack, the hotel manager, a policeman, a reception hall, a restaurant, a customs officer, a wall desk, a letter rack, an immigration officer, a fireplace, a number tag with a room number, a bomb dog, a hotel guest, a passport, an armed guard, a doorman, a register, currency exchange, a registration form, a room key, automated banking, a receptionist, a porter, a chambermaid, a bellboy.

18. The hotel guests may need a lot of things. Identify the members of staff they should contact (A) for their needs (B)

A. a) Room Service; b) chambermaid; c) concierge; d) valet; e) bellboy; f) switchboard operator; g) maintenance; h) laundry maid; i) receptionist; j) night porter; k) porter; l) cashier; m) floor maid.



B. 1. to make a telephone call; 2. extra towels; 3. some drinks after midnight; 4. extra blankets; 5. to clean the room; 6. a newspaper; 7. to change the room; 8. to change foreign currency; 9. to cash some traveller's cheques; 10. to take suitcases to another room; 11. a theatre ticket; 12. to order a taxi; 13. to press clothes; 14. to repair a TV-set; 15. to reserve a table at a restaurant; 16 to extend his/her stay at the hotel; 17. to wash some shirts; 18. extra chairs; 19. some writing paper; 20 a new bulb.

## 19. Translate.

А. Чи знаєте ви *організаційну структуру* цього готелю? - О, так, це великий готель зі складною організаційною структурою. Найголовніша людина у готелі - це його *керуючий*. - Він є власником готелю? - Ні, готель належить групі підприємців, що називають себе "Сан Груп". Ця група призначає *керуючого*. *Керуючий* призначає свого заступника та підбирає начальників відділів або служб. - Які саме відділи чи служби є тут? - По-перше, це *служба прийому гостей*, яку очолює *заступник керуючого*. - Хто ще входить до цієї служби? - Там може бути різна кількість людей, але обов'язково є *порт'є*, *нічний порт'є* та *консьєрж*<sup>^</sup>. - Хто такий *порт'є*? - Це власне черговий, що *реєструє* гостей, які прибувають до готелю та відбувають з нього. Він також відповідає на запитання гостей та повідомляє, до кого треба звернутися у разі потреби. - А *консьєрж*<sup>^</sup>? - Це працівник готелю, що допомагає з організацією дозвілля. Він може замовити квитки до театру або кіно, столик у ресторані тощо. - Які ще служби є в готелі? - Є ще *господарська служба*, на чолі якої стоїть *заступник керуючого з господарської роботи*. Він відповідає за те, аби усі технічні служби готелю працювали добре. - Скільки людей підлягають *{report to}* йому? - Досить багато. Це, по-перше, *покоївки*, які прибирають кімнати, міняють білизну тощо. Далі ще є *чергові* на кожному поверсі, що відповідають за чистоту та порядок на ньому. Є ще *пральня*, працівниці якої перуть білизну. *Заступнику з господарської роботи* підлягають також *інженер з експлуатації*, що відповідає за добру роботу усього технічного устаткування готелю; *телефоніст*<sup>^</sup>), що з'єднує гостей з іншими телефонними номерами. *Заступнику* підлягають також досить багато робітників.

Б. Яка служба відповідає за *обслуговування гостей у вестибюлі*\*} Адже там працює досить багато людей, чи не так? - Так, хоча може вони й не дуже помітні, але завжди готові допомогти гостям. По-перше, за *обслуговування у вестибюлі* відповідає спеціальний працівник, якого можна вважати заступником керуючого. Першим гостей зустрічає *швейцар*, який їх вітає, відчиняє та зачиняє за ними двері, викликає таксі тощо. У великих готелях швейцари носять спеціальну форму. Далі, *носивники* допомагають гостям віднести їхні речі до номерів, а *ліфтер* підніме їх на потрібний поверх. Якщо до готелю прийшли відвідувачі, наприклад до готельного ресторану, або до знайомих, що проживають у готелі, вони можуть залишити верхній одяг у *гардеробі*. *Гардеробник* видасть їм *номерок* з відповідним числом. Якщо гостям потрібно передати листа або вони хочуть, щоб їм принесли газету, журнали тощо, вони можуть викликати *посильного*. - У великих готелях є *обслуговування в номерах*, чи не так? - Так, за нього відповідає *господарська служба*. - Чи може гість замовити поклагодити та випрасувати одяг? Готель надає такі послуги? - Так, у готелі є спеціальний працівник, *камердинер*, який займається такими речами. - А як щодо харчування гостей? Для цього також є спеціальна служба? - Так, на її чолі стоїть *метрдотель*, управляючий рестораном, а головним на кухні є *шеф-кухар*. Крім того, ще є *кухарі*, *офіціанти* та *бармен* або *буфетниця*.

В. Ви вже *поселилися*! - Так, я заповнив *реєстраційний бланк*, а *порт'є* записав моє ім'я до *журналу реєстрації*. - Ключ теж взяли? - Так, ось бачите *бірку* з номером кімнати. - Ви на якому поверсі? - На шостому, а ви? - Здається, на сьомому. - Ви вже заплатили за номер? - Ще ні, але ось маю *рахунок* за готель. Його треба сплатити зараз, чи коли я буду виїжджати? - Можна зараз, а можна потім. - Кому платити? - *Касиру*, вона сидить он там. - То вони мають власну *фінансову службу* тут у готелі? - Так, на чолі стоїть *начальник фінансової служби*, він контролює *касира* та *бухгалтерів*. Потім, ще є *головний бухгалтер*, а може й інші *бухгалтери*. Я точно не знаю. - Ну, та все одно, заплачу потім. Ключ залишати, коли виходиш з готелю? - Так, залиште його у *порт'є*, а потім заберете, там є такий *стелаж*: для ключів, усі ключі видно одразу. - Треба послати додому листівку. Де б його сісти, щоб підписати її? - Он там є *відкидний столик*, прикріплений до стіни. - А де шукати свого листа, якщо він мені прийде? - Ось тут є спеціальний *стелаж*: для листів. Подивіться у секції на букву "G". Ваше ім'я Грін, чи не так? - Так, а звідки ви знаєте? - Я випадково бачив ваш *бланк реєстрації*, коли ви поселялися.



## LESSON 2

### PART 1. A ROOM WITH A VIEW

James keeps getting ready for travelling, research hotel services.

Lappy is busy supplying the tasks. Help James do them.



1. How can you make a reservation (by telephone, etc.)?

2. What kind of information would the hotel need from you to make a reservation? Choose from the options below.

- A. your name
- B. your age
- C. your address
- D. your telephone number
- E. your passport number
- F. type of your room
- H. price you are ready to pay



- I. type of your credit card
- J. your car registration number
- K. purpose of your visit
- L. time of your arrival
- M. number of people coming
- N. your next destination
- O. your blood type

3. Now check whether you have made the correct choice. Study the letters asking for reservations below.



#### A RESERVATION BY E-MAIL

MAR 2 2006

TO: CONTINENTAL HOTEL, BRIMSTOL

FROM: JOHN WHITE, COPA-COLA INC., NEW YORK

Please reserve a single room with bath from the evening of April 20<sup>th</sup> to April 25<sup>th</sup> 2006. A quiet room on a lower floor away from the street is best. Please confirm as soon as possible and inform if a deposit is required.

## **A RESERVATION BY A LETTER**

17 BRAVO STREET KYIV UKRAINE 26<sup>th</sup> of April 2006 The Manager Continental Hotel 926  
Brook Street Brimstol England

Dear Sir/Madam,

My family and I stayed at your hotel when we visited Brimstol last year. We are now planning a second visit during May this year and hope it will be possible to stay at the Continental again. We would like two twin rooms with baths for six nights from 17<sup>th</sup> May with a view over the park, if possible.

Please let me know if a deposit is required.

Yours faithfully,  
Olexandr Chaika

## **A CONFIRMATION OF THE RESERVATION**

### **CONTINENTAL HOTEL**

926 Brook St. Bristol, England. Tel: 324-1235

Mr Olexandr Chaika 17 Bravo Street Kyiv Ukraine 27 April 2006 Dear  
Mr. Chaika,

Thank you for your letter of 26 April 2006.

We have much pleasure in confirming your booking of two twin rooms with baths from 17<sup>th</sup> May - 23d May 2006 inclusive. Your rooms have a view over the park.

A deposit is not required.

We are looking forward to your visit.

Yours sincerely,  
( Mr J. White - The Manager)

**4. Work in pairs. Task for student A: You are a secretary at the Copa-Cola company. Write down a message to reserve by e-mail a single room for your boss, Mr. Ford, at the Redgate Hotel (May 10-12) and the Park View hotel (May 13-15). See the description of the hotels in Lesson 1, Part 3, activity 8. Task for student B: check the text.**

**5. Work in pairs. Task for student B: Your name is Jane Brook. Reserve rooms at the Eastbank Guesthouse (June 12-14) and the Somerville hotel (June 15-17) by a personal letter for you and your family/friends. See the description of the hotels in Lesson 1, Part 3, activity 8. Task for student A: check the text.**

**6. Work in pairs. Student B is the manager of the Redgate and the Park View hotels, student A - of the Eastbank Guesthouse and the Somerville hotel. You received an e-mail/letter from your potential customers who ask to reserve rooms for them. Write the confirmation letter to each of the customers.**

**7. Work in pairs. See the tasks below.**



**Task for student A:**

You are a secretary at the Copa-Cola company. Reserve a room for your boss at the Redgate and the Park View hotels by telephone. See the description in 4. Remember that you should mention the following:

- a) your wish to make a reservation
- b) type of room
- c) you would like
- d) how long the guest is going to stay
- e) how much he expects to pay for the room
- f) name of the guest
- g) time of the guest's arrival
- find out if a deposit is required

**Task for student B:**

You are an assistant manager at the Redgate and the Park View hotels. See the description in Lesson 1, Part 3, activity 8. Take telephone calls, answer the customers' questions, confirm their reservations. Remember that you should record the following:

- a) type of room the guest would like
- b) how long the guest is going to stay
- c) how much he expects to pay for the room
- d) name of the guest
- e) time of the guest's arrival
- f) guest should pay a £50 deposit



**B. Task for student A:**

You are an assistant manager at the Eastbank Guesthouse and the Somerville hotels. See the description in Lesson 1, Part 3, activity 8. Take telephone calls, answer the customers' questions, confirm their reservations. Remember that you should record the following:

- a) type of room the guest would like
- b) how long the guest is going to stay
- c) how much he expects to pay for the room
- d) name of the guest
- e) time of the guest's arrival
- g) guest should pay a £50 deposit

**Task for student B:**

Your name is Jane/John Brook. You'll be traveling with your family/friends in a short while. Reserve rooms at the Eastbank Guesthouse and the Somerville hotels by telephone. See the description in 5. Remember that you should mention the following:

- a) your wish to make a reservation
- b) type of room you would like
- c) how long the guest is going to stay
- d) how much he expects to pay for the room
- e) name of the guest
- f) time of the guest's arrival
- g) find out if a deposit is required

**8. You are going to hear three texts on three different Kyiv hotels. For Questions 1-19, choose from the hotels (A-C). The hotels may be chosen more than once.**



**A. Razgulyaev**



is famous for its oriental dishes  
is state-owned  
is located close to the waterway



is located out of town  
is the most expensive one  
has a fairy-tale look  
has the aura of the not-so-far-away past  
has rooms for arranging group events  
has the widest range of types of rooms  
is the most modern one

<b>B. Impressa Hotel</b>	attractive in a way	12
<b>C. Kozatskyi</b>	3 is the smallest one	13
<b>WHICH HOTEL</b>	4 is the oldest one	14
<b>0 A</b> offers special rates for its	5 may have the least expensive rooms	15
clients	6 has mostly non-western customers	16
1 has a swimming pool	7 can not be proud of some of its dishes	17
2 is the worst but still	8 provides board at a national restaurant	18
	9 offers both rooms and houses for rent	19

## CHECKING IN AND OUT

9. When you arrive at a hotel, the receptionist will ask you to fill in the guest registration card (form). What things do you expect to find in this card (form)? Choose from the options below. What else? Explain your answer.

V  
%

Иш^HИЦ шг~ "" ?Л  
шШm Ш НН  
тжс чi\* и? life [i

- a) guest's name
- Ь) guest's home address
- c) date of birth
- d) marital status
- e) number of children
- f) home telephone number
- g) passport number
- h) arrival time
- i) departure time
- J) car registration number
- к) mode of payment  
(cash, credit card, etc.)
- l) place of work
- m) position at work
- n) education
- o) work experience
- P) purpose of visit

i ■ W\*  
■  
T 4  
1

Ч^ ш^Р  
^b-^Г

Ы.

^

10. Work in pairs. Explain the meaning of the italicised words in the sentences below.

1. Please indicate here how you *intend* to pay. 2. How do you intend to *settle your account*? 3. Have you got a *bank account*? 4. Do you *accept* cheques? 5. *Acceptance* of cheques is *subject* to the manager's decision. 6. Acceptance of cheques depends upon *clearance requirements*. 7. Are you here on business or *leisure*? 8. What was his *actual* arrival time? 9. This film is not for children, it's for *adults*. 10. Are there any *infants* in this room? 11. Are there any *overseas* visitors here at the moment?

11. Work in pairs. You are in the reception hall of the Bath Spa Hotel in Bath, England. Student A: You have to fill in the guest registration card, but you can't see very well as you have forgot your glasses. Ask somebody to help you. Student B: Help your partner fill the card in.

FORTE GRAND HOTEL				Room Number		
				Rec. Initials *		
GUEST REGISTRATION CARD						
Name(s)		Arrival Date		Departure Date		
Home Address		Exp. Arrival Time		Actual Arrival Time		*
Post Code		Deposit				
Telephone		*				
Company Agent Details		Type	Room	Adults	Children	Infants Rate
*						
Date of Birth		Place of Birth		FOR OVERSEAS VISITORS		
Please indicate how you intend to settle your account:				Passport Number		Where issued
Cash Cheque Company Ac _				Country of Residence		
Acceptance of cheques is subject to clearance requirements				Next destination		
Forte Gold Card		Other Cr. Card		Voucher		
Type		Nbr.				
Are you here for: Business		or Hotel Number		Club		SPS Code
Leisure		Source		Input		Area Code
		Con. Tariff		Source Comm.%		Status
		Reservation Number		Plan		Rate Code
Signature		Guest History No.				Date Booked
		Grp.No.				Reserver No.
						Booked by

## 12. Translate

А. Ви вже повернулися з відрядження? - Так, тільки вчора повернувся. - Кажуть, ви були в Лондоні, це правда? - Ні, не зовсім. Я був в Англії, але в Лондоні був лише в аеропорту. - А де ви були? - Я був у Баті, це чудове місто, миль за сто від Лондона. - Де ви там мешкали? - У готелі. - І готель був гарний? - Так, він має три корони за англійською класифікацією. - Ви мали якусь особливу кімнату? - Та ні, це був звичайний номер на одного, але саме місто просто казкове- Ви замовляли номер заздалегідь? - Так, я *зарезервував* номер за два тижні до приїзду. Хоча Бат досить дороге місто, але готелі ніколи порожніми не бувають. Тому слід *попередньо замовити* номер, а потім ще *підтвердити* свою *резервацію* не пізніше як за три дні до приїзду. Без такого *підтвердження* можна залишитися без номера взагалі. Деякі готелі *вимагають* також *депозит*, але в моєму готелі цього не було. - Як називався ваш готель? - " Бат Спа". - У Баті є мінеральні джерела? - Так, ще в часи римської імперії у Баті був курорт з мінеральними джерелами. - Тоді це має бути дуже гарне та старовинне місце. - Так, Бат знаходиться під охороною ЮНЕСКО. - Ваш готель був великий? - Ні, невеликий, але дуже зручний: *обслуговування в номерах*, затишна *вітальня для відпочинку*, чудовий *сервіс*, гарна їжа. - Мабуть і недешево. Так, досить недешево, але в Баті взагалі життя найдорожче в Англії.

Б. Що треба повідомити адміністрації готелю, аби вона *зарезервувала* номер? - По-перше, ваше ім'я. - Вік також треба вказувати? - Ні, вік не потрібно, хіба що ви збираєтеся приїхати з немовлям абощо. - Власну адресу слід писати? - Так, адресу треба. Краще повідомити і свій номер телефону, факсу або електронну адресу. - Чи маю я вказувати *номер свого паспорта*? - Ні, *номер паспорта* не потрібний. - Потім мені, мабуть, краще повідомити, яку кімнату мені б хотілося, чи не так? - Так, це обов'язково. Ви маєте також вказати, на який термін потребуєте житло. - Чи потрібно писати, скільки осіб збираються приїхати? - Так, звичайно. - Зрозуміло. Тепер, мабуть, краще повідомити, на яку максимальну ціну *я розраховую...* Краще запитайте про ціни за різні номери, а потім виберіть собі той, що вас влаштовує. Ви маєте кредитну картку? - Так, "Віза". - Чудово, тоді повідомте про це під час *бронювання* номера. - Чи вимагається писати *номерний знак* свого автомобіля? - Ні, при *бронюванні* номера це не потрібно. - Добре, а слід повідомляти про *мету свого приїзду*? - Про це можуть запитати при *поселенні* до готелю, але не під час *бронювання* номера. - Але ж час свого прибуття треба неодмінно вказати, чи не так? - Звичайно, інакше готель не *забронює* номер. - Якщо я *подорожую транзитом*, чи слід мені вказувати при бронюванні номера *подальший пункт своєї подорожі*? - Ні, при бронюванні це не потрібно. - Як виглядає типовий текст *запиту про бронювання номера*? - Приблизно так: "Будь ласка, *зарезервуйте* на моє ім'я номер на двох з ванною кімнатою з шести годин вечора 12 травня по 16 травня 2006 року включно. Бажано, аби вікна номера виходили на парк. Будь ласка, *підтвердіть* одержання цієї *заявки* та повідомте *вартість проживання*. Повідомте також, чи *вимагається* вносити *депозит* та *підтвердити* прибуття заздалегідь. З повагою..." Далі ваше ім'я. - Дякую за консультацію. - Нема за що.



## PART 2. WEETABIX OR KRISPIES?

1. Work in pairs. You are staying at the Bath Spa Hotel. Student A: You have to fill in the breakfast order, but you can't do it without your glasses. Ask somebody to help you. Student B: Help your partner fill it in.

### BATH SPA HOTEL

Please display outside your bedroom before retiring

Room Number Name No. of Persons

Signature\_

Breakfast to be served between

7.00-7.30 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ 9.00 -

7.30-8.00 a.m. 9.30 a.m.\_

8.00-8.30 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ 9.30 -

8.30-9.00 a.m. 10.00 a.m.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10.00 - 10.30 a.m."

10.30-11.00 a.m."



### PLEASE INDICATE YOUR REQUIREMENT BY TICKING THE BOXES PROVIDED



#### LIGHT Juices:

Orange\_\_\_\_  
Grapefruit \_  
Tomato \_  
Prune\_\_\_\_  
Apple \_\_\_\_  
Pineapple \_  
Semi Skimmed Milk\_

#### Beverages:

Filter Coffee\_  
Decaf Coffee \_  
Indian Tea \_  
China Tea\_\_  
Hot Chocolate

with Sausage\_\_\_\_  
Ham \_\_\_\_  
Tomato \_\_\_\_  
Mushrooms \_\_\_\_  
Black Pudding \_\_\_\_

Plain Yoghurt \_\_\_\_

Grapefruit \_\_\_\_

Stewed Fruit \_\_\_\_

#### Cereals:

Cornflakes \_\_\_\_  
All Bran \_\_\_\_  
Rice Krispies \_\_\_\_  
Weetabix \_\_\_\_  
Shredded Wheat\_\_\_\_  
Bath Spa Muesli\_\_\_\_  
Porridge \_\_\_\_

**Bakery Basket** \_\_\_\_  
**with Butter** \_\_\_\_  
Low Fat Spread\_\_\_\_  
Marmalade, Jam \_\_\_\_  
Honey \_\_\_\_



#### A LA CARTE

Seasonal Berries \_\_\_\_  
Home Made Compote\_\_\_\_  
Melon in Season \_\_\_\_  
Breakfast Steak \_\_\_\_  
Smoked Salmon with \_

with

Hot Milk \_  
Cold Milk



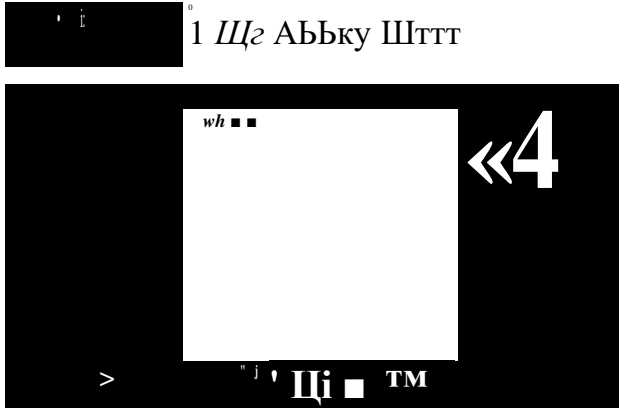
1  
\*^^

Scrambled Eggs \_  
Omelette of Your  
Choice \_

#### ENGLISH Light Breakfast plus: 2 Eggs:

Fried  
Scrambled\_\_\_\_  
Poached \_\_\_\_  
Soft-boiled \_\_\_\_  
Hard-boiled

2. Work in pairs. Fill in the missing information about the hotels given below by asking questions to your partner. Student A uses page 233, Student B - Activity 2A on page 235. When you finish, choose the hotel you would like to put up at. Give your reasons.



NEWQUAY, Cornwall  
**CORBYN HOTEL**  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Avenue, Newquay,  
 Cornwall TR7 1PA  
 Tel: (0637) \_\_\_\_\_  
 16 Bedrooms, all \_\_\_\_\_  
 Single B&B from £39.50  
 Double B&B from £ \_\_\_\_\_ PP  
 AA listed. ETB-  
 RAC acclaimed.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Airport. Torquay B.R.  
 Credit cards: \_\_\_\_\_, Access.

EMSWORTH, Hampshire  
**BRUXELLES HOTEL**  
 Havant Road, Emsworth,  
 Hampshire PO 10 7LF.  
 Tel: (0243) 373363  
 Fax: (0243) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Bedrooms, all en suite.  
 Single B&B from £\_  
 Double B&B from £81.35  
 AA \_\_\_\_\_, ETB-3 crown,  
 Egon Ronay, \_\_\_\_\_ Airports.  
 Emsworth B.R. Visa, Amex,  
 \_\_\_\_\_, Diners Club, Switch.

FELIXSTOWE, Suffolk  
**BROOK HOTEL**  
 Road, Felixstowe, Suffolk  
 IP117PF Tel: (0394) 278941  
 Fax:(0394) \_\_\_\_\_  
 25 Bedrooms, all en suite.  
 Single B&B from £ \_\_\_\_\_  
 Double B&B from £42.00  
 AA \_\_\_\_\_, ETB-2 crown,  
 RAC \_\_\_\_\_, Les Routiers,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ai  
 Ipswich B.R. rports.  
 \_\_\_\_\_, Amex, Diners Club,  
 Access





WOLVERHAMPTON,

West Midlands

**DUDLEYS HOTEL**

\_\_\_\_\_ Road, Wolverhampton,

West Midlands WV4 3BD.

Tel: (0902)333001; Fax: (0902) \_

10 Bedrooms, all en suite.

Single B&B from £ \_\_\_\_\_

Double B&B from £46.00 ,

AA ETB-3 crown, RAC

Birmingham International Airport,

\_\_\_\_\_ B.R

Visa, Amex, Access



3. **Work in pairs. You have entered your room and see that the hotel staff did not clean the room. Complain to the Housekeeper (student B).**

**Complain about the mess in your room. The chambermaid failed to do a lot of things. She forgot:**

\*to make the bed      \*to change the sheets

\*to lock the wardrobe

\*to clean the carpet      \*to empty the waste-paper basket      \*to empty the ashtray

\*to remove the tray      \*to replace the bulb

\*to pick up the books

**4. You have returned home after you stayed at a hotel. Write a letter to the Hotel Manager complaining about services at the hotel. Read the information on letters of complaint below first. You complain because:**

- a) the chambermaid did not clean the room good enough during your stay;
- b) the receptionist gave the room which was reserved for some other hotel guest;
- c) the room which the receptionist gave to you was noisy;
- d) the chambermaid woke you up in the morning when she came to clean the room;
- e) there were no porters to take your luggage to the room;
- f) the laundry maid did not return your shirts in time;
- g) the shoe cleaning machines did not work;
- h) the doorman did not order a taxi;
- i) the room service was slow



## LETTER OF COMPLAINT

This is a formal piece of writing in which you complain of a particular wrong that has happened to you. This type of letter usually has three parts: (1) an **introduction** (paragraph 1) where you state the reason for writing; (2) a **main body** (2 paragraphs) where you give your complaints together with supporting arguments; (3) a **conclusion** (paragraph 4) where you suggest actions to be taken and give your closing remarks.

### Recommendations:

(1) Use mild or strong language, depending on your feelings and the seriousness of the complaint; (2) Do not use abusive language; (3) State the reason for your complaint in the first paragraph.; (4) State each different aspect of the complaint in a new paragraph; (5) Support each complaint with a justification; (6) Link complaints and justification together with linking words or phrases (in spite of, although, however, what is more, in addition, moreover, furthermore). **Useful phrases: To introduce the complaint:**

- **Mild:** / am writing to complain about/on account/regarding/because of/on the subject of... to draw your attention to/in connection with an accident that happened during my stay at your hotel
- **Strong:** / am writing to express my indignation over/I was appalled at/I wish to express my complete dissatisfaction with/I must protest on account of the disgusting treatment I received while staying at your hotel **To introduce closing remarks:**

- **Mild:** / assume you will deal with /resolve this matter quickly/promptly. I trust we can deal with this predicament amicably/I hope we can sort it out to our mutual satisfaction ... I hope you will..
- **Strong:** / demand/insist on complete compensation/full refund or I will be forced to take further actions/ o take this matter to the court.



■ 33f .л#

# W ЯЩРНИЙ

• ЯйИ ■

І Нг^ іі ' -• ill В^^.

п^МЫИ .



## NEWQUAY, Cornwall **CORBYN HOTEL**

6 Pentire Avenue, Newquay,  
Cornwall TR7 1PA Tel:  
(0637) 873263

Bedrooms, all en suite.

Single B&B from f \_\_\_\_\_

Double B&B from £24.50 p.p.

AA \_\_\_\_\_. ETB-2 crown,

RAC

Exeter Airport.

Credit cards: Visa,

B.R.

## EMSWORTH, Hampshire **BRUXELLES HOTEL**

Road, Emsworth,  
Hampshire PO 10 7LF.

Tel: (0243) \_\_\_\_\_

Fax: (0243) 376342

41 Bedrooms, \_\_\_\_\_ en suite.

Single B&B from £49.00

Double B&B from £ \_\_\_\_\_

AA\*\*\* ETB-

Egon Ronay, Gatwick Airports.

\_\_\_\_\_ B.R. Visa, Amex.

Access, \_\_\_\_\_, Switch.

## FELIXSTOWE, Suffolk **BROOK HOTEL**

Orwell Road, Felixstowe, Suffolk  
IP 11 7PF Tel: (0394) \_\_\_\_\_

Fax: (0394) 670422

\_\_\_\_\_ Bedrooms, all en suite.

Single B&B from £21.00

Double B&B from £ \_\_\_\_\_

AA\*\*,ETB- \_\_\_\_\_,

RAC \*\*, \_\_\_\_\_, Stansted

Airports. \_\_\_\_\_, Access

B.R. Visa, Amex,

## WOLVERHAMPTON, West Midlands **DUDLEYS HOTEL**

Dudley Road, Wolverhampton,  
West Midlands WV4 3BD.

Tel: (0902) \_\_\_\_\_; Fax: (0902) 343424

Bedrooms, all en suite.

Single B&B from £38.50

Double B&B from £ \_\_\_\_\_

AA\*\*,ETB- \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, RAC \*\*\*,

\_\_\_\_\_ International Airport,

Wolverhampton B.R. Visa, Amex,

Access

5. Work in pairs. Read the notice for the Bath Spa hotel guests below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text.

**FIRE.** In the interest of your personal safety please  
 1 \_\_\_\_\_ yourself with the  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_ fire exit. A fire notice is displayed on the back of your room door.  
 3 **PERSONAL** \_\_\_\_\_. The Management cannot accept responsibility for cash  
 4 and articles of value left in your \_\_\_\_\_. The deposit boxes are available at  
 5 the \_\_\_\_\_ Desk. **ROOM SERVICE.** For everything you want, please use the  
 6 telephone in your room. Breakfast is \_\_\_\_\_ in all the bedrooms. **TEA AND COFFEE.**  
 7 There are tea and coffee making \_\_\_\_\_ in all the bedrooms. **DOCTOR.** In an  
 8 \_\_\_\_\_ contact the Housekeeper, Reception Office or the Night Porter. Private  
 9 medical \_\_\_\_\_ is provided for extra fee. **LAUNDRY.** A same-day service is  
 10 \_\_\_\_\_ Monday to Friday. If you hand your clothes before 10 a.m. you will get it  
 11 back the same evening. Telephone Room Service. **SHOE** \_\_\_\_\_ **SERVICE.**  
 12 There are shoe cleaning \_\_\_\_\_ on all floors. **NIGHT PORTER.** The Night Porter  
 13 has a supply of drinks if you need \_\_\_\_\_ after the bar has closed.  
 14 **CHEQUES** The Cashier will change foreign \_\_\_\_\_ and will cash traveler's.  
 15 Cheques. Personal cheques may be cashed by the Manager's \_\_\_\_\_.

**FAMILIAR**  
**NEAR**  
**VALUE**  
**COMMODITY**  
**RECEIVE**  
**SERVICE**  
**FACILE**  
**EMERGE**  
**TEND**  
**AVAIL**  
**CLEAN**  
**MACHINATION**  
**SOME**  
**CURRENT**  
**DECIDE**



6. You will hear a radio interview with a journalist who has been investigating the situation in hotel business in Ukraine. For questions 1-30, complete the statements. You will hear the recording twice.

In general Ukraine's hospitality industry has \_\_\_\_\_  
 2005 investments into hotels amounted to \_\_\_\_\_  
 In 2005 investments into hotels \_\_\_\_\_

as compared with 2004 (3)

The three best hotels opened recently are the Radisson in \_\_\_\_\_  
 the Rixos Hotel in \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, (5)  
 ), and the Opera Hotel in \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, (6)  
 .

The Radisson opened in \_\_\_\_\_  
 \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (9) hotel, with \_\_\_\_\_

The Rixos opened in \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (11) and is a \_\_\_\_\_ (12)-star hotel  
 with \_\_\_\_\_ (13) rooms and a \_\_\_\_\_ facility.

The Opera Hotel opened in the month of \_\_\_\_\_, the year of \_\_\_\_\_ (14).

Ukraine's first national hotel network, Premier Hotels, includes

the \_\_\_\_\_ (15)-star Premier Palace in \_\_\_\_\_ (16), and

the \_\_\_\_\_ (17)-star hotels: the Oreanda in \_\_\_\_\_ (18), the Dnister  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (21)

(7) and is a (8)-star and

in \_\_\_\_\_ (19), the Star in \_\_\_\_\_ (20), the Londonska in

and the Cosmopolit in \_\_\_\_\_ (22).

Donetsk has a top \_\_\_\_\_ (23)-star hotel, which is called the \_\_\_\_\_ (24).

The \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (25), \_\_\_\_\_ (26)-star, \_\_\_\_\_ (27)-room \_\_\_\_\_ (28) Hilton hotel would open in the city  
 of \_\_\_\_\_ (29) in \_\_\_\_\_ (30).

The Opera Hotel prices per night range from \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (31) for a \_\_\_\_\_ (32) room to \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (33)  
 for a \_\_\_\_\_ (34).

The Radisson prices per night range from \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (35) for a \_\_\_\_\_ (36) room to \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (37)  
 for a \_\_\_\_\_ (38).

\_\_\_\_\_, (39).

It is difficult to estimate small hotels activity because \_\_\_\_\_ The (40) %, while in Kyiv it was

occupancy rate in 2004 for Ukraine in general was (41) %.

The official number of hotels in Ukraine is \_\_\_\_\_ (42), while estimates show that in 2004 only in the Crimea there operated \_\_\_\_\_

(43) informal hotels.

It is expected that in 2006 about \_\_\_\_\_ (44) visitors will come to

The occupancy rate at the \$ \_\_\_\_\_ Ukraine.

and the demand \_\_\_\_\_ (45), \_\_\_\_\_ (46)-room (46)%,

Opera Hotel is around  
(47) in its first two months.

## 7. Translate.

А. Пробачте, я погано розумію англійську. Допоможіть мені заповнити картку реєстрації, будь ласка. Що маю писати ось тут? - Ваше ім'я та домашню адресу. - А тут? - Це дата вашого прибуття та очікуваний час прибуття, дата вибуття та фактичний час прибуття. Вам не потрібно це заповнювати, це заповнить реєстратор. - Гаразд, а тут? - Тут проставте ваш поштовий код та номер вашого телефону, а тут нічого не пишеть. Це для реєстратора. Ви вносили депозит? - Ні, не вносила. - Тоді тим більше не пишеть. Ви у відрядженні чи приватно? - Приватно. - Тоді вам нічого писати про компанію. - Усі ці графи: тип кімнати, номер кімнати, кількість дорослих, дітей та немовлят, а також ціну кімнати заповнить реєстратор. Ось тут вкажіть місце та час народження. - Час? - Так, дату народження. - Гаразд, далі? - Тут поставте галочку і вкажіть, як ви будете розплачуватись: готівкою, чеком чи грошовим переказом з рахунку компанії. - Я буду платити кредитною картою. - Добре, тоді вкажіть ось тут тип та номер картки. Я так розумію, ви - іноземка, чи не так? - Так. - Тоді вам треба вказати ось тут номер паспорта, де він був виданий, країну, в якій ви проживаєте, а також наступний пункт вашої подорожі. - Добре, далі? - Тут треба вказати мету приїзду: у справах чи на відпочинок. - На відпочинок. - А ось тут - номерний знак вашого автомобіля. Все, поставте свій підпис ось тут. - Але ж тут ще багато якихось слів. - Це службові відмітки, реєстратор сам усе зробить, не думайте про це. - Дякую.

Б. Ви вже заповнили реєстраційну картку? - Так, ось вона. - Дякую. - Пробачте, можна запитати? - Так, будь ласка. - В готелі є пральня? - Так, якщо ви здасте речі до десятої ранку, то одержите їх випраними того ж дня увечері. - Де можна здати білизну? - Зателефонуйте до служби обслуговування в номерах. - Де можна почистити взуття? - На кожному поверсі є автомат для чищення взуття. - Де випити чаю чи кави вранці? - У кожній кімнаті є устаткування для приготування чаю чи кави або можете піти до буфету. - А лікар у готелі є? - Готель надає медичні послуги лише у надзвичайних випадках, але такі послуги гості мають оплачувати додатково. - Сніданок подають до номерів? - Так, якщо вам ще щось знадобиться, телефонуйте до служби обслуговування в номерах. - Чи безпечно залишати речі в номері? - Загалом так, але якщо ви маєте щось дуже цінне, краще віддати такі речі на зберігання у сейфі. - А де ці сейфи? - Ось тут, у мене. Я вам видам квитанцію. - Добре, я подумаю. У вашому готелі є нічний черговий? - Так, ми маємо цілодобовий доступ до готелю. - І іноземну валюту обмінюєте також? - Так, валюту можна обміняти у касира. Вона ж видасть вам готівку за акредитиви. - А чеки вона теж гасить? - Маєте на увазі приватні чеки? - Так. - В принципі, може, але з дозволу керуючого готелем. - Дякую, піду вже до номера, я стомився. Сподіваюся, номер прибраний? - Звичайно, зараз я зателефоную черговій на вашому поверсі. Носильник віднесе речі до вашої кімнати. Бажаю приємно провести час у нашому готелі! - Дякую.

## PART 3

### MIXED PROPOSITIONS EXERCISES - 1

#### 1. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

John arrived \_\_\_\_ (1) his new flat \_\_\_\_ (2) Manhattan \_\_\_\_ (3) the evening. He had been travelling all day \_\_\_\_ (4) Mexico City \_\_\_\_ (5) New York and was glad to be home. He removed his hat and threw it \_\_\_\_ (6) the bed: he hung his coat and scarf \_\_\_\_ (7) the bedroom and walked \_\_\_\_ (8) the kitchen; he took a beer \_\_\_\_ (9) the refrigerator and found a glass \_\_\_\_ (10) the kitchen table. The flat was empty; his wife had probably gone \_\_\_\_ (11) her mother's \_\_\_\_ (12) an hour or two; it was only \_\_\_\_ (13) ten minutes' walk \_\_\_\_ (14) her mother's house back \_\_\_\_ (15) the flat. He stood \_\_\_\_ (16) the window and looked \_\_\_\_ (17) it. There was a man going \_\_\_\_ (18) the post office \_\_\_\_ (19) the street. John put his beer \_\_\_\_ (20) his desk and looked \_\_\_\_ (21) the top drawer \_\_\_\_ (22) some cigarettes. \_\_\_\_ (23) that moment he heard a loud noise \_\_\_\_ (24) the building; it seemed to be coming \_\_\_\_ (25) the post office, he ran to look \_\_\_\_ (26) the window. The same man was running \_\_\_\_ (27) the post office \_\_\_\_ (28) a bag \_\_\_\_ (29) his hand; he jumped \_\_\_\_ (30) a car and drove quickly away.

#### 2. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

\_\_\_\_ (1) 1965 one pilot flew alone \_\_\_\_ (2) Canada \_\_\_\_ (3) London \_\_\_\_ (4) a plane called 'The Spirit \_ \_\_\_\_ (5) Ottawa': the name was written \_\_\_\_ (6) the side \_\_\_\_ (7) the plane. There was a great crowd \_\_\_\_ (8) the airport \_\_\_\_ (9) London when he arrived, and as the man got \_\_\_\_ (10) the plane, a tremendous cheer went up. The famous pilot was driven \_\_\_\_ (11) London \_\_\_\_ (12) an open car \_\_\_\_ (13) an escort \_\_\_\_ (14) policemen \_\_\_\_ (15) motorcycles.

#### 3. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

The plane arrived \_\_\_\_ (1) Paris \_\_\_\_ (2) seven o'clock. Christine got \_\_\_\_ (3) the plane quickly and went \_\_\_\_ (4) airport building. She showed her passport \_\_\_\_ (5) the immigration official and went to collect her luggage. Ten minutes later Christine had her precious black suitcase \_\_\_\_ (6) her hand. Here she was, \_\_\_\_ (7) last, \_\_\_\_ (8) France \_\_\_\_ (9) the Brownberg jewels safe \_\_\_\_ (10) her suitcase! As soon as she arrived \_\_\_\_ (11) the hotel, Christine put her suitcase \_\_\_\_ (12) a table and opened it to look \_\_\_\_ (13) the jewels. She took her clothes \_\_\_\_ (14) the suitcase and opened the secret compartment \_\_\_\_ (15) the bottom. The jewels were not there!

#### 4. Which of the following sentences are illogical? Why?

1. Robert couldn't see the face of the woman in front of him.
2. The bakery is opposite the church, so you can see the back of the bakery from the front of the church.
3. At the cinema Stephen wasn't able to see much of the film: the man behind him was very tall.
4. Judy sat beside the taxi driver in the back seat.
5. The bodyguard stood in front of the President to protect him from attack.
6. Among the two men there was a big horse.
7. Look: the hotel is beyond the supermarket, so the supermarket is nearer to us.
8. Look: the church is beyond the post office, so the church is nearer to us.
9. Between the women there was a young child.
10. There was a slice of ham between the pieces of bread.
11. There was an adult among the children.
12. The prisoner was standing between two guards: one was behind him and the other was in front of him.

#### 5. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

1. The wedding ceremony took place \_\_\_\_ a helicopter, 20 000 metres \_\_\_\_ the Pacific.
2. \_\_\_\_ the non-stop journey \_\_\_\_ Haiti, the plane flew \_\_\_\_ Yucatan and Jamaica.
3. They pitched their last camp 400 metres \_\_\_\_ the summit.
4. The dead man lay \_\_\_\_ the road \_\_\_\_ a white sheet.
5. The man stood \_\_\_\_ his bride \_\_\_\_ the church; the two of them looked magnificent together.
6. An enormous man was sitting \_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_ the cinema last night and I couldn't see most \_\_\_\_ the screen.
7. The king appeared \_\_\_\_ huge guards on each side of him. \_\_\_\_ them he looked tiny.
8. The President entered the chamber alone. Then, ten metres \_\_\_\_ him, came all his ministers.



## 6. Complete this passage with appropriate prepositions.

Tom hurried \_\_\_\_\_ (1) the stairs \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the Underground to the platform. He continually looked \_\_\_\_\_ (3) him to see if anyone was following but saw no one suspicious. Down \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the platform, 50 metres \_\_\_\_\_ (5) street level, it was much hotter, and when the train came he was happy to see an empty seat or two. He sat down and put his case \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the seat \_\_\_\_\_ (7) him.

Nothing unusual happened \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the journey, but as he was going \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the escalator, something about the back \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the head \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the man \_\_\_\_\_ (12) him made him anxious. Suddenly, though, the man turned \_\_\_\_\_ (13) and he saw it wasn't Clive after all.

Coming \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the station, he recognized the hotel, which was a narrow building standing \_\_\_\_\_ (15) a supermarket \_\_\_\_\_ (16) its left and a laundromat \_\_\_\_\_ (17) the right.

"My name's Bright. Do you have a reservation for me?" he said \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the hotel clerk.

"Certainly, sir; you're \_\_\_\_\_ (19) 307."

"And Mr. Gripps? Is he \_\_\_\_\_ (20) the next room?"

"Mr. Gripps? No, he's \_\_\_\_\_ (21) 208. That's on the floor \_\_\_\_\_ (22) yours."

Once \_\_\_\_\_ (23) his room, Tom looked \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the cupboards, \_\_\_\_\_ (25) the bathroom, and even \_\_\_\_\_ (26) the bed, but the room was clearly empty. He went \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the window and looked out. There was the river and there was the bridge. Tomorrow he would walk \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the bridge to the other side. That river - and the guards - were the only things \_\_\_\_\_ (29) him and freedom. Suddenly a noise \_\_\_\_\_ (30) him made him turn round. There was Clive.

## 7. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

Denise stood \_\_\_\_\_ (1) the hilltop and gazed \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the countryside spread out \_\_\_\_\_ (3) her feet. It was lovely. Here and there she could see houses \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the trees, and she could just see the lake \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the next range of hills. The man who had sat \_\_\_\_\_ (6) her \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the breakfast table had told her the lake was one or two miles \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the hotel. She would go there tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the moment she was happy here \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the sun. This paradise seemed (and was) \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the noise and dust of Madrid.

## 8. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

- Two friends went \_\_\_\_\_ Mount Everest in 1993.
- Magellan sailed \_\_\_\_\_ the world in 1521.
- Carthaginian sailors sailed \_\_\_\_\_ the Rock of Gibraltar and \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic \_\_\_\_\_ the birth of Christ.
- Nobody has yet gone \_\_\_\_\_ to the bottom of that ocean.
- Ships usually go \_\_\_\_\_ the Suez Canal so as to avoid going \_\_\_\_\_ the southern tip of Africa.
- About twenty five years ago \_\_\_\_\_ 1979 a man flew \_\_\_\_\_ the English Channel \_\_\_\_\_ a pedal-driven plane.
- Many ships have sunk trying to sail \_\_\_\_\_ the Straits of Magellan \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic \_\_\_\_\_ the Pacific.
- The first man to go \_\_\_\_\_ the River Nile to its source was Sir Richard Burton.
- Twenty years ago a Canadian space craft flew \_\_\_\_\_ the planet Saturn \_\_\_\_\_ its way to Uranus and Pluto.
- Thirty years ago planes flew \_\_\_\_\_ the USA \_\_\_\_\_ Britain \_\_\_\_\_ Canada and Iceland.
- \_\_\_\_\_ his non-stop voyage \_\_\_\_\_ Britain \_\_\_\_\_ Australia, Shienchester first sailed \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic \_\_\_\_\_ South America.
- Scott and his party reached the South Pole but died as they were walking \_\_\_\_\_ from it to get back \_\_\_\_\_ their ship.

## 9. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

- The police were holding back the crowds, so nobody could get \_\_\_\_\_ (1) the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (2) more than an hour. The Minister's car drove \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the main street and turned right \_\_\_\_\_ (4) Cleeve Station Street. Then the car went \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the tunnel \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the river, emerged \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the other side, and went \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the hill \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the war memorial \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the top. \_\_\_\_\_ (11) a few minutes, the car came \_\_\_\_\_ (12) the hill again, drove \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the building of the Ministry without stopping, and started to go right \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the outside edge \_\_\_\_\_ (15) the city.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (16) the river's edge, the explorers divided \_\_\_\_\_ (17) two parties. The first party went downstream \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the river to see if the river went \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the base of the hill that they could all see; the second party went \_\_\_\_\_ (20) the river and \_\_\_\_\_ (21) the jungle straight to the hill. When they got \_\_\_\_\_ (22) the hill, the second party divided \_\_\_\_\_ (23) two groups. A small group went \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the hill to see what they could see

\_\_\_\_\_ (25) the top and \_\_\_\_\_ (26) the hill on the other side. The main group, including the women and children, went \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the hill without climbing it and met the climbers \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the other side.

#### 10. Fill in with appropriate prepositions.

Harry was all ready to make his escape. He had lain there quietly \_\_\_\_\_ (1) his sleeping bag pretending to be asleep \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the guard went \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the room and \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the stairs to the bottom floor. Now Harry crawled \_\_\_\_\_ (5) bed and \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the room to the other side, his heart thumping \_\_\_\_\_ (7) his chest. His clothes were \_\_\_\_\_ (8) a chair standing \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the window and the locked door. He pulled his trousers on \_\_\_\_\_ (10) his pyjamas and slipped the small tube \_\_\_\_\_ (11) explosive \_\_\_\_\_ (12) his right pocket.

Using a bottle top \_\_\_\_\_ (13) a screwdriver, Harry took a large metal ventilation grill \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the wall. Then he tied one end of a rope made \_\_\_\_\_ (15) pieces of sheet \_\_\_\_\_ (16) the bed and the other end \_\_\_\_\_ (17) his waist and climbed \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the hole \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the ventilation shaft. Gradually he lowered himself \_\_\_\_\_ (20) the narrow shaft \_\_\_\_\_ (21) the dim light he could see \_\_\_\_\_ (22) him \_\_\_\_\_ (23) the bottom of the shaft. When he finally arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the bottom he put his shoulders \_\_\_\_\_ (25) the metal grill and pushed with all his strength. Then he was \_\_\_\_\_ (26) the boiler room.

\_\_\_\_\_ (27) the door, \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the other side of the room, was the large boiler, and \_\_\_\_\_ (29) it, just half a metre \_\_\_\_\_ (30) the left, was the iron door that led \_\_\_\_\_ (31) the coal shed ... and freedom. It was bolted from the outside. Harry put the tube of explosive carefully just \_\_\_\_\_ (32) the handle, about two centimetres higher. Then he pushed the detonator carefully \_\_\_\_\_ (33) the soft plastic, and, holding the wires \_\_\_\_\_ (34) his hand, he lay \_\_\_\_\_ (35) the floor \_\_\_\_\_ (36) a thick metal partition. He pressed the wires \_\_\_\_\_ (37) a small battery and there was a deafening explosion. Immediately Harry rushed \_\_\_\_\_ (38) the dust and smoke \_\_\_\_\_ (39) the door. Thank God: it had a large hole \_\_\_\_\_ (40) it. He climbed \_\_\_\_\_ (41) it and ran \_\_\_\_\_ (42) the lights on the other side \_\_\_\_\_ (43) the valley as fast as he could. He was free \_\_\_\_\_ (44) last... or was he?

#### 11. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

The holiday \_\_\_\_\_ (1) Wales was a great success. Michael had been there before, \_\_\_\_\_ (2) 1988 to be precise, but that had been a long time ago and he had gone \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the autumn when the days were shorter and cooler.

This year he and his friends had decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ (4) July and had begun their preparations \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the beginning \_\_\_\_\_ (6) spring.

The group left Edinburgh \_\_\_\_\_ (7) July 10th early \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the morning. Although there were four of them \_\_\_\_\_ (9) the old car and it was loaded \_\_\_\_\_ (10) camping equipment, they arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the Cambrian Mountains \_\_\_\_\_ (12) 8 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the evening. They quickly pitched their tents \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the lake, and \_\_\_\_\_ (15) dusk they lit a fire and cooked supper.

The days went by quickly. Often Michael woke up \_\_\_\_\_ (16) sunrise and went for a quick swim \_\_\_\_\_ (17) the cold water \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the lake. \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the mornings the four friends went for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ (20) the hills or went sailing \_\_\_\_\_ (21) the lake. \_\_\_\_\_ (22) midday they had a picnic lunch and then went fishing or horse riding \_\_\_\_\_ (23) the afternoons. \_\_\_\_\_ (24) sunset Michael lit the fire and cooked a hot supper. Everybody went to bed \_\_\_\_\_ (25) about 9.30, and \_\_\_\_\_ (26) night they slept very soundly.

The weather was warm and sunny most \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the time, but it rained quite heavily \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the third day, Wednesday, and again \_\_\_\_\_ (29) Saturday evening.

The group returned \_\_\_\_\_ (30) Edinburgh \_\_\_\_\_ (31) the third week of July, very happy \_\_\_\_\_ (32) their holiday, and fit and tanned. Michael, \_\_\_\_\_ (33) least, is determined to return \_\_\_\_\_ (34) Wales \_\_\_\_\_ (35) the next long vacation.

#### 12. Complete the following passage with appropriate prepositions.

"The train leaves \_\_\_\_\_ (1) 7 am sharp and you must be here \_\_\_\_\_ (2) least 15 minutes \_\_\_\_\_ (3) that time," said our guide. "We shall now have supper and \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the meal you will be free until bedtime. However, the hostel closes its doors \_\_\_\_\_ (5) 11.15 and it would be a good idea to get here \_\_\_\_\_ (6) half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ (7) then so we can have a cup \_\_\_\_\_ (8) coffee."

"What time does the kitchen close?" asked my husband, Andrew.

"Officially \_\_\_\_\_ (9) 11 o'clock, but it varies every night."

Andrew and I decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the Spanish Quarter, but \_\_\_\_\_ (11) leaving I went \_\_\_\_\_ (12) our room to write a postcard \_\_\_\_\_ (13) my mother. That only took a couple \_\_\_\_\_ (14) minutes, and \_\_\_\_\_ (15)

quickly eating a bar \_\_\_\_\_ (16) chocolate - I was still hungry even \_\_\_\_\_ (17) supper - I met Andrew \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the entrance.

"Perhaps we should walk around first and then \_\_\_\_\_ (19) 9 we might go and see some Spanish dancing," Andrew suggested.

"All right," I replied, "but don't forget we have to be back \_\_\_\_\_ (20) 11.15, even if we miss that cup \_\_\_\_\_ (21) coffee."

"That's fine. I want a good night's sleep anyway. I'd like to get \_\_\_\_\_ (22) the station quite early - \_\_\_\_\_ (23) 6.30 \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the latest - to get a good seat."

"Well, get me one," I said. "I hate getting up early."

"It doesn't make much difference," said Andrew. "The guide said we have to be there \_\_\_\_\_ (25) 6.45 and, anyway, if you're not there \_\_\_\_\_ (26) 7, \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the latest, you'll miss the train."

"Well, let's go and enjoy ourselves," I suggested, "but \_\_\_\_\_ (28) that I must find a postbox. I don't want to carry this postcard around \_\_\_\_\_ (29) me."

We had a great evening. Of course, we arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (30) the hostel \_\_\_\_\_ (31) 12.15, an hour \_\_\_\_\_ (32) closing time. But they let us in. I even got up early next morning and got a good seat \_\_\_\_\_ (33) the train.

### 13. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

1. The First World War lasted \_\_\_\_\_ (1) more than four years, \_\_\_\_\_ (2) 1914 \_\_\_\_\_ (3) 1918. It was the first significant European war \_\_\_\_\_ (4) more than 50 years \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the Crimean War, in fact. Soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ (6) many parts \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the world took part, including India, Australia, Canada and the United States, though the Americans did not take part \_\_\_\_\_ (8) 1917.

2. Queen Victoria ruled Great Britain \_\_\_\_\_ (9) 1837 \_\_\_\_\_ (10) 1901. \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the beginning she surprised her ministers \_\_\_\_\_ (12) her ability. \_\_\_\_\_ (13) 1840 she married Prince Albert, \_\_\_\_\_ (14) whom she had nine children. This meant that she practically disappeared \_\_\_\_\_ (15) public life \_\_\_\_\_ (16) 20 years, \_\_\_\_\_ (17) 1861, in fact, when Prince Albert died. Some years after that she became probably the most popular monarch \_\_\_\_\_ (18) Queen Elizabeth I \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the sixteenth century.

3. Oil was used \_\_\_\_\_ (20) industry and \_\_\_\_\_ (21) automobiles \_\_\_\_\_ (22) many years before it became an international problem. \_\_\_\_\_ (23) 1985 the price of oil remained very low, but \_\_\_\_\_ (24) that time prices have risen sharply. Although \_\_\_\_\_ (25) 1988 \_\_\_\_\_ (26) 1989 there was a halt \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the price rises, there will probably be no change in the present unpredictable situation \_\_\_\_\_ (28) new sources \_\_\_\_\_ (29) energy become abundant.

4. Up \_\_\_\_\_ (30) 1066, England was a country where a number of languages, such \_\_\_\_\_ (31) Celtic and West Saxon, were spoken. \_\_\_\_\_ (32) the next 300 years there was a division \_\_\_\_\_ (33) the old inhabitants, who continued to speak the old languages, and the new rulers \_\_\_\_\_ (34) Normandy, who spoke French. It was probably not \_\_\_\_\_ (35) the time of Chaucer, \_\_\_\_\_ (36) the end of the fourteenth century, that the two languages began to come together. \_\_\_\_\_ (37) then, of course, English has developed considerably, and \_\_\_\_\_ (38) the beginning of the present century \_\_\_\_\_ (39) the present time its progress \_\_\_\_\_ (40) a world language has been astonishing.

5. The All-English Lawn Tennis Championship is probably the most famous tennis tournament. It has been played \_\_\_\_\_ (41) 1877, and \_\_\_\_\_ (42) most of its long history it remained a tournament \_\_\_\_\_ (43) amateurs. \_\_\_\_\_ (44) fairly recently, there was no question of professionals taking part, but \_\_\_\_\_ (45) 1993 \_\_\_\_\_ (46) 1994 considerable difficulties arose as professionals were banned and many of the world's greatest players could not compete. \_\_\_\_\_ (47) 1994, however, all the world's best tennis players have once again taken part, and Wimbledon is once again the number one tournament.

### 14. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.

Life was hard \_\_\_\_\_ (1) French villages \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the nineteenth century. Most \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the men worked \_\_\_\_\_ (4) farms and had to be up \_\_\_\_\_ (5) sunrise because they often began work \_\_\_\_\_ (6) 7 o'clock, milking, ploughing or harvesting. They generally worked \_\_\_\_\_ (7) 7 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ (8) 12 o'clock without stopping, and \_\_\_\_\_ (9) midday they had their lunch: bread and cheese or sometimes meat, and a drink. \_\_\_\_\_ (10) the afternoon they continued to work. They generally worked \_\_\_\_\_ (11) 4 or 5 o'clock and then went home. \_\_\_\_\_ (12) supper they often went out \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the inn \_\_\_\_\_ (14) the evening, drank some beer with their friends and chatted. \_\_\_\_\_ (15) those days, of course, working conditions \_\_\_\_\_ (16) the farms have improved considerably, but farm workers still work very hard \_\_\_\_\_ (17) many hours a day.

**15. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.**

- I'm going away \_\_\_\_\_ (1) a week \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the summer.
- Where are you going?
- To Spain. I went there \_\_\_\_\_ (3) 2000, but only \_\_\_\_\_ (4) two days. It was \_\_\_\_\_ (5) Holy Week and it was very crowded.
- Did you go \_\_\_\_\_ (6) Madrid?
- Yes, but we only stayed there \_\_\_\_\_ (7) a few hours. That's why I want to go back there \_\_\_\_\_ (8) July. This time I'll stay in Madrid \_\_\_\_\_ (9) four days.
- But how much of Madrid can you see \_\_\_\_\_ (10) four days?
- Quite a lot. For example, you can see most \_\_\_\_\_ (11) the famous paintings \_\_\_\_\_ (12) the Prado \_\_\_\_\_ (13) two hours.
- But I like to stand and look \_\_\_\_\_ (14) each painting \_\_\_\_\_ (15) some time. I couldn't see all the good paintings there \_\_\_\_\_ (16) less than four days. Anyway, where are you going \_\_\_\_\_ (17) the other three days?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the Costa Brava. I want to get a bit \_\_\_\_\_ (19) a tan before coming home.
- You won't be able to get a tan \_\_\_\_\_ (20) three days, will you?
- I did when I spent a few days \_\_\_\_\_ (21) Cote d'Azur \_\_\_\_\_ (22) my last holiday.

**16. Complete the following passage with appropriate prepositions.**

Dear Mum and Dad,

You must come \_\_\_\_\_ (1) Moonville! It's easy to get here \_\_\_\_\_ (2) air \_\_\_\_\_ (3) Trans-European \_\_\_\_\_ (4) London and then \_\_\_\_\_ (5) Moonland Airways \_\_\_\_\_ (6) Moontown). \_\_\_\_\_ (7) Moontown you can come \_\_\_\_\_ (8) Moonville \_\_\_\_\_ (9) bus, \_\_\_\_\_ (10) train or \_\_\_\_\_ (11) car. Here \_\_\_\_\_ (12) Moonville you can move around \_\_\_\_\_ (13) taxi, \_\_\_\_\_ (14) beautiful horse-drawn carriages or \_\_\_\_\_ (15) foot, and you can visit Sun Island \_\_\_\_\_ (16) ferry and take a trip \_\_\_\_\_ (17) a boat \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the coast.

We had a wonderful party last night. John and Ann came \_\_\_\_\_ (19) a large black limousine - very elegant! - and several people arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (20) taxis. Peter appeared \_\_\_\_\_ (21) an old bicycle and the band turned up \_\_\_\_\_ (22) a big red bus. Jane - typical of her! - came \_\_\_\_\_ (23) a horse and the Browns arrived \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the 8 pm train. Nick and I went \_\_\_\_\_ (25) carriage - it was a lovely ride - and Fiona overtook us \_\_\_\_\_ (26) her motorcycle. And imagine! \_\_\_\_\_ (27) midnight Brian and Clare landed \_\_\_\_\_ (28) the grass \_\_\_\_\_ (29) a helicopter.

You must come!

Amy

**17. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (1) Napoleon more than a century before, Hitler invaded Russia, but was unsuccessful. \_\_\_\_\_ (2) fighting men, his soldiers were well-trained but they could not endure the cold weather.
2. Speaking \_\_\_\_\_ (3) the official Head \_\_\_\_\_ (4) Government, the Queen reads a speech \_\_\_\_\_ (5) the opening \_\_\_\_\_ (6) Parliament. However, the speech does not express her personal opinions, and, \_\_\_\_\_ (7) many of her listeners, she may not agree \_\_\_\_\_ (8) everything she says.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (9) a number \_\_\_\_\_ (10) other American politicians, Ronald Reagan makes a good impression \_\_\_\_\_ (11) television. \_\_\_\_\_ (12) a former actor, of course, he has a great advantage.
4. Oil, \_\_\_\_\_ (13) other sources of energy, is becoming more expensive, even though, \_\_\_\_\_ (14) 1984, production has increased \_\_\_\_\_ (15) many places \_\_\_\_\_ (16) the North Sea, Africa and the Gulf of Mexico.
5. Some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ (17) Bulgaria, Poland and Czech Republic, became part \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the Eastern Block \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the Second World War. \_\_\_\_\_ (20) Communists, the members \_\_\_\_\_ (21) their governments disapproved \_\_\_\_\_ (22) private enterprise.
6. Chile, \_\_\_\_\_ (23) a largest producer \_\_\_\_\_ (24) copper \_\_\_\_\_ (25) South America, is strategically important. It does not only produce copper, however, and, \_\_\_\_\_ (26) its neighbour Argentina, it makes a considerable amount \_\_\_\_\_ (27) wine.
7. Lyndon B. Johnson was sworn in \_\_\_\_\_ (28) President of the United States \_\_\_\_\_ (29) 1963. Of course, \_\_\_\_\_ (30) his predecessor, John F. Kennedy, he was a Democrat.
8. Foreign Secretary, Sir Anthony Eden, was a successful politician, but many people thought he looked more \_\_\_\_\_ (31) a film-actor than a Minister.
9. Wellington defeated Napoleon \_\_\_\_\_ (32) the Battle of Waterloo. \_\_\_\_\_ (33) the victor \_\_\_\_\_ (34) this crucial battle, he was treated \_\_\_\_\_ (35) a Roman hero \_\_\_\_\_ (36) his return \_\_\_\_\_ (37) England.

**18. Complete the following with appropriate prepositions.**

1. Wagner used legends \_\_\_\_\_ the German Middle Ages \_\_\_\_\_ his most famous operas.
2. Violins made \_\_\_\_\_ Stradivarius \_\_\_\_\_ the eighteenth century are sometimes sold \_\_\_\_\_ their owners \_\_\_\_\_ very large sums of money.
3. "Fidelio" was composed \_\_\_\_\_ Beethoven.
4. The overture \_\_\_\_\_ Mozart's opera "The Magic Flute" is often played \_\_\_\_\_ orchestras \_\_\_\_\_ symphony concerts.
5. Perhaps the best known \_\_\_\_\_ Mozart's concertos \_\_\_\_\_ horn and orchestra is the Horn Concerto No. 3 in E Flat.
6. The last movement \_\_\_\_\_ Beethoven's ninth symphony is unusual because most \_\_\_\_\_ it is sung.
7. Liszt composed variations on a theme \_\_\_\_\_ a work \_\_\_\_\_ Paganini.
8. Handel wrote "The Water Music" \_\_\_\_\_ the King of England.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ some of his songs Schubert took the words \_\_\_\_\_ the poetry of German Romantic writers.
10. The operas \_\_\_\_\_ Wagner are performed frequently \_\_\_\_\_ the opera company \_\_\_\_\_ Bayreuth \_\_\_\_\_ Germany.

## LESSON 3

### PART 1. HAVE A BREAK



A Champagne Special  
Family Offers  
Card Players Special  
Golf Breaks



A Night on the Town  
Sports Break  
Break for Murder  
Music at Leisure

1. Some hotels in Britain provide Leisure Breaks and Special Interest Breaks. What do you think is the difference between them. What kind of Special Interest Breaks can you think of? Choose from the options below.

2. What kind of Special Interest Break would you choose? Explain your answer. Speak to other students in your group. Listen to their reasons, write them down. Agree or disagree to them. Change your former choice if you like.

3. What do you think the programme of the following Special Interest Breaks is:

**BREAK FOR MURDER**

**A NIGHT ON THE TOWN**

**A CHAMPAGNE SPECIAL**

4. Match the description of Special Interest Breaks below with their names above. Explain your answer.

**4**  
**W**

Celebrate your extra-special occasion with Trusthouse Forte. Add an extra sparkle to your celebration with a bottle of chilled pink champagne and a beautiful bouquet of flowers in your room on arrival.



A Special Interest Break plus a ticket for a seat in one of the popular shows in London. Please note, that due to the popularity of various shows, seats may not be available for the dates that you require. We will do our best to offer you the seats or help you to select another show. A booking fee of approximately 25% is included in the price of the theatre tickets.



You'll be there at the scene of the crime, confounded by conflicting evidence. Like Holmes or Poirot, you'll have to use logic and intuition to put your finger on the villain.

## SPECIAL INTEREST BREAKS

### A NIGHT ON THE TOWN



**5. Work in pairs. Match the words and word combinations in column A with their synonyms in column B.**

Verbs		16. depend	p. perform	8. inclusive	h. too
A	B	17. include	q. take about	9. respectively	i. full house
1. be to advantage	a. have high reputation	18. respect	r. come to say good-bye to the deceased	Nouns	
2. turn to advantage	b. be willing to do	19. pay last respects	s. boast		
3. take advantage	c. think that	20. put up a show	t. admire	1. arrangement	a. regards
4. arrange	d. finish	21. show around	u. appear	2. arrangement	b. aspect
5. arrange	e. have low reputation	22. show up	v. rely on	3. arrangement	c. issue
6. arrange (music)	f. change to benefit	23. show off	w. add	4. booking office	d. know-it-all
7. arrange for	g. be useful	Adjectives, Adverbs, etc		5. closed book	e. open voting
8. book	h. think about			6. respect	f. inside
9. be in smd's good book	i. take care of	1. to good advantage	a. sovereign	7. respects	g. preparations
10. be in smd's bad (black) book	j. adapt	2. booked up	b. satisfied	8. respect	h. subject
11. complete	k. put in order	3. complete	c. correspondingly	9. show of hands	i. esteem
12. consider	l. organize	4. considerable	d. comprehensive	10. show off	j. unknown
13. consider	m. use well	5. content	e. absolute	11. consideration	f. box office
14. be content to do something	n. reserve	6. independent	f. substantial	12. content	g. adaptation
		7. included	g. so that the best sides are noticeable	13. contents	h. layout

**6. Match the words in column A in Activity 5 with the definitions below.**

boaster; arrive where someone is waiting for you; go to someone's funeral; things that are written in a book etc; try (well or poorly) to do something; admiration; arrange for a ticket etc for a particular time; have, a good opinion of somebody or something; show important things at some place; total; put smith in some order to look attractive; need something to do something; show something in the way that emphasizes its good sides; having no rooms (hotel), tables (restaurant), tickets (theatre); try to make people admire yourself; method of voting in which people raise their hands; things that are put in a certain position; large in amount or degree; room where you can buy or book a ticket, esp. in a theatre or a railway station; including everything mentioned; change music, etc. so that it is suitable for something; make good use of something; transform the situation into a beneficial one; terra incognita; be beneficial; happy; plans and preparations for something; something that you have to think about; music written or changed for a specific instrument; amount of a substance that is contained in something; used to introduce a part of a larger group that has just been mentioned;

## 7. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 5.

1. Nobody was \_\_\_\_\_ (1) to take that room. 2. The hotel reservation is an important \_\_\_\_\_ (2), I agree. 3. I can't speak to her, I'm in her black \_\_\_\_\_ (3) at the moment. 4. I know you've made all the necessary \_\_\_\_\_ (4) for the meeting. 5. She asked the hotel staff to \_\_\_\_\_ (5) marmalade into her breakfast every morning. 6. The light in the room showed the picture to the best \_\_\_\_\_ (6). 7. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ (7), you aren't a child. 8. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (8) him for his knowledge. 9. She is not \_\_\_\_\_ (9) with the receptionist's explanations. 10. The USA have been \_\_\_\_\_ (10) for more than 200 years. 11. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ (11) a single room. 12. He took \_\_\_\_\_ (12) of his staying in London and visited the National Gallery. 13. I'm sorry, we have no tickets. We are \_\_\_\_\_ (13). 14. They put up quite a good \_\_\_\_\_ (14), but they never completed their task. 15. It's a fully \_\_\_\_\_ (15) price. 16. The long-awaited guests finally \_\_\_\_\_ (16) at the hotel yesterday morning. 17. She won't like this flower \_\_\_\_\_ (17). 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (18) the new chambermaid around, she must know the hotel well. 19. What is the \_\_\_\_\_ (19) of this bottle? 20. Your visit to London wouldn't be \_\_\_\_\_ (20) without it. 21. I \_\_\_\_\_ (21) this room a good one. 22. We can \_\_\_\_\_ (22) for the theatre tickets. 23. His mother died yesterday and he arrived to pay his \_\_\_\_\_ (23). 24. He's a real \_\_\_\_\_ (24), nobody likes him. 25. We have paid a \_\_\_\_\_ (25) amount of money for this penthouse. 26. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ (26) idiot. 27. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the meeting for tomorrow. 28. I can't discuss mathematics, it's a \_\_\_\_\_ (28) for me. 29. He suddenly turned the situation to his \_\_\_\_\_ (29). 30. Everybody was there, President \_\_\_\_\_ (30). 31. She \_\_\_\_\_ (31) the flowers in the vase. 32. I can't say anything in this \_\_\_\_\_ (32). 33. This hotel dramatically \_\_\_\_\_ (33) on the May Festival in town. 34. They \_\_\_\_\_ (34) building the hotel last year. 35. I admire this folk song \_\_\_\_\_ (35). 36. It might be to your \_\_\_\_\_ (36) to learn English. 37. Everybody has the greatest \_\_\_\_\_ (37) for him. 38. I have no time to \_\_\_\_\_ (38) your explanation. 39. He did not \_\_\_\_\_ (39) the form and could not get the room. 40. Give my \_\_\_\_\_ (40) to the hotel manager. 41. He \_\_\_\_\_ (41) the classical piece for the guitar. 42. She could not provide a copy of the book but outlined its \_\_\_\_\_ (42). 43. Can I have a \_\_\_\_\_ (43) of hands on this issue?



## 8. Substitute the italicized words with the words from column A in Activity 5.

1. I don't like the way he *changed* the song. 2. Did you *finish* reading the book? 3. She *can't live without the help of* her children. 4. The USA *slopped to be a colony* more than 200 years ago. 5. That's a very good *idea*. 6. He didn't *demonstrate* that he had a *good opinion* of her. 7. Staying in a duplex is a great *benefit*. 8. She wasn't *happy* with the night porter's explanation. 9. Did you *reserve* a table for tonight? 10. This is an *absolutely unknown area* for me. 11. What's *in this bottle*? 12. She made *good use* of staying in Brighton, spending all her time by the sea. 13. *Take the hotel guests downtown* after lunch. 14. You have two days to *think about* my proposal. 15. Was breakfast *part of* my room rate? 16. I'm not *a full* idiot, I'm not going to pay for this. 17. He's going to do all *necessary things* tomorrow. 18. She is always *parading trying to impress others*, but most people see it at once. 19. Few like *parade-making people*. 20. The price of the room *covers* services and meals. 21. That company *got benefits* even from the bad economic situation in the country. 22. The hotel accepts cheques *subject* to clearance requirements. 23. Her life wouldn't *be full* without music. 24. Did you *fill* in the guest registration form? 25. The theatre *has no tickets* for tonight. 26. People had a *good opinion* about her grandfather. 27. When he died many of them came to *say the last good-bye to him*. 28. In many *aspects* this is the best hotel available. 29. The manager used the presentation to emphasize the *good sides* of the hotel. 30. It might be *useful for you* to go to that conference. 31. At last they *agreed to* take a twin room. 32. Go to the *ticket room* over there and buy two tickets for the 9 o'clock train. 33. I can't ask him about anything, I *have a bad reputation with him*. 34. Do you remember the *location* of the rooms on this floor?

**9. Work in pairs. In all lines of the following ad for the *Night on the Town* special weekend break there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-14, find this word and then mark it in the text.**

### A NIGHT ON THE TOWN

2 No trip to London would be completed without a night on the town at a top show. Thrusthouse  
3 Forte can arrange your seats for some of the best shows in London. We have a wide selections of  
shows for yours to consider. Musicals, thrillers or comedies, we can offer a seat for a matinee or



evening performance. We can obtain also tickets for the opera or a special concert; please do not hesitate to ask our reservations staff if there is something you particularly want to see.

#### WHAT'S INCLUDED:

1. A ticket for one of the popular shows listed above, included booking fee. Please note: Seat availability and prices may vary depending on the chosen show. Please contact our reservations staff for details. 2. Two nights accommodation. 3. Accommodation with colour TV, telephone and private bathroom (excepts at the Regent Palace Hotel where there are no private bathrooms. However there are large serviced bathrooms on each floors). 4. Full traditional breakfast each morning. 5. Sendee & VAT. Important: Theatre ticket prices were correct on the time of going to press. Please do not contact the hotel directly as they cannot arranging Theatre Breaks. The full price must be being paid at the time of booking. Three working days and five working days are required to clear credit card and cheque payments respecting.

10. Work in pairs. Look through the information below and then proceed to the tasks.

### YOUR CHOICE OF SHOWS

Listed below are London's most popular shows. Select which category you prefer and match the letter with the price panel shows.

- A. The Mousetrap \* Run for Your Wife \* Out of Order
- B. Return to the forbidden Planet \* Buddy
- C. Me & My Girl \* Blood Brothers \* Starlight Express
- D. Phantom of the Opera \* Cats \* Les Miserables \* Aspects of Love \* Miss Saigon

### THEATRE BREAKS

All prices are p. p. for two nights in pounds, for a twin, double or single room and includes your theatre ticket and the contents of the 'What's Included' Panel.

MAYFAIR & THE WEST END						
Show Code	THE CAVENDISH	CUMBERLAND HOTEL	REGENT CREST HOTEL	REGENT PALACE HOTEL	ST.GEORGE'S HOTEL	THE WEST-BURY
A	121	113	113	79	121	141
B	128	120	120	86	127	148
C	pi	125	125	91		153
D	137	123	129	35	137	157

KNIGHTSBRIDGE & KENSINGTON		HAMPSTEAD		EXCLUSIVE HOTELS	
Show Code	THE KENSINGTON CLOSE	POST HOUSE HOTEL HAMPSTEAD	BROWNS HOTEL	GROSVENOR HOUSE	HYDE PARK HOTEL
A	101	101	221	182	221
B	107	108	228	188	228
C	113	113	L33	193	
D	117	117	237	197	237

If you have chosen to stay at one of our hotels at Heathrow and wish to take advantage of Night on the Town, please contact our reservations staff for details.

11. Work in pairs. Look at the description of "A Night on the Town" again. In "Your Choices of Shows" you see four categories of London's most popular shows. The three of them are: 1) musicals; 2) thrillers; 3) comedies. Match the three genres with the categories in the advertisement (A, B, C or D). How would you name the fourth category? What category would you choose? Explain your answer. Talk to your partner and consider his/her choice.



12. Work in pairs. Compare the prices at different hotels for "A Night on the Town" (for different categories of shows). What is included into the price? Which hotel is the most expensive one? Which hotel is the cheapest? Explain the difference between them (service, location, the type of the hotel, etc.). Which hotel would you choose? Why?

13. Work in pairs. You can book "A Night on the Town" at any of the hotels given in the ad tables. True or false? Explain your answer.

14. Work in pairs. The Theatre Break you would like to book starts next Friday. It is Friday (Monday, Wednesday) today. What mode of payment (cash, a credit card, a cheque) can you use for each of the days respectively? Explain your answer.

15. Translate. Use your active vocabulary to render the italicized words.

А. *Скористайтеся* своєю поїздкою до Києва та відвідайте *вистави* провідних театрів України. *Зарезервуйте* номер у затишному готелі у центрі міста, неподалік від театрів, і ви зробите власне враження від перебування у столиці *повним*. Відразу ж *теля ресстрації* у готелі *замовте* квитки до кращих театрів. Консьєрж *запропонує* вам вибір мюзиклів, комедій, драм та трилерів на ваш *розсуд*, залежно від ситуації. Він також може *подати* вам короткий *зміст* вистав, *включаючи* *відповідні* відгуки преси. Якщо ви *замовите* квитки заздалегідь, то не будете *залежати* від випадку. Деякі вистави такі популярні, що квитки важко купити навіть за кілька днів до вистави. Тому попереднє *замовлення* в усіх *відношеннях* буде корисним для вас, і ви залишитеся *задоволеними* своїм перебуванням у місті. Для багатьох закордонних відвідувачів український театр є *зовсім невідомим*, і вони *проявляють* значну зацікавленість ним. Театри намагаються *скористатися* ситуацією, коли *значна* кількість гостей щоденно *прибуває* до Києва та певний час *перебуває* у ньому. Театри *пропонують* шпорокий вибір вистав, *включаючи* опери у Національному оперному театрі і концерти у палаці "Україна" та Палаці спорту *відповідно*.

Б. 1. Ваша пропозиція *містить* у собі *абсолютно все* і тому дуже приваблива в усіх *відношеннях*. *Я повністю задоволена* нею. 2. Будь ласка, *покажіть мені* приміщення. Для мене це *зовсім незнана справа*, і я хотів би *залагодити* усі питання, перш ніж *розглядати* вашу пропозицію. 3. Чому ви не прийшли на виставу? - На жаль, не змогла *вчасно залагодити* свої справи, забула послати секретарку до *театральної каси* і з *явилася* лише перед самим початком. Звичайно, квитків уже не було. 4. Давайте *обговоримо* варіант *розташування* номерів на другому поверсі. Ви *задоволені* проектом? - *Залежно* від того, скільки це коштує. 5. Слід *скористатися* із ситуації для покращення роботи персоналу готелю, *включаючи* фінансовий відділ. Я *абсолютно незадоволений* його роботою, а ви? - Так, я згоден, це важливе *міркування*. Вони повинні *поважати* рішення керуючого. 6. Ситуація *на нашу користь*. *Зміст* цього документу робить їх *залежними* від нас. Давайте *голосувати*. 1. *Розташування* крісел є важливим *міркуванням* Потрібно по-

казати товар з кращого боку в усіх відношеннях. Замовники мають бути задоволеними. 8. Ви незалежна компанія? - Ні, ми дочірнє підприємство, хоча наша *робота* дозволяє нам розглядати можливості стати самостійною компанією. Усе *залежить* від домовленостей з головним офісом. 9. Передайте мої щирі вітання керуючому готелем, метрдотелю та шеф-кухарю. Я дуже задоволений їхньою роботою, включаючи розташування об'єктів у вестибюлі та ресторані. Цей готель на *гарному рахунку* у головному офісі. 10. Найвищі посадові особи компанії, включаючи президента компанії, його заступників та головного бухгалтера відповідно, прибули аби *віддати останню шану*. 11. Ти домовилася про зустріч? - Так, я зарезервувала столик у ресторані на шосту - Хто буде? - Усі, про кого ми говорили, включаючи керуючого, та ще Джон. - Я його не *поважаю*, він такий *задавака*, весь час *хизується*. - Я знаю, але він несподівано з '*явився*, і я не змогла нічого зробити.

В. 1. Вам подобається *розташування* квітів у вазі? - Для такої *вистави* я б *обмірковував* щось інше. Усе повинно *вигідно* підкреслювати *повагу* до господаря дома, чи не так? 2. Непросто завоювати *незалежність* та *повагу* інших народів. 3. *Включіть* податок на додану вартість до ціни і ви одержите *повну* вартість товару. 4. Давайте *обміркуємо* цю пропозицію. Чому ви вагаєтесь? - Усе *залежить* від його *роботи*. У минулому він тільки й знав, що *хизувався* увесь час, а коли я *домовився* про зустріч для нього, він з '*явився* на півгодини пізніше. З того часу він у моїх *чорних списках*. 5. Ціна за номер *включає* сніданок? - Так, вона *включає абсолютно все*: проживання, трпразове харчування і культурну програму. 6. *Проведіть* мене додому, будь ласка. Я *домовилася* про таксі, але воно чомусь не приїхало. 7. Які *переваги* життя за містом? - Ти *розглядаєш* можливість життя за містом? - Так, знайомий *запропонував* мені пожити в його будинку. - І ти погодився? - Це *залежить* від *відповідних* обставин, включаючи мої попередні *домовленості* тощо. Я не можу бути *залежним* від будь-кого. Мені потрібна *цілковита* свобода. 8. На ваш *розсуд*: будемо проводити *відкрите голосування*! - В усіх відношеннях так було б набагато краще. 9. Коли секретарка забула *зарезервувати* квитки, Глорія скористалася з цього? - А як же. Вона влаштувала справжній *спектакль*, включаючи виконання своєї найкращої ролі - розгніваної дружини. 10. Будьте *задоволені*, що вони взагалі *передали* вам привіт. Вони рідко виявляють *повагу* до інших.

Г. 1. *Домовтеся* про усі формальності та *зарезервуйте* квитки. Ми обов'язково повинні *віддати останню шану* цій людині. 2. Цей готель просто блискучий в усіх відношеннях. 3. *Проведіть* його до номера, хай він *обміркує* ситуацію там. *Залежно* від його рішення, *запропонуйте* йому вечерю або *проведіть* на вокзал. 4. Ви вже *обговорювали* роботу нового обладнання? - Ще ні. - А яка ваша думка? - Я не маю *повного задоволення* від його роботи, але остаточне рішення *залежить* від думки незалежних експертів. 5. Дивно, що компанія *не скористалася* зі своєї *переваги* та *не* домовилася про угоду, *включаючи* купівлю готелю. 6. Я маю глибоку *повагу* до цієї компанії, але *результати її роботи* останнім часом не вражають, вона навіть не брала участі у зимовій *виставці*. 7. Його *аранжування* відомих пісень дуже понулярні. Ця понулярність навіть *не залежить* від віку слухачів. 8. Коли починається останній *сеанс*. - О восьмій - Тоді *домовся* про квитки. 9. Ти ходила до *театральної каси*! - Так. - Що вони *пропонують*] - Досить великий вибір: трилери, мюзикли, комедії... 10. Ти бачила *телешоу* учора? - Ні, я мала *залагодити* деякі справи, а ти дивився? - Так, я одержав *повне задоволення*. *Гра* акторів, *включаючи* запрошених зірок, була просто блискучою. 11 Не вагайтеся жодної хвилини, облиште вже свої *розмірковування*. Вони можуть *з'явитися* тут будь-якої миті. Не забувайте: ви вже давно в *чорних списках*. 12. Мені не подобається як *розставлені* меблі у цій кімнаті. Якщо ви погодитеся змінити їхнє *розташування*, я *замовлю* квартиру на півроку. - Добре, а платити будете готівкою? - Скільки це коштуватиме? - Близько трьох тисяч, *включаючи* податок на додапу вартість. 13. Ви вже бачили виставу? - Так, це справжнє *сінєке шоу*, квитки слід замовляти заздалегідь. - А який, власне, її *зміст*, це сучасна чи традиційна п'єса. - Надсучасна, тому говорити про *зміст* дуже важко, краще подивіться. 14. Ми повністю *залежимо* від рішення президента компанії. Що будемо робити? - Давайте спробуємо *повернути ситуацію на власну користь*.

## PART 2. BREAK FOR MURDER



### 1. Work in pairs. Explain the meaning of the italicised word in the sentences below.

I. *Plot your way* onto one of our Special Interests Breaks. 2. The detective *is investigating* the murder. 3. I have *an appointment* with him for tomorrow. 4. What is the *theme* of today's lecture? 5. The day began so *innocently*, and look what happened! 6. Don't *be deceived* by this. He's a murderer. 7. You'll *need your wits* for this. 8. When did the murder *occur*? 9. Listen to their *conversation* carefully. 10. You have to *glean* information to find the answer. II. I'm sorry that this *hotel proved* so bad. 12. This is *vital* information, thank you. 13. His death was *sudden*. 14. Unfortunately, death is *inevitable*, all people die. 15. I know her, she is my *fellow* student. 16. There was a murder yesterday. Do you know the *victim*? 17. The night porter *uncovered* the victim in the garden. 18. Who's the murderer? *Anybody's guess*. 19. He is the *suspect*. Everybody thinks he's a murderer. 20. Your information helped to *narrow down* the suspects. 21. Where is the *Police Incident Room*? 22. They *display* all hotel information here. 23. Have you got any *clues* as to this murder? 24. Have you got any *evidence* which may help? 25. Is everything in its place? - No, my watch is *missing*. 26. It's a *jigsaw* game, I like it. 27. Are there any *witnesses*? 28. I'll have to *cross-question* you. 29. You may *obtain* the information from this witness. 30. At last the suspect *confessed*. 31. *Eventually* the suspect confessed. 32. Eventually the policeman *cracked* the glass. 33. The suspect will confess, *especially* after this evidence. 34. You'll soon become *accustomed* to this noise. Don't worry. 35. This person died long ago. There is only a *skeleton* here. 36. The cold wind *rattled* the windows. 37. There was a *rich reek* of cigarettes in the rooms. 38. Take this medicine to *relieve* the pain. 39. Have some rest to relieve the *tension*. 40. There was *mayhem* in the classroom. The students were completely out of control.

## BREAK FOR MURDER



Plot your way onto one of our murder breaks and put yourself in the role of detective, as armchair investigator.

2. Work in pairs. Match the words and word combinations in column A with their synonyms in column B.



Verbs		26. relieve of	z. reel off	8. event	h. sign
A	B	27. relieve	aa. wish for	9. event	i. boyfriend
1. crack	a. keeep secret	28. relieve smd	ab. overlook	10. evidence	j. man
2. crack	b. take over for	29. relieve of duty	ac. clatter	11. evidence	k. colleague
3. crack	c substitute for	30. sharpen one's wits	ad. lighten the burden	12. evidence	l. organized occasion
4. crack	d. testify	31. scare out of one's wits	ae. ease	13. fellow	m. proofs
5. crack	e. fail to hit the target	32. be at one's wits' end	af. liberate	14. fellow	n. clues
6. paste over the cracks	f. misunderstand	Adjectives, Adverbs, etc		15. fellow	o. bout
7. give evidence	g. collapse	1. proof	a. stiff	16. fellow	p. decoration
8. miss	h. joke	2. crackers	b. final	17. fellowship	q. type of serpentine
9. miss	i. decipher	3. eventful	c in the end	18. fellowship	r first copy to be checked for errors
10. miss	j. snap	4. eventual	d. very early	19. fellowship	s. sports fan's clatter
11. miss	k. fracture	5. eventually	e. comforted	20. occurrence	t. baby's toy
12. miss	l. unnerve	6. evident	f. mad	21. proof	u. society
13. miss the boat	m. chatter	7. missing	g. clear	22. rattle	v. associate
14. never miss the trick	n. frighten very much	8.at the crack of dawn	h. anxious	23. proofs	w. incident
15. miss out	o. demonstrate	9. relieved	i. busy	24. rattle	x. grant
16. occur	p. justify	10. tense	j. absent	25. rattlesnake	y. confirmation
17. occur	q. skip	11. tense	k. resistant	26. relief	z. friendship
18. prove	r. come to mind	Nouns		27. relief	aa. key to open different locks
19. prove	s. turn out	1. crack	a. occurrence	28. skeleton	ab. smartness
20. prove	t. see no way out	2. crack	b. strong measures	29. skeleton staff	ac. apprehension
21. rattle away (on)	u. be always in time to see	3. crackdown	c gag	30. skeleton key	ad. humor
22. rattle	v. take place	4. crack	d. biscuit	31. tension	ae. ground surface
23. rattle	w. do without	5. crack	e. intelligence	32. wit	af. framework
24. rattle through	x. be late	6. cracker	f. gap	33. the wit	ag. snap
25. relieve	y. train brains	7. event	g. fracture	34. wits	ah. main personnel

### 3. Match the words in column A in Activity 2 with the definitions below.

sense of humour; do something very quickly to finish it as soon as possible; baby's toy that produces a lot of clattering when the baby shakes it; framework of a building; feeling of companionship among people who are doing something together; ability to do the right thing; first printed copy of a book etc, which people read to correct misprints before they publish more copies; show that something is true; replace somebody; make somebody worried, etc; something that happens; action taken to deal more strictly with a problem; fail to hit something; part of sports competition; try to hide things; full of events; early in the morning; very narrow space between two objects, nervous and worried; lose your chance because you did not act quickly enough; basic staff; facts that show something; fail to understand; not to know what to do next; lose control of oneself; come about; make funny remarks; surface of the earth; something that happened; solve a problem; talk quickly and for a long time about non-important things; ability to think quickly in a difficult situation; planned and organized happening; happening at the end of some process; be sorry that you don't have or do something; make a sharp sound like the sound of a piece of wood breaking; supporting materials; make easier; information used in a court of law; reveal something; break something slightly with a network or many lines appearing on its surface; indication; gentleman (old-fashioned); post where you do research (at a university); with non-relaxed muscles; officially tell in a court of law what one knows; poisonous American snake; know everything that is happening; joke (usually slightly rude); not in its usual place; apparent; have a sudden idea; crisp biscuit; universal key which can open many doors; sweetheart or a lover (informal); make one more able to think clearly in difficult situations; sharp sound; help by taking something from somebody; person who has something in common with somebody; break the shell; wooden instrument which makes a lot of clattering when people (e. g. football fans) shake it; state of being tense; sculpture made out of a flat vertical surface; member of a society or academic institution; make a lot of sharp knocking sounds; line that appears on the surface when something is damaged; take somebody's job; crazy; group of people who get together for a common purpose and interest; be found to be; fail to notice something; skip doing something; at the end of some process; fail to go somewhere (do something); resistant to the effect of agents like water, chemical materials etc; to free; make somebody so afraid that s/he can't think clearly;



### 4. Complete the sentences below with the words from column A in Activity 2.

- A. 1. Games and quizzes have sharpened his \_\_\_\_\_ was \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the window, and she would not fall asleep. S. This building has a metal \_\_\_\_\_ (3). 4. The murder \_\_\_\_\_ (4) at midnight. 5. The people at the hotel grew \_\_\_\_\_ (5) because of the murder. 6. You can't \_\_\_\_\_ (6) it, it's right in the middle of the reception hall. 7. The medicine helped to \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the pain. 8. There is a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (8) among the members of this society. 9. His arrival at the hotel was the main \_\_\_\_\_ (9) of the day. 10. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (10) to hear that he is innocent. 11. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ (11) a comma here? 12. The detective \_\_\_\_\_ (12) that John was innocent. 13. After it happened they have been trying to \_\_\_\_\_ (13) all the time to keep it secret. 14. There aren't too many guests in winter, so the hotel keeps only the \_\_\_\_\_ (14). 15. This concert is a major social \_\_\_\_\_ (15) every year. 16. There were usual \_\_\_\_\_ (16) about the government, nobody seemed to like it. 17. John threw the bottle at the criminal's head but \_\_\_\_\_ (17), alas. 18. Let me \_\_\_\_\_ (18) you of your coat. 19. His questions \_\_\_\_\_ (19) her, and she blushed. 20. The detective scared the hotel guests out of their \_\_\_\_\_ (20). 21. Now we come to the 200-meter \_\_\_\_\_ (21) of the competition. 22. She has been \_\_\_\_\_ (22) on the phone all day long, and about nothing, too. 23. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ (23) between the door and the wall, I can see the light. 24. It was \_\_\_\_\_ (24) that he liked his room. 25. Incredible! He has been \_\_\_\_\_ (25) of his position as General Manager. 26. Her back is \_\_\_\_\_ (26), she needs some massage. 27. She is here again, she never \_\_\_\_\_ (27). 28. If I don't leave, I might \_\_\_\_\_ (28), my nerves are on the brink. 29. The night porter has a \_\_\_\_\_ (29) to all doors. 30. There was an impressive \_\_\_\_\_ (30) in the hotel lobby, reproducing some historic battle.

- B. 1. John founded the American-Ukrainian \_\_\_\_\_ (1) at the University of Cincinnati. 2. What \_\_\_\_\_ (2) have you got to convince the jury? 3. It was the most \_\_\_\_\_ (3) day in my life, so exciting! 4. There was no more evidence and the detective was at his \_\_\_\_\_ (4). 5. The \_\_\_\_\_ (5) aim of the operation is to find the murderer. 6. The night porter is to \_\_\_\_\_ (6) the receptionist at ten. 7. Look at the way she is looking at us! She probably thinks we are \_\_\_\_\_ (7), just out of the institution. 8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (8) the rest of the meeting and finished it in ten minutes. 9.

Though not being particularly fond of her, he never showed any \_\_\_\_\_ (9) evidence of it. 10. He's got a \_\_\_\_\_ (10) this year, and is planning to write a book. 11. The baby's crying, give her a \_\_\_\_\_ (11) - children like noise. 12. The information \_\_\_\_\_ (12) to be useful for the detective. 13. The army had \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the city by night. 14. There's a \_\_\_\_\_ (14) in this vase, it should be glued. 15. As soon as that thought had \_\_\_\_\_ (15) to him, he under-

stood everything. 16. It's too late now, you've \_\_\_\_\_ (16). 17. Now when she is away from home, she \_\_\_\_\_ (17) her family very much. 18. The \_\_\_\_\_ (18) is rather monotonous here, everything is flat. 19. After the assassination attempt the whole country expected a \_\_\_\_\_ (19) on the criminals. 20. John kept \_\_\_\_\_ (20) gags all evening long. 21. Can you check these \_\_\_\_\_ (21) promptly - the book must be out next week. 22. I'm afraid, you've \_\_\_\_\_ (22) my point. 23. He heard a sharp \_\_\_\_\_ (23) behind, someone had stepped onto a dry branch. 24. Finally the detective \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the case. 25. Use your \_\_\_\_\_ (2), there must be a way out. 26. This is John White, \_\_\_\_\_ (26) of European Linguistic Society. 27. The cook \_\_\_\_\_ (27) the egg over the plate. 28. During the flight she talked to almost all \_\_\_\_\_ (28) passengers. 29. I can't find my bracelet, it's \_\_\_\_\_ (29). 30. A branch \_\_\_\_\_ (30) under my foot. 30. Nobody had the \_\_\_\_\_ (30) to bring the keys to the rooms. 31. There was general \_\_\_\_\_ (30) at the hotel because of this terrible \_\_\_\_\_ (30A). 31. This watch is \_\_\_\_\_ (31), you can swim without taking it off. 32. Hot water can \_\_\_\_\_ (32) the glass. 33. He'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ (33) his classes tomorrow, he should stay in bed. 34. Our strategy was \_\_\_\_\_ (34) correct. 35. You couldn't hear much because of the fan's \_\_\_\_\_ (35). 36. The chambermaid laughed at his \_\_\_\_\_ (36).

**5. Work in pairs. In all lines of the following ad for the *Break for Murder* there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-20, find this word and then mark it in the text.**

### APPOINTMENT WITH DEATH

1 Your murder weekend begins in advance to your arrival. A month before, you'll receive details on  
2 the theme of the plot, giving you ample time to think about the role you'll enacting in this exciting  
3 drama. Your weekend will begin innocent enough, but don't be deceived, the plot begins as you  
4 enjoy the cocktail reception on Friday night. A murder may not occurred, but you'll need your  
5 wits with you as you listen to the conversations, gleaning details that may later prove vital. Sudden  
6 death is inevitable, maybe a fellow dinner guest at your table or perhaps the victim will be  
7 uncovered in the garden - who knows! One thing's for certain, the excitement had only just begun,  
8 and the murderer? Anybody's guess.

### NARROWING DOWN THE SUSPECTS

9 On Saturday morning the Police Incident Room is set up, displaying vital clues and evidences  
10 gathered during tonight. You'll obtain the missing pieces in the jigsaw of clues by cross-  
11 questioning the suspects, many of whom will tell you lies and only confess the truth when you'll  
12 eventually 'crack them down'. Once you obtained the evidence and pieced the clues together  
13 you'll 'crack the case' - especially when you know all the people - their life histories, motives  
14 and alibis. You'll soon become accustomed to the sound of old skeletons rattle in the cupboards  
15 and to the rich reek of several red herrings.

### GAMES & QUIZZES

16 To relieve tension you'll also have a lot of fun with the games and quizzes each one giving you  
17 the chance to win super prizes as well as to get to know your fellows detectives. All that plus the  
18 warmth, comfort and superbly cuisine common to every Thrusthouse Hotel. One last point: your  
19 room is your home, out of murder and mayham - once you've shut your bedroom door, you can be  
20 sure of a pause in the plot and the chance to relax with comfort.

**6. Work in pairs. Substitute the italicized fragments with the words and expressions from column A in Activity 16.**

1. The detective couldn't obtain any *facts* which could help him to find the murderer. 2. Have you corrected *the first copy* of your article? 3. The detective's strategy turned out to be wrong, and now he *did not know what to do*. 3. They quickly finished the cross-questioning, and the new police officers *replaced* them. 4. It is *clear* that the suspect did not leave his room. 5. *Clearly* the cross-questioning *frightened him very much*. 6. There was *a narrow space* between the two doors. 7. There is no *sign* of relief so far, she is still in bed. 8. They have *tried to hide the information about what happened*. 9. I'm *not going to* my classes tomorrow. 10. The police *took strong measures* against the murderers. 11. The half open door *clattered* in the wind. 12. At last the police *solved* the problem. They found the *man* and they had the *evidence*, so everybody was *satisfied*. 13. My questions *worriedhQr*. Probably she *didn't understand me*. 14. It was a day full of *accomplishments*. *Early in the morning* there *happened* a murder at the hotel. There was a general





state of worry and nervousness among the guests. The police could not *provide any evidence*, because they *did not act quickly enough*, and probably the murderer *was not at the hotel any more*. The *basic* hotel staff were still at the hotel. They had nothing to do, so the receptionist *told his endless jokes* to the chambermaids, who laughed at his *humour*. 15. The army *liberated* the city in three days' time. 16. She *was sorry her family was not with her*. Because of that, she felt *nervousness and worry*, and she finally *lost control of herself*. An idea *came to her mind* that she could *ease* her pain by taking a *research post* at her university for the next year. 17. There was a *sculpture made out of a flat vertical surface* on each side of the front door. 18. I'm sure that *in the end* the detective will find the *proof* against the other two *passengers* who were on the bus. 19. *The surface of the ground* is very interesting here. 20. A small stone hit the glass and *broke it slightly*. 21. The hotel staff are *nervous and worried* because the company *replaced* the hotel manager. 22. The TV-people *talked quickly* saying their usual *jokes* about the Parliament. 23. She must be *mad*. Her watch *can't work in the water*, and she doesn't take it off when swimming. 24. Babies are fond of noise so they like *clattering* toys. 25. May I *skip* this sentence? 26. John took part in both 100 and 200-meter *competitions*. 27. This family *is* desperately *trying to keep it secret*. 28. The criminal threw the knife but *didn't hit* the policeman. It was a happy *incident*. 29. Hard life *improved his thinking*, and he *understood everything happening in town* well. 30. The police did not take the trouble to *think* of bringing a *universal* key.

**7. Work in pairs. Familiarize yourself with the What's Included section of the ad and then proceed to the tasks.**



To book your Break for Murder simply call our reservations staff on (0345) 543-543

### WHAT'S INCLUDED

n pounds for 2 nights and include:

- \* Accommodation in a twin, double or single room with private bathroom.
- \* Colour TV, telephone.
- \* Tea/coffee making facilities.
- \* Welcome reception on arrival.
- \* Three course table d'hote dinner followed by coffee each day.
- \* Full traditional breakfast each day.
- \* Buffet lunch on Saturday.
- \* Service and VAT.
- \* Activity programme as detailed, to include competitions, games and murders as appropriate to each plot.

N.B. These breaks are not suitable for children under 16.

The "Break for Murder" is a weekend break, so you can arrive on Saturday. True or false? Explain your answer. The "murder" may happen any day of the week during your break. True or false? Explain your answer. If you have booked the "Break for Murder", you will play the role of the defective and you will work alone. True or false?

Explain your answer. The hotels use special effects to make the situation look like a real life situation. What kind of effects those may be? Do you agree that they help to make the situation tense? The "Break for Murder" is for people with good nerves, because there is tension throughout the weekend, and you can't relieve it. True or false? Explain your answer.

**8. Translate. Use your active vocabulary to render the italicized words**

А. У п'ятницю увечері у готелі сталася трагічна *подія*. Нічний *порт'є* почув *клацання* в одному з номерів на другому поверсі. Йому *спало на думку*, що то був постріл. Він постукав, але не почув жодних *ознак* життя. Поки він ходив за *відмичкою*, злодій *певно* залишив кімнату, бо коли порт'є повернувся, двері були відчинені. Порт'є зателефонував до поліції. Приїхав інспектор, який *налякав усіх до дрижаків*. Він наказав зачинити двері і нікого не винускати. Потім він допитав порт'є, покоївок, носильників та посильних і виявив, що деякі речі *зникли*. Інспектор опитав усіх підозрюваних, багато з яких брехали і *здалися* лише після перехресного допиту. Інспектор вислухав багато *порожньої балаканини*, але не *пропустив* головного. Та

все ж до *світанку* він вже *не знав, що й думати*. Він мав силу силенну *доказів*, та ніяк не міг об'єднати їх у одне ціле. Раптом щось йому *спало на думку*. Він зрозумів, що персонал готелю має *таємницю*, яку вони *ретельно приховували*. Він ще раз допитав *головний персонал* і *кінець кінцем розколов горішок*. Інспектор одержав *докази*, яких *бракувало*, та заарештував *підозрюваного*. Це *розрядило напругу* у закладі. Директор організував безплатний коктейль для усіх, хто проживав тут. Аби відзначити цю *подію*, хтось із гостей запропонував заснувати "*Братство Готелю "Грін Мен"*", і приймати до нього усіх, хто жив тут, але не *зламався* у важку хвилину. *Вочевидь* багатьом ця ідея сподобалася. Звичайно, найбільше *торохтіла* покоївка. Вона *ніколи нічого не пропустить*, навіть коли це якась дрібниця. Що вже й говорити про таку надзвичайну *подію*!

Б. 1. Джон без упину *жартував* з приводу *скелетів*, що були виставлені на вітрині, а офіціантки реготали від його *дотепності*. 2. *Каркас* будівлі може витримати велику *напругу*. 3. Хоча її годинник був *водонепроникним*, скло не витримало *напруги* і *тріснуло*. 4. Здається, ви мене *не зрозуміли*. Ми змінили нічного *порт'є*, але вже *було пізно*. Людина, яку ми *підозрюємо*, *зникла*. Вона *поспіхом* закінчила свої відвідини і *вочевидь* поїхала геть. 5. Хто б міг подумати, що він такий *божесвільний*? 6. Ти вже вчитав *гранки* своєї книжки про *гримучих змій*? Сподіваюся, ти нічого там не *пропустив*. 7. Ти купив *брязкальце* своєму племіннику? Так, я ледве не *запізнився* на поїзд із-за того брязкальця. Я йому ще й *крекери* купив. 8. Злочинець жбурнув каменюку у поліцейський автомобіль, але *промахнувся*. Каменюка попала у *барельєф*, на якому утворилися *тріщини*. Ця *прикра подія* *сталася рано вранці*. 9. Вона *ніколи нічого не пропустить*. Дивись, вона вже тут і *торохтить* без упину. - Її вчора *звільнили* з посади, ось вона і намагається *довести* усім які ви тут усі *божесвільні та несповна розуму*. 10. Вчора був день *наповнений подіями*. Ще *рано вранці* ніхто *не знав що робити*. Потрібно було *звільняти* навіть когось із *основного персоналу*, не кажучи вже про інших. *Напруга* була величезна. Кожен намагався *довести*, що він *конче потрібен*, а усі інші мають *страшні приховані таємниці*. Правда, *доказів* було замало. Кінець кінцем, генеральному менеджеру *спала на думку* геніальна ідея, він *мерщій відбарабанив* її телефоном своєму босу і зараз же одержав дозвіл на додатковий набір персоналу. *Напруга спала*.

В. 1. Ви вже *звикли* до своєї кімнати? - Звикнути важко, там такий густий *сморід* від сушеної риби. - Звикайте, адже готель біля *рибальського селища*. Зате тиша *напевно зніме нервову напругу*. - Сподіваюся, що *зніме*. 2. Ви вже маєте хоч якісь *ключі* для розгадки? - Деяко маю. Хоча це справжня *головоломка*. Під час *перехресного допиту* деякі *підозрювані* намагалися *ввести мене в оману*, особливо офіціанти та шеф-кухар. Але я мав досить *доказів*. А коли ще *зібрав по крихті* інформацію, якої *бракувало*, то *неминуче кінець кінцем* знайшов злочинця і *розколов горішок* - Злочинець у всьому *зізнався*! - Звичайно, *відбарабанив* усе від початку до кінця, *полегишив* власну душу. 3. Коли я *раптово* зайшов до класу, там був справжній *гармидер*. *Кінець кінцем* мені вдалося навести порядок і оголосити *тему лекції*. 4. Вранці нічний *порт'є* випадково виявив у саду *речі жертви*. Він передав їх до *кімнати речових доказів*. *Порт'є спало на думку*, що ці речі мають *життєво важливе* значення і можуть змусити *свідків та підозрюваного* заговорити, бо це значно *звужувало коло підозрюваних*. Нарешті, під час *перехресного допиту*, *підозрюваний зламався* і *зізнався* в усьому. Проте детектив продовжував *розслідування*, намагаючись знайти усі деталі, яких *бракувало*. Ніяк не звикну до цих *скелетів*, якби побачив їх посеред ночі, то *налякався б до смерті*. - Облиш, такі скелети стоять в усіх *кабінетах анатомії*, а учні так і *сиплять жартами* про них. Якщо ти їх так боїшся, то навіщо призначив *зустріч* тут? - Не знаю, не вистачило *кмітливості* мабуть. - Ну, добре, давай облишимо всі ці дрібниці. Маєш якісь *важливі докази* чи ні? - Здається маю, навіть *життєво важливі докази*.

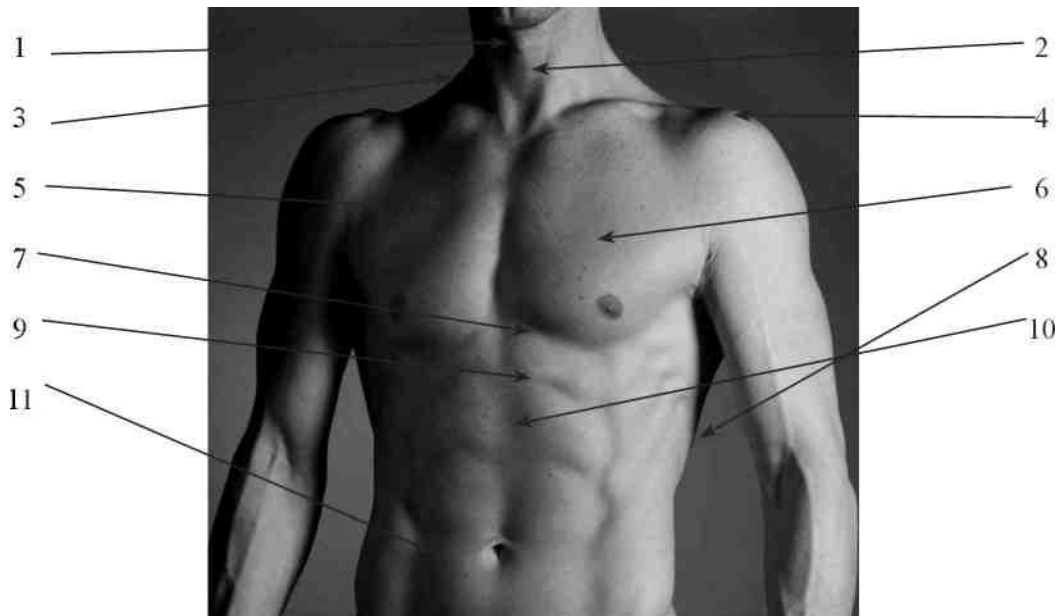
# UNIT 5 DOCTOR AT LARGE LESSON 1

## PART 1. THE HEART OF THE MATTER

James is getting ready to visit John Cunningham's foster brother, Sam, who lives in Tucson, Arizona. Sam is a researcher in medicine. James decided to do some preparations. As usual, Lappy is very helpful. Help James do the tasks.

1. Work in pairs. Match the names of human internal organs etc in the box with their position inside the body in the picture. Show the elements that have not been numbered.

heart lungs tendon artery larynx abdomen liver kidney pharynx stomach bladder joint  
fatty tissue cartilage small intestine vein ligament muscles blood vessels large intestine

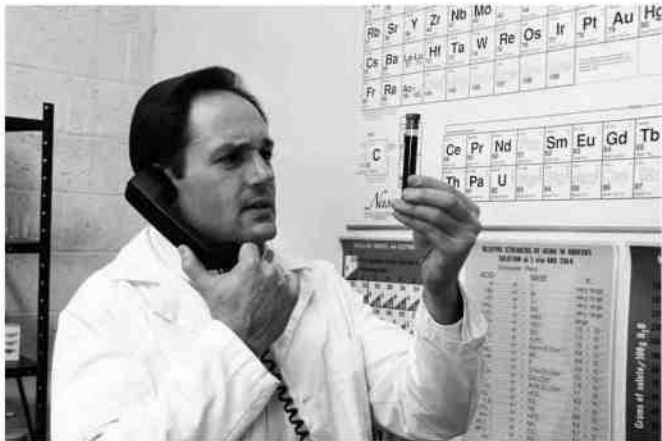


2. Work in pairs. What parts of medical science can you think of (e.g. cardiology, immunology)?

3. Work in pairs. Match the names of parts of medical science in column A with their definitions in column B.

A	B
1. cardiology	A. area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses
2. dentistry	B. medical science related to the treatment and cure of injuries
3. dermatology	C. part of medicine that treats illnesses or injuries that affect people's bones or muscles
4. gynaecology (gynecology)	D. medical study of poisons and their effect
5. laryngology	E. part of medical science relating to the treatment and cure of illness
6. neurology	F. medical study of the mouth and teeth
7. obstetrics	G. medical study of the nervous system and its diseases
8. oncology	H. medical treatment in which a doctor cuts open your body to repair something inside
9. ophthalmology	I. medical study of the mouth and teeth
10. orthopaedics (orthopedics)	J. study and treatment of medical conditions and illnesses that affect only women
11. paediatrics (pediatrics)	K. medical study of the heart
12. speech therapy	L. medical study of the skin
13. stomatology	M. part of medical science that deals with the birth of children
14. surgery	N. medical study of the eyesight system
15. therapeutics	O. part of medical science that deals with cancer and tumours
16. toxicology	P. medical study of the larynx and throat
17. traumatology	Q. treatment that helps people with difficulty in speaking properly

4. Work in pairs. How do we call the doctors that specialize in the areas of medicine given in column A in Activity 3 (e.g. a doctor who specializes in cardiology is called a cardiologist)?

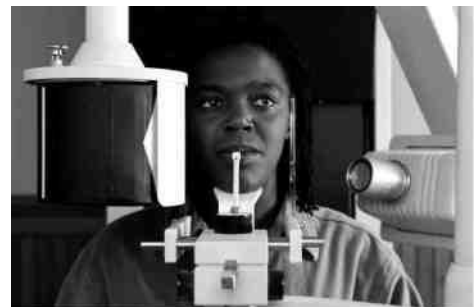


5. Work in pairs. What do you think the specialists listed below do (e.g. etiologist studies the cause of a disease, i.e. s/he determines its etiology)? Identify the doctors in the pictures above.

anaesthetist  
anatomist  
bacteriologist  
balneologist  
diagnostician  
morbid anatomist  
dietitian

embryologist  
epidemiologist  
forensic scientist  
endocrinologist  
gastroenterologist  
general practitioner (GP)  
gerontologist

immunologist  
neonatologist  
plastic surgeon  
psychiatrist  
psychoanalyst  
urologist  
venerologist



**6. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-31, find this word and then mark it in the text. Some lines may be correct. Indicate those lines with a tick.**

### **REFURBISHING THE BODY**


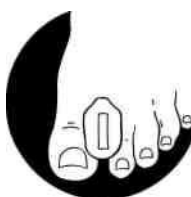





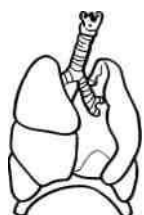

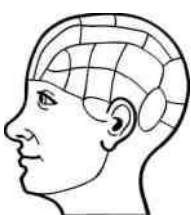




1 Nature does it effortlessly, piecing together a complete person in just nine months, but medical  
2 science had taken far longer to devise replacement parts for the human body. In recent years,  
3 therefore, scientists have combined the invention of novel materials, particularly plastics, with a  
4 new understanding of human physiology to produce some highly sophisticated spare parts. Indeed,  
5 bioengineers predict that in not too distant future an artificial component will be able to take the  
6 place of almost any portion of human anatomy, with the exception of the brain. Around the world,  
7 more than 3 million people live with artificial parts, and in United States alone, 223,000  
8 pacemakers, 197,000 hips, 73,000 knees and 26,000 fingers and toe joints are implanted every year.  
9 While none of these prostheses work quite as well as its natural counterpart, things are improving  
10 rapidly. Sometime in the 21st century, robotic limbs are going to move under the control of nerves,  
11 much alike real muscles and tendons. Within the next decade, in fact, artificial livers and lungs are  
12 likely to use to replace diseased tissue, and bioengineers fully expect they will have perfected  
13 prosthetical joints and bones that will actually function more smoothly than the ligaments and  
14 cartilage they replace. One of the first artificial body's parts on record was worn by 16th century  
15 astronomer Tycho Brahe, who sported a metal nose after losing his in a duel. After other duel,  
16 when Luke Skywalker lost his hand by Darth Vader's laser sword, robotic surgeons easily fitted him  
17 with a lifelike bionic replace. Though today's body parts have not achieved the sophistication  
18 of those in "The Empire Strikes Back," they far surpass Brahe's crude prostheses. The Seattle foot,  
19 for example, which was named for the city where it was developed, is such nimble that it allows the  
20 wearer to run, ski and even play tennis. The foot's secret is a plastic keel embedded along its  
21 length that stores and releases mechanical energy a lot as muscles and tendons do. The next  
22 generation of devices shall combine living tissue with man-made materials, an amalgam that,  
23 something like a lizard's tail, will grow and generate. Artificial hips, for example, will one day be  
24 coated with compounds that stimulate new bone grow and insinuate into the prosthesis. The only  
25 drawback to the current hip is that the steel hip shank can work free of the thigh bone, a problem  
26 that will solve by stimulating new bone growth. At the University of Texas, chemist Richard  
27 Lagow heads a group experimentating with shanks made of powdered hydroxy apatite, the principal  
28 constitute of real bone. When baked at high temperature, the substance forms a porous shank that  
29 encourage blood vessels and bone cells to invade, eventually bonding living bone to the prosthesis.  
30 Dentists are implanting hydroxyapatite teeth since 1985, and earlier this year clinical trials  
31 began using hydroxyapatite to substitute for parts of the spine.

**7. Work in pairs. Read the text. What kind of spare parts may be available in the future? Would it ever be possible to reproduce genuine human organs? Why or why not?**

While effective spare parts already exist for many pieces of the skeleton, including joints and the ligaments that attach to them, there is currently nothing that can take the place of skin. More than a mere wrapping for the body, the skin is a highly complex organ made up of three layers of different kinds of specialized cells, and doctors who treat patients with extensive burns have longed for a skin substitute. They should have one soon. Researchers at a number of institutions are now racing to perfect their own versions of synthetic skin, and clinical trials are planned soon. Dr. Hansbrough, a burn specialist, has developed skin made from two types of human skin cells. Enough skin to cover a man can be grown from a few cells in about three weeks. The first trials of Hansbrough's skin will use cells from a healthy donor, possibly making it necessary for the burn patient to receive anti-rejection drugs to prevent the artificial skin from being destroyed by the immune system. Eventually, however, researchers hope to genetically engineer donor cells to remove the molecules on their surface that signal the patient's immune system to attack. By creating skin cells that lack these molecular signals anyone could be a universal skin donor by the end of the decade.

8. Work in pairs. Fill in the missing information about the human body spare parts given below by asking questions to your partner. Student A uses this page, Student B - Activity 8A on page 261.

### SPARE PARTS AVAILABLE NOW

	<p><b>Joints</b> Joints can be _____ or completely _____ with a combination of _____, ceramics and metal</p>		<p><b>Feet</b> Originally developed for Vietnam veterans, modern artificial feet are designed to have the flexibility and elasticity of a real foot</p>
	<p><b>Legs</b> Wearers can play _____ new, _____ artificial legs</p> <p>_____ with</p>		<p><b>Tendons</b> Made of Gore-Tex fibers, artificial tendons can be fastened to bones</p>
	<p><b>Arms</b> By tensing various _____ in the upper _____, the wearer can _____ control an artificial arm and hand, which are strong enough to pick up a _____</p>		<p><b>Silicone ear and nose</b> Specially colored to match the wearer's skin, a false ear or nose is permanently fixed in place</p>
  	<p><b>Ocular orbits</b> Much of the _____ around the eye can be rebuilt with</p> <p><b>Heart valves</b> _____ Americans receive one of the _____ types of valves every year</p>	  	<p><b>Ocular lenses</b> Plastic replacement for the human lens after a cataract has been removed</p> <p><b>Ear implant</b> This electronic device placed in the inner ear, allows some profoundly deaf people to hear sirens, bells and changes in tone</p>
	<p><b>Tooth implants</b> False teeth made of _____ main ingredient of _____ fastened to the</p> <p>_____ the are</p>		<p><b>Pacemakers</b> Embedded in the chest, pace-makers stimulate weak hearts to beat with electric impulses</p>
	<p><b>Blood</b> Half as _____ as real blood, the artificial stuff is used to supply _____ to certain _____ during operations to _____ blood vessels</p>		<p><b>Urinary tracts</b> An artificial muscle made of plastic gives the wearer control over the bladder</p>





9. Work in pairs. Read the text below, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information on the spare parts of the future in the table below.



Research may soon yield new artificial organs, including blood vessels, lungs and livers. Over the past decade, molecular biologists have discovered dozens of proteins, called growth factors, that stimulate the growth of cells and stimulate them into changing their form and function. Young liver cells, for instance, can be made to mature and produce enzymes necessary for that organ's proper functioning. Growth factors have made possible a wide variety of new cell cultures, and researchers are banking on this newly acquired skill to build artificial organs.



hope to bring an artificial liver to clinical trials. A team at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology has created an "organoid," as these artificial organs are called, by seeding liver cells onto a spongelike plastic, or polymer. This novel material, which is now being used for sutures that dissolve, supplies the cells with a flexible, strong, yet temporary scaffolding. The team has implanted the artificial liver into rats, where blood vessels penetrate the growing organ. The liver cells organize into a structure similar to a proper liver and begin producing liver proteins within a couple of weeks.

Implanting an organoid in a human patient will require a few more steps. Growth factors will soon be added to the polymer to

spur the liver cells into growing and maturing. An organoid, seeded with cells from a living donor, will then be stitched into the abdomen, allowing the diseased organ to continue functioning as best it can until the new organoid is fully grown and the polymer scaffold has dissolved. The entire process, from donor operation to implanting the seeded scaffold, should take just a few days.

A similar approach will make possible the transplantation of other body parts. Researchers believe that an artificial cartilage, the tough, flexible tissue that allows joints to work smoothly and gives stiffness to ears and noses, is possible. The polymer can provide a structure to create cartilage in almost any shape.

By far the most tantalizing is a robotic limb or organ wired directly to the brain. Though such prostheses will not be ready until well into this century, researchers are already searching for ways to link living nerves to electronic devices. A project to build an artificial eye is under way. By hooking leads from a small light-sensing device to the optic nerve, researchers hope to electronically stimulate the visual centers of the brain. The first such prosthesis could help blind people read.

**SPARE PARTS OF THE FUTURE**

Skin	
Nerve chips	
Organoids	
Cartilage	
Lungs	
Eyes	
Bone	



8A. Work in pairs. Fill in the missing information about the human body spare parts given below by asking questions to your partner. This sheet is for Student B. Student A should use Activity 8 (see page 259).

## SPARE PARTS AVAILABLE NOW



### Joints

Joints can be reinforced or completely replaced with a combination of plastics, ceramics and metal alloys



### Legs

Wearers can play sports with new, lightweight artificial legs



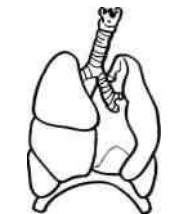
### Arms

By tensing various muscles in the upper arm, the wearer can electronically control an artificial arm and hand, which are strong enough to pick up a champagne glass



### Ocular orbits

Much of the tissue around the eye socket can be rebuilt with silicon.



### Heart valves

75,000 Americans receive one of the seven types of valves every year



### Tooth implants

False teeth made of hydroxyapatite, the main ingredient of bone, are anchored to the jaw



### Blood

Half as thick as real blood, the artificial stuff is used to supply oxygen to certain tissues during operations to unclog blood vessels



### Feet

Originally developed for Vietnam \_\_\_\_\_, modern artificial feet are designed to have the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of a real foot



### Tendons

Made of Gore-Tex \_\_\_\_\_ artificial tendons can be \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ bones



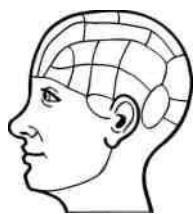
### Silicone ear and nose

Specially \_\_\_\_\_ to match the wearer's \_\_\_\_\_, a false ear or nose is permanently \_\_\_\_\_ in place



### Ocular lenses

replacement for the human \_\_\_\_\_ after a \_\_\_\_\_ has been removed



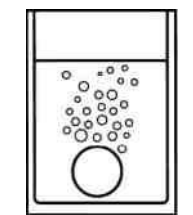
### Ear implant

This electronic \_\_\_\_\_ placed \_\_\_\_\_ people to hear \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ in tone in the \_\_\_\_\_ ear, allows some profoundly sirens,



### Pacemakers

Embedded in the \_\_\_\_\_ pacemakers stimulate hearts to beat with \_\_\_\_\_ impulses



### Urinary tracts

An artificial \_\_\_\_\_ made of \_\_\_\_\_ gives the wearer control over the

## 10. Translate

1. Внутрішні органи людини серед інших включають серце, легені, печінку, нирки, шлунок, кишечник, включаючи товсту і тонку кишки. Глотка та гортань є важливими елементами на шляху до внутрішніх органів. Система кровообігу складається з артерій, вен і більш дрібних систем. Рухова система забезпечується за допомогою м'язів і сухожиль та зв'язок на суглобах. Жирова тканина по усьому тілу виконує захисні функції, а райдужна оболонка ока зберігає важливу інформацію про стан організму в цілому. Внаслідок захворювань та травм органи людини можуть виходити з ладу і тоді застосовується протезування. На сьогодні протезують суглоби, руки, ноги, вуха, носи, серцеві клапани, зуби, проводиться імплантація пристосувань, які покращують роботу органів слуху і серця. В найближчому майбутньому очікується протезування внутрішніх органів і кровоносних судин, сухожиль, кісток, хрящів тощо. 2. Галузі медицини є надзвичайно різноманітними і їхня кількість збільшується кожного року. Назви більшості галузей мають давньогрецьке або латинське походження, а тому часто потребують пояснення навіть носіям англійської мови, особливо, якщо вони не одержали вищої освіти. Наприклад, ембріологія - це наука про утворення зародку та його розвиток, а фахівець у цій галузі називається ембріологом. Відповідно, етіолог, фахівець у галузі етіології, вивчає причини й умови виникнення хвороб, а гематолог - роботу системи крові та методи лікування її захворювань, бо гематологія займається саме цим. Онкологія - це наука, що досліджує процеси, пов'язані з виникненням та розвитком нухлин, та методи їхнього лікування. То ж онколог звичайно лікує саме ці хвороби. Деякі англомовні назви більше зрозумілі українцям, бо українська мова запозичила їх свого часу майже без змін. Наприклад, ясно, що бактеріологія - це наука про бактерії, діагностика - про мистецтво ставити діагноз, епідеміологія - про причини й умови виникнення епідемій і методи боротьби з інфекційними хворобами, психіатрія - про роботу психічної системи та методи лікування її захворювань, симптоматологія - про симптоми захворювань, а анатомія нам знайома ще зі школи. Старші люди, які регулярно відвідують поліклініку, не мають особливих проблем з розумінням назв, що позначають найбільш поширені галузі медицини: анестезіологія (вчення про методи та засоби знеболювання), кардіологія (наука, що вивчає функції серця та методи лікування його захворювання), дерматологія (теорія лікування захворювання шкіри), гінекологія (наука про функції жіночих статевих органів та їхні захворювання), неврологія (система поглядів на роботу нервової системи та методи лікування її захворювань), педіатрія (сума знань про особливості фізіології і захворювання дітей), терапія (наука про внутрішні захворювання), стоматологія. Менш поширені, але наявні у поліклініці галузі, знайомі вужчому колу людей, тобто тим, кому доводилося звертатися до відповідних фахівців. Сюди можна віднести ендокринологію, що вивчає гормональну систему та внутрішню секрецію; гастроентерологію (систему поглядів на роботу кишково-шлункового тракту та методи лікування його захворювань); ларингологію та отоларингологію, які досліджують роботу вуха, глотки і гортані та методи їхнього лікування; офтальмологію (теорію про функціонування органів зору та методи лікування їхніх захворювань); ортопедію (вчення про роботу опорно-рухового апарату та методи лікування його захворювань), урологію (науку, що вивчає роботу сечової та (у чоловіків) статевої систем і методи їхнього лікування), венерологію (наука, що вивчає методи лікування венеричних хвороб). Психологія (аналіз підсвідомих чинників, які можуть бути причиною захворювань) знайомий швидше з американських кінофільмів, а термін "патологія" сприймається радше у значенні "будь-яке відхилення від норми", ніж як наука про розвиток хвороб. Інші терміни, хоча і збігаються за формою з відповідними українськими термінами, навряд чи будуть зрозумілі широкому загалу. Наприклад, бальнеологія (наука про вплив на організм мінеральних вод та лікувальних грязей), геронтологія (вивчає механізми старіння організму), імунологія (наука про роботу імунної системи та методи лікування її захворювань), неонатологія (вчення про особливості фізіології і захворювання новонароджених), токсикологія (наука, що вивчає механізм дії отрути та методи лікування отруєнь). Решта галузей не мають збігу за формою в українській та англійській мовах і тому перекладачам слід запам'ятати еквіваленти. Сюди відносяться такі галузі як акушерство (наука про процеси, пов'язані із заплідненням, вагітністю, пологами та післяпологовим періодом), патологоанатомія, трудова терапія, хірургія, пластична хірургія, відновлювальна хірургія. Цікаво, що хоча галузь "лікування дефектів мовлення" в українській мові репрезентована описово, а в англійській мові - комбіновано (одне слово англійське, а інше грецьке), назва спеціаліста у цій галузі ("логопед") в українській мові повністю запозичена з грецької.

## PART 2

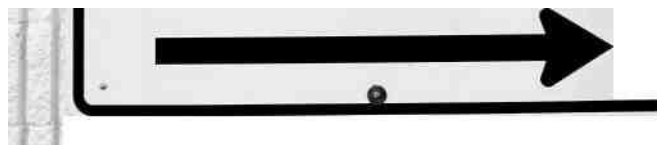
### MATRONS, INTERNISTS AND MIDWIVES

1. Work in pairs. Study the picture below. Who do you think the outpatients are? Do you think there are in-patients too? What is the difference between them? Who are the handicapped? Why do they need a special access route?

**OUTPATIENT  
ENTRANCE**



**HANDICAPPED**



**ACCESS ROUTE**

f | | 1 1 ! \* | | | | |

2. Work in pairs. Study the other pictures on this page and guess what departments and units may a hospital have.

Patient Room  
th  
Floor Locator & Directory  
Pre Surgical Testing  
Blood Testing  
**401-410**  
4 East & 4 West 412-  
429

ecu  
Coronary Care Unit  
ICU Intensive  
Care Unit  
Intermediate Care Unit  
Laboratory & Pathology  
Pre Surgical Testing



**EMERGENCY**



**This facility is  
smoke free.**

**No Smoking**





3. Work in pairs. Match the personnel and staff (column A) with their definitions (column B) and the hospital department (column C) where they may work.



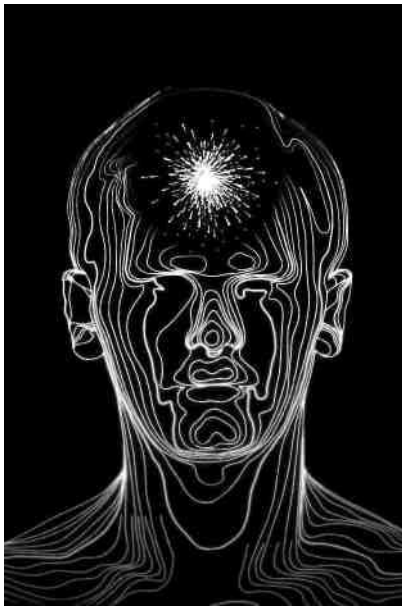
A	B	C
internist	trained to do medical work, but is not a doctor or nurse	Admission Department
junior doctor	studies causes and effects of diseases	Ambulance
nursing officer	changes people's faces or bodies	Burns Unit
nurse	trained in the treatment of mental diseases	Cardiology Department
occupational therapist	treats patients using psychoanalysis	Children's Department
registrar	doctor working at a hospital where s/he is being trained	Dermatology Department
orderly	helps people who can't speak properly	Dressing Room
psychoanalyst	deals with children and their diseases	Emergency Department
psychiatrist	does unskilled jobs at a hospital	Endocrinology Department
speech therapist	hospital doctor of a lower rank than a consultant or a senior registrar	First Aid Unit
resident	helps people get better after a disease by giving them activities to do	Gastroenterology Department
pediatrician	looks after people who are ill or injured, but is not a doctor	Gynecology Department
paramedic	head of the nurses department in the local government	In-Patient Hospital
plastic surgeon	of a lower rank in a doctor's profession	Intensive Care Unit
pathologist	treats illnesses of internal organs that do not need operations	Laboratory
consultant	nurse who visits people at their homes	Maternity Department
matron	studies old age and its effects on the body	Neurology Department
laboratory technician	doctor trained in general medicine	Morbid Pathology Unit
intern	nurse who visits people at their homes	Oncology Department
house physician	gives expert evaluation of medical aspects related to a crime	Ophthalmology Department
obstetrician	advises on healthy nutrition	Out-Patient Department
gerontologist	works at a hospital etc to gain experience	Registry

midwife	very qualified hospital doctor with a lot of expertise in a specific area of medicine	Resuscitation Department
dietitian	doctor who lives on the hospital premises	Surgical Unit
forensic scientist	person who has almost finished training as a doctor and is working at a hospital	Therapeutics Department
district nurse	maintains laboratory equipment	Thoracic Department
general practitioner (GP)	nurse in charge of other nurses	Traumatology Department
extern	nurse trained to help women when they are having a baby	Urology Department
health visitor	doctor trained to deal with the birth of children	Venereology Department
		X-ray Room



4. Work in pairs. Read the text below, and fill in the definitions of the terms given in the table below.

### BODY AT WAR



The past five years have brought a flood of discoveries about the body's capacity to prevent infection. Scientists have finally solved the mystery of how the body creates both antibodies and immune cells, the two agents of the immune response that together are capable of recognizing every toxin, bacterium and virus that exist in nature. They know more, too, about the genes that predispose the child to immune diseases, and for the first time, they are pinpointing the links between the brain and the immune system.

The breakthroughs offer hope for a host of diseases, from allergies to multiple sclerosis, as researchers develop treatments that act on the immune system. Two vaccines against melanoma, a deadly form of skin cancer, are being tested. Potent hormones of the immune system, called cytokines, are being used experimentally to heal wounds and to boost the body's defense against cancer. Clinical trials are under way to test nine AIDS vaccines, something many researchers considered pie in the sky five years ago. The immune system is one of nature's most remarkable creations, a complex network of billions and billions of highly specialized cells as well as the staggering array of potent hormones. Cracking its secrets has proved a far more difficult task even than splitting the atom. The foundation of today's advances

dates back to the late 1800s, shortly after Louis Pasteur proved his theory that germs cause disease. European researchers identified antibodies in the blood that appeared to attack and defeat bacteria that had managed to invade the bloodstream. The scientists also observed much larger cells that acted as wandering garbage collectors, gobbling up loose material of all sorts in the blood, from viruses and bacteria to loose bits of the body's own cells. For years, researchers argued over whether it was these cells, called macrophages, or the antibodies, or both, that kept the body free of invaders.

Antibodies and macrophages, it turns out, represent only two of the many soldiers that keep germs away. Over the next decades, researchers discovered a half-dozen other major classes of immune cells coursing through the blood. Most important are the T-cells, so named because they mature in the thymus, a pale-gray gland that sits behind the breastbone. For every species of virus, from smallpox to the common cold, and for every species of bacteria, there are a T-cell and an antibody that recognize it as foreign and as a target for attack. Even more remarkable, scientists have found, T-cells and antibodies have a mysterious capacity to recognize and destroy chemicals created in the laboratory, substances the body has never encountered in its millions of years of evolution. Every time an organic chemist makes a new chemical, the immune system already has a cell for it.

### IMMUNE WARRIORS

Virus	
Macrophage	
Helper T-cell	
Killer T-cell	
Antibody	
B-cell	
Major histocompatibility complex molecule (MHC)	
Antigen	

5. Listen to the tape and add any new information on the immune system terminology in the table above.

**6. Work in pairs. Read on explanation of the immune system functioning below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text.**

1 Though the body's immune response is dizzying in its \_\_\_\_\_ , the most basic  
 2 pattern is \_\_\_\_ simple. When a cold virus enters the body, for instance, it worms its  
 way into a cell, where the viral genes commandeer the cell's own operating \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
 4 forcing it to make more viruses. Soon the cell begins \_\_\_\_\_ new little invaders into  
 5 the bloodstream. Even a cold virus would \_\_\_\_\_ destroy enough cells to cause  
 6 death were it not for the immune system. Within hours of the \_\_\_\_\_ , antibodies that  
 7 routinely patrol the bloodstream \_\_\_\_\_ free-floating viruses. They attack their  
 8 quarries and disable them until the arrival of macrophages, which \_\_\_\_\_ the viruses.  
 9 In the process, macrophages \_\_\_\_\_ a variety of T-cells, called helper T-cells, which  
 10 serve as the field \_\_\_\_\_ of the immune forces, using hormones called  
 11 lymphokines to \_\_\_\_\_ even more antibodies. One of these hormones, interleukin-1,  
 12 also causes fever - \_\_\_\_\_ the body temperature, researchers surmise, to cook the  
 13 enemy. Another form of T-cells, known as killer T-cells, track down \_\_\_\_\_ cells,  
 14 \_\_\_\_\_ them by the bits of virus displayed by the MHC and shooting them  
 15 through with caustic chemicals that cause them to burst open and \_\_\_\_\_ their own  
 16 DNA along with any \_\_\_\_\_ DNA that may be within them, preventing any further  
 17 \_\_\_\_\_. The battle rages until every last cold virus has been defeated, which can  
 18 take as long as three weeks. How the immune system returns to its normal \_\_\_\_\_  
 19 state is not yet clearly understood, but researchers suspect that the \_\_\_\_\_ creates  
 20 so-called memory T-cells, which provide long-term \_\_\_\_\_. In addition, multiple  
 21 copies of the antibody that \_\_\_\_\_ that particular virus move to strategic locations  
 22 in the saliva and tears, ready to act in \_\_\_\_\_ at a moment's notice to a repeat  
 23 invasion. Vaccines work by taking advantage of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the body to remember  
 24 every \_\_\_\_\_ that it has ever fought. In 1796, E. Jenner, an English country doctor,  
 25 inoculated an 8-year-old boy with pus from cowpox, a mild disease that \_\_\_\_\_  
 26 \_\_\_\_\_ caught from cows and that appeared to protect them from smallpox. The boy  
 27 failed to come down with smallpox when he was \_\_\_\_\_ exposed to it six weeks  
 28 later, confirming that Jenner's vaccine had worked. Modern vaccine \_\_\_\_\_ actually  
 construct vaccines from small bits of bacteria and viruses, provoking a long-  
 29 term immune response without risk of a live germ's causing  
 30

**COMPLEX**  
**FAIR**  
**MACHINE**  
**SPEW**  
**EVENT**  
**INVADE**  
**COUNT**  
**GULF**  
**STIMULUS**  
**COMMAND**  
**SUM**  
**RAISE**  
**INFECT**  
**RECOGNIZE**  
**SOLVE**  
**VIRUS**  
**REPRODUCE**  
**VIGIL**  
**NET**  
**IMMUNE**  
**COGNITIVE**  
  
**RESPOND**  
**ABLE**  
**ANTAGONISM**  
**MAID**  
**TIME**  
**DELIBERATE**  
**MAKE**  
**FRAGILE**  
**ILL**

**7. Work in pairs. Read the paragraph below and then discuss the following: Would it ever become possible to develop a vaccine for AIDS? Why or why not? Why has not it been made yet?**



AIDS viruses kill immune-system cells, leaving the body susceptible to infections and cancer. Researchers have achieved some of their most important insights into the disease by studying the immune system. Experiments have shown that the AIDS virus finds safe haven soon after it enters the bloodstream by darting into T-cells and macrophages, where antibodies cannot reach it. There it may lie dormant for as long as 12 years, or it may launch an assault soon after entering the body, killing one T-cell after another until so many T-cells succumb that the patient contracts a second-""■■ any infection or cancer. In its capacity to infiltrate and destroy the immune system, AIDS is a very clever virus.

**8. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the following text with the words from the box.**

immunization	infected	studies	human	worldwide	effective	approach	design	viruses
urgency	tested	consensus	researchers	proven	innovative	exposure	behavior	
retroviruses	cells	cure	testing	disease	injected	identified	simian	adjuvanted
inactivate	treatment	virus	battery	vaccine	estimated	immune	genetic	

Measured against the need, development of a \_\_\_\_\_ (1) against AIDS may seem especially, and painfully, slow. But considering that the human immunodeficiency \_\_\_\_\_ (2) (HIV) had not even been \_\_\_\_\_ (3) until 1985, work on a vaccine against it has been moving along at a remarkable clip. \_\_\_\_\_ (4) are much further along than they ever expected to be at this point, and the \_\_\_\_\_ (5) at a meeting of leading experts last month was that a vaccine was not only doable but likely to be ready for large-scale \_\_\_\_\_ (6) in people in the next three to five years.



In their search for the AIDS vaccine, scientists are making use of a \_\_\_\_\_ (7) of research tools and vaccine \_\_\_\_\_ (8) strategies, ranging from the "traditional" approaches used against polio to the wildly \_\_\_\_\_ (9) and esoteric. Already, about 30 different candidate vaccines have been developed. Five have progressed to the stage of \_\_\_\_\_ (10) testing in the U.S., and another five or so are being \_\_\_\_\_ (11) in people in Europe and Africa. In all, some 350 people have been \_\_\_\_\_ (12) with some kind of experimental AIDS vaccine.

Unlike any vaccine produced in the past, the AIDS vaccine may be useful as a \_\_\_\_\_ (13) as well as a protective agent—a prospect that only intensifies the \_\_\_\_\_ (14) of the search. An estimated 1 million to 1.5 million Americans are \_\_\_\_\_ (15) with HIV, and 40,000 to 60,000 more become infected every year. The figures \_\_\_\_\_ (16) are even more frightening: An \_\_\_\_\_ (17) 8 million to 10 million infected and perhaps as many as 1 million new cases a year. There is no \_\_\_\_\_ (18), and infection brings a 50 to 70 percent chance of developing AIDS over a decade. Without an \_\_\_\_\_ (19) vaccine, we will be in real trouble a decade from now. It's obvious that we can't rely on \_\_\_\_\_ (20) change alone to stop this disease.

The search for an AIDS vaccine is especially challenging because an \_\_\_\_\_ (21) has never before been developed against a human retrovirus (the class of \_\_\_\_\_ (22) discovered just a decade ago), to which HIV belongs. \_\_\_\_\_ (23) have the unique ability to insinuate their own genetic material into that of the cells they infect. Because this \_\_\_\_\_ (24) material becomes permanently hidden in \_\_\_\_\_ (25), many experts think it is essential to have a vaccine that prevents even a single cell from getting infected with HIV once \_\_\_\_\_ (25) has occurred.

The current optimism stems from preliminary \_\_\_\_\_ (26) showing that a vaccine successfully protects rhesus monkeys against a virus very similar to HIV, called SIV for \_\_\_\_\_ (27) immunodeficiency virus. SIV causes much the same \_\_\_\_\_ (28) in rhesus monkeys as HIV does in people, and scientists at half a dozen labs are using \_\_\_\_\_ (29) design strategies to produce the SIV vaccine. They "kill" or \_\_\_\_\_ (30) the virus in such a way that when injected as a vaccine, it causes no disease but prepares the \_\_\_\_\_ (31) system to recognize and combat the live virus. There were serious doubts whether this \_\_\_\_\_ (32) would work, since SIV, like HIV, is so adept at hiding in cells and \_\_\_\_\_ (33) the immune system. But about 20 monkeys have been \_\_\_\_\_ (34), and all have been protected from infection following exposure to SIV.

**9. Work in pairs. Describe the mechanism of the immune system and vaccine functioning.**

## 10. Translate

# ЛУ

1. На додачу до фахівців, які згадувалися у попередній частині цього уроку, в лікувальних закладах є й інші працівники. Серед тих, що вже закінчили медичний факультет університету і мають вищу медичну освіту, слід, перш за все, згадати лікарів-консультантів. Це фахівці високого класу, які дають консультації у певній галузі медицини. Судовий медичний експерт - це також лікар високої кваліфікації, якого залучають до судового розслідування, аби він дав висновок щодо медичних аспектів справи. Лікар загального профілю - це,

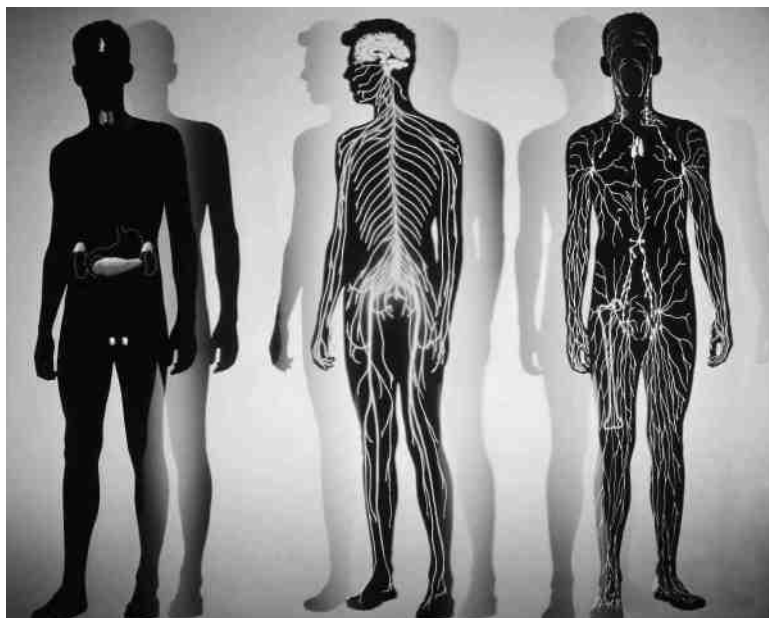
власне, дільничний лікар, який обслуговує певну географічну ділянку, включаючи і відвідання хворих вдома. Після призначення лікування контроль за одужанням пацієнтів передається патронажній або дільничній медсестрам (власне, це можуть бути і чоловіки), яка навідується до хворих удома. Прикладами інших різновидів фахівців є лікар, що живе при лікувальному закладі; лікар, що одержав підготовку з питань діагностики, лікування і профілактики хвороб внутрішніх органів; лікар-стажист; фахівець у галузі трудової терапії; патологоанатом, тобто лікар, який встановлює причину смерті шляхом розтину тіла; просто патолог, тобто фахівець у галузі патології; пластичний хірург. Існує ще категорія лікарів, які фактично закінчили теоретичну медичну підготовку (або майже скінчили її), і проходять практичну частину навчання, аби одержати повне право на ведення фахової діяльності. У різних країнах вони можуть називатися по-різному. Наприклад, у США та Канаді вживають терміни екстерн та інтерн, де перший - це студент старших курсів або лікар-початківець, який працює у лікарні позаштатним лікарем, а останній - лікар-стажист. Термін *resident* може означати або лікаря-стажиста, що проходить післядипломну клінічну практику після інтернатури, тобто навчається у ординатурі, або лікаря-резидента, який живе при лікувальному закладі. Лікарі, що навчаються в ординатурі, можуть ще називатися ординаторами, а ті, хто закінчують це навчання, - старшими ординаторами. Молодший медичний персонал включає лаборантів, санітарів, акушерок, медсестер. Останніми керує головна медсестра або сестра-хазяйка. Робота медсестер вважається настільки важливою, що її контролює спеціально призначений керівник відділу середнього медичного персоналу в управлінні охорони здоров'я району, міста тощо.

2. У найбільш загальному вигляді лікувальні заклади можна поділити на поліклініки, лікарні (стаціонари) та дослідницькі установи. Поліклініки мають реєстратуру, а лікарні - прийомне відділення і відділення швидкої медичної допомоги, які мають у своєму розпорядженні автомобілі швидкої медичної допомоги, що виїжджають за викликами. Як поліклініки, так і лікарні, мають лабораторії, перев'язочні та рентген-кабінети, а також можуть включати різноманітні відділення - гастроентерологічне, гінекологічне, дерматологічне, ендокринологічне, кардіологічне, неврологічне, онкологічне, опікове, офтальмологічне, реанімаційне, терапевтичне, травматологічне, торакальне (відділення лікування органів грудної клітки), урологічне, хірургічне, венерологічне, відділення інтенсивної терапії та інші. Будинок для людей похилого віку, що забезпечує медичні та соціальні потреби цієї категорії громадян є зазвичай окремим закладом.

3. Загальні принципи роботи імунної системи спрощено виглядають так. Вірус вторгається (або інвазіює) до організму, укорінюється у клітині і змушує її репродукувати нові віруси. За кілька годин антитіла, що патрулюють кровоносні судини, виявляють чужорідні об'єкти, нейтралізують їх до підходу макрофагів, які поглинають прийшли віруси. При цьому макрофаги стимулюють роботу кооперуючих Т-клітин, які координують роботу інших елементів імунної системи, зокрема гормонів, які сприяють утворенню нових антитіл. Один з різновидів таких гормонів викликає підвищення температури, аби знищити ворога. Інший різновид Т-клітин, клітини-убивці, вистежують інфіковані клітини, розпізнаючи їх за допомогою молекул головної системи тканинної сумісності (яка є своєрідним розпізнавальним знаком "свій-чи-чужий"), бомбардують їх, змушуючи розкритися і розчинити власну і будь-яку чужу ДНК, попереджуючи подальше репродукування вірусу. Імунна система запам'ятовує тип вірусу, який вторгався до організму. Цю властивість використовують при створенні вакцин, за допомогою яких проводять щеплення від інфекційних хвороб. Найважливішими для роботи імунної системи є Т-клітини, які називаються так, бо дозрівають у тимусі.

## PART 3 ACHES

### AND PAINS



1. Work in pairs. What kind of diseases do you know? Make a list of them. Compare your list with those of the other students'.

2. Work in pairs. Classify the diseases in the box into the following categories.

General      Dermatologic      Neurologic      Intestinal      Laryngologic

Endocrinologic

Neurologic

Thoracic

Immune System

Brain Eye

Toxic

Oncologic

Kidney

Respiratory

Psychic

Ear

Stomatologic



acne    ague    AIDS    alcoholism    angina    anorexia    appendicitis    avian (bird)

flue    anthrax

bronchitis    cancer    chickenpox    cholera    cirrhosis    cold    colitis    constipation    asthma    depression  
dermatitis    diarrhoea    dysentery    diabetes    dropsy    diphtheria    epilepsy    fever    gastritis    glaucoma  
gout    herpes    hepatitis    influenza (flu)    laryngitis    leukaemia    leprosy    malaria    mastitis    measles  
meningitis    multiple sclerosis    mumps    nephritis    plague    pox    polio    paralysis    pharyngitis  
Parkinson's disease    pneumonia    rabies    ringworm    rubella    smallpox    scabies    scarlet fever  
schizophrenia    tonsillitis    tuberculosis  
heart attack    shingles    typhoid fever    typhus    haemorrhage

3. Which of the diseases in the table above are the most dangerous? Which ones are contagious?

**4. Work in pairs. While being ill, patients may suffer from different kinds of pain. Choose three diseases each from the box in the previous Activity and match them with the kind of pain given in the box below. Study the model first.**

**Model:** Before a heart attack patients may suffer from persistent gnawing pain in the chest area. The pain may be pressing, radiating or throbbing. It may be dull and not too severe for a while, but if it is long-standing and troublesome, the patients are advised to see a doctor as soon as possible, before the pain becomes sharp, piercing and unbearable.

aching acute burning cutting dull girdle  
gnawing knife-like long-standing muscle  
persistent piercing pressing radiating severe  
sharp slight throbbing troublesome unbearable  
headache toothache sore throat sore eye



**5. Work in pairs. Read the text below and write out the words that stand for the types of injuries and the ways to treat them.**



Multiple injuries to the skeletal system - including the bones, joints and ligaments - and to the adjacent soft tissues are common in all types of major accidents. A break or a crack in a bone is called a fracture, which may be open (with open wounds) or closed (not related to open wounds on the surface of the body, although there may be a laceration over or near a fracture site). A dislocation is an injury to the capsule and ligaments of a joint that results in displacement of a bone end at a joint. The association of a dislocation with a fracture is called a fracture dislocation. A sprain is an injury to a joint ligament or a muscle tendon in the region of a joint; it involves the partial tearing or stretching of these structures, injuries to blood vessels, and contusions of the surrounding soft tissue without dislocation or fracture. A strain is an injury to a muscle that results from overstretching; it may be associated with a sprain or a fracture. Other injuries include bites, blows and frostbites. To deal with the above mentioned injuries a number of techniques may be applied, specifically wound treatment, immobilization, bandage, plaster bandage, splintage, prosthetics and reduction. Immobilization means fixing fractured bones or

damaged joints in correct position and holding them in place so that they will heal properly. The procedure usually involves the use of splints.

Types of injuries	Ways to treat the injuries
bite	Wound treatment and bandage

**6. Work in pairs. Listen to the tape and fill in the definitions of the immune system diseases given on page 271. Which disease is the most dangerous one?**

## IMMUNE SYSTEM DISEASES

When the body is ill, it is not always fighting off foreign invaders. Some diseases occur when the immune system becomes confused and stops functioning, or actually attacks the body's own cells.



Addison s disease  
AIDS  
Allergies  
Juvenile diabetes  
Multiple sclerosis  
Myasthenia gravis  
Rheumatoid arthritis  
Lupus

7. Work in pairs. What do you know about avian or bird flu? Want to know more? Ask questions to your partner and fill in the missing information on your sheet. Answer your partner's questions. Student A uses this page, Student B - exercise 7A on page 273.



Where does avian flu come from?



• **What is so worrying about avian flu?**

The current concern focuses on a type known as H5N1, first discovered in terns in 1961. It is astonishingly lethal in chickens, and also extremely contagious: just one gram of faecal material can infect 40 million other birds. In 1997 H5N1 proved capable of infecting humans in close proximity to chickens, and has proved fatal in around half of all cases, a strikingly high fatality rate.



• **What are the symptoms of the disease?**



• **Can it be caught by eating chicken?**

Cooked chicken is understood to be entirely safe. All the human cases so far have been traced to close contact either with infected chickens directly, or with matter that has come into contact with them. Health officials advise travellers to Asia to avoid poultry markets and farms.



• **Is there a cure?**

**8. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following text there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-30, find this word and then mark it in the text. Some lines may be correct.**

1 When doctors announced the deaths of the few people in Hong Kong from a new form of flu in  
 2 1997, it made few headlines. Something called Avian Influenza A (H5N1) has apparently spread  
 3 from chickens on humans in the city's teeming backstreets, infecting 18 people and killing 6 before  
 4 vanishing. The jump across the species barrister was a surprise, but the outbreak seemed like a storm  
 5 in a distant teacup. But now the same virus turned up at the threshold of Europe. Last week  
 6 Russian scientists revealed that thousands of domestic birds around the Chelyabinsk region of the  
 7 Ural mountains had perished after contracting H5N1, which had apparently transported there by  
 8 migrated birds. The good news is that the virus has so far failed to repeat the treat it first achieved  
 9 in Hong Kong, and find a way of infecting humans. The bad news are that many experts think that it  
 10 is only a matter of time before it succeeded. Since the Hong Kong outbreak, the H5N1 virus has  
 11 spread across Asia and infected another 100 or so people, killing around half. So far, all victims  
 12 appear to contract the virus after direct exposure to birds. Yet each time the virus succeeds in  
 13 infecting humanise, it increases the chances of triggering the nightmare scenario: human-to-human  
 14 transmission. The consequences could hard be more worrying. Some scientists are already  
 15 drawing parallels with the so-called Spanish Flu outbreak of 1918, in which other bird flu virus -  
 16 code-named H1N1 - hit the right genetic combination needed to trigger human-to-human  
 17 transmission. The resulting pandemia led to at least 20 million deaths, double the number of people  
 18 killed in the First World War. "The population is higher now, so we could be talking about 100  
 19 millions deaths or more," says Prof Neil Ferguson, an expert on virus epidemics at Imperial College,  
 20 London. "The 1918 scenarium is within what people should be planning for." According to Prof.  
 21 Ferguson, such an epidemic is mostly likely to start once the H5N1 virus infects someone already  
 22 harbouring standard human flu. "Then the two viruses can recombine to produce a type capably of  
 23 human-to-human transmission. We're worried because this bird virus is such lethal. It kills 50 per  
 24 cent of those infected at the moment, though that could change once it got into humans. By  
 25 comparison, the virus was responsible for the 1918 pandemic killed only a few per cent of those it  
 26 infected. Small wondering, then, that alarm bells are ringing. The World Health Organisation  
 27 made clear it concern about the spread of H5N1 beyond southeast Asia. It called for close  
 28 surveillance of the situation in Russia, and checks on respiratory patients who may had been  
 29 exposed for sick birds. It has begun negotiations to stockpile anti-viral drugs, which both reduce  
 30 the symptoms of those already infected and provide some protection for the virus.



**9. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the following text with the words from the box.**

contained host population pneumonia virus killing outbreak  
 health ill-effects mutate bird-culling consequences crucial strain  
 deaths genes infected anti-viral experts pandemic culling  
 adversary<sup>7</sup> contingency foot-dragging treated vaccination claim  
 containment spread combat tests bank triggering doomsday

Many national governments are drawing up strategies to \_\_\_\_\_  
 Britain, the Department of Health has made \_\_\_\_\_ (2) plans  
 for dealing with an out  
 break, and has set aside £200 million to buy enough \_\_\_\_\_ (3) drugs  
 for a quarter of the

population. It emerged last week that GPs are being sent information packs about how  
 to deal with an \_\_\_\_\_ (4), and guidance for patients. There are no plans for a mass \_\_\_\_\_ (5) campaign, however.  
 Officials point out that any vaccine based on the current \_\_\_\_\_ (6) of H5N1 could prove useless against a human-  
 to-human version.

Despite the efforts to avert a \_\_\_\_\_ (7), many experts remain sanguine about our ability to cope with the  
 threat. They point out that the \_\_\_\_\_ (8) is still confined almost entirely to the bird population, making control of  
 an outbreak relatively simple. As soon as \_\_\_\_\_ (9) confirm the presence of the virus in a flock, the plan of action  
 is dramatic and draconian: rapid and massive \_\_\_\_\_ (10). The strategy stopped the original Hong Kong outbreak  
 in 1997. It also halted an outbreak of the H7N7 bird flu, which also \_\_\_\_\_ (11) humans, in Holland in 2003. At  
 the current state, on a scale of 1 to 10, \_\_\_\_\_ (12) put the risk of a pandemic pretty low down, at around three to





four. Some context is also needed here. There have been 60 to 70 human \_\_\_\_\_ (13) out of several billion in Asia. On a \_\_\_\_\_ (14) holiday you'll get many more deaths on Bangkok's roads in two or three days. Simple honesty is widely seen as \_\_\_\_\_ (15) by many experts. They point out that the speed of international trade and travel makes any attempt at bureaucratic \_\_\_\_\_ (16) potentially disastrous.

In 2002, China was hit by a new type of virus called SARS, which caused \_\_\_\_\_ (17) -like symptoms, \_\_\_\_\_ (18) 1 in 10 of those infected. Yet Chinese officials attempted to cover up the outbreak, only informing the WHO the following year. By that time, the virus had \_\_\_\_\_ (19) to Hong Kong and Vietnam. It went on to \_\_\_\_\_ (20) almost 800 lives in a dozen countries, from Canada to the Philippines. If \_\_\_\_\_ (21) policies fail to stop the H5N1 virus, it could spread to every continent in the world within eight weeks.

Even so, prompt action could stop the virus from \_\_\_\_\_ (22) a pandemic. Research published this month showed that the outbreak could be \_\_\_\_\_ (23) if the first few dozen people affected were identified, and around 20,000 of those closest to them \_\_\_\_\_ (24) with anti-viral drugs. Given that the potential \_\_\_\_\_ (25) are so severe, it is worth trying to persuade the WHO and governments to put more money into \_\_\_\_\_ (26).

While scientists and \_\_\_\_\_ (27) officials hurry up, some experts are drawing comfort from events so far. "If the \_\_\_\_\_ (28) scenario is realistic, why hasn't it happened yet?" ask they. "This virus has had lots of opportunities across Asia to \_\_\_\_\_ (29) but hasn't, so the probability must really be very low." Ultimately, however, no one knows what the tiny packet of \_\_\_\_\_ (30) known as H5N1 will do next. It could fade back into its \_\_\_\_\_ (31) of birds among which it produces no \_\_\_\_\_ (32). Or it could produce a human pandemic of apocalyptic proportions. For now, scientists can only hope they are smart enough to deal with whatever their microscopic \_\_\_\_\_ (33) throws at them.

**7A. Ask questions to your partner and fill in the missing information on your sheet. Answer your partner's questions. Student B uses this page, Student A- ex. 7 on page 271.**



•

#### **Where does avian flu come from?**

First discovered among European birds in the early 1900s, avian flu affects many bird species and comes in dozens of different varieties. Five are now known to cause disease in humans. All are the result of infection by viruses-tiny packets of genetic material so small that one million of them could sit on the end of a human hair.

•

#### **What is so worrying about avian flu?**



•

#### **What are the symptoms of the disease?**



•

#### **Can it be caught by eating chicken?**



#### **Is there a cure?**



An anti-viral drug known as oseltamivir, marketed by Roche as Tamiflu, appears to relieve symptoms and provide some protection. The Department of Health is stockpiling supplies sufficient to treat 15 million people.



## 10. Translate

А. Хвороби можна розділити на групи, хоча такий поділ є переважно умовним, бо у багатьох випадках хвороба може мати одночасно кілька різних причин. Усе ж до так званих загальних хвороб можна віднести гарячку, анорексію, тобто відсутність апетиту, застуду, грип, мускульну дистрофію, рахіт (порушення процесу утворення кісток), чуму, холеру, малярію, тиф та кровотечу. СНІД є захворюванням імунної, а астма та бронхіт - респіраторної систем, менінгіт - запаленням мозку, нефрит - порушенням роботи нирок, алкоголізм - токсичною хворобою, шизофренія - це розлад психічної

системи, глаукома - захворювання ока, а отит - вуха, рак та лейкемія є онкологічними, а карієс - стоматологічною проблемами. Серед дерматологічних хвороб - вугрі, сибірська впраска, дерматит, герпес, проказа, віспа, вітряна віспа, кір, дерматикоз, тобто грибкове ураження шкіри, краснуха, скарлатина, оперізуючий лишай, короста. До неврологічних розладів можна віднести депресію, епілепсію, розсіяний склероз, хворобу Паркінсона (тремтячий параліч), параліч, поліомієліт, сказ. До торакальних захворювань, тобто таких, що мають відношення до органів грудної клітки, належать цироз печінки, запалення легенів, гепатит, туберкульоз, серцевий напад тощо. Шлункові хвороби включають апендицит, коліт, запор, пронос, дизентерію, гастрит та інші. Діабет, подагра, мастит, водянка, тобто скупчення рідини в тканинах тіла, свинка або заушниця мають досить різне походження, але так чи інакше можуть бути пов'язані з ендокринною системою. Серед хвороб горла доцільно згадати ангіну, скарлатину, ларингіт, тобто запалення гортані, дифтерію, або гостре інфекційне захворювання, яке уражає слизові оболонки, фарингіт (запалення глотки) та тонзиліт.

Б. Біль є захисною реакцією організму і сигналом тривоги щодо виникнення загрози життєдіяльності організму. За характером болю можна встановити тип захворювання. Наприклад, оперізувальний, стискальний, часами пекучий біль, що іррадіює ліву руку, лопатку, шию або нижню щелепу на тлі фізичного чи емоційного навантаження може бути провісником приступу стенокардії. Гострий біль оперізувального, стискального і пекучого тину, який проте часами може бути тупим і довготривалим, що його особа відчуває у стані спокою (вночі), може свідчити про наближення серцевого нападу. Раптовий різжучий нудуючий біль, що іррадіює уздовж хребта, на тлі гіпертонії може бути індикатором проблем з аортою. Гризотний пронизуючий обтяжливий біль на тлі задишки в центрі грудної клітки може сигналізувати про виникнення проблем з легенями. Судомний безперервний біль, що посилюється при диханні та кашлі і залежить від положення тіла, і з часом переходить у слабкий тупий біль, також може свідчити про легеневі захворювання. Кинджальний нестерпний, що раптово змінюється тупим болем у стравоході є ознакою захворювання останнього. В усіх цих випадках слід негайно звернутися до лікаря.

В. Травми включають різноманітні механічні пошкодження тіла, наприклад, укуси тварин, удари, опіки, забиття частини тіла тощо. В усіх цих випадках для пом'якшення наслідків травм проводять обробку рани і накладання пов'язки. Для ліквідації вивиху застосовують вправлення суглоба. При переломах лікарі проводять обробку рани, забезпечують іммобілізацію пошкоджених частин тіла, накладають гіпсову пов'язку і проводять шинування, тобто прив'язують ногу чи руку до шини. Пізніше, у разі необхідності, проводиться протезування. У випадках надриву або розтягу м'язів чи сухожиль застосовується іммобілізація і накладання пов'язки, при відмороженні чи поверхневому пошкодженні шкіри - обробка рани і накладання пов'язки.

Г. Епідемія пташиного грипу є серйозною загрозою, що може мати негативні наслідки і забрати людські життя, якщо своєчасно не розробити плани на випадок непередбачених обставин, аби не спровокувати початок епідемії, локалізавши вірус у пташиній популяції, де він виник, запобігши інфікуванню людей, що може привести до мутації штаму хвороби. Зволікання у такій справі є вкрай небезпечним, а тому доцільні будь-які заходи, аж до масового забою птиці, аби стримати поширення епідемії і не дозволити їй поширюватися й перетворитися на пандемію, боротися з якою буде надзвичайно складно. Першочерговим завданням є також розробка антивірусних препаратів і масова вакцинація населення.

## LESSON 2 PART 1. SWABS, WET PACKS AND SOUNDS



**1. Work in pairs. What kind of medical equipment, devices, instruments and accessories do you know? Make a list of them. Compare your list with those of the other students'.**

**2. Work in pairs. Distribute the words in the box among the categories given below.**

artificial heart   thermometer   clamp   artificial kidney   inhalator   drain   cardiograph   forceps  
ventilator   needle   stretcher   gastroscope   lancet   swab   stethoscope   scalpel   splint  
CAT scanner   sling   sound   heart-lung machine   syringe   packing   respirator   probe  
life-support machine   plaster cast   encephalograph   pacemaker   bedpan   ultrasound scanner  
bandage   X-ray machine   oxygen mask   tourniquet   defibrillator   catheter   wet pack  
microscopespecimen bottle

Machines

Devices



Instruments

Accessories

**3. Work in pairs. Match the definitions below with the words in the box in Activity 2.**

1. instrument for holding things together; 2. thin pipe to carry liquids away; 3. instrument to pick up and hold things; 4. machine to pump air into and out of a patient's lungs; 5. kind of bed to carry a person who can't walk; 6. piece of material on a rod to clean a wound or substance from a body to test it; 7. flat piece of wood etc to keep a broken bone in position; 8. cloth around one's neck to support an injured arm; 9. long thin metal instrument to examine parts of the body; 10. material used to cover the wound to stop the bleeding; 11. device placed inside one's chest to help the heart beat regularly; 12. cloth twisted tightly around an injured arm/leg to stop the bleeding;

13. device to give the heart an electric shock to make it start beating again; 14. small sharp pointed knife with two cutting edges to cut skin and flesh.

4. Work in pairs. Study the text below and write out all the words that stand for symptoms of a disease.

### HEART ATTACK



heart attack usually involves a clot in one of the blood vessels that supply the heart. An attack may or may not be accompanied by loss of consciousness. If it is severe, the victim may die suddenly. The victim may have a history of heart disease, e.g. having had heart (cardiac) murmurs for a while, or the attack may come with little or no warning. The symptoms and signs include: a) persistent chest pain, usually under breastbone; the pain frequently radiates to shoulders, arms, neck or jaws; b) harsh breathing, gasping and shortness of breath sometimes accompanied by cough or rales; c) extreme pallor or bluish discoloration of the

lips, skin and fingernails; d) extreme prostration; e) shock; f) swelling of the ankles. If the pain is in the upper abdomen and is accompanied by nausea and vomiting, the victim may mistakenly think he is having an attack of acute indigestion. To help relieve the symptoms of a heart attack, place the victim in a comfortable position, and promptly call a physician who will advise on the treatment and prescribe medicines, including drugs that lower myocardial oxygen demand by reducing heart rate, blood pressure and myocardial contractility.

5. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations you have found in the previous exercise.



The

(1), even for a second, will mean that you have suffered brain damage and must withdraw from further competition immediately. The patient also had other symptoms:

problems, and her whole face started \_\_\_\_\_ (3), it was getting bigger with every passing minute. The pitiful figure shook with cold, his breath whistling in and out of his lungs with \_\_\_\_\_

times the risk of having heart \_\_\_\_\_ than a nonsmoker. The doctor stared at the patient and saw that the \_\_\_\_\_

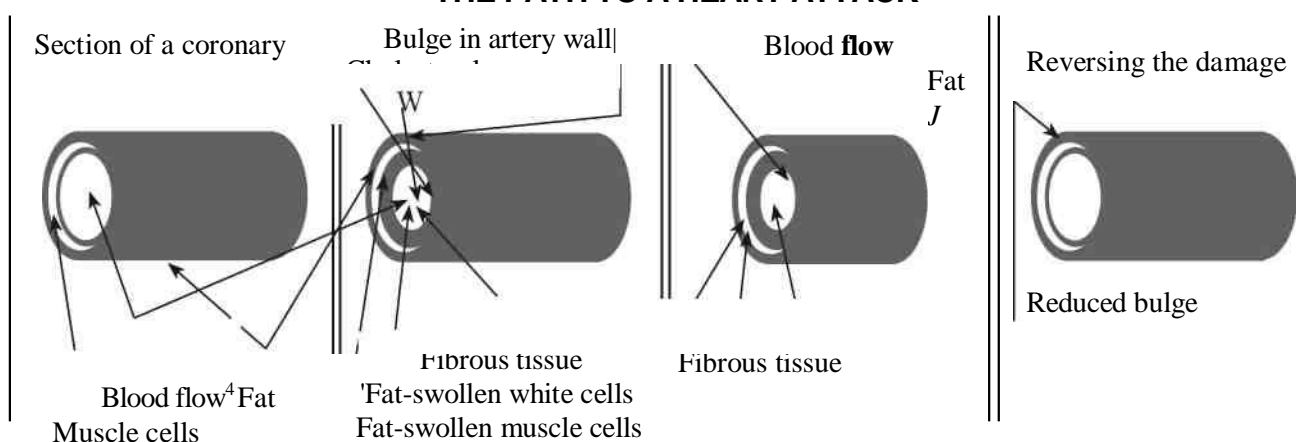
skin was that of a sick person. The disease in his lungs made his breathing very \_\_\_\_\_

(8). The stairs were very steep and they were

all \_\_\_\_\_ (9) by the time they got to the top. In a minute after you have taken this pill, your heart \_\_\_\_\_ (10) will slow by 15 percent. Everywhere doctors and nurses were bending over people in extreme \_\_\_\_\_ (11), unable to get up. The patient's rapid pulse, high blood pressure, irregular breathing, and \_\_\_\_\_ (12) of the skin all called for life-saving measures. The first flight was hell: air sickness, an everlasting \_\_\_\_\_ (13) and \_\_\_\_\_ (14), of course - he was so ashamed of himself! This medicine is believed to cure \_\_\_\_\_ (15) - you won't have any more problems with your diet, will you? In the morning, Jane had a high temperature and by night she was \_\_\_\_\_ (16) without stopping.

6. Work in pairs. Match the pictures(1-4) with their description (A-D) below.

### THE PATH TO A HEART ATTACK



12

3

4

A. The passage is so narrow that a blood clot or a spasm of the artery can shut off blood flow, resulting in a heart attack.

B. What happens during the reversal is unknown. One possibility: The extra cells and much of the fat simply break down. Although cleaner, the artery walls may still be scarred.

C. From childhood on fat builds up within the walls of the coronary arteries.

D. White blood cells gather and muscle cells proliferate. Both swell with fat. Debris collect, fibrous tissue forms, and the wall bulges into the interior of the artery.

7. Work in pairs. Read the explanation of the heart attack mechanism below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text.

1 Imagine a man en route to a heart attack. The blood \_\_\_\_\_ his heart fights its way One is  
2 through \_\_\_\_\_ arteries that have slowly narrowed  
over time. The heart attack \_\_\_\_\_ artery completely shut,  
4 strikes: A clot or spasm clamps a stretch of that the excess  
5 \_\_\_\_\_ part of the heart muscle of its lifeblood. The muscle dies - and so does the man, cells die off and  
6 if his \_\_\_\_\_ heart muscle cannot compensate. How the coronary arteries narrow is the fat and  
7 well understood. The process, \_\_\_\_\_ atherosclerosis, is not a matter of globs of fat and debris clear out.  
8 cholesterol building up. Rather, it happens within the artery walls \_\_\_\_\_. The muscle  
9 cells that line the arteries divide and swell with fat. White blood cells \_\_\_\_\_,  
10 scooping up more fat. \_\_\_\_\_ tissue forms, cholesterol and other debris pile up and  
11 the wall bulges into the interior of the artery, \_\_\_\_\_ down blood flow. Just what  
12 triggers the narrowing is less clear. In the 1970s \_\_\_\_\_ proposed that the artery  
13 is responding to a \_\_\_\_\_ injury. Their hypothesis, since refined, is that high levels  
14 of cholesterol in the blood irritate the artery \_\_\_\_\_, which lets white blood cells enter.  
15 Those cells, and the muscle cells in the wall, divide; both types of cells \_\_\_\_\_  
16 fat. High blood \_\_\_\_\_, diabetes and smoking also set off the process. Less fat  
17 builds up, but the artery still narrows. In some people the \_\_\_\_\_ may come from  
18 the herpes virus \_\_\_\_\_ for cold sores. In the laboratory, the virus both impairs  
19 the muscle cells' ability to produce an enzyme that \_\_\_\_\_ breaks down cholesterol  
20 and forces \_\_\_\_\_ cells to turn out a molecule that makes other cells divide. Or it  
21 may be a matter of \_\_\_\_\_, the chemical reaction that rusts iron and steel. In the  
22 body, the same reaction alters low-\_\_\_\_\_ lipoproteins (LDL's), molecules that carry  
23 cholesterol from the blood into the artery wall, where it can  
24 get \_\_\_\_\_ oxidized LDL that  
25 cells and muscle cells. Research has shown that it is  
26 collects in cells. In lab tests, antioxidants have kept cells from swallowing \_\_\_\_\_  
27 LDL. Once scientists figure out the root cause of \_\_\_\_\_ narrowing, it could be  
28 stopped. Researchers are testing antioxidants in monkeys and are \_\_\_\_\_ for  
29 compounds to block the \_\_\_\_\_ factors that direct the muscle cells to divide.  
30 The workings of reversal are a mystery. Scientists saw \_\_\_\_\_ shrink in monkeys  
put on a low-fat diet and \_\_\_\_\_ that the same might be true for people.

NOUR  
ISH  
CORO  
NA  
NARR  
OW  
DEPRI  
VE  
REMA  
IN  
CALL  
THEY  
CONG  
RESS  
FIBRE  
SLOW  
RESE  
ARCH  
PERC  
EIVE  
LINE  
CUMU  
LATIV  
E  
PRESS  
TRIG  
GER  
RESP  
ONSE  
NORM  
INFEC  
TION  
OXIG  
EN  
DENS  
E  
PICK  
PRIM  
E  
OXIG  
EN  
ARTE  
RY  
HUNT  
GROW  
BLOC  
K  
HYPO  
THESI  
S  
POSSI  
BLE

**8. Work in pairs. Discuss the following: What are the most dangerous factors contributing to the risk of having a life-threatening heart attack? Then read the text below and make a list of ill-effects that stress may have upon a human being. Do you agree with the author? Why or why not?**



Too much to do, too little time. Work deadlines, traffic jams, financial pressure, family tiffs. You probably sense that all this stress is not good for your health, and researchers back you up. The evidence is stronger than ever that life's aggravations, large and small, contribute in very real ways to heart disease. Recent studies have shown that mental stress raises blood pressure, squeezes the heart's coronary arteries and makes them go into spasms and increases levels of chemicals in the blood that cause clots. Over time, these effects can weaken the coronary arteries and the heart muscle. In people who already have some clogging in their arteries or who have had a heart attack, stress can kill. Numerous studies show that heart-attack victims who continue to lead stressful lives have two to three times the incidence of repeat heart attacks of survivors who learn to control their stress. But even people with clean arteries may suffer damaging physical effects because of stress. And they may not appreciate their danger, since the initial stages of heart disease don't reveal themselves with pain or other symptoms. Doctors now believe, in fact, that stress may trigger undetected, or "silent," mini-heart attacks

when spasms in the coronary arteries reduce the oxygen reaching the heart muscle and weaken it. In people with or without clogged arteries, these mini attacks set the stage for life-threatening heart attacks later on.

**9. You are going to read three fragments on some problems related to heart diseases. For Questions 1-15, choose from the experts (A-C). The experts may be chosen more than once.**

**A. Dr. Redford Williamson**

**B. Dr. Janet Ross**

**C. Dr. David Hajar**

**WHICH OF THE EXPERTS**

studies human conduct patterns	0	A	believes independence is an advantage	8
is sure risk depends on your environment	1		praises changing the people's attitudes	9
believes stressfulness varies individually	2		is sure smoking is a disadvantage	10
provides a historical background	3		says rational planning is important	11
suggests non-traditional methods	4		assumes family history may be important	12
thinks there is one universal stressful factor	5		pays tribute to public contacts	13
has proved the old theory to be incorrect	6		suggests teaching tolerance	14
proves some factors to be 25% less risky	7		believes skin color may be unimportant	15



**A. Dr. Redford Williamson**, a behavioral-medicine specialist at Duke University. Stress has been fingered for decades as a suspect in the progression of heart disease, as anyone labeled a "Type A" personality no doubt knows. In the 1960s and 1970s, several major studies and an onslaught of books popularized the notion that Type A's, especially white-collar Type A men - aggressive, competitive, impatient and easily angered - were twice as likely to have heart attacks as their laid-back Type B colleagues. But later studies have refined that concept. We have found that most components of Type A behavior do not predispose people to heart disease. The hard-driving, competitive businessman who thrives on constant activity and feels in control of his destiny, is at no greater risk of heart disease

unless he smokes or has other risk factors, such as a family history of heart disease. By contrast, salesmen who must meet weekly quotas, or clerical and blue-collar workers laboring under the twin burdens of constant pressure and lack of control over their work and workloads, are two to four times likelier than the average person to develop heart disease. Aggressiveness and competitiveness, it seems, don't necessarily cause stress.



**B. Dr. Janet Ross** of the University of Washington.

What is stressful for one person may be easily handled by another. It's all in how someone copes. One experience stressful to virtually everyone, apparently, is loneliness. A large body of evidence now shows that people who feel alone in the world, uninvolved with other people and their community, run a higher risk of illness, including heart disease. Heart-attack survivors are at especially high risk. In one study, people who were found through questionnaires and interviews to be socially isolated and to have a high degree of psychosocial stress- unhappiness with job or marriage, for example-were four times more likely to die from a second heart attack than those with the lowest levels of stress and isolation.



**C. Dr. David Hajar** of Cornell University. Almost all

recovery programs for heart patients now include stress-reduction techniques such as daily meditation, yoga or relaxation exercises. Patients also are taught how to overcome hostility and anxiety about time pressure, and the importance of group and community activities. One popular technique to reduce hostility, for example, is to have patients keep a log of what makes them angry; realizing how trivial many of their gripes are can help them control their anger. The sense of being imprisoned by the clock eases as people learn to schedule their lives more carefully and to lower expectations about how much they "should" get done in a day or a week. No one knows whether stress reduction might be enough, at least for some people, to prevent or reverse heart disease, even without a healthy diet and exercise program. The evidence strongly suggests that easing the pressure or learning to cope with it certainly can't hurt. And whatever the benefit to your heart, life should be sunnier.



## 10. Translate

**A.** Медичні інструменти та хірургічне устаткування можна загалом розділити на чотири великі категорії: устаткування, прилади, інструменти та допоміжні пристосування і матеріали. До устаткування, зокрема, відносяться апарати "штучне серце", "штучна нирка", штучного кровообігу та штучного дихання, рентгенівська установка, кардіограф (прилад для реєстрації скорочень серця), комп'ютерний томографічний сканер, установка для підтримки життєдіяльності, енцефалограф (апарат для фотографування циркуляції крові у головному мозку), ультразвуковий сканер. До приладів відносять дефібрилятор, тобто електричний засіб для короткочасної подачі високої напруги на серце, термометр, інгалятор для вдихання аерозолів тощо, мікроскоп, киснева маска, водій ритму серця, респіратор як засіб індивідуального захисту органів дихання, гастроскоп (медичний прилад для маніпуляцій на шлунку) і стетоскоп, тобто медичний прилад для прослуховування легень і серця. Діапазон медичних інструментів надзвичайно широкий, серед них - катетери, тобто металевий або гумовий хірургічний інструмент для дренажування і промивання порожнин, затискачі, інструменти для осушування ран, щипці, ланцети (гостроконечні хірургічні ножі з ручкою), голки, зонди, скальпелі, шприци. Нарешті, допоміжні пристосування і матеріали включають, поміж іншого, биндаж та бинти, підкладні судна, гіпсові та підтримуючі пов'язки, тампони звичайні і тампони на стержні, джгути, вологе обгортання, банки для збирання проб на аналіз, шини (пристосування з твердого матеріалу для закріплення кінцівок при переломі тощо), носилки (ноші) та багато іншого.

**Б.** Захворювання грудної клітки і органів грудної порожнини включають велику кількість розладів, зокрема кардіологічних, таких як стенокардія або серцеві напади, симптомами яких часто бувають блідість, утруднене дихання, задишка або жорстке дихання, знесиленість, посиніння, висока частота серцевих скорочень, набряки аж до втрати свідомості. Серцеві напади часто настають не раптово, а внаслідок певних попередніх симптомів, таких як шуми в серці. Хрипи і кашель часто сигналізують про проблеми з легенями або бронхами, а нудота і блювання свідчать про розлад травлення, причини якого доцільно з'ясувати.

**11. Write a 200-word survey report on the problems of heart diseases. Use the information below as well as other texts from this Part of Lesson 2.**

## **SURVEY REPORT**

This is a formal piece of writing based on research. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) an introduction (1 paragraph) where you identify the purpose and content of your report; (2) a main body (several paragraphs with subheadings) where you present the collected information in detail; (3) a conclusion (1 paragraph) where you summarize the information and give a recommendation and/or suggestion if relevant in your particular case. Recommendations: (1) Use formal language; (2) Use numbers or letters to separate portions of information; (3) Think of the main heading of your report; (4) Carefully analyze the information and break it up into appropriate subheadings; (5) Use present tenses to introduce generalizations, otherwise use past tenses if appropriate; (6) Use expressions like *20%*, *every second patient*, *the majority of patients*, *a large proportion of patients* to report the results of your survey; (7) Present facts in the form of percentages or proportions if applicable; (8) Link generalizations to the facts either by active (This demonstrates/ indicates) or passive (It is demonstrated/indicated by...).

Useful phrases:

To introduce: This research/survey was done... The aim of this survey is ... As requested by ... To generalize:

On the whole ... In general... Overall... To introduce other people's opinions: Many experts believe/assume ...

Some people claim/argue ... To conclude: To sum it up ... All in all... In conclusion ... All things considered...

## **REVERSING HEART DISEASE**

Revolution is brewing, and Joe Cecena's skirmish is an encouraging early sign. Until very recently, doctors have believed that the ravages of heart disease, the nations No. 1 killer, were irreversible -that by the time cholesterol deposits had so choked the vital blood vessels feeding the heart as to bring on chest pains or heart attack, patients had no hope of ever again having a healthy heart. Instead they faced a lifetime of cholesterol-lowering drugs or open-heart surgery or - worst of all - an early death. Now a growing body of research shows that people like Cecena can actually clean out their coronary arteries - provided they have the grit to make radical changes in their life or respond well to drugs.

The first hard evidence that lifestyle changes alone - no drugs, no surgery - can set heart-disease patient on the road to improved health appeared recently in the British medical journal *Lancet* in a study directed by Dean Ornish, head of the Preventive Medicine Research Institute in Sausalito, Calif, and a faculty member of the University of California at San Francisco. Cecena and 27 other subjects in the study will never again have the pipes of a teenager.

But after 30 months on Ornish's extremely low-fat diet, moderate-exercise program and daily yoga and meditation, three of Cecena's five blocked arteries have widened, and he feels 'reborn'.

It will take more data to convince all doctors that lifestyle alone can melt the fatty deposits imperiling patients' hearts. But Ornish's results plus groundbreaking studies show that cholesterol-lowering drugs can also reverse heart disease are hard to ignore. If nothing else, the new studies may put to rest last year's cholesterol controversy, which swirled around the claim that no one had ever proved that diet or lifestyle changes could affect someone's subsequent risk of heart disease. Cardiologists report that they are already more aggressive about lowering blood cholesterol to 200 milligrams and below, per deciliter of blood through diet or drugs. And they have become more adamant about the value to still healthy people of eating right, keeping blood pressure down, eschewing tobacco and limiting stress.

The best treatment for each of the five million people who have had chest pains or a heart attack, remains an open question. The majority of patients in the drug studies showed no reversal and while most people in Ornish's study did improve, the program requires a heavy dose of dedication. Surgery may be the only choice for some people with advanced disease. But both bypass surgery, in which blood vessels from the leg or chest are grafted onto the heart to reroute blood around clogged coronary arteries, and angioplasty, in which a tiny balloon is used to expand narrowed coronaries, address the symptoms of the heart disease, not the causes. The fatty deposits often move right back in. People unable to change their diet may be advised to try a cholesterol-lowering drug. These drugs have to be taken one to six times daily and can have side effects ranging from flushing to liver damage.

Becoming familiar with the evidence and the options may help you find a solution that you and your doctor can agree on. Anyone with the gumption to try healthy living will be taking the economical approach: The typical bypass operation costs \$30,000 to \$40,000, angioplasty is \$15,000 to \$20,000 and a year's supply of cholesterol-lowering drugs can run \$500 to \$2,000.

## PART 2. BACH, SHIATSU AND ALEXANDER TECHNIQUE

1. Work in pairs. What kind of alternative (non-traditional) medicine (e.g. hypnosis) do you know? Make a list of them. Compare your list with those of the other students'.

2. Work in pairs. Match the kinds of alternative medicine in the box with the pictures and their definitions given below.

acupuncture    aromatherapy    autogenic training    chiropractic    herbalism    homeopathy  
Alexander technique    hydrotherapy    hypnotherapy    Bach    iridology    naturopathy    Shiatsu



A. trend in medicine that attempts to cure illness using natural things such as water, light, air, plants, rather than drugs; B. trend in medicine that attempts to cure diseases by using pleasant smelling natural oils; C. treatment of health problems by pressing on and moving the bones in one's back and joints; D. use of hypnosis to treat emotional or physical ailments; E. treatment for pain and disorders by pushing special needles into one's body; F. Japanese kind of massage; G. system of medicine in which sickness is treated by giving very small quantities of a substance that causes this illness; H. system of medicine that attempts to diagnose diseases by investigating the iris of the eye; I. use of water exercises and water massages to help ease stiff joints; J. system of medicine based on self-suggestion to develop complete independence of external influence; K. use of plant extracts to treat illness; L. method of healing using flower essences; M. healing the body through improved posture and movement

**3. Work in pairs. Study the text below and write out all the words that stand for symptoms of a disease.**



The flu usually begins abruptly, with patients running a temperature between 102° F to 106° F. Other common symptoms include a flushed face, body aches, and lack of energy. Some people have dizziness or vomiting. The fever usually lasts for a day or two, but can last 5 days. Somewhere between day 2 and day 4 of the illness, the "whole body" symptoms begin to subside, and respiratory symptoms begin to increase. The flu virus can settle anywhere in the respiratory tract, producing symptoms of a cold, croup, sore throat, bronchitis, ear infection and pain (sometimes

accompanied by pus discharge), or pneumonia. The most prominent of the respiratory symptoms is usually a dry, hacking cough. Most people also develop a sore throat (accompanied by inflammation and difficult swallowing) and headache. Nasal discharge (runny nose or rhinitis) and sneezing are common. That brings along inconveniences as the sick has to blow his nose all the time, which might result in nosebleed. These symptoms (except the cough) usually disappear within 4-7 days. Sometimes the fever returns. Cough and tiredness usually last for weeks after the rest of the illness is over. The flu usually arrives in the winter months. The most common way to catch the flu is by breathing in droplets from coughs or sneezes. Symptoms usually appear within 2-3 days. Sometimes people confuse cold and flu, which share some of the same symptoms and typically occur at the same time of the year. However, the two diseases are very different. Most people get a cold several times each year, and the flu only once every several years. People often use the term "stomach flu" to describe a viral illness where vomiting or diarrhea are the main symptoms. This is incorrect, as the stomach symptoms are not caused by the flu virus. Flu infections are primarily respiratory infections. Symptoms: fever (may be high), headache, tiredness, dry cough, sore throat, stuffy, congested nose, muscle aches and stiffness. Other symptoms may include: nasal discharge, shortness of breath, wheezing, hacking cough, chills, fatigue, malaise, sweating, loss of appetite, vomiting, dizziness, worsening of underlying illness, such as asthma or heart failure.

**4. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words and word combinations you have found in the previous exercise.**



1. He had a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ and throat may lower resistance to colds, \_\_\_\_\_ and respiratory problems. 3. Pain and a nasal \_\_\_\_\_ may mean the patient has some kind of infection in his respiratory tract. 4. If you take this medicine, it will make the \_\_\_\_\_ to eat most types of food. 5. If you feel \_\_\_\_\_ dizziness and won't be able to stand steadily, stop exercising at once. 6. You should bear in mind that \_\_\_\_\_ (
7. Headaches due to viral infections may be accompanied by the \_\_\_\_\_

with the temperature running into 104° F, a \_\_\_\_\_ face, muscle aches, and (11), i.e. a feeling of discomfort and fatigue. 8. When people cough or \_\_\_\_\_ (12), they propel some tiny droplets into the air, and that is how you catch a disease - by breathing those droplets in. 9. It was so hot, you started \_\_\_\_\_ (13) the minute you walked outside. 10. There probably was some fluid in his lungs, as he was rattling and \_\_\_\_\_ (14) at every breath.

5. Work in groups of 3-4. Write down everything you know about when and how the human language originated and how it is related to the brain. Listen to the representatives of other groups in your class. Write down any information that is missing in your list.



6. Work in pairs. In most lines of the following review of Terrence Deacon's monograph on the co-evolution of language and the brain by D. Fearnley-Sander there is one wrong word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1-29, find this word and then mark it in the text. Some lines may be correct.

1 'In the beginning was the Word'. So the Bible seems to acknowledge the uniqueness of language, the  
2 distinctive characteristics that separates the human from all other species, even from the other great  
3 apes. It is not the ability to communicate that distinguishes us. Other species communicate and  
4 depend for their continued survival upon successful communication. It is communication of a  
5 particular kind: no other specie makes promises or poems. When did language arise, and how? And  
6 why? If it is of value for the surviving of a species, as it clearly is, then why has only one species  
7 succeeded in acquiring full-blown language? The theory of evolution offers a frameworks in which  
8 these questions may be addressed. The difficulty is that language, spoken or signed, leaves no  
9 lasting trace. Which of our ancient ancestors had language, and what form their language had are  
10 matters that must be inferred from a record of fossils and ancient artefact that is extremely sparse.  
11 The idea of study the generation and processing of language in brains by the standard experimental  
12 method of science meets a different difficulty: ethic constraints severely limit the types of  
13 experiment that may be performed. Much of what is known about the workings of the brain has  
14 had to be gleaned from evidence that are only available by luck: for well over a century, careful  
15 observation in what goes wrong in brains that are physically damaged (by accident or through  
16 beneficent medical procedures such as the removal of tumours) has contributed to the development  
17 of a picture in which, broadly speaking, certain areas of the brain are distinguishing by their  
18 special functions. The span of time over which language had been around is a subject of debate. One  
19 popular view, based on the suddenly appearance in the archaeological record of evidence for a jump  
20 in sophistication of primitive technologies and of representation art, sees language with syntax  
21 (rather than just individuum words) as very recent in the evolutionary scheme: perhaps it has been  
22 with us for as little as one or two hundred thousands years, a very short period in the evolution of  
23 our species. From his knowledge of brain structure, and of the rates of evolutionary change Deacon  
24 convincingly argues for a very different story. He sees language as evolving slowly in fits and starts  
25 over a period of two million years or more. He suggests that our aped-like ancestors prior to that,  
26 the australopithecines, had the kinds of communicativeness capabilities that can be observed today  
27 in apes and monkeys. They made sounds or sings of aggression and appeasement, sounds or signs to  
28 warn and perhaps to comfort. Relics of those primitive calls persist in humans to this day, for  
29 example in the tongues clicking and other noises that we use when we communicate with babies.

**7. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the continuation of the text on the co-evolution of language and the brain with the words from the box.**

pre-disposed brain essence triggered blank vegetarian capabilities linguist fossil speech  
core structured evolving hacking evolution affecting evolutionary abilities acquisition  
universal gait grammar thought native languages



The evolutionary move forward to language, made only by humans, was \_\_\_\_\_ (1), Deacon believes, by the change that humans made from a largely \_\_\_\_\_ (2) diet to one that regularly included meat, a change marked in the \_\_\_\_\_ (3) tools - stones with sharp edges intentionally shaped by chipping to allow the \_\_\_\_\_ (4) of meat and hide. That change of behaviour was preceded and accompanied by slow \_\_\_\_\_ (5) changes of physiology, including the transition to bipedal \_\_\_\_\_ (6) and to a hand structure that allowed efficient gripping, and by increases in \_\_\_\_\_ (7) size and complexity.

Chomsky's arguments are carefully constructed and sophisticated, but the \_\_\_\_\_ (8) is familiar to people interested in language. He noted that the \_\_\_\_\_ (9) by children of language skills far exceeds what could be achieved if they began, so to speak, with a \_\_\_\_\_ (10) sheet — if they had to learn their \_\_\_\_\_ (11) languages inductively, merely from the evidence provided by \_\_\_\_\_ (12) that they hear. 'The poverty of the stimulus' is the catch phrase. Therefore, the argument goes, the infant brain must be \_\_\_\_\_ (13) to the acquiring of language. There is nothing here that conflicts with the idea that language has evolved to fit the \_\_\_\_\_ (14) of brains.

Natural \_\_\_\_\_ (15) differ from one another in many ways, but they have much in common too. Universal \_\_\_\_\_ (16) is the name that has been given to what is shared. According to Terrence Deacon, "the idea that an innate \_\_\_\_\_ (17) grammar is the only way to account for language \_\_\_\_\_ (18) was first argued by the MIT \_\_\_\_\_ (19) Noam Chomsky." But this misconstrues the situation. Rather, it is universal grammar that must be accounted for by any theory of the \_\_\_\_\_ (20) of language. Why is it that natural languages have so much in common, a shared \_\_\_\_\_ (21), not of words, but of structure? It is inadequate to say that the universal features "have emerged spontaneously and independently in each \_\_\_\_\_ (22) language, in response to universal biases in the selection processes \_\_\_\_\_ (23) language transmission". Account must be taken of the power of \_\_\_\_\_ (24) language to support not just communication but creative rational \_\_\_\_\_ (25). The twentieth-first century will bring answers, one hopes, to deep questions about language that are essential to us.

**8. Listen to the text on the origin of language. For questions 1-6 choose the best answer. In question 4 there are more than one correct answers.**

- The principal form of human language is
  - writing, sign language, music, dance and painting
  - reading
  - speech
  - speaking
- The most ancient writing known to the mankind has the age of
  - 9000 years
  - 7000 years
  - 5000 years
  - 4000 years
- The origin of a language can be traced by means of
  - radioactive analysis
  - mathematical analysis
  - translation analysis
  - philological analysis
- Which of the languages (A-D) have descended from the proto-Indo-European?
  - Sumerian
  - Chinese
  - Ukrainian
  - English
- Unlike humans, animals can communicate only
  - by gestures
  - in instantaneous circumstances
  - to show annoyance or anger
  - to indicate contentment
- It is difficult to say when, where and how language began because
  - there is lack of written records
  - there are no speakers of old languages
  - we can not decode old languages
  - there is lack of dictionaries

**9. Work in pairs. Listen to the tape again. Fill in the table below to indicate in what connection the words in Column A are used in the text. Discuss the content of the table with other students.**





COLUMN A	MEANING	COLUMN A	MEANING
humans		speech	
species		record (v)	
communicate		combine	
signals		code	
annoyance		ancient	
contentment		trace	
dislike		descend	

#### 10. Listen to the tape again and fill in the blanks in the following sentences.

As we all know, both \_\_\_\_\_ and animals \_\_\_\_\_ with their own \_\_\_\_\_, but unlike us animals do not \_\_\_\_\_ with words and \_\_\_\_\_.

They use \_\_\_\_\_ such as gestures, \_\_\_\_\_ and smells.

A cat purrs to indicate \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ will shake their heads from side to side to show that they mean no \_\_\_\_\_, but their \_\_\_\_\_ stare is a definite \_\_\_\_\_ or warning.

We can \_\_\_\_\_ with what is out of \_\_\_\_\_, and with what is millions of \_\_\_\_\_ away.

The means of \_\_\_\_\_ would include writing, \_\_\_\_\_ language, \_\_\_\_\_, dance and \_\_\_\_\_.

So it is \_\_\_\_\_ to say that all \_\_\_\_\_ combine sound and \_\_\_\_\_ into a complex \_\_\_\_\_ of communication.

To the best of our \_\_\_\_\_ the oldest \_\_\_\_\_ was done \_\_\_\_\_ 5000 years ago in \_\_\_\_\_, the language of \_\_\_\_\_ Mesopotamia, a \_\_\_\_\_ that has become \_\_\_\_\_ of modern Iraq.

And so we can not \_\_\_\_\_ know for sure \_\_\_\_\_ at one time all our \_\_\_\_\_ modern \_\_\_\_\_ which \_\_\_\_\_ about 3000 did have one common \_\_\_\_\_, or whether they \_\_\_\_\_ from different \_\_\_\_\_ in different \_\_\_\_\_ during our \_\_\_\_\_.

Yet it has been possible to \_\_\_\_\_ the history of our \_\_\_\_\_ down through the \_\_\_\_\_ by examining the \_\_\_\_\_ and differences that \_\_\_\_\_ among today's \_\_\_\_\_ languages.

Most of the languages \_\_\_\_\_ in the Western \_\_\_\_\_ today had been \_\_\_\_\_ to the common yet \_\_\_\_\_ source which \_\_\_\_\_ call \_\_\_\_\_.

The languages \_\_\_\_\_ from this \_\_\_\_\_ language which was \_\_\_\_\_ as far back as 4000 B.C. \_\_\_\_\_ nearly all those \_\_\_\_\_ languages spoken in \_\_\_\_\_ and in \_\_\_\_\_ North and \_\_\_\_\_ America.

\_\_\_\_\_ Persian languages as well as \_\_\_\_\_ of India's chief \_\_\_\_\_ have also been \_\_\_\_\_ to Proto-Indo-European.

#### 11. Translate

**A.** Галузі нетрадиційної медицини важко піддаються обліку, бо існують у великій різноманітності. Серед них такі, як хіропрактика, тобто теорія, згідно з якою виникнення деяких хвороб пояснюється вивихом певних хребців, вправлення яких приводить до вилікування; гомеопатія або вчення про те, що будь-які хвороби можна вилікувати шляхом застосування у малих дозах речовин, що у великих дозах спричиняють явища, схожі на ознаки хвороби; іридологія або система поглядів, згідно з якими будь-яку хворобу можна встановити, проаналізувавши стан райдужної оболонки ока; акупунктура або голковколівання чи



голкутерапія; гербалізм, згідно з вченням якого будь-які хвороби можна вилікувати виключно за допомогою трав; аутогенне тренування; натуропатія або система лікування, що ґрунтується на використанні природних чинників (вода, світло, повітря, тепло, масаж тощо) і не визнає ліків, хірургії, рентгенівських променів тощо; система Александра, тобто метод лікування, що ґрунтується на виконанні певної системи фізичних вправ; ароматерапія або лікування хвороб із застосуванням пахучих речовин; система Баха (метод лікування квітковими есенціями); японський масаж ш'яцу; гіпнотерапія, метод лікування в якій ґрунтується на гіпнотичному навіюванні, та гідротерапія, в якій ключову роль відіграє зовнішнє застосування води з лікувальною та профілактичною метою у вигляді обливань, розтирань тощо.

Б. Захворювання вуха, горла і носа знайомі усім, починаючи від елементарної застуди з нежиттю, що змушує хворого раз по раз сьхатися в хусточку, із закладеним носом, кашлем, чханням, головним болем і підвищеною температурою. Грип за своїми симптомами схожий на застуду: таке саме почервоніле обличчя, гарячка, виділення з носу, часами й кровотеча з носу, відчуття, наче ломить тіло, кахикання, знижений тонус, нездужання (невизначне відчуття дискомфорту й втоменості), потіння. Однак є й відмінності: у випадку з грипом часто спостерігаються додаткові симптоми захворювання верхніх дихальних шляхів, наприклад, запалення бронхів, а також круп, тобто запалення слизової оболонки гортані, що супроводжується хрипом, гавкаючим кашлем та важким диханням). Крім того грип часто супроводжується ускладненнями головних з пов'язаних між собою хвороб. Захворювання горла характеризуються його запаленням, внаслідок чого спостерігається утруднене ковтання і хрипи, а при запаленні вуха часто спостерігаються біль у ньому, виділення, включаючи і гнійні виділення. Запалене горло приносить багато незручностей. Інколи грип також супроводжується приступами нудоти, проносом і блюванням, але це не є результатом дії збудника грипу, причини виникнення побічних ефектів потребують додаткових досліджень.

В. Походження мови залишається невирішеною проблемою, хоча коінтрактивна лінгвістика накопила величезний обсяг даних, які, зокрема допомогли зробити висновок, що більшість мов, якими зараз спілкуються у Європі, Північній та Південній Америці, а також деякі мови іранської сім'ї та Індії походять з одного джерела, прамови, якою ймовірно спілкувалися приблизно за 4 000 років до нашої ери, але письмові пам'ятки цієї мовою не збереглися. Власне й питання чи мала ця мова письмову форму залишається відкритим, адже найстаршому письмовому пам'ятнику, який відомий людству, приблизно 5 000 років. На думку деяких дослідників, структура мови визначається структурою мозку людини, бо розвиток мови і розвиток мислення відбувалися паралельно. Відповідно, припускається існування так званої універсальної граматики і генетичного коду, який наявний у свідомості дитини вже при народженні. Дія механізму засвоєння мови занукається, як тільки-но дитина потрапляє у мовленнєве середовище, за умови, що оточуючі люди спілкуються з дитиною. Це пояснює факт засвоєння дитиною будь-якої мови, якою спілкуються з дитиною. Не визнавши наявності спадкових механізмів, важко пояснити швидкість та легкість засвоєння дитиною будь-якої мови.

## PART 3. THE ONSET OF SYMPTOMS



**1. Work in pairs. What kind of symptoms related to diseases do you know? Make a list of them. Compare your list with those of the other students'.**

**2. Work in pairs. Study the text below and write out all the words that stand for skin problems and their symptoms.**

Skin problems include, among others, warts and papillomas (small hard raised parts on someone's skin), moles or birth marks (small dark brown marks on the skin that are slightly higher than the skin around them) that are dealt with individually. Mechanical skin injuries may result in abrasions or scars. Rashes, also known as skin redness, skin inflammation, skin lesion involve eruptions, i.e. changes in the color or texture of your skin. Often, the cause of a rash can be determined from its visible characteristics and other symptoms. A simple rash is called dermatitis, meaning inflammation of the skin. Contact dermatitis is caused by things your skin touches, such as: dyes and other chemicals in clothing, chemicals in elastic, latex, and rubber products, cosmetics, soaps, and detergents, poison ivy and some other plants. Seborrheic dermatitis is a rash that appears in patches of redness and scaling around the eyebrows, eyelids, mouth, nose, and behind the ears. If it happens on your scalp, it is called dandruff in adults and cradle cap in infants. Age, stress, fatigue, weather extremes, oily skin, infrequent shampooing, and alcohol-based lotions aggravate this harmless but bothersome condition. Other common causes of a rash include: eczema (tends to happen in people with allergies or asthma), which is generally red, itchy, and scaly; psoriasis (red, scaly, itchy patches over joints and along the scalp, fingernails may be affected, too); impetigo (common in children - appears as red sores that turn into blisters, ooze, then crust over), shingles - a painful skin condition with blisters and ulcers caused by the same virus as chickenpox; childhood illnesses like chicken pox, measles, rubella, and scarlet fever; medications and insect bites or stings.

**3. Work in pairs. Distribute the symptoms in the box among those related to stomach disorders and eye diseases. Then match some of them with the definitions under the pictures.**

blurring of vision	sore eye	anorexia	bulging eye	belching	squinting eye	eye pain
constipation	eye strain	diarrhea	eyelid injury	heartburn	eyewatering	hernia
inflamed eye	hiccup	sty	longsightedness	liquid stool	nausea	see double
		swollen abdomen	shortsightedness			



Disorders of Peritoneum and Abdominal Cavity	Eye Disorders

A. inability to see things clearly unless they are very close to one's eyes. B. sudden continual stopping of the breath caused by eating or drinking too fast. C unpleasant burning feeling in one's stomach or chest caused by acid from the stomach. D. infected place on the edge of one's eyelid, which gets red and swollen. E. medical condition in which an organ pushes through the muscles that should contain it. F. eye looking in a slightly different direction than the other one. G. loud coming of the air out from one's stomach through one's mouth; H. mental illness which makes one stop eating; I. inability to see very well, because the edges are not clear; J. filling one's eyes with tears.

**4. Work in pairs. What do you know about the origin of the English language? What language family does it belong to? Why is it called "English"? What other languages have influenced its development? Which languages has it borrowed words from?**

**5. Work in pairs. Read the text on the origins of the English language below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text.**



1 English is a \_\_\_\_\_ language of the  
 2 Indo-European family.  
 3 It is the second most  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_ lang  
 5 uage in the world. The  
 6 history of the language can be traced back to the \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 three germanic tribes to the \_\_\_\_\_  
 8 \_\_\_\_\_ AD. Angles, Saxons and  
 9 Jutes crossed the north  
 10 sea from what is the present day Denmark and \_\_\_\_\_  
 11 Germany. The \_\_\_\_\_ of Britain  
 12 previously spoke a Celtic  
 13 language. This was quickly \_\_\_\_\_. Most of the Celtic  
 14 \_\_\_\_\_ were pushed into Wales, Cornwall and Scotland.

**GERMAN**  
**SPEAK**  
**ARRIVE BRIT**  
**CENT NORTH**  
**HABITAT**  
**PLACE** of  
**SPEAK** h  
**FRENCH**  
**DESCEND**  
**NAME CALL**  
**ORIGIN**

**SCRIBE CULT**  
**INVADE**  
**DESTROY**  
**KING KNOW**  
**WRITE**  
**MISSION**  
**WRITE**  
**BORROW**  
**DENMARK**  
**SCANDINAVIA**  
**CELT**  
**TOPONYMY**

15 One group migrated to the Brittany coast of \_\_\_\_\_  
 16 where their \_\_\_\_\_ still speak the Celtic language  
 17 of Breton today. The Angles were \_\_\_\_\_ from Engle,  
 18 their land of origin. Their language was \_\_\_\_\_ Englisc,  
 19 from which the word English \_\_\_\_\_. An Anglo-Saxon  
 20 \_\_\_\_\_ dated between 450 and 480ad is the oldest sample of the English language.  
 During the 7th and 8th centuries, Northumbrian \_\_\_\_\_ and  
 Britain. The Viking language dominated  
 (along with the \_\_\_\_\_ of the 9th century brought this domination to an end \_ of  
 21 Mercia). Only Wessex remained as an independent  
 22 \_\_\_\_\_. By the 10th century, the West Saxon dialect became the official  
 23 language of Britain. Written Old English is mainly \_\_\_\_\_ from this period. It was  
 24 \_\_\_\_\_ in an alphabet called Runic, derived from the Scandinavian languages. The  
 25 Latin alphabet was brought over from Ireland by Christian \_\_\_\_\_. This has  
 26 remained the \_\_\_\_\_ system of English. Then the vocabulary of Old English  
 27 consisted of an Anglo-Saxon base with \_\_\_\_\_ words from Scandinavian languages  
 28 ( \_\_\_\_\_ and Norse) and Latin. Latin gave English words like *street, kitchen,*  
*kettle, cup, cheese, wine, angel, bishop.* The Vikings added many \_\_\_\_\_ words:  
*sky, egg, cake, skin, leg, window* (wind eye). \_\_\_\_\_ words also survived mainly  
 in \_\_\_\_\_ names (Devon, Dover, Kent, Trent, Severn, Avon, Thames).

6. Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the continuation of the text on the origin of English with the words from the box.



contributions dialect Renaissance standard  
 domestic basic conquered enormous auxili-  
 ary derivations vocabulary coined occurred  
 pronouns remained dominant languages  
 displaced borrowed derived contact Germanic  
 scientific retained contributed affected conquest  
 borrowings

In 1066 the Normans (1) Britain. French became  
 the language of the Norman aristocracy and added more

\_\_\_\_\_ (2) to English.

\_\_\_\_\_ (3) animals like

*swine, deer*) while the words for the meats \_\_\_\_\_

from them are French {*beef, veal, mutton, pork, bacon, venison*). The \_\_\_\_\_ (5) form of plurals {*house - housen;*  
*shoe - shoen*) was eventually \_\_\_\_\_ (6) by the French method of making plurals: adding an -s {*house - houses;*  
*shoe - shoes*). Only a few words have \_\_\_\_\_ (7) their Germanic plurals: *men, oxen, feet, teeth, children*. French  
 also \_\_\_\_\_ (8) spelling so that the *cw* sound came to be written as *qu* (eg. *cween* became *queen*). It wasn't till the  
 14th Century that English became \_\_\_\_\_ (9) in Britain again. In 1399, King Henry IV became the first king of  
 England since the Norman \_\_\_\_\_ (10) whose mother tongue was English. By the end of the 14th Century, the  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (11) of London had emerged as the \_\_\_\_\_ (12) dialect of what we now call Middle English. Chaucer wrote  
 in this language. Modern English began around the 16th Century and, like all \_\_\_\_\_ (13), is still changing. One

change \_\_\_\_\_ (14) when the *-th* of some verb forms became *-s* {*loveth* - *loves*; *hath* - *has*). \_\_\_\_\_ (15) verbs also changed {*he is risen* - *he has risen*). The historical influence of language in the British Isles can best be seen in place names and their \_\_\_\_\_ (16). Since the 16th Century, because of the \_\_\_\_\_ (17) that the British had with many

peoples from around the world, and the \_\_\_\_\_ (18) of Classical learning, many words have entered the language either directly or indirectly. New words were created at an increasing rate. Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ (19) over 1600 words. This process has grown very fast in the modern era. \_\_\_\_\_ (20) words include names of animals {giraffe, tiger, zebra}, clothing (pyjama, turban, shawl), food {spinach, chocolate, orange}, \_\_\_\_\_ (21) and mathematical terms {algebra, geography, species}. Languages that have \_\_\_\_\_ (22) words to English include Latin, Greek, French, German, Arabic, Hindi (from India), Italian, Malay, Dutch, Farsi (from Iran and Afghanistan), Nahuatl (the Aztec language), Sanskrit (from ancient India), Portuguese, Spanish, Tupi (from South America) and Ewe (from Africa). The list of borrowed words is \_\_\_\_\_ (23). The vocabulary of English is the largest of any language. Even with all these \_\_\_\_\_ (24) the heart of the language remains the Anglo-Saxon of Old English. Only about 5 000 or so words from this period have \_\_\_\_\_ (25) unchanged but they include the \_\_\_\_\_ (26) building blocks of the language: household words, parts of the body, common animals, natural elements, most \_\_\_\_\_ (27), prepositions, conjunctions and auxiliary verbs. Grafted onto this basic stock was a wealth of \_\_\_\_\_ (28) to produce, what many people believe, is the richest of the world's languages.

**7. Listen to Part 2 of the text on the origin of language. For questions 1-10 choose the best answer.**



**1. people who speak Japanese?**

- A. 105 million
- C 125 million

**What is the approximate number of**

- B. 115 million
- D. 135 million

**2. than Chinese are there?**

- A. 640 million
- C 740 million

**How many fewer speakers of Italian**

- B. 660 million
- D. 760 million

**3. the text is spoken by 29 million people?**

- A. Persian
- C Vietnamese

**Which of the languages mentioned in**

- B. Thai
- D. Polynesian

**4. How many people are estimated to speak Hindi?**

- A. 140 million
- C 180 million
- B. 144 million
- D. 184 million

**5. Which language mentioned in the text is spoken by 120 million people?**

- A. German
- C Spanish
- B. French
- D. Numibian

**6. How many people in total speak Russian and Vietnamese?**

- A. 155 million
- C 175 million
- B. 165 million
- D. 185 million

**7. How many speakers of Arabic are there in the world?**

- A. 105 million
- C 125 million
- B. 115 million
- D. 135 million



**8. mentioned in the text is spoken by a little over 300 million people?**

- C Spanish
- Lingua franca

A. English

B. French

D.

**9. second language in the world?**

A. Chinese

B. Spanish

**What is the most popular**

C English

D. Arabic

**10. What is the exact estimated number of languages in the world?**

A. 2.697

B. 2.796

C 2.976

D. 3.000

8. Work in pairs. Listen to the text again. Fill in the table below to indicate what the figures given there mean.

FIGURE	MEANING	FIGURE	MEANING
140 mln.		29 mln.	
800 mln.		184 mln.	
4 bin.		317 mln.	
14 mln.		180 mln.	
115 mln.		3000	
105 mln.		2796	
55 mln.		1000	
120mln.		1000	
25 mln.		13	

9. Work in pairs. Listen to the text again. There are more \_\_\_\_\_ ; in the following sentences.



are speakers of Russian, languages of the Far \_\_\_\_\_ - Chinese and together.

One \_\_\_\_\_ has put the \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ 3.000 \_  
 And yet more than \_\_\_\_\_ languages are  
 Indians.  
 Approximately another \_\_\_\_\_  
 Because of all this linguistic \_\_\_\_\_  
 the idea of \_\_\_\_\_ an artificial  
 At \_\_\_\_\_ times in the history of the  
 such a \_\_\_\_\_  
 The most \_\_\_\_\_  
 This \_\_\_\_\_ language was

\_, or shall we say a  
 language.

of the languages of this

and the

35 mln.		15 mln.	
---------	--	---------	--

Esperanto was not \_\_\_\_\_ than there  
 languages \_\_\_\_\_ Western languages put  
 Until a a



The latest show that the ge \_\_\_\_\_ for a while  
and talk about some of  
languages \_\_\_\_\_ are spoken by large \_\_\_\_\_ of people  
o  
and Thai are language is \_\_\_\_\_ by 25  
Let me e  
million people, while to get  
by 35 million of any million and 29  
million people  
\_, kind. to however, that it is  
0  
languages are and growing, and it always \_\_\_\_\_ that the \_\_\_\_\_  
a language- each year.  
p French as the  
p As for English, today it \_\_\_\_  
r lingua \_\_\_\_\_.  
o As I \_\_\_\_\_ pointed out, the peoples of the  
speak about  
i \_ languages.  
m languages.  
a \_spoken by the  
t and  
e different that people have so  
l o by  
y f  
N to develop just  
l orth  
attempt was the groups.  
languages are spoken by small scientist.  
n \_\_\_\_\_ in the world, it is no  
i \_\_\_\_\_ language.  
l World there have been several  
l  
being very \_\_\_\_\_ of Esperanto.  
o in the  
n and we will be to learn  
Let's put \_\_\_\_\_ language in order to  
the \_\_\_\_\_ used, because it is \_\_\_\_\_  
today. mostly on western \_\_\_\_\_  
The \_\_\_\_\_ and vocabulary.  
artificial \_\_\_\_\_ language is  
a with people who do not speak our

## 10. Translate

A. У багатьох людей з віком розвиваються різноманітні новоутворення на шкірі, такі як родимки, бородавки та папіломи, питання про видалення яких вирішується у індивідуальному порядку. Внаслідок механічного пошкодження шкіри (від ударів тощо) на ній можуть залишатися сліди ушкоджень, такі як садно або шрам. Захворювання шкіри - це, власне, різні види дерматитів, що відрізняються за ступенем

серйозності. Наприклад, себореїний дерматит це просто лупа - дитяча або доросла, яка виражається у почервонінні та лущенні шматочків шкіри навколо деяких частин голови. Інші дерматити супроводжуються висипами, що можуть виникати внаслідок механічного контакту шкіри з різноманітними речовинами або рослинами. Джерелом висипу можуть також бути хвороби, такі як екзема, яка супроводжується почервонінням шкіри, її свербінням і лущенням. Екзема часто виникає у людей, що страждають на астму або схильні до алергічних реакцій. Іншою хворобою є псоріаз, який викликає червоніння, свербіння та лущення шкіри на суглобах та голові, іноді вражаються й нігті на пальцях. Оперізуєчий лишай - серйозна і неприємна хвороба, збудником якої є вірус вітряної віспи. Під час цієї недуги на шкірі утворюються нухирі і виразки. Імпетиго - дитяча, але болісна хвороба з почервонілими ранами, що перетворюються на нухпрі, які пізніше лопаються і заростають кіркою. Причиною висипів можуть також бути інфекційні дитячі хвороби, наприклад кір або скарлатина, а також деякі медикаменти і навіть укуси комах.

Б. Захворювання очей є досить поширеними, особливо з настанням вікових змін у організмі. Більшість людей страждають короткозорістю чи, навпаки, далекозорістю, а тому потребують корекції зору за допомогою окуляр або лінз. Без такої допомоги спостерігаються різні симптоми, такі як поволока перед очима, двоїння в очах, слезотеча, втомленість ока. Трапляються випадки болю в оці, який може бути викликаний різними причинами, наприклад, пошкодженням віка або запаленням ока, окремим випадком якого може бути ячмінь, що іноді супроводжується гнійними виділеннями. Пропродні дефекти, такі як винукле чи косяче око можуть лікуватися або ні, залежно від обставин.

В. Захворювання очеревини і органів черевної порожнини є досить частими. Ігнорування основних вимог до правил здорового харчування, надмірна кількість їжі та/або вживання неякісних продуктів приводить до таких порушень роботи шлунку як запор або пронос, здутий живіт, що супроводжуються неприємними і незручними для особи нездужаннями, серед яких печія, відрижка та ікавка. Порушення санітарних вимог, таких як миття рук та продуктів перед вживанням, використання недостатньо ретельно обробленої продукції може призвести до отруєння, симптомами якого є нудота, запаморочення, втрата свідомості. У таких випадках у жертви викликають блювання, аби позбавитися джерела отруєння у шлунку. Загалом правила здорового харчування досить прості і їхнє дотримання гарантує ваше здоров'я.

**11. Write a 200-word survey report on the origins of English. Use the information in Parts 2 and 3 of this lesson as well as any other sources.**

## SURVEY REPORT

This is a formal piece of writing based on research. This type of essay usually has three parts: (1) an **introduction** (1 paragraph) where you identify the purpose and content of your report; (2) a **main body** (several paragraphs with subheadings) where you present the collected information in detail; (3) a **conclusion** (1 paragraph) where you summarize the information and give a recommendation and/or suggestion if relevant in your particular case.

**Recommendations:** (1) Use formal language; (2) Use numbers or letters to separate portions of information; (3) Think of the main heading of your report; (4) Carefully analyze the information and break it up into appropriate subheadings; (5) Use present tenses to introduce generalizations, otherwise use past tenses if appropriate; (6) Use expressions like *20%, every second patient, the majority of patients, a large proportion of patients* to report the results of your survey; (7) Present facts in the form of percentages or proportions if applicable; (8) Link generalizations to the facts either by active *{This demonstrates/ indicates}* or passive *{It is demonstrated/indicated by...}*.

### Useful phrases:

**To introduce:** *This research/survey was done... The aim of this survey is... As requested by...*

**To generalize:** *On the whole... In general... Overall...* **To introduce other people's opinions:** *Many experts believe/assume... Some people claim/argue...* **To conclude:** *To sum it up... All in all... In conclusion... All things considered*

## LESSON 3

### PART 1. MODERN MEDICINE IS BAD FOR YOUR HEALTH



#### 1. Match the words in column A with their antonyms in column B.

VERBS		ADJECTIVES/ADVERBS	
A	B	A	B
1. rely upon	a. stand aside, aid	1. astonishing	a. slowly
2. cure	b. succeed	2. ancient	b. well cared of
3. fail	c. overlook	3. neglected	c inexperienced
4. experience	d. distrust, doubt	4. miserable	d. ordinary
5. diagnose	e. lack practice or knowledge	5. proficient	e. happy
6. interfere with	f. damage	6. rapidly	f. modern
NOUNS			
1. wounded	a. poison	3. physician	c incapacity
2. ability	b. patient	4. drug	d. intact, sound person

#### 2. Match the words in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

a. very surprising	f.	k. depend upon
b. interrupt, cause damage to		l. wretched, very unhappy
c. substance used for medical purposes	quickly	m. cleverness, power to do sth, capacity
d. be unsuccessful	g.	n. very old
e. determine the nature of sth from symptoms	bring (a person) back to health	o. having an injury caused by cutting, shooting, tearing etc.
	h. feel, meet with, gain knowledge	
	i. skilled, expert	
	enough care to,	
j. not given left undone	p. person qualified to practice both medicine and surgery	

#### 3. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 1.

1. The doctors had to work \_\_\_\_\_ in order to save the patient's life. 2. If you want to be a \_\_\_\_\_ you'll have to go to a Medical School and learn a lot. 3. In those wretched outskirts there was only one \_\_\_\_\_ poorly-equipped hospital. 4. If you want to recover quickly, your work shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the course of treatment. the new 5.1 medicine, but it didn't work. 6. The scientist spent decades to work out this powerful \_\_\_\_\_ for cancer. 7.1 to find the necessary medicine at the local drug store and had to buy a similar one. 8. Left to the care of \_\_\_\_\_ doctors and nurses, the patient felt relieved. 9. I don't doubt your \_\_\_\_\_ to perform this operation, but it's going to be quite risky. 10. If you leave your ulcer \_\_\_\_\_, it may lead to cancer. 11. After the battle the \_\_\_\_\_ were \_\_\_\_\_ Egypt and China were already able to operate on great hardships. 14. The treatment gave \_\_\_\_\_ results out from the battlefield and sent to hospitals. 12. People in

the brain. 13. On his way to becoming a doctor Steve \_\_\_\_\_  
nobody had expected. 15. The doctors' efforts to \_\_\_\_\_ the patient of AIDS failed. 16. He was immediately  
with measles.

4. Read the headline of the article. What do you think the article is about? Explain your answer.

# MODERN MEDICINE IS BAD FOR YOUR HEALTH

5. Read the subtitle of the same article below. Do you agree to this statement? Why or why not?

**DOCTORS SHOULD RESIST THE URGE TO INTERFERE AND LEARN  
TO HARNESS THE POWER OF THE HUMAN BODY TO HEAL ITSELF**



6. You are going to read the article by R. Winston from the Sunday Times on some controversial issues of modern medicine. 6 fragments have been removed from the article. Choose from the fragments (A-F) the one that fits each gap (0-5). There is an example at the beginning (0).

A	had a natural tendency to cure themselves	
B	transfusions were rapidly given	
C	the culmination of two years' work	0
D	no matter how proficient or dexterous he is	
E	during his life people came to him by the thousands	
F	haemorrhage was less severe	

0. One of the most magical and peaceful moments I have experienced during the past two years, came during a filming session for my new BBC\* series, Superhuman. I had had a bad week: one patient had very nearly died with a neglected ectopic pregnancy. The early symptoms of the catastrophic haemorrhage were initially diagnosed as indigestion by her GP. On the same day, in my research laboratory, an experiment - \_\_\_\_\_ - failed miserably.

**0** | **Fragment: C**

1. The following morning, having at least seen my patient safe, I was on the island of Kos\*, in Greece. At dawn the deserted Temple of Apollo\*, with a gentle breeze through the ancient olive trees and the smell of resin and honey, produced an astonishing feeling of complete tranquillity. Perhaps this is what it was like during the time of Hippocrates\*. He was born on Kos and \_\_\_\_\_. They were medical pilgrims seeking cures and what they found was this healing temple dedicated to the god Asclepius\*. Within its stone walls and caressed by its mineral springs, the hopeful went through a ritual called incubation, or temple sleep.

**Fragment:**

2. In those days there was little more a healer could do than give the body a chance to save itself. Hippocrates made little use of drugs, relying upon fomentations, bathing and diet. The diet was very simple and included vinegar and honey. Above all, he did not try to interfere with nature. He knew that most diseases \_\_\_\_\_. "Our natures," he said, "are physicians of our diseases."

**I 2 fragment:**

3. Superhuman is a celebration of just that aspect of human nature, an examination of the body's own ability to heal. The best must learn how to exploit that ability, which is mostly a product of our genes. The doctor who works without understanding this may imperil his patient or mar the quality of his patient's life, \_\_\_\_\_

**Fragment:**

4. Modern medicine occasionally demonstrates capability to kill people. A remarkable example of this is trauma. Proportionately more soldiers died in Vietnam\* than in the Falklands\* conflict because the doctors got to the Vietnam wounded very quickly. In Vietnam, helicopter evacuation of casualties was speedy. \_\_\_\_\_. Bleeding soldiers were wrapped up and kept warm. But in the Falklands, helicopter evacuation was often impossible in appalling weather. Doctors could not reach soldiers on the moors to give transfusions. And the weather was bitterly cold.

**Fragment:**

5. The result was that many casualties in the Falklands, identified as having fatal injuries, survived. Without a blood transfusion, clots preventing bleeding were not dislodged and \_\_\_\_\_. The cold weather, added to the cooling that the body itself produces in shock, slowed metabolisms\* and people survived.

**Fragment:**

**NOTES**

- \* BBC -British Broadcasting Corporation; the British radio and television company that is paid for by the state
- \* Apollo [S'polou]- in Greek mythology, the god of purification
- \* Hippocrates [hi'pokrJti:z] (c.460-c.370 B.C.) - Greek physician, recognized as the father of medicine; Hippocratic oath - the promise made by doctors that they will keep to the principles of the medical profession
- \* Asclepius [ es'klrpi^s]- legendary Greek physician, and god of medicine, son of Apollo. The sick weretreated in his temples.
- \* Vietnam [vjet'nasm]- Vietnam War (1954-1975) between the government of South Vietnam, aided by the USA, and Communist guerrillas, aided by North Vietnam. The war ended in the Communist victory in 1975.
- \* the Falklands [fo:k15nds]- the Falklands War (1982) between Britain and Argentina. The Falkland islands, a British crown territory, situated by the coast of Argentina, were seized by Argentina and retaken by British troops.
- \* metabolism - the chemical activity in your body that uses food to produce the energy you need to work and grow

**7. Analysis of ideas and relationships. Circle the letter next to the best answer.**

**1. In paragraph 0 the author states that**

- a) haemorrhages are catastrophic;
- b) experiment is the culmination of research work;
- c) he enjoyed making his BBC series;
- d) some women neglect ectopic pregnancies.

**2. Paragraph 1 of the text is mainly devoted to:**

- a) island of Kos;
- b) Hippocrates;
- c) god Asclepius;
- d) temple of Apollo.



**3. In paragraph 2 the author argues that**

- a) Hippocrates used to rely upon nature;
- b) there is no need to cure people;
- c) vinegar and honey are the best diet;
- d) ancient healers didn't use drugs.

**4. Paragraph 3 praises**

- a) dexterous professionals;
- b) human genes;
- c) human nature;
- d) human life.

**5. The main idea of paragraph 4 is**

- a) bleeding patients should be kept warm;
- b) casualties were big in Vietnam;
- c) weather on the Falklands was appalling;
- d) intrusion of medicine is sometimes undesirable.

**6. In paragraph 5 the author argues that many soldiers survived due to**

- a) cold climate;
- b) delay in providing medical aid;
- c) state of shock of the wounded;
- d) combination of factors.

**8. Explain the meaning of the following words in the text.**



Ectopic pregnancy (paragraph 0), filming session (paragraph 0), early symptoms (paragraph 0), catastrophic haemorrhage (paragraph 0), research laboratory (paragraph 0), gentle breeze (paragraph 1), by the thousands (paragraph 1), medical pilgrims (paragraph 1), seeking cures (paragraph 1), healing temple (paragraph 1), dedicated to the god (paragraph 1), mineral springs (paragraph 1), relying upon fomentations (paragraph 2), made little use of drugs (paragraph 2), most diseases had a natural tendency to cure themselves (paragraph 2), our natures are physicians of our diseases (paragraph 2), aspect of human nature (paragraph 3), a product of our genes (paragraph 3), helicopter

evacuation (paragraph 4), moors (paragraph 4), were kept warm (paragraph 4), fatal injuries (paragraph 5), clots preventing bleeding (paragraph 5), added to (paragraph 5), body produces in shock (paragraph 5).

**9. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 8.**

1. The heat was oppressive and the \_\_\_\_\_ coming from the sea couldn't change anything. 2. Her \_\_\_\_\_ requires  
an urgent operation. 3. The fans of "The Beatles" were coming to the festival \_\_\_\_\_. 4. Victims of the flood were \_\_\_\_\_ he got in  
rescued due to \_\_\_\_\_. 5. This university can boast of \_\_\_\_\_  
its well-equipped \_\_\_\_\_. 6. He could survive \_\_\_\_\_ the patient wouldn't have such severe complications now.  
the car crash. 7. If the G.P. hadn't overlooked \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_  
My granny \_\_\_\_\_ relying mainly upon herbs. 9. Ancient people used to build temples  
doing their best to stop the patient's \_\_\_\_\_  
turn to charlatans. 12. Everybody should know how to help people in critical situations, for example, how to make  
\_\_\_\_\_. 13. Scientists claim that some people's ability not to get drunk is \_\_\_\_\_. 14. She got acquainted with this  
great actress \_\_\_\_\_. 15. \_\_\_\_\_ of this famous resort attract people from all over Europe. 16. It'll still take man a  
lot of time to learn every \_\_\_\_\_. 17. A bad cough \_\_\_\_\_ your fever may result in bronchitis. 18. People believe it  
to be \_\_\_\_\_  
.11. Sometimes sick people lose trust in official medicine and \_\_\_\_\_

and come here by the thousands. 19. The reactions that \_\_\_\_\_ need further studying. 20. Not having

effective drugs, in older days people mostly                      herbs or other natural means.

**10. Find in the text the phrasal verbs meaning**

<b>get to</b>	arrive at
	pass through
	give oneself or something completely to
	use something as an object or tool in one's work
	increase, make a sum of
	enfold something or somebody in (usually paper or cloth)



### 11. Complete the sentences below with the phrasal verbs from Activity 10.

1. When I have a cold, my mom \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ in a blanket and makes me drink a lot of hot tea with honey and lemon. 2. The hospital is well-equipped: you should take a special course to \_\_\_\_\_ all these devices and apparatuses. 3. The ambulance \_\_\_\_\_ the burning house even before the firemen. 4. Your running nose \_\_\_\_\_ a sore throat means you'll have to keep the house for a while. 5. I know you don't like medical examinations, but you'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ this one. 6. Young doctors take the oath to \_\_\_\_\_ their lives \_\_\_\_\_ the service of people.

### 12. Find in the text the words meaning:

Sequel (paragraph 0), originally (paragraph 0), climax, peak (paragraph 0), daybreak (paragraph 1), natural or artificial sticky substance (paragraph 1), whole, thorough, finished (paragraph 1), ceremony (paragraph 1), period between infection and the appearance of the first symptoms (paragraph 1), a person or thing that cures (paragraph 2), glorification (paragraph 3), check (paragraph 3), from time to time (paragraph 4), diseased condition produced by a wound or injury (paragraph 4), corresponding in degree or amount (paragraph 4), act or process of transfusing the blood of one person to another (paragraph 4), process by which food is built up into living matter (paragraph 5).

### 13. Complete the sentences below with the words whose definitions were given in Activity 12.

1. In order to diagnose your disease, I should give you're a thorough \_\_\_\_\_. 2. One can get infected with AIDS or hepatitis via \_\_\_\_\_. 3. At \_\_\_\_\_ the patient's condition stabilized and he began breathing more easily. 4. When you're sleeping, \_\_\_\_\_ in your body slows down. 5. The \_\_\_\_\_ period for chicken pox is 21 days. 6. There's a very interesting \_\_\_\_\_ about the resources of the human body on the Discovery Channel. 7. If doctors are helpless, people often turn to \_\_\_\_\_. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ there are more doctors in Great Britain than in Ukraine. 9. The \_\_\_\_\_ of his career as a surgeon was the first ever heart transplantation. 10. His diagnosis was a \_\_\_\_\_ surprise to all of us - we had thought him absolutely well. 11. I like Christmas because the X-mas tree fills my house with the smell of \_\_\_\_\_ - the smell of my childhood and Christmas presents. 12. The treatment, \_\_\_\_\_ prescribed by the doctor, didn't work. 13. The surgeon went through the \_\_\_\_\_ of washing hands before the operation slowly and carefully. 14. The family arranged a great \_\_\_\_\_ on the occasion of their father's recovery. 15. The \_\_\_\_\_ itself is not that bad if you manage to avoid complications. 16. The nurse \_\_\_\_\_ peeped into the ward to make sure the patient was still sleeping.



### 14. Find in the text the synonyms and antonyms to the following words.

**Synonyms:** rely (up)on; cure (2); fail; experience; diagnose; interfere with (4); astonishing; neglected; miserable; proficient; rapidly (2); wounded (2); ability; physician (2); drug. **Antonyms:** astonishing (2); ancient; miserable (3).

### 15. Complete the sentences with the words you have found in Activity 14.

1. The intensive care unit doctors always have to act \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Even after conducting three \_\_\_\_\_ of experiments on animals, pharmacutists are taking risks when using this medicine to treat people. 3. Any disease can be cured, if you \_\_\_\_\_ at an early stage. 4. It's your fault that you're in this \_\_\_\_\_ condition now. 5. On the fronts of WWII \_\_\_\_\_ soldiers often had to be operated on without any anaesthesia. 6. Even the most \_\_\_\_\_ can't work miracles without modern hi-tech technology. 7. The very first attempts to use laser for medical purposes gave \_\_\_\_\_ results. 8. Though the number of various \_\_\_\_\_ is constantly growing, many people remain loyal to ordinary aspirin or something like that. 9. You can \_\_\_\_\_ him in every respect - he has never let anyone down. 10. Her \_\_\_\_\_ to concentrate in critical situations has helped her dozens of times. 11. I don't envy those people who dare to \_\_\_\_\_ his plans. 12. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to see the dentist today, you may have a sleepless night. 13. I have a very sad \_\_\_\_\_ in dealing with healers. 14. His \_\_\_\_\_ cold resulted in severe pneumonia.

**Study the collocation table and then proceed to the tasks**

<b>Noun</b>	<b>Adjectives</b>	<b>Verb + Word</b>	<b>Word + Noun</b>	<b>Preposition</b>	<b>Phrase</b>
<b>Health</b>	excellent, full, delicate, failing, poor, mental, public	enjoy, have, harm, maintain, ruin, recover, improve, regain, damage, worsen, look after	care, authority, issue, problem, hazard, risk, education, centre, visitor, insurance, worker		good/bad for - and safety; (not) in the best of-; in good/poor-; sb's state of-
<b>Medicine</b> (science of treating diseases)	modern, conventional, traditional, folk, alternative, private, homeopathic, veterinary, Chinese	train in, qualify in, practise			branch of -
<b>Medicine</b> (substance taken to treat a disease)	powerful, strong, cough, herbal	take, swallow, prescribe (sb), give, treat sb with	- - bottle, - chest, spoonful of-	- for	
<b>Disease</b>	common, rare, acute, dangerous, chronic, deadly/fatal, incurable, respiratory, hereditary, occupational, heart, contagious/infectious, childhood, coronary, sexually transmitted	have, suffer from, catch, get, pass on, die from/of, cause, spread, transmit, diagnose, treat, cure, combat/fight, control, prevent, eradicate, afflict/strike sb, kill somebody	outbreak of -	with a/the -of	cure for a ~; sufferer from a -; resistance to -; the risk of-; the spread of (a) -; treatment for/of a -
<b>Symptom</b>	characteristic, classic, typical, secondary, chronic, intermittent, dangerous, visual, neurotic, allergic, flu-like	display/exhibit, treat, experience, show, suffer from, persist, develop/get, cause, aggravate, ignore, detect, identify, have, reduce, relieve, (dis)appear, worsen			onset of- s; - free
<b>Diagnosis</b>	accurate, (in)correct, wrong, definite, early, provisional/tentative, initial, final	Establish, give, make, confirm		after ~, before ~, -of	method of-
<b>Cure (v)</b>		completely, miraculously		of	
<b>Cure (n)</b>	effective, instant, miracle, cancer	look for/seek, develop, discover, find, work		- for, - from	no (known) -; prevention is better than -; search for a -

**16. Translate using the collocation table.**

**1. Здоров'я:** мати відмінне/слабке здоров'я; піклуватися про здоров'я, що слабшає; підтримувати психічне здоров'я; завдавати шкоди здоров'ю громадян; насолоджуватися повним здоров'ям; стан здоров'я у гарному/поганому стані; підірвати здоров'я; страхування здоров'я; патронажна сестра; здоров'я покращується/погіршується; охорона здоров'я; добре/погано для здоров'я; проблеми зі здоров'ям; (не) у найкращому стані; поліклініка; небезпека/ризик для здоров'я; органи охорони здоров'я.

**2. а). Медицина:** галузь медицини; альтернативна/нетрадиційна медицина; вивчати медицину (вчитися на лікаря); сучасна медицина; бути практикуючим лікарем; китайська медицина; традиційна медицина; народна медицина; ветеринарна медицина; приватна медицина; гомеопатична медицина.

**б). Ліки, медикаменти:** приймати ефективні ліки від кашлю на травах; проковтнути ліки від головного болю; пляшка від ліків; прописувати ложку ліків після їжі; давати ліки; лікуватися сильними ліками; аптечка.

**3. Хвороба, захворювання:** попередити спалах респіраторних захворювань; з рідкісним захворюванням; ліки від хвороби; страждати від смертельної хвороби; мати пошпрене професійне захворювання; лікування від небезпечної дитячої хвороби; померти від серцево-судинної хвороби; спричинити хронічне захворювання; люди, що страждають від невиліковних хвороб; заразитися інфекційною хворобою; ризик захворювання на хвороби, що передаються статевим шляхом; боротися з хворобою; загострення захворювання; опірність хворобам; спадкова хвороба; контролювати поширення хвороби; знищити смертельну хворобу; діагностувати хворобу; інфекційна хвороба вбила його; вилікувати від невідомої хвороби; його уразила хвороба; передавати хворобу.

**4. Симптом, прояв, зовнішня ознака:** поява характерних симптомів; полегшити алергічні симптоми; виявляти вторинні симптоми; позбавлений симптомів; зменшити хронічні симптоми; небезпечні симптоми погіршуються; обтяжувати типові симптоми; ідентифікувати візуальні прояви хвороби; проігнорувати симптоми, схожі на грип; мати класичні симптоми; страждати від періодичних симптомів; спричинювати невротичні симптоми; симптоми з'явилися/зникли.

**5. Діагноз:** до/після постановки діагнозу; методи діагностування; ставити точний діагноз; підтвердити попередній діагноз; раннє діагностування; поставити (не)вірний діагноз; первісний/остаточний діагноз хвороби; певний діагноз.

**6. Вилікувати, зцілити:** чудодійно/повністю вилікувати від захворювання.

**7. Ліки, зцілення:** ефективні ліки від раку; шукати чудодійні ліки; хворобу простіше попередити, ніж вилікувати (профілактика краща за лікування); розробляти ліки; у пошуках ліків; миттєве зцілення; ліки допомагають; ліки невідомі; знайти ліки.

#### 17. Find in the text the words related to:

1. **Diseases and symptoms:** *haemorrhage*,
2. **description of feelings, diseases and symptoms:** *miserable*,
3. **people who cure:** *healer*,
4. **cures:** *drug*,
5. **verbs used to describe physicians'/patients' actions:** *not to interfere with nature*,

18. Work in pairs. Use Activity 17. Add at least three words to each category. Discuss your additions with your partner. What are the author's general feelings and attitudes to the problem? What arguments does he give to support his point of view? Do you agree? Why or why not?

19. Work in pairs. Compare the status of traditional medicine in Britain and Ukraine. Do you see any difference? Have you noticed any trends in our traditional medicine of the same sort that the British are having? Give some examples.

20. Write a 200-word survey essay on the probable potential of human organism to cope with diseases without medicine (see the guidelines for writing a survey essay in Lesson 2 (Part 3) of this Unit.

#### 21. Translate using your active vocabulary for the italicized words and word combinations.

1. Хоча Джон завжди мав відмінне здоров'я, під час перебування у Єгипті він *заразився небезпечною інфекційною хворобою*, і вона *вбила* його, хоча його й лікували *сильнодіючими ліками*. 2. Точний діагноз було поставлено при появі *візуальних вторинних симптомів* цього *рідкісного захворювання*. 3. Мільйони доларів витрачаються на *розробку ефективних ліків від раку* Хоча досягнуті певні успіхи, *чудодійних ліків* чи *методів лікування цієї хвороби* наразі не існує. 4. *Органи охорони здоров'я* мають приділяти більше уваги *підтриманню психічного здоров'я громадян*. 5. Ще недавно у нашій країні не існувало *приватної медицини*. 6. Караптин потрібен для *попередження спалаху респіраторних захворювань* серед школярів. 7. Не вір *цілителям*, що обіцяють *миттєве або чудодійне зцілення* від будь-яких хвороб. 8. Хоча *здоров'я* останнім часом *слабшає*, його це не дуже турбує. 9. Як тільки вона припинила *приймати трав'яні ліки від кашлю*, *типові симптоми* застуди, які вона мала, *обтяжилися*. 10. Навіть *досвідчені лікарі* цієї *всесвітньовідомої клініки* не змогли *підтвердити чи спростувати попередній діагноз* пацієнта, у якого *розвинулися симптоми*, що нагадували *грип*. 11. На сьогодні мільйони людей у світі *страждають від серцево-судинних захворювань*. 12. Організм людини має *можливість швидко відновлювати сили* у критичних ситуаціях. 13. *Поранених* доправили до найближчої лікарні з *вражаючою швидкістю*. 14. Як ти можеш

покладатися на цього жалюгідного нікчому? Він і собі ладу не дасть. 15 Сучасна медицина намагається поєднати раціональні зерна традиційної і нетрадиційної, китайської, народної і гомеопатичної медицини. 16. Пари ртуті можуть завдати серйозної шкоди здоров'ю. 17. Якщо тебе не задовольняє стан твого здоров'я, тобі краще б звернутися до поліклініки, поки ще не пізно. Всім відомо, що попередити хворобу простіше, ніж: вилікувати. 18. Яку галузь медицини ви зараз вивчаєте! - Ветеринарну. 19. Страхування здоров'я є обов'язковим для поїздки до багатьох країн. 20. Для цієї категорії населення існує більш високий ризик захворіти на хвороби, що передаються статевим шляхом. 21. Він тільки вчиться на лікаря, тому й прогледів появу характерних алергічних симптомів. 22. Як вам вдалося повністю вилікувати цього безнадійного хворого! 23. Він присвятив своє життя служінню людству. 24. Лікар зауважив, що небезпечні симптоми занедбаної хронічної виразки шлунку погіршуються, і їх слід негайно послабити або хоча б полегшити. 25. Він підірвав здоров'я під час спорудження власного будинку. 26. Деякі люди демонструють кращу опірність хворобам, ніж інші. 27. Хоспіси існують для полегшення страждань тих, хто вмирає від невиліковних хвороб. 28. Ці ліки рекомендується приймати по одній столовій ложці після їжі тричі на день. 29. Дуже раді бачити вас у такому гарному стані. - Вам теж не завадило би краще піклуватися про здоров'я. 30. Останнім часом у нього серйозні проблеми зі здоров'ям. 31. Раннє діагностування є дуже важливим для лікування цієї небезпечної дитячої хвороби. 32. З кожною сигаретою, яку людина палить, ризик для здоров'я зростає. 33. Біля тіла поліцейські знайшли порожню пляшечку від ліків. 34. Кожен другий актор має це поширене професійне захворювання. 35. Вона ледь проковтнула ліки від болю у горлі, але здавалося, вони зовсім не допомогли. 36. Він провів майже чверть свого життя у пошуках чудодійних ліків від екземи, але знайти їх йому не вдалося, хоча він і не втрачав надії. 37. Людству вдалося знищити такі смертельні хвороби як віспа та чума. 38. Патронажна сестра була стривожена тим, що здоров'я її пацієнтки погіршується. 39. Навіть пропрацювавши практикуючим лікарем майже 20 років, він досі вагається щодо остаточного діагнозу. 40. Сьогодні медицина успішно бореться із багатьма спадковими захворюваннями. 41. Які методи діагностування доцільно використовувати у таких випадках?

## PART 2

### SUPERHUMAN AT WORK

1. Match the verbs and adjectives in column A with their antonyms in column B and nouns in column A with their synonyms in column B.



#### VERBS NOUNS

##### A

1. ingest
2. stimulate
3. protect
4. develop
5. develop
6. provide
7. accept

##### B

- a. take away
- b. attack
- c vomit
- d. deny
- e. disappear
- f. suppress
- g. fold

##### A

1. treatment
2. victim
3. plague
4. solution
5. immunity
6. research
7. humility

##### B

- a. sufferer
- b. modesty
- c healing
- d. study
- e. fatal infectious disease
- f. answer, way out
- g. resistance of organism

#### ADJECTIVES

##### 1. huge

2. vulnerable
3. infected

##### a. free of germs

- b. protected
- c tiny

##### 4. efficient

5. average

##### d. extreme

- e. unable

2. Match the words in Activity 1 with the definitions below.

a. supply with

b. competent

c keep safe from

d. take in (as if) by swallowing

e. work out

f. way of dealing with a difficulty

s. somebody suffering from injury, pain, loss etc. because of circumstances or somebody's ill health

g. enormous

h. medium

i. open to attack or influence

j. contaminated, having germs

k. exhibit, grow

l. agree, recognize, regard with favour or approval, admit

m. medical care

n. excite, quicken

o. investigation to discover new facts

p. humble condition or state of mind

q. safety, security

(of disease)

r. epidemic disease marked by chills and swelling in the armpits and groin



3. Complete the sentences below with the words in Activity 1.

1. He has already tried many \_\_\_\_\_ for his skin disease, but in vain. 2. When he was ill, he had to take 10 tablets a day on an \_\_\_\_\_. 3. She is too \_\_\_\_\_ to respiratory infections - look, she's coughing and sneezing again. 4. I usually take this medicine when I study for exams in order to \_\_\_\_\_ my memory. 5. The epidemic of \_\_\_\_\_ of 1665 in London was stopped only by the Great Fire. 6. Scientists of the whole world have spent years \_\_\_\_\_ an effective cure for AIDS. 7. Babies can't \_\_\_\_\_ anything but milk or special mixtures for infants. 8. Symptoms of malaria had \_\_\_\_\_ by midnight, and they didn't know what to do. 9. Your \_\_\_\_\_ in doing everything he says is just astonishing. 10. Millions of people in every corner of the world donate money to help

\_\_\_\_\_ if you don't want to get to hospital again. 13. The scientist \_\_\_\_\_ everything necessary for his research. 14. He has been successfully carrying out a \_\_\_\_\_ into the tsunami \_\_\_\_\_ in South Eastern Asia. 11. Vaccination helps to \_\_\_\_\_ people from various dangerous, or even fatal, diseases. 12. You should strengthen your \_\_\_\_\_ was

causes of cancer for the last decade. 15. \_\_\_\_\_ numbers of people all over the world die of coronary diseases every year. 16. Healthy way of life and healthy foods may become a \_\_\_\_\_ to many health problems. 17. Modern medicine has at its disposal \_\_\_\_\_ methods of making early diagnoses of many diseases. 18. The children \_\_\_\_\_ with chicken pox must be isolated immediately. 19. It is generally \_\_\_\_\_ that this healer sometimes works miracles even in hopeless cases.



4. You are going to read the second part of the article. Choose the best suitable heading from the list (A-F) to each part (0-5) of the article. There is one extra heading which you don't need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).



A	Bacteria at people's service	
B	New approach to treating people	
C	Genetics works miracles	
D	Against all statistics	0
E	Halers at work	
F	Hopeful research	
G	Negative consequences of hygiene	

0. One of the most remarkable stories that I came across during my research was that of Salome, a prostitute in Nairobi\*. She has been a sex worker for 20 years, offering sex without any protection to an average of eight or nine men each day. Despite the fact that at least one or two of the men she services each day will be infected with HIV\*, she has never become a victim herself. While an enormous amount of people in Africa are dead or dying of AIDS, there are about 200 Nairobi prostitutes like Salome, all of whom statistically should by now be dead but who appear to be disease-free.

0

Headline: D

1. In Salome's case the superhuman seems to be at work. It is possible that she is, in some way, genetically protected. Her body is more efficient at dealing with this deadly virus. But there is a cruel irony in Salome's story. As soon as women like her give up prostitution - as soon as they are no longer repeatedly exposed to this virus - they become as vulnerable as the rest of us. They seem to lose their immunity. They appear to be fated to continue their dire occupation, whether they want to or not.

Headline:

2. Her example, and that of the others like her, provides a clue to a possible solution to a disease that has already left 350,000 orphans in Kenya in its wake; The study of blood from these very unusual women seems to be leading to at least a partial remedy. Doctors at Oxford\* are now developing a vaccine, which might protect huge numbers of people who are at risk from this plague.

Headline:

3. Already a treatment for asthma has been worked out and is revolutionising lives. Mark Dyer developed the condition severely at the age of three, but is now able to play football and can largely dispense with his inhaler after being treated with a tuberculosis-like bacteria - mycobacterium vaccae - which stimulated his immune system.

Headline:

4. Fewer babies would suffer from asthma, hay fever and other allergic diseases in the first place if they were more exposed to dirt. Parents who are over-concerned with hygiene may be weakening their children's resistance. For my series, I filmed babies eating dirt to show they will ingest anything an adult puts in front of them.

Headline:

5. Superhuman medicine means that we, doctors, must take a more holistic approach\*. We should not have so much arrogance; we need to be less authoritarian and more open-minded. This is not a plea for so-called "alternative medicine". Rather, our treatments must be based on sound science and the recognition of the power of genetics. We, doctors, also must have the humility to accept that our bodies may well know what is in their own best interests.

Headline:

## NOTES

- \* HIV - a kind of virus that enters the body through blood or sexual activity, and can cause AIDS: be HIV positive (= have the HIV virus in your body)
- \* Nairobi - capital of Kenya, a country in Eastern Africa
- \* Oxford - Oxford University, one of the world's most prestigious universities, founded in the early 12th century
- \* holistic approach - a system of health care based on a concept of the 'whole' person whose body, mind, spirit, and emotions are in balance with the environment. Stressing personal responsibility for health, a holistic approach may include conventional medicine and various non-traditional methods of diagnosis and therapy, e.g. acupuncture, faith healing, folk medicine, meditation and yoga. Surgery and prescription drugs are generally avoided, instead, patients are encouraged to establish self-regulated regimes to control such illness-related factors as poor diet, smoking, alcohol intake, and stress.

### 5. Analysis of ideas and relationships. Circle the letter next to the best answer.

#### 1. In paragraph 0 the author claims that

- a) he keeps statistics of AIDS in Africa;
- b) sex workers don't suffer from AIDS;
- c) prostitutes in Kenya always offer sex without any protection;
- d) it is possible to avoid getting infected with HIV.

#### 2. The main idea of paragraph 1 is that

- a) some people are genetically protected from viruses;
- b) Salome speaks with bitter irony;
- c) all people are vulnerable;
- d) some people have more efficient bodies than others.

#### 3. In paragraph 2 the author comments on the

- a) situation with AIDS in Kenya;
- b) results of blood tests;
- c) possibilities of combating AIDS;
- d) power of remedies for AIDS.

#### 4. Paragraph 3 describes

- a) severe case of asthma;
- b) certain way of treatment for asthma;
- c) tuberculosis-like bacteria;
- d) ways of stimulating the immune system.



#### 5. In paragraph 4 the author states that

- a) parents may do a lot of harm to their children;
- b) children suffer from allergic diseases;
- c) dirt can be used to cure of allergy;
- d) children's resistance is weaker than grown-ups'.

#### 6. In paragraph 5 the author

- a) states his belief in alternative medicine;
- b) appeals to doctors in favour of a complex approach to medicine;
- c) shows his confidence in a superhuman;
- d) demands to recognize the power of genetics.

### 6. Explain the meaning of the following words and word-combinations in the text.

statistically should by now be dead (paragraph 0), genetically protected (paragraph 1), superhuman seems to be at work (paragraph 1), deadly virus (paragraph 1), cruel irony (paragraph 1), to be fated to continue (paragraph 1), dire occupation (paragraph 1), in its wake (paragraph 2), is revolutionising lives (paragraph 3), developed the condition severely (paragraph 3), tuberculosis-like bacteria (paragraph 3), immune system (paragraph 3), allergic diseases (paragraph 4), in the first place (paragraph 4), alternative medicine (paragraph 5), sound science (paragraph 5), power of genetics (paragraph 5), concept of the 'whole' person (Notes), conventional medicine (Notes), faith healing (Notes), folk medicine (Notes), prescription drugs (Notes), patients are encouraged (Notes), self-regulated regimes (Notes), illness-related factors (Notes), poor diet (Notes).



## 7. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 6.

1. As a result of repeated draughts millions of people in Africa have to do with a \_\_\_\_\_. 2. The \_\_\_\_\_ spread all over the city in a couple of days. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ relies mainly upon non-traditional methods of treatment. 4. His novels were known for their bitter satire and \_\_\_\_\_. 5. His \_\_\_\_\_ was undermined by alcohol and tobacco. 6. High technologies and, \_\_\_\_\_, computers are \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Even modern science can hardly compete with the \_\_\_\_\_. 8. In this clinic of neuroses \_\_\_\_\_ to do some art. 9. He has tried to give up gambling many times, but it seems he is \_\_\_\_\_. 10. Nobody expected \_\_\_\_\_ to be an effective remedy for all lung diseases. 11. \_\_\_\_\_ can't deny great achievements of \_\_\_\_\_, acupuncture, yoga, etc. 12. Unable to get urgent aid, the sick person \_\_\_\_\_. 13. Some scientists claim that \_\_\_\_\_ is based on auto-suggestion. 14. Unfortunately, we aren't \_\_\_\_\_ from infectious diseases. 15. The epidemic left thousands of orphans and crippled people \_\_\_\_\_. 16. \_\_\_\_\_ combines materialistic and idealistic approaches to the study of personality. 17. The number of \_\_\_\_\_ depends on the country's standard of living. 18. Tomb raiders often risk their lives in their \_\_\_\_\_. 19. \_\_\_\_\_ is often unable to offer reasonable explanations for what people call 'miracles'. 20. More and more people all over the world suffer from \_\_\_\_\_.

## 8. Find in the text the phrasal verbs meaning

**work out**     invent, develop or produce by thinking  
                    give one's attention to or to worry about  
                    give someone a certain medicine  
                    choose to do without, get rid of  
                    leave open to the effect of something  
                    stop doing something  
                    be concerned with  
                    find something or meet someone by chance  
                    have pain or bad health because of (a disease)



## 9. Complete the sentences below with the phrasal verbs from Activity 8.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ this article on tuberculosis in yesterday's paper. 2. The best way to cure a burn is to \_\_\_\_\_ the air. 3. If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ a new method of treatment for this disease, many more people may die. 4. After a successful operation he can, at last, \_\_\_\_\_ his wheeled chair. 5. The patient has been \_\_\_\_\_ repeated side aches. 6. Your lungs will fail you if you don't \_\_\_\_\_ smoking. 7. He's too \_\_\_\_\_ his health and goes to see his doctor every week. 8. Never before have I had a chance \_\_\_\_\_ such an interesting case. 9. My granny used to \_\_\_\_\_ all my colds hot teas and herbs.

## 10. Find in the text the words meaning

In a healthy condition (paragraph 0), again and again (paragraph 1), person (especially a child) who has lost one or both of his parents by death (paragraph 2), to a great extent (paragraph 3), an apparatus which facilitates the inhalation of medicines (paragraph 3), too anxious (paragraph 4), requiring obedience to authority (paragraph 5), unprejudiced (paragraph 5), reason or excuse offered for wrongdoing or failure to do sth (paragraph 5), pricking of the living tissues of the human body with fine needles to cure diseases (Note 5), giving oneself up to serious (especially religious) thought (Note 5), Hindu system of meditation and self-control (Note 5), treating by manual and instrumental operations (Note 6).

## 11. Complete the sentences below with the words whose definitions were given in Activity 10.

1. Making an early diagnosis may help avoid \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Though our boss is an expert in his field, he's often criticized for his \_\_\_\_\_ manner. 3. WWII left millions of \_\_\_\_\_ all over Europe. 4. He sat there, deep in, taking no notice of the people around him. 5. He refused to take part in the competition on the \_\_\_\_\_ of ill health. 6. The tests showed that the patient was \_\_\_\_\_ and could be discharged from hospital. 7. Oriental medicine has great experience in using \_\_\_\_\_ for medical purposes. 8. You seem to be \_\_\_\_\_ with your health and spend too much money on doctors and medicines. 9. People practising \_\_\_\_\_ reject the idea of surgery, injections and medicines. 10. He managed to recover so quickly \_\_\_\_\_ due to his granny's care. 11. If you \_\_\_\_\_ suffer from bad headaches,

you should try another kind of treatment 12. Though his attacks of asthma don't occur so often now, he can't do without his \_\_\_\_\_ so far. 13. \_\_\_\_\_ people are always ready to listen to and consider new ideas, evidence, etc.

### Study the collocation table and then proceed to the tasks

Noun	Adjectives	Verb + Word	Word + Noun		Phrase
Hospital	community, district, local, private, day, long-stay, children's, maternity, psychiatric	go into/to/, rush sb to, take sb to, stay in, (re) admit sb to, come out/leave, discharge sb from		at a/the ~, in a/the -, to a/the -	admission to-; a stay in-
Doctor	excellent, qualified, experienced, family, local, hospital, school, private, NHS	register with, call, fetch, send for			
Nurse	qualified, trained, staff, ward, junior, senior, student/trainee, male, day, night, hospital, school		specialist, tutor, education		
Patient	cancer, mental, hospital, elderly, child, seriously-ill	examine, treat, admit, discharge, transfer, improve, respond to sth, develop	care	-with (liver disease)	
Treatment	emergency, urgent, further, long-term, effective, hair, conventional, alternative, inpatient, outpatient, dental, surgical, veterinary, hormone	get, have, receive, undergo, give, need, provide sb with, require, recommend, prescribe, refuse, benefit from	decision, option, centre, method, procedure, course, regime	in-, - for	

### 12. Translate using the collocation table.

**1. Лікарня, шпиталь:** перебування у лікарні; психіатрична лікарня; денний стаціонар; прийняти до лікарні/виписати з лікарні; перебувати у місцевій/районній лікарні; прийом до шпиталю; швидко доправити пацієнта до лікарні; приватна дитяча лікарня; залишити пологовий будинок; виписати зі стаціонару; відвезти до шпиталю; йти до лікарні.

**2. Лікар:** викликати досвідченого лікаря; посилати за місцевим лікарем; привести сімейного лікаря; записатися на прийом до чудового кваліфікованого лікаря; лікар, що працює у шпиталі/школі/державній системі охорони здоров'я; приватний лікар.

**3. Медична сестра, доглядальниця:** шкільна медсестра; навчання медсестер; молодша/старша медична сестра; кваліфікована медсестра; фахова медсестра; медсестра, що отримала спеціальну підготовку; наставник медсестер-практиканток; денна/нічна медична сестра; медбрат, що працює у шпиталі; медперсонал.



**4. Пацієнт, хворий:** пацієнт, що страждає від захворювання печінки; догляд за пацієнтами, що страждають на рак; оглянути серйозно хворого пацієнта; лікувати психічнохворих; приймати до лікарні/виписувати пацієнтів; перевести пацієнта похилого віку; діти-пацієнти реагують на лікування; стан пацієнта покращується; у пацієнта з'явилися небезпечні симптоми; пацієнт лікарні.

5. Лікування: лікувальні процедури; під час невідкладного/ургентного лікування; довготривале лікування від ...; методи лікування; отримати подальше лікування; пройти альтернативне лікування; ефективний курс лікування; надавати/забезпечувати ветеринарним лікуванням; медичний центр; потребувати лікування у стаціонарі; рекомендувати традиційне лікування; відмовитися від лікування зубів; рішення щодо хірургічного лікування; варіанти амбулаторного лікування; прописувати лікувальний режим; лікування гормонами допомогло; лікування волосся.

### 13. Find in the text synonyms and antonyms of the following words.

**Synonyms: Verbs:** ingest; protect; develop-1; develop-2; provide.

**Adjectives:** huge; vulnerable (2); efficient; average.

**Nouns:** treatment (3); plague (2); solution (2); immunity; victim; research.

**Antonyms: Verbs:** stimulate; accept. **Adjectives:** average; infected. **Nouns:** humility.

### 14. Complete the sentences below with the words from Activity 13.

1. In "Three Men in a Boat" Jerome K. Jerome described how he had become a \_\_\_\_\_ to 101 fatal diseases.
2. When did the patient \_\_\_\_\_ these dangerous symptoms?
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ annual temperature in these parts is about 8 degrees Celsius.
4. She worked hard to \_\_\_\_\_ her children with food and clothes.
5. The doctors did their best, but the \_\_\_\_\_ didn't work.
6. My brain is just unable to \_\_\_\_\_ so much information.
7. This \_\_\_\_\_ fridge doesn't make any noise at all - it's unbelievable!
8. You make me annoyed with your \_\_\_\_\_. Is it really all the same to you?
9. Though your offer sounds rather tempting, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. There haven't been any outbreaks of \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe for many decades already.
11. This specially designed suit will \_\_\_\_\_ you from heat and radiation.
12. The English scientist Charles Darwin \_\_\_\_\_ the theory of evolution.
13. She is a very \_\_\_\_\_ nurse and is really well-paid for her job.
14. If one gets \_\_\_\_\_ with HIV, it doesn't mean the ending of one's life at all.
15. You should have more exercise and take vitamins to \_\_\_\_\_ your appetite.
16. Don't get so upset about his words - you're too \_\_\_\_\_ to criticism.
17. I'm afraid I don't know any \_\_\_\_\_ to this problem.
18. Only his diplomatic \_\_\_\_\_ saved him from arrest and imprisonment.
19. The results of his \_\_\_\_\_ are often referred to by many prominent scientists.

### 15. Find in the text (including Notes) the words related to:

1. **health states, diseases and viruses:** *dead,*
2. **medicines and ways of treatment:** *research,*
3. **illness-related factors:** *prostitution,*
4. **people:** *prostitute - sex worker,*  
**doctors:** *study blood,*  
**patients:** *dead or dying',*  
**parents:** *over-concerned with hygiene,*

16. Work in pairs. What should be done, in the author's point of view, to change the situation in medical treatment for better? Do you agree? Why?

17. Work in pairs. Do a lot of people in Ukraine prefer non-traditional methods of diagnosis and therapy? Why? Give some examples. What is your personal attitude to acupuncture, faith healing, folk medicine, meditation, yoga and the holistic approach in general? Explain your answer.

### 18. Translate using your active vocabulary for the italicized words and word combinations.

1. Місцевий лікар оглянув пацієнта, що страждав на захворювання печінки, і сказав, що він потребує невідкладного довготривалого лікування. Хворого було негайно направлено до місцевої лікарні.
2. Хто заплатив за твоє перебування у пологовому будинку!.
3. Ніхто не знав, що його дружина вже кілька років перебуває у приватній психіатричній лікарні.
4. Вона працює нічною медсестрою у дитячій лікарні уже багато років. Ще дівчиною вона починала тут як практикантка, потім стала молодішою, а згодом і старшою медсестрою. Її вважають кваліфікованою сестрою.
5. Завдяки зусиллям досвідчених лікарів стан цього пацієнта похилого віку покращується. Він добре реагує на лікування, яке було йому прописане.

6. Діти-пацієнти потребують особливого догляду та уваги медичного персоналу. 7. Шкільний лікар або медична сестра мають вміти робити майже усе. 8. Лікарі прийняли рішення щодо лікування хворого тільки після проведення численних аналізів. 9. Де можна вивчитися на медсестру! 10. Йому було відмовлено у прийомі до лікарні через відсутність медичної страховки. 11. У нашому медичному центрі ви можете отримати традиційне або альтернативне лікування від багатьох захворювань. 12. У пацієнта з'явилися небезпечні симптоми, і його було негайно переведено до реанімації. 13. Він знаходиться у стаціонарі вже 2 тижні, і невідомо коли його випишуть. 14. Залишайся в ліжку, а я приведу чудового лікаря, і він подбає про тебе. 15. Я б рекомендував вам пройти курс подальшого лікування від подагри. Ми можемо надати вам амбулаторне лікування. Я впевнений, воно виявиться успішним. 16. Хоча пацієнт був серйозно хворим, він відмовився від лікування гормонами. 17. Хірургічне лікування допомогло хворому, і він невдовзі повернувся до роботи. 18. Величезна кількість хворих на рак з нетерпінням очікує результатів дослідження вчених. 19. Інфіковані діти були терміново направлені до найближчої лікарні. 20. Після тривалої хвороби ваш організм дуже уразливий, тож вам потрібно стимулювати вашу імунну систему. 21. Пацієнти приватної лікарні були забезпечені усім необхідним. 22. В нашому кабінеті ми застосовуємо найсучасніші методи лікування волосся. Деякі з лікувальних процедур є унікальними. 23. Ветеринарне лікування може виявитися дуже дорогим.

### GOOD BYE - 3

**James is getting ready for another voyage abroad on business. Here is his letter to Annie.**



Hi, Annie,

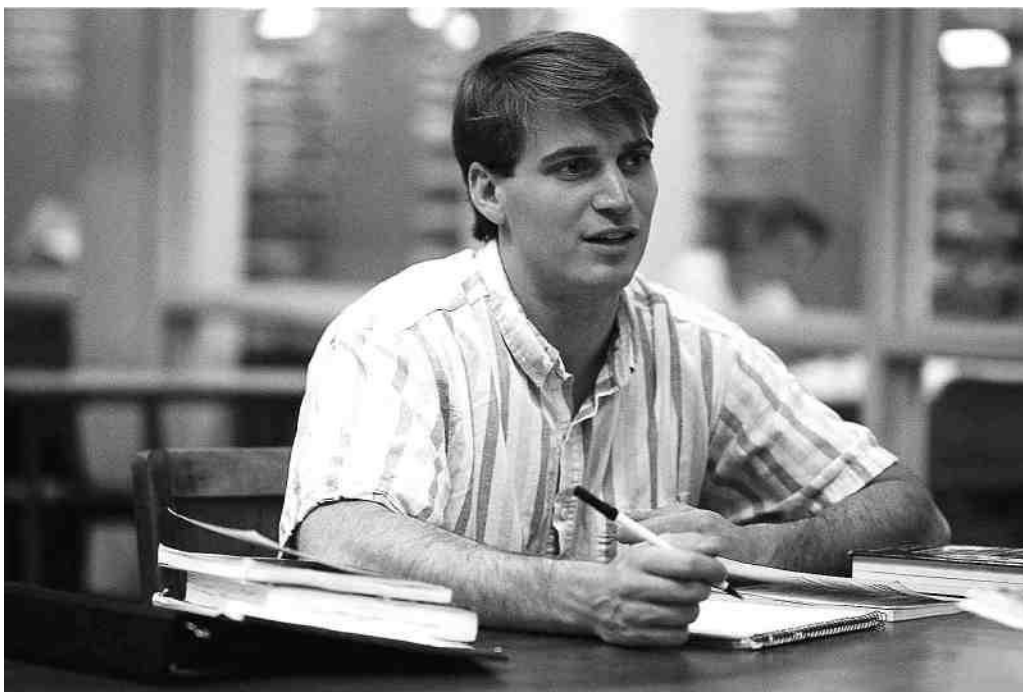
Hope you're OK. I'm just back from Tucson, Arizona - an amazing place: desert, cactuses (or cacti?), scorching heat, mountains. I visited Sam, John Cunningham's foster brother. He turned out to be a very nice young man, and quite talkative, too. Sam works for a very ambitious company in cloning business, and seems to be a mastermind behind some very secret project, investigating approaches to make dreams come true. I actually saw one of Sam's products - it's a kitten with big round eyes, button nose and I'm-ready-for-fun expression. It's a shorthaired calico, named cc (short for copy cat), which is a genetic duplicate of her mom and has a face that's impossible not to love. Because she is so cute, it's hard imagining anyone protesting against cloning in this case. It's one thing to oppose it when you're talking about all those humble sheep, mice, cattle, goats and pigs. It's quite another when the clone is practically sitting in your lap, mewing and purring and begging for love. Sam, who (in his own words) has been claiming he would be the first to clone a human, told me that he has selected 10 infertile couples and is set to begin work next month. He says, 'If you thought cc was hard not to love, wait until you see the first baby'.

There was another thing he told me. Several years ago he cloned John's and Lucy's skeletons, had them stuffed and covered with the imitation of skin so they looked like real. It was a joke, he added. The mannequins made an exotic gift. Sam laughed when he recalled Lucy and John having been completely carried away. Ever since Eve gave Adam the apple, there's always been trouble between the sexes about gifts, but not in this case.

Due to the new circumstances, I have to go to Britain and Ukraine to check things over there once again. I'll be back with another letter soon. And I have not finished my Pencader Hollow story. Will the princess be found? You'll know soon.

Love,  
James

## STUDENTS' GUIDE TO SPEAKING TASKS



Below follows the description of the Speaking Tasks' format in this textbook. Dictum Factum Upper Intermediate textbook tends to be organized in the framework of the Certificate in Advanced English Test of the University of Cambridge Local Examinations Syndicate. Little wonder then that the following explanation is heavily based on the Guide to the Speaking Section of the Test mentioned above. In our case we used the CAE Practice Tests Plus - 1 by Alan Stanton and Susan Morris (Longman, 2004).

The Speaking Tasks in this textbook consist of four parts. During the completion of the Tasks two students talk to each other as well as speak individually. Pictures are used to stimulate discussion in Parts 2 and 3. Speaking Tasks test your ability to describe and comment on visuals, to negotiate and collaborate with your partner, and to summarise and develop conclusions.

### **Part 1: Social Interaction**

The teacher will provide you with some general orientation concerning the topic you should ask each other general questions on. The questions will be related to the topic you currently work with, but may also be connected with your interests, current studies or future plans.

In this part you should:

- ask and answer general information questions.
- talk about your current studies, interests, living conditions or plans for the future.
- express opinions about any of these topics.

### **Part 2: Individual Long Turn**

**Here each student is expected to talk for about one minute without interruption, in response to pictures. Then each will make a brief (30 second) comment on his/her partner's pictures after s/he has spoken for one minute.**

In this part you should:

- compare and contrast what you can see in the pictures, and the ideas suggested by them.
- give reasons for, and explanations of, the situations shown in the pictures and related situations and topics.
- talk about possibilities, what might have happened and what could happen in the future.
- comment briefly on the pictures that your partner speaks for about one minute.
- not interrupt the other candidate.

### Part 3: Collaborative Task

**You and your partner discuss a decision-making / problem-solving task, illustrated by visual material, without interruption by the examiner. The task may involve speculating or prioritising.**

In this part you should:

- give your own opinions and listen to those of your partner.
- explain and justify your opinions.
- make suggestions and discuss possibilities.
- agree or disagree, giving reasons.
- reach an agreed decision or agree to disagree

### Part 4: Discussion

**Part 4 is an extension of Part 3. The same task is discussed but now the examiner will supply you with the directions for the continuation of your discussion.**

In this part you should do everything you did in Part 3, and also:

- summarise your discussion.
- develop points further in response to the examiner's comments.

### Advice to the students

- Listen carefully to questions asked by the teacher and your partner.
- Show interest in what your partner is saying.
- Do not say that you 'don't know' about a particular topic. Try to find something relevant to say.
- Do not try to rehearse what you will say because this will be obvious at the actual exam, where the examiners may interrupt you with questions that require unrehearsed answers.
- Do not worry if you think your partner is better or worse than you. At the actual exam the examiners are not comparing you with your partner. They are giving you each a separate mark according to the assessment criteria.
- If you do not understand something, ask for clarification. Carrying out the task depends on your understanding what the examiner has asked you to do.

### How are the Speaking Tasks marked?

You are given marks for:

**Grammar and Vocabulary:** This refers to the accurate and appropriate use of grammar and vocabulary. The range of vocabulary used is also assessed.

**Discourse Management:** This includes your ability to express ideas and opinions in coherent, connected speech. You are expected to express or justify opinions using a variety of linguistic structures.

**Pronunciation:** This refers to your ability to produce comprehensible English, as well as the natural linking of words, and the use of stress and intonation to convey meaning.

**Interactive Communication:** This applies to Parts 1 and 3 and focuses on student's ability to take turns and participate actively in discussions.

## SPEAKING TASKS

### UNIT1

#### LESSON 1 (TASK-1)

##### PART1

Function 53 Offering invitations	Function Accepting/declining
Would you like to...? How would you like to...? May I have the pleasure of... ? May I invite you to...?	Thank you very much. This is kind of you. Thank you very much. I'd love to. It's very kind of you, but I'm afraid I have already arranged. promised to... What a pity. I would have loved to come.

• Task for Student A: Ask Student B about state holidays in the USA (how many, when, the way they are celebrated, experience of celebrating any of the US holidays herself/himself, comparison with state holidays in Ukraine, invite your partner to your birthday party)

• Task for Student B: Ask Student A about state holidays in Great Britain (how many, when, the way they are celebrated, experience of celebrating any of the British holidays herself/himself, comparison with state holidays in Ukraine, invite your partner to your wedding party)

##### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p.311-313)

• Task for Student A: Describe what geographical areas of the USA are shown in pictures 1 and 2 (p. 311). What are the people in the pictures doing and why?

Student B: In which of the pictures do you think the people are engaged in a more interesting activity and why?

• Task for Student B: Compare and contrast the geographical areas of the USA shown in pictures 3-9 (p. 312), supporting your point of view with arguments.

Student A: Which of the areas shown in pictures 3-9 would you like to go to and why?

##### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 313)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which features of the American character are illustrated by pictures 10-16. If only three of these pictures had to be selected as those that are best to illustrate the American spirit, which ones would you choose? Why?

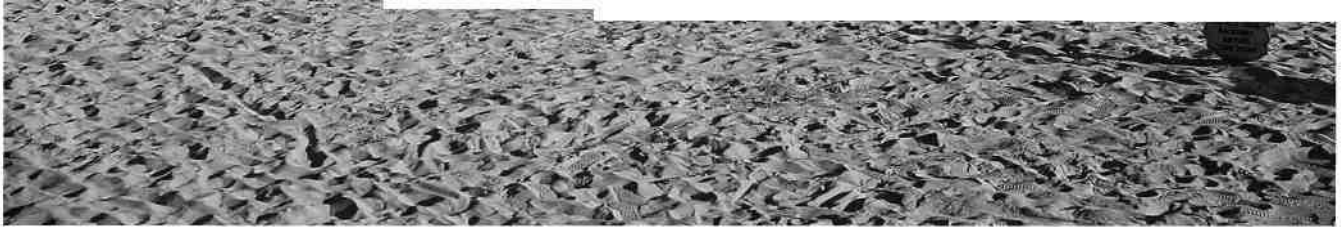
##### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

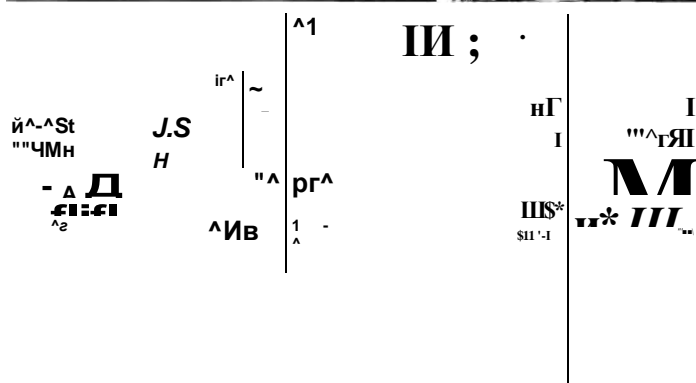
Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What factors have influenced the development of the American character? What other pictures would you suggest to show the features absent in pictures 10-16?

#~"

uIII?^\$|







PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B

313



**UNIT1**  
**LESSON 2 (TASK - 2)**  
**PART1**

Function 55

Asking for/ giving reason

Connectives for giving reason:

because, as, since, owing to, because of, on account of

Linking adverbials of cause and reason:

So, accordingly, hence, consequently, therefore, thus.

Now that... Seeing that...

• Task for Student A: Ask Student B about the two parts of Britain she would like to visit most of all, giving her/his reasons.

• Task for Student B: Ask Student A about the two most appealing features of English national character, giving her/his reasons.

**PART 2**

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 315-317)

• Task for Student A: Describe what geographical areas of Great Britain are shown in pictures 1-5 (p. 315).

What are the people in the pictures doing and why? Give your reasons.

Student B: Which of the pictures do you think is the best to show the national features of the English character and why? Give your reasons.

• Task for Student B: Compare and contrast the geographical areas of Great Britain shown in pictures 6-10 (p. 316), supporting your point of view with giving reasons.

Student A: Which of the areas shown in pictures 6-10 would you like to go to and why? Give your reasons.

**PART3**

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 317)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which features of the English character are illustrated by pictures 11-17. If only three of these pictures had to be selected as those that are best to illustrate the English spirit, which ones would you choose? Give your reasons.

**PART 4**

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What factors have influenced the development of the English character? What other pictures would you suggest to show the features absent in pictures 11-17? Do you think the English character is much more different as compared to the Scottish, Irish or Welsh ones? Give your reasons.

PART 2  
STUDENTA







PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B



VV 1 14!!

, - 7' :

## UNIT1

### LESSON 3 (TASK - 3)

#### PART1

Function 56 Asking for/  
making suggestions - 2

If you ..., we'll... They said that... Would you like to ... instead?  
It would be better/more fun to ... I'd rather ... I'd prefer to ... Why don't we ...?  
I suggest... You could be ...-ing while I'm away. You might... Better make it later.  
Now, if you don't mind ... Why don't you ...?

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B where she is living now, and if she likes the part of the country she is living in now. How does it compare with the other parts of Ukraine?
- Task for Student B: Ask Student A if s/he has any plans to move to another part of Ukraine in the future. What would be an ideal part of Ukraine to live in?

#### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 319-321)

- Task for Student A: Describe what geographical areas of Ukraine are shown in pictures 1-5 (p. 319). Suggest going there for a holiday.

Student B: Which of the pictures do you think is the best to represent Ukraine? Give your reasons.

- Task for Student B: Compare and contrast the geographical areas of Ukraine shown in pictures 6-11 (p. 320). Suggest going there for a holiday, giving reasons.

Student A: Which of the areas shown in pictures 6 - 10 would you like to go to and why? Give your reasons.

#### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 321)

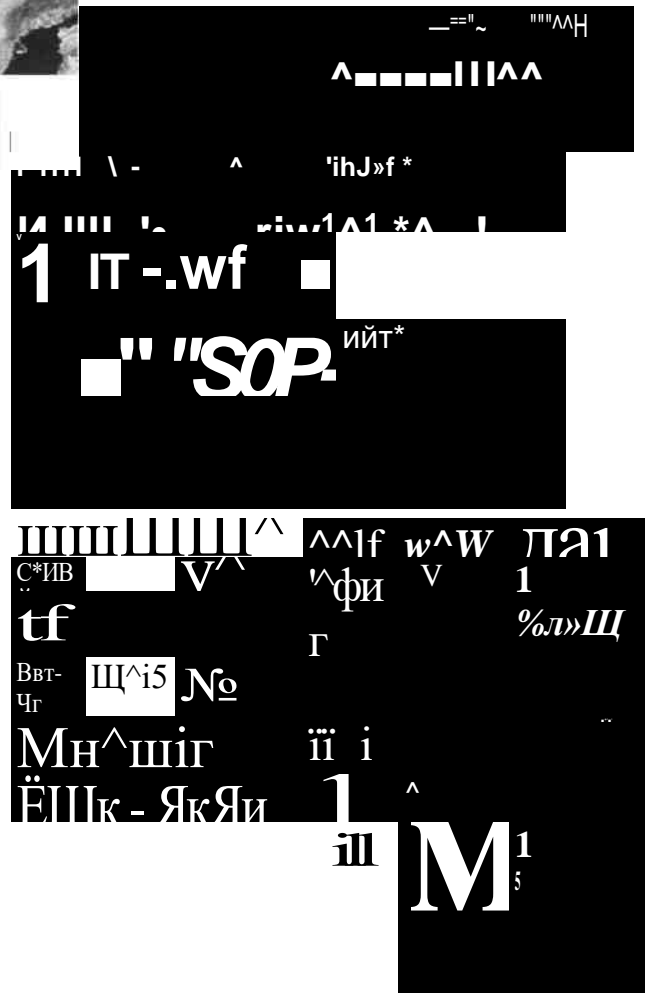
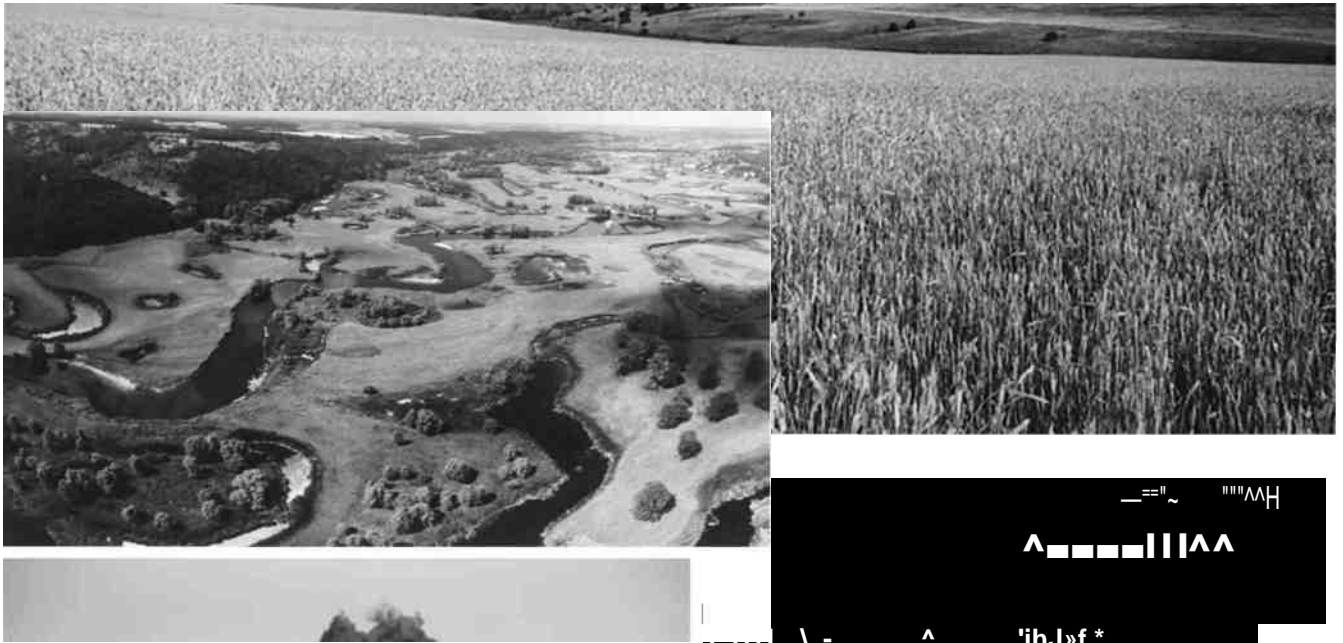
Task for Students A and B: Decide which features of the Ukrainian character are illustrated by pictures 12-18. If only three of these pictures had to be selected as those that are best to illustrate the Ukrainian spirit, which ones would you choose? How do the pictures show the structure of the national economy of Ukraine. Give your reasons.

#### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What factors have influenced the development of the Ukrainian character? What other pictures would you suggest to show the features absent in pictures 12-18? Do you think the Ukrainian character is much more different as compared to the American or English ones? Give your reasons.

# PART 2 STUDENTA







PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B



# UNIT 2

## LESSONS 1 - 2 (TASK - 4)

### PART1

#### Function 57

##### Expressing disappointment

I'm (rather/very) disappointed that...I'm sorry to hear that... It is (a little bit) disappointing that... It's a (great) shame/pity that... I would have hoped that... I had hoped that... Unfortunately,... It's a pity I didn't...

#### Function 58

##### Expressing regret

I regret not having ... If only I had known! If only I hadn't... I wish (that) someone had let me know... I wish I hadn't... If I had done X, I wouldn't be doing Y now. I shouldn't have...

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B to recall an experience of being disappointed after a visit to the theatre (shabby theatre interior, poor actors' performance, faded scenery, loud music etc).
- Task for Student B: Ask Student A to recall an experience of having regretted a visit to the theatre (gloomy theatre interior, poor actors' performance, primitive scenery, loud music, bad seats, talking neighbours etc).

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 323-326)

- Task for Student A: Describe the interior of the theatre in picture 1 (p. 326). Who are the people in pictures 2-4, and what are they doing

Student B: Which of the pictures do you think is the best to use for a theatre bill. Give your reasons.

- Task for Student B: Compare and contrast the interior of two theatres shown in pictures 5-6 (p. 324) and the actors on the stage in picture 7.

Student A: Which of the theatres shown in pictures 5-6 would you like to go to and why? Give your reasons.

### TASK4A

### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 325)

Task for Students A and B: Decide what kind of theatre is in picture 8 and what kind of performance is illustrated in pictures 9-12. What kind of actors are the people in pictures 9-12. Which actor's performance will make the biggest success. Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B: Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What factors influenced the popularity of the shows? What is the most popular theatre genre? Do you think musical theatre has more chances to make success than other types of theatres? Give your reasons.

### TASK4B

### PART3

(Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 326)

Task for Students A and B: Decide what genres do the plays, the scenes of which are represented in pictures 13-16, belong to. What kind of actors are the people in pictures 13-16? Which actor's performance will be the biggest success. Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B: Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? Why are some directors, actors, actresses, plays more successful than the others? Can money alone guarantee a play's success? Give your reasons.

## PART 2 STUDENT A



■ \*\* | III \*



# STUDENT B

a
V-,
4
ik^-'-^чЯМ

rilTiilirflfitrtr--
ivP

"У h > i a- п \*\*U'iJ ξ^.-^~^~

iHH - кш МВ^Ф

8 n
^Я

J ffi\*\*y: \_^;
.<-.----

5i~r^гл слПлС"\*Ш
» \* i, i
Г, -1 .JAUI

4 II It P VIU \*\*\*^
Sfei-- >---:---. .зЙЕйIIIMШаї

a)

• - kv\*w. ґ
" -A

;V, \*r
-

\*
4

^
1



A AND B (TASK - 4A)





## A AND B (TASK - 4B)





# UNIT 2

## LESSON 3 (TASK-5)

### PART1

Function 59 Making plans and arrangements

Going to/ Present Continuous/Future Continuous for arrangements that have been made. Will for making arrangements. Would like/would rather/would prefer... How about...? What about...? Let's ... Shall we...? Would you like to ... ? You can't...

Function 60 Cancelling plans and arrangements  
You'll have to ... it won't be possible to..  
I'm sorry/ I'm afraid I can't/  
I'll have to...

- Task for Student A: Arrange a visit to the cinema with Student B. Suggest various movie genres, all-star casts, popular directors etc.
- Task for Student B: Cancel the arrangement of going to the cinema with Student A. Make another arrangement for a new date.

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 328-331)

- Task for Student A: Compare and contrast the cinema theatres in pictures 1 and 2 (p. 328). Which cinema theatre is better? Give your reasons.

Student B: Which of the two cinema theatres in pictures 1 and 2 would you like to go to?

- Task for Student B: Describe pictures 4 and 5 (p. 331). What is the meaning of picture 5?

Student A: Explain the presence of popcorn in picture 5 . How is it related to the other objects in the picture?

### TASK 5A

#### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 332)

Task for Students A and B: Decide what genres do the films, the scenes of which are represented in pictures 6-9, belong to. What do you think is happening in each of the films? Which film will be the most successful one? Give your reasons.

#### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B: Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What factors may encourage you to go to the cinema? Are you prepared to go to a far-away part of town to see a good film? What factors may discourage you from going to the cinema?

### TASK5B

#### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 331)

Task for Students A and B: Decide what genres do the films, the scenes of which are represented in pictures 10-12, belong to. What do you think is happening in each of the films? Which film will be the most successful one? Give your reasons.

#### PART 4

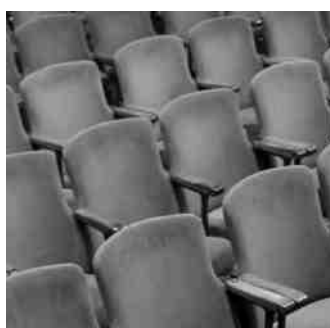
Questions to Students A and B: Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What are the advantages and disadvantages of watching a film at home compared to going to the cinema. Give your reasons.

# STUDENTA



I

)



b4

A

STUDENT B



# PART 3 STUDENTS A AND B

## (TASK - 5A)



1 1  
ЯІЯВ

«tf

by J^EM

7

-v



1 -

1 1  
KЧ

1 1 1 1  
m

1 -

J

'4d

v#A^

^ ^ ^ ^ ^ g

PART 3 STUDENTS A AND B

(TASK - 5B)



# UNIT 2

## LESSON 4 (TASK - 6)

### PART1

#### Function 61

##### Expressing hopes

I hope I'll be able ... I want(ed) to be ... I want(ed) to ... I hope to ... I would like/love/hate to ... I would like to start/stop/keep on ...-ing. I expect to ... I don't think I have much chance... When I retire I'm going to...My parents/teachers want(ed) me to...and I still want to... But I changed my mind. I think I (don't) have a good chance (of... -ing)

#### Function 62

##### Giving advice-2

I (don't) think you should... It is important to... There's nothing wrong in...-ing. I wouldn't advise you to ... I don't think it's a good idea to.. It's not worth it. It's (not) worth ...-ing . You can either ... or...

• Task for Student A: You wanted to become a movie star at school, you read a lot about cinema, performed at school amateur theatre club, but enrolled in the School of Foreign Languages. You still hope to be a movie star. Tell Student B about it.

• Task for Student B: Give advice to Student A, who wanted to become a movie star at school, read a lot about cinema, performed at school amateur theatre club, but enrolled in the School of Foreign Languages. Advise her/him to keep trying.

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 333-336)

• Task for Student A: Compare and contrast the drive-in cinema theatres in pictures 1 and 2 (p. 333). Do you think it's worth it to open drive-in cinema theatres in Ukraine? Why?

Student B: Can you see anything funny in picture 2? What is it?

• Task for Student B: Describe pictures 3, 4 and 5 (p. 334). What are the youngsters in picture 3 talking about?

Student A: What are the people in picture 5 doing?

### TASK 5A

### PART3

(Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 335))

Task for Students A and B: Decide which of the spectators in pictures 6-8 are captured by the action on the screen most and least of all. Explain possible reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B: Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? Why do the people go to the cinema? Do all of them go there for the sake of the film? Do you think the spectators may be allowed to eat and drink while watching the film?

### TASK 5B

### PART3

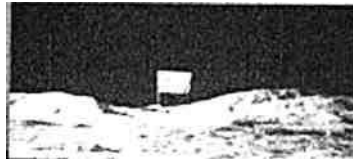
Turn to the Speaking Tasks Section in your textbook (p. 336)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which of the spectators in pictures 9-10 are captured by the action on the screen most and least of all. Explain possible reasons. Compare the behaviour of the two couples in pictures 9 and 10.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B: Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? Sometimes the spectators at the cinema theatre misbehave, making noise etc. Can anything be done about it? Give your reasons.

## STUDENTA



Πίνακας

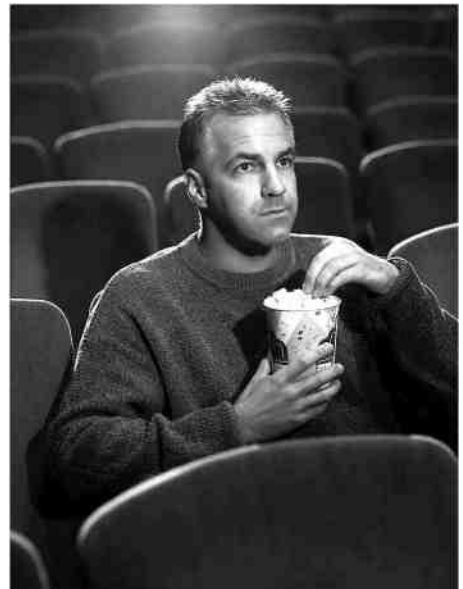
v





PART 3 STUDENTS

A AND B (TASK - 6A)



**PART 3 STUDENTS A AND B**

**(TASK - 6B)**



# UNIT 3

## LESSON 1 (TASK - 7)

### PART1

#### Function 63

##### Function 63

##### Giving advice-3

What/How about ...-ing? You really ought to. ..You could/might...

A good way to ... is to... The best way to ... is to

I/We think it's a mistake to... Stop ... -ing ^ and start... -ing.

Better not... Just... that's all. Now then,... Perhaps you 'd better...

• Task for Student A: Ask Student B to describe his/her experience of travelling by air (buying a ticket, checking the baggage in, the airport building and services etc).

• Task for Student B: Advise Student A on the best way to travel from Ukraine to the USA (how and where to buy a ticket, which airport to fly from, how to avoid problems with your baggage, what kind of services are available at airports etc).

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 338-340)

• Task for Student A: Describe the airport concourse and the airfield shown in pictures 1 and 2 (p. 338).

Student B: Which countries do the airlines, whose planes are shown in picture 2, represent?

• Task for Student B: Compare and contrast the airports in pictures 1 and 3, and the parts of the airfield in pictures 2, 4 and 5 (p. 338-339).

Student A: What are the planes in pictures 2 (p. 338) and 4-5 (p. 339) doing? Give your reasons.

### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 340)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which service vehicles are servicing the plane in picture 6 and what part of the airfield the plane is in. Which stages of the flight precede and follow the stage shown in the picture. What aspects of travelling by air may picture 7 stand for? Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

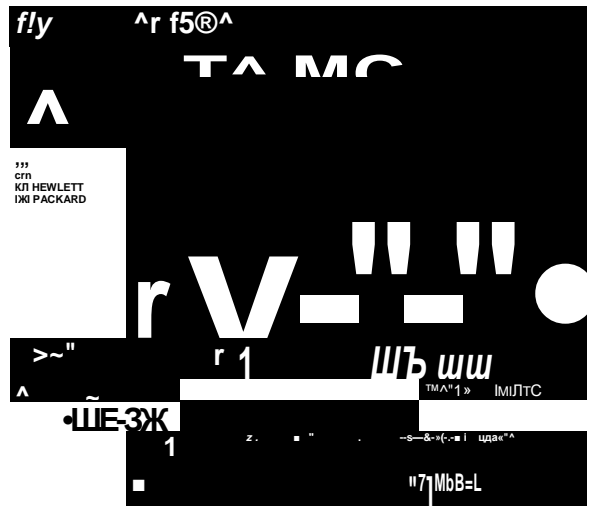
Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What kind of problems may arise with a passenger's baggage while travelling by air? What are the best ways to prevent or solve these problems? Give your reasons.

PART 2  
STUDENTA

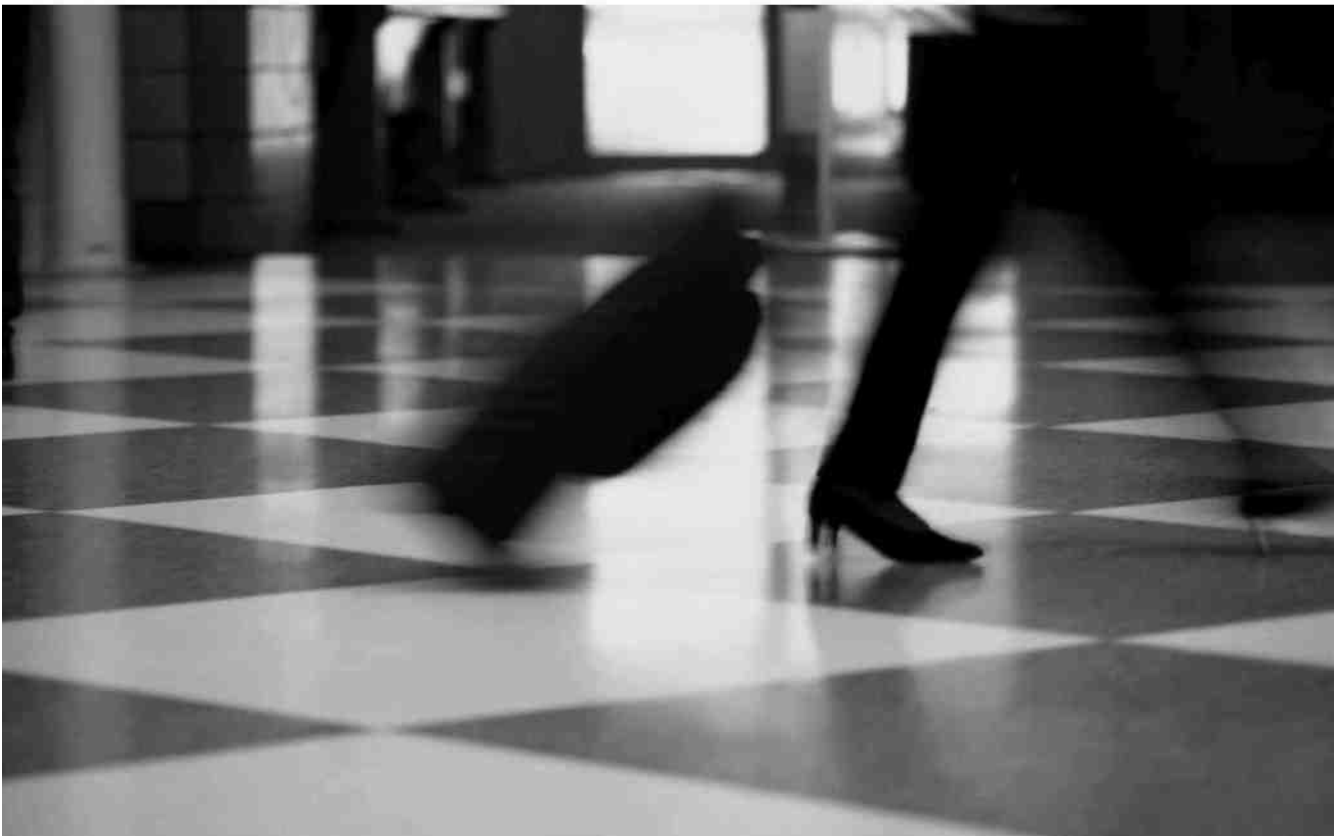


# STUDENT B

fci  
\* u  
• t:3:d'  
"tz ~ i1  
«SI



PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B



# UNIT 3

## LESSON 2 (TASK - 8)

### PART1

Function 64 Making  
predictions

Will/going to (for future predictions and speculation).  
will have... will be... It looks as if... My guess is  
that...

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B to make predictions about the developments in travelling by air that may happen in the nearest fifty years.
- Task for Student B: Ask Student A to make predictions about the ways airlines will be fighting against hijacking and terrorism on board the planes.

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 342-344)

- Task for Student A: Make predictions about the chance of on-time departures of the flights indicated in picture 1 (this is a German airport, which has the same percentage of on-time takeoffs as JFK airport at New York). What airlines of what countries are indicated in the first column? What does the last column stand for? Describe picture 2 (p. 342).

Student B: Has the man in picture 2 been waiting for a long time? Give your reasons.

- Task for Student B: Compare and contrast pictures 3 and 4 (p. 343). What can picture 4 symbolize?

Student A: What has the man in picture 3 (p. 343) been doing? Give your reasons.

### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 344)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which airport services do the people in pictures 5-12 represent Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What kind of problems may arise during the immigration and customs control? What are the best ways to prevent or solve these problems? Make predictions on what might happen with the passengers who violate immigration or customs laws. Give your reasons.

# PART 2 STUDENTIA

			planm. scheduled	verspatet delayed	Schalter Counter
LG 302	LUXEMBURG		930		113-3
AZ 419	TURIN		935~		339-3
LH 1122	NEAPEL		9^5~		113-3
LH 1906	MADRID		935		113-3
LH 1022	STUTTGART HBF.		935		-
AF 1701	LYON _____		940		683-6
AY 822	HELSINKI				
AA 071	SFRANCI SCO-DALLAS				
^ 743	PAR^S _____				
LH, 1116,	VENEDIG				
PL 023	DALLAS _____		940		113-3
~GA~ 892	AMSTERDAM	LAS	945		731-7
			945		683-6
			945		1 13-3
			95F		478-4
			9bo		721-7





### STUDENT B



343

PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B



# UNIT 3

## LESSON 3 (TASK - 9)

### PART1

Function 65

Expressing certainty - 2

Indubitably... Undeniably... I am convinced of.. I have no doubt of...

Without doubt... I have clearly/obviously/plainly..

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B if s/he has ever come across an unusually attractive offer of an extraordinary cheap fare for a flight. Why do the airlines offer discounts?
- Task for Student B: Ask Student A to make predictions whether the airlines will continue to compete by offering incredible discounts in the future.

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 346-348)

- Task for Student A: Describe pictures 1 and 2 (p. 346). Who are the men in the pictures? What kind of character do they have? What is similar and what is different about the two pictures?

Student B: Look at picture 1. Why is the man a bit concerned?

- Task for Student B: Compare and contrast pictures 3 and 4 (p. 347). What is similar and what is different about the two pictures?

Student A: Why are the young women in picture 4 (p. 347) smiling?

### PART3

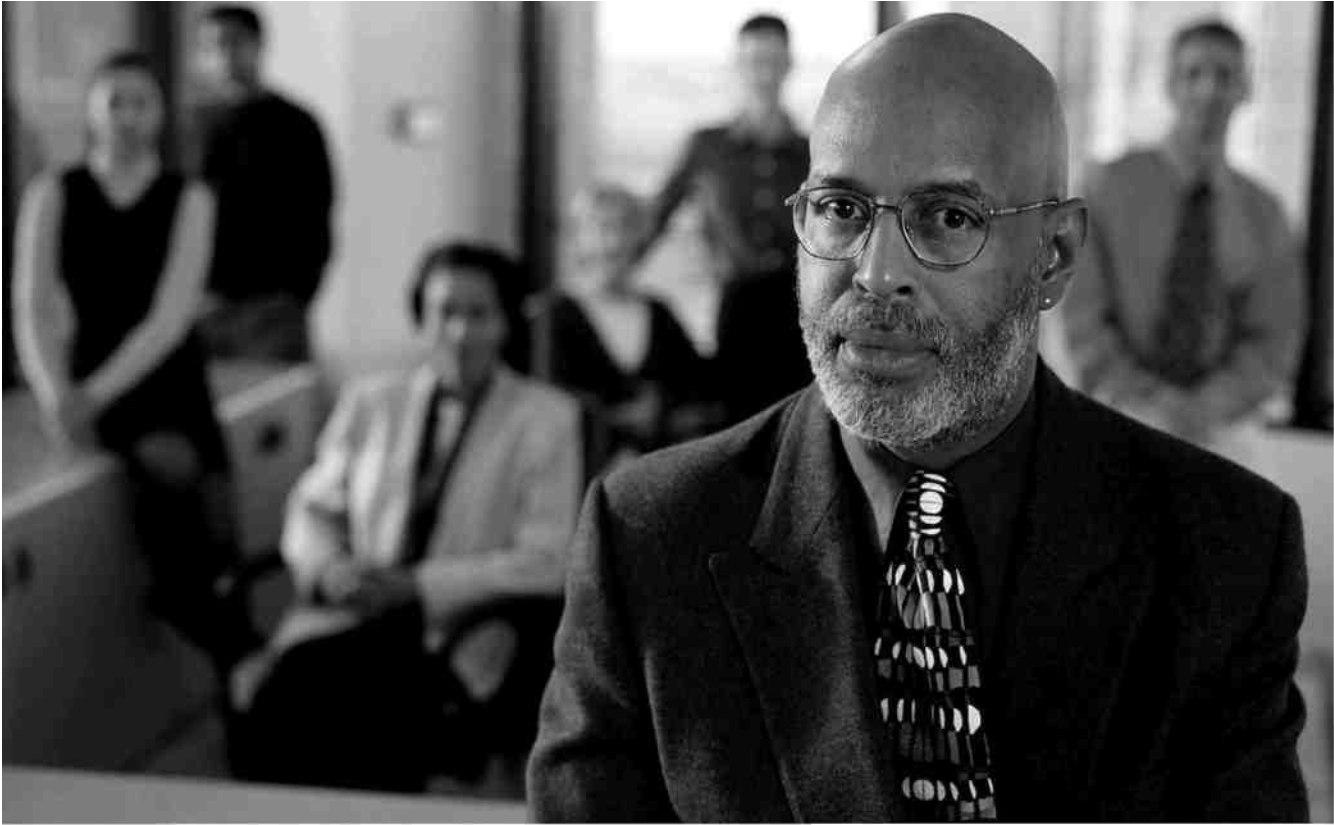
Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 348)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which kinds of transport shown in pictures 5-10 are the best to travel around. Look at their advantages and disadvantages first before you make a decision.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What kind of transport available at present is the most promising for the future? What kind of transport will be the most popular one in fifty years' time? Make predictions on what new types of transport may appear in the future. Give your reasons.



**STUDENT B**

*III*
$$\frac{m^{\wedge}/}{\mu} \quad \text{H H}^{\wedge} > \sim v^*$$

**- 'Ji**

 $\wedge$ 

**1**

f11

W  
I

## STUDENTS A AND B



# UNIT 4

## LESSON 1 (TASK-10)

### PART1

Function 66 Expressing

(im)probability - 2

Ought to... Oughtn't to ... Should... Shouldn't...

They have very likely done it...

It is likely to finish late... If I had(n't)... what would have happened?

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B if s/he has ever stayed at a hotel. Ask her/him to describe the room(s) s/he stayed at.
- Task for Student B: Ask Student A to describe the services available at the hotel s/he stayed at.

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 350-352)

- Task for Student A: Describe pictures 1 and 2 (p. 350). What types of hotels are shown in pictures 1 and 2? What kind of customer could choose these hotels to stay at? Give your reasons.
  - Student B: Look at picture 2. What kind of room is this? Give your reasons.
  - Task for Student B: Compare and contrast pictures 3 and 4 (p. 351). What is similar and what is different about the two pictures? What types of hotels may be found in the area shown in picture 4? Give your reasons.
- Student A: Who are the people in picture 4 (p. 351)? Give your reasons.

### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 352)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which hotel services are shown in pictures 5-10? Which of those and other hotel services are the most important ones? Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? How should an ideal hotel look like? What kind of services should it have? Make predictions on the development of the hotel industry in the future: will there be a greater or a smaller variety of the types of hotels? What may be the difference between those types? Give your reasons.





STUDENT B



' f

*U*, ,•K••. tt

/''■A№,11 ü P

PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B



# UNIT 4

## LESSON 2 (TASK-11)

### PART1

Function

67

Correcting

Er, that's not quite correct... Well, I didn't exactly ... Excuse me, I didn't mean...

Definitely not. No, actually... No, nothing like that.

No, you are wrong.

Not exactly, I'm afraid. Not necessarily. Not really, I'm afraid.

Of course not. Surely not.

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B what kind of things s/he had to indicate in the Guest Registration Card while checking in at a hotel.

- Task for Student B: Ask Student A if s/he has ever complained about unsatisfactory services at the hotel s/he stayed at. If not, Ask Student A to describe the typical problems hotel customers may complain about?

### PART 2

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 354-356)

- Task for Student A: Describe pictures 1 and 2 (p. 354). What positions do the hotel employees shown in pictures 1 and 2 occupy? What kinds of responsibilities do they have? Give your reasons.

- Student B: Look at picture 2. What is the woman doing? Give your reasons.

- Task for Student B: Compare and contrast pictures 3 and 4 (p. 355). What is similar and what is different about the two pictures? Which hotel department may the people shown in pictures 3 and 4 work at? Give your reasons.

Student A: What is the woman in picture 4 (p. 355) trying to do? Give your reasons.

### PART3

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 356)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which hotel services do the people shown in pictures 5-11 work at? Guess by the way those people look, how well the relative service works. Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What are the main reasons of the hotel services' occasional failures? What are the main problems the hotel customers complain about? How should the hotel staff be responsible for having failed to do their duty? Should they be fired at once? Give your reasons.

STUDENTA

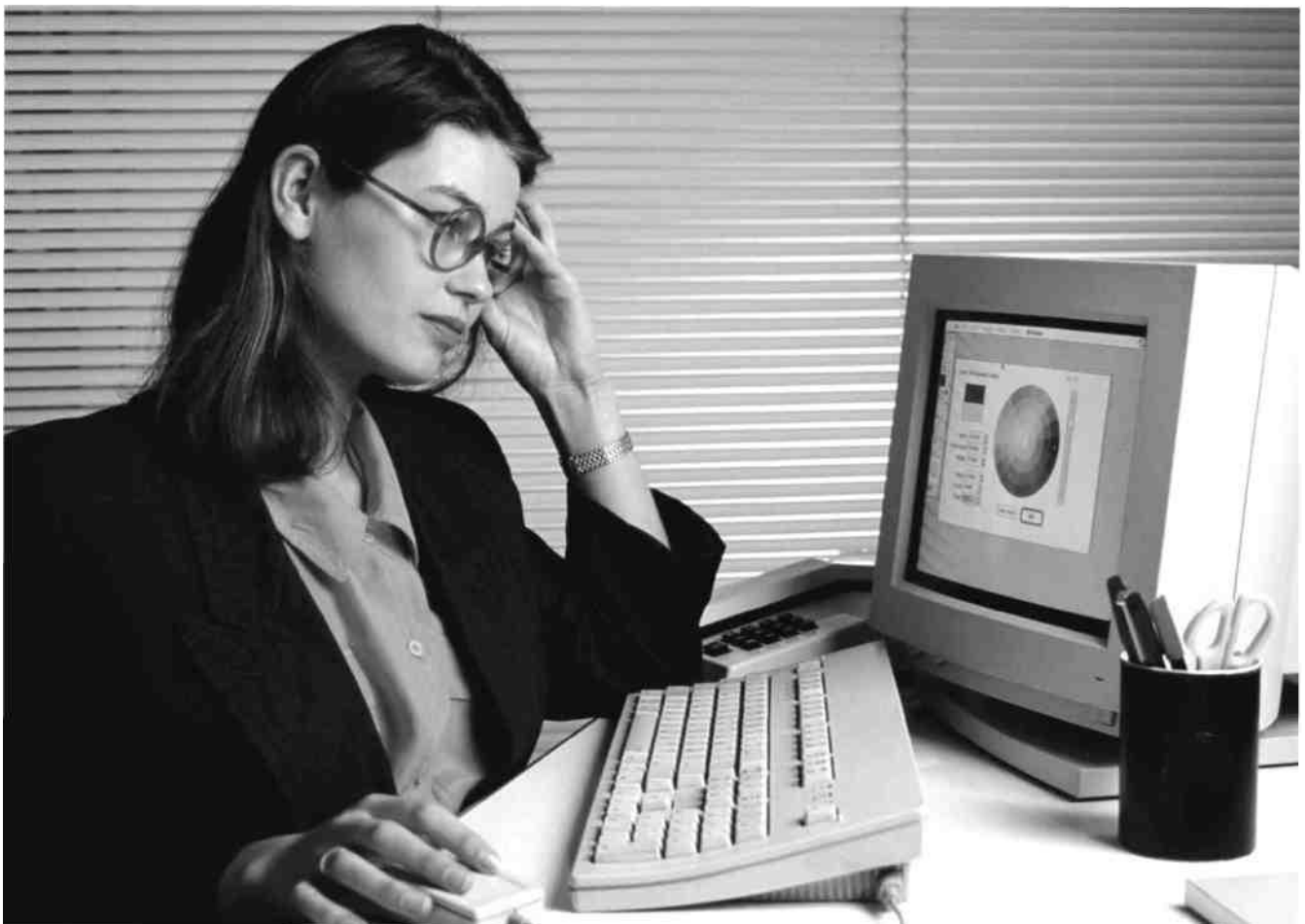
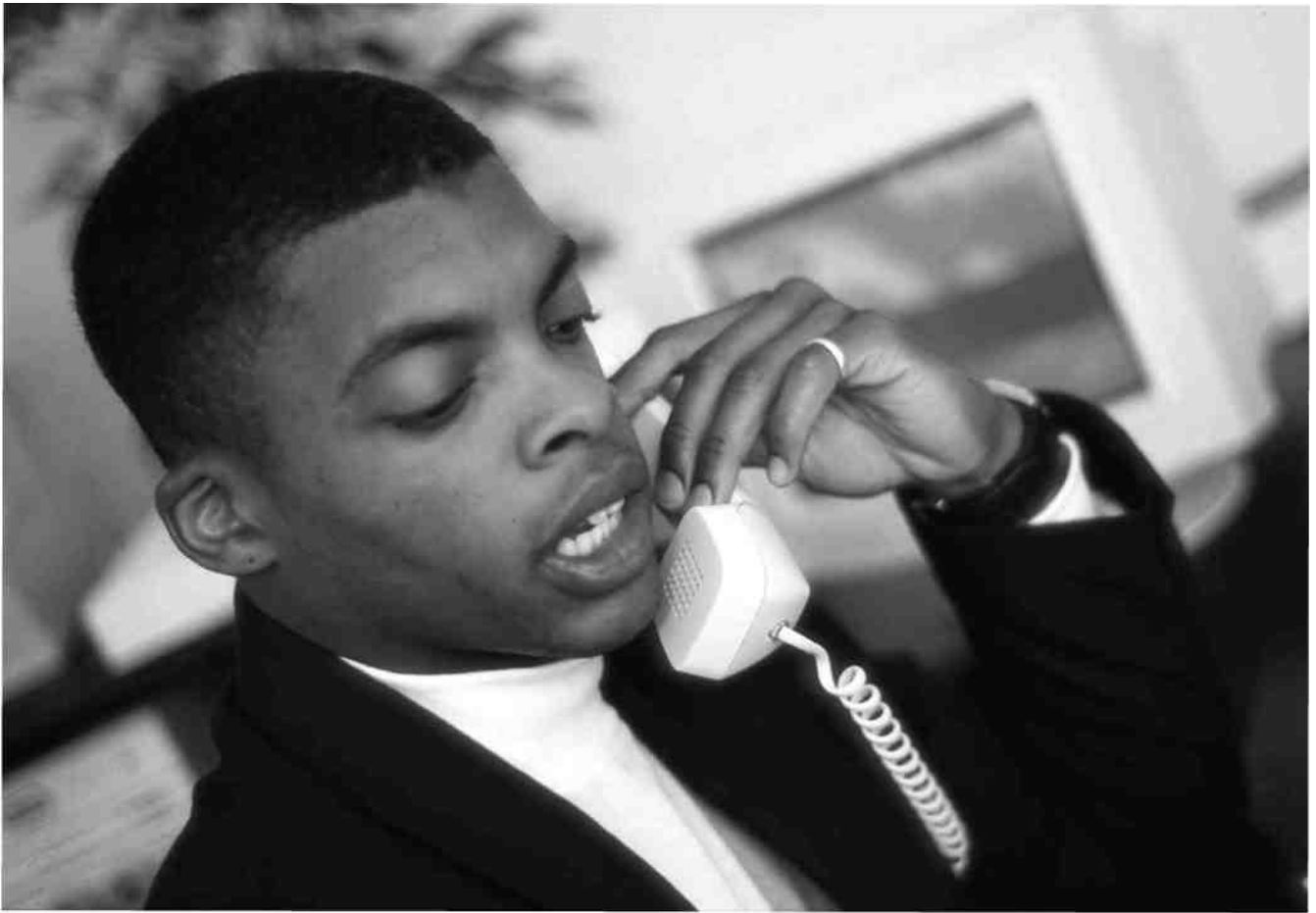


'x

/

1

**STUDENT B**



PART 3  
STUDENTS A AND B



# UNIT 5

## LESSONS 1 -3 (TASK- 12)

### PART1

#### Function 68 Requesting information on health -1

What is your complaint? What's wrong with you? When did the first symptoms appear? What's your temperature? When was your temperature taken? Show your tongue. Do you have a headache? Does your face etc get swollen? Does the swelling disappear in the morning? Have you gained/lost weight lately? Have you had your blood count? Where are your X-ray pictures?

#### Function 68A History of disease

How long have you been ill? Have you been treated for... ? What kind of treatment have you had? Have you ever had an infectious disease/ measles etc? Have you ever been seriously ill? Have you ever been in hospital? Are you allergic to... ? What diseases did you have as a child? Is there a history of tuberculosis etc in your family?

• Task for Student A: Ask Student B if any of her/his relatives have ever fallen ill and about their health now. Use the expressions from Function 68 above.

• Task for Student B: Ask Student A if any of her/his relatives have ever fallen ill and about the history of their disease. Use the expressions from Function 68A above.

### PART 2

#### Function 69 Requesting information on pain

Do you feel the pain? Does it hurt when... ? What kind of pain do you have? Is it sharp/dull... ? Where does the pain radiate to? Show me where it hurts. Was the onset of pain sudden? Have you got any pain in the abdomen etc? Has the pain gone?

#### Function 69A

##### Requesting information and giving advice on injury

How did the injury occur? How did it happen?  
How long has it been since the injury? Did you lose consciousness/ vomit after the injury? For how long were you unconscious? Did you see double/ have diminished hearing after the injury? Don't put your weight on the injured leg -use crutches. Try to support yourself on the sound leg. Bend/ straighten your leg/arm. Here is a slip for X-ray.

#### I.

• Task for Student A: Ask Student B if any of her/his relatives have ever fallen ill and about the kind of pain they used to have. Use the expressions from Function 69 above.

• Task for Student B: Ask Student A if any of her/his relatives have ever got injured and about the circumstances when it happened as well as about the doctors' advice to them. Use the expressions from Function 69A above.

#### II.

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 359-362)

• Task for Student A: Describe pictures 1-7 (p. 359). What kind of doctors can you see in the pictures? What kinds of responsibilities do they have? Give your reasons.

• Student B: Look at picture 6. What is the doctor doing? Give your reasons.

• Task for Student B: Compare and contrast pictures 8-14 (p. 360). What is the doctor in picture 10 going to do? Why? Which hospital department may the doctors shown in pictures 8-14 work at? Give your reasons.

Student A: What are the two doctors in picture 12 doing? Give your reasons.

### PART 3

Function 70 Requesting therapeutic information	Function 70A Requesting ophthalmologic information
What is your usual blood pressure? Is breathing painful? Breath in/out. Hold your breath. Cough a little. Let me feel your pulse. Do you get tired easily? Do you have heartburns/ belching? Is the heartburn relieved by taking soda? Are you nauseous? Do you often feel sick?	Do you have any trouble with your eyes? Do you see better at a distance or near to? Have you had squint since childhood? Is your sight clear/ blurred/ dim etc? What letter am I pointing to?

I.

- Task for Student A: Ask Student B if any of her/his relatives have ever fallen ill and about the kind of symptoms they used to have. Use the expressions from Function 70 above.
- Task for Student B: Ask Student A if any of her/his relatives have ever had problems with their eyes. Use the expressions from Function 70A above.

II. A.

Turn to the Speaking Visuals in your textbook (p. 361)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which hospital services and departments do the people shown in pictures 9-13 work at? Guess how well the relative service or department works. Give your reasons. B.

Turn to the Visuals Section in your textbook (p. 362)

Task for Students A and B: Decide which kinds of non-traditional medicine can you see in pictures 14-21? Which one of them is the most efficient one? Give your reasons.

### PART 4

Questions to Students A and B:

Did you reach agreement? How do your opinions differ? What are the main reasons of the traditional medicine's occasional failures? What are the main problems of modern medicine? What should be the attitude of common people to the way they take care of their health? Should they avoid seeing doctors at all? Give your reasons.



## STUDENTA





**PART 3 (A)**  
**STUDENTS A AND B**



PART 3 (B)  
STUDENTS A AND B



# VOCABULARY

## UNIT 1. LESSON 1. PART 1

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

State	Abbrev.	Region	Capital	Largest City	Nickname
Alabama	Ala.	South	Montgomery	Birmingham	The Heart of Dixie (South)
Alaska	AL	West	Juneau	Anchorage	The Last Frontier
Arizona	Ariz.	Southwest	Phoenix	Phoenix	The Grand Canyon State
Arkansas	Ark.	South	Little Rock	Little Rock	The Land of Opportunity
California	Cal.	Southwest/ West	Sacramento	Los Angeles	The Golden State
Colorado	Colo.	Midwest	Denver	Denver	The Centennial State
Connecticut	Conn.	New England	Hartford	Hartford	The Constitution State
Delaware	Del.	Middle Atlantic	Dover	Wilmington	The First State
Florida	Fla.	South	Tallahassee	Jacksonville	The Sunshine State
Georgia	Ga.	South	Atlanta	Atlanta	The Empire State of the South
Hawaii	Haw.	West	Honolulu	Honolulu	The Aloha State
Idaho	Id.	West	Boise	Boise	The Gem State
Illinois	Ill.	Midwest	Springfield	Chicago	The Prairie State
Indiana	Ind.	Midwest	Indianapolis	Indianapolis	The Hoosier State
Iowa	Ia.	Midwest	Des Moines	Des Moines	The Hawkeye State
Kansas	Kan.	Midwest	Topeka	Wichita	The Sunflower State
Kentucky	Ky.	South	Frankfort	Louisville	The Bluegrass State
Louisiana	La.	South	Baton Rouge	New Orleans	The Pelican State
Maine	Me.	New England	Augusta	Portland	The Pine Tree State
Maryland	Md.	Middle Atlantic	Annapolis	Baltimore	The Old Line State
Massachusetts	Mass.	New England	Boston	Boston	The Bay State
Michigan	Mich.	Midwest	Lansing	Detroit	The Wolverine State
Minnesota	Minn.	Midwest	St. Paul	Minneapolis	The North Star State
Mississippi	Miss.	South	Jackson	Jackson	The Magnolia State
Missouri	Mo.	South/ Midwest	Jefferson	St. Louis	The Show Me State
Montana	Mont.	West	Helena	Billings	The Treasure State
Nebraska	Neb.	Midwest	Lincoln	Omaha	The Cornhusker State
Nevada	Nev.	Southwest	Carson City	Las Vegas	The Silver State
New Hampshire	N.H.	New England	Concord	Manchester	The Granite State
New Jersey	N.J.	Middle Atlantic	Trenton	Newark	The Garden State
New Mexico	N.Mex.	Southwest	Santa Fe	Albuquerque	The Land of Enchantment
New York	N.Y.	Middle Atlantic	Albany	New York City	The Empire State
North Carolina	N.C.	South	Raleigh	Charlotte	The Tar Heel State
North Dakota	N.Dac.	Midwest	Bismarck	Fargo	The Sioux State
Ohio	OH	Midwest	Columbus	Cleveland	The Buckeye State
Oklahoma	Okla.	South/ Southwest	Oklahoma City	Oklahoma City	The Sooner State
Oregon	Ore.	West	Salem	Portland	The Beaver State
Pennsylvania	Pa.	Middle Atlantic	Harrisburg	Philadelphia	The Keystone State
Rhode Island	R.I.	New England	Providence	Providence	Little Rhody
South Carolina	S.C.	South	Columbia	Columbia	The Palmetto State
South Dakota	S.Dak.	Midwest	Pierre	Sioux Falls	The Coyote State
Tennessee	Tenn.	South	Nashville	Memphis	The Volunteer State
Texas	Tex.	South/ Southwest	Austin	Houston	The Lone Star State
Utah	Ut.	West	Salt Lake City	Salt Lake City	The Beehive State
Vermont	Vt.	New England	Montpelier	Burlington	The Green Mountain State
Virginia	Va.	South	Richmond	Norfolk	The Old Dominion
Washington	Wash.	West	Olympia	Seattle	The Evergreen State
West Virginia	W.Va.	South	Charleston	Huntington	The Mountain State
Wisconsin	Wis.	Midwest	Madison	Milwaukee	The Badger State
Wyoming	Wy.	West	Cheyenne	Cheyenne	The Equality State

The District of Columbia is not a state. It comprises the nation's capital, Washington.

<b>штат</b>	<b>столиця</b>	<b>найбільше місто</b>	<b>прізвисько штату</b>
Айдаго	Бойс	Бойс	Штат перлів
Айова	Демойн	Демойн	Штат «Соколине око»
Алабама	Монтгомері	Бірінгем	Серце Діксі (південних штатів)
Аляска	Джуну	Анкер	Останній Кордон
Арізона	Фінікс	Фінікс	Штат Великого Каньйону
Арканзас	Літтл Рок	Літтл Рок	Земля Можливостей
Вайомінг	Чайєнн	Чайєнн	Штат Рівності
Вашингтон	Олімпія	Сієтл	Вічнозелений штат
Вермонт	Монтпельєр	Барлінгтон	Штат зелених гір
Вірджинія	Річмод	Норфолк	Старий Домініон
Вісконсин	Медісон	Мілуокі	Штат борсуків
Гаваї	Гонолулу	Гонолулу	Привітний штат
Делавар	Довер	Вілмінгтон	Перший штат
Джорджія	Атланта	Атланта	Імперський штат Сходу
Західна Вірджинія	Чарльзтаун	Гантінгтон	Гірський штат
Іллінойс	Спрінгфілд	Чикаго	Штат прерій
Індіана	Індіанаполіс	Індіанаполіс	Штат гузерів (жартівлива назва корінних мешканців)
Каліфорнія	Сакраменто	Лос Анджелес	Золотий штат
Канзас	Топіка	Вічнта	Соняшниковий штат
Кенту кі	Франкфорт	Луїсвілл	Штат блакитної трави
Колорадо	Денвер	Денвер	Столітній штат
Коннектікут	Гартфорд	Гартфорд	Штат Конституції
Луїзіана	Батон Руж	Нью-Орлеан	Штат пеліканів
Массачусетс	Бостон	Бостон	Штат-затока
Мен	Августа	Портланд	Штат сосон
Меріленд	Аннаполіс	Балтімор	Штат старого кордону
Мінне сота	Сент-Пол	Мінне апо ліс	Штат Північної Зорі
Міссісіпі	Джексон	Джексон	Штат магнолій
Міссурі	Джефферсон-Сіті	Сент Луїс	Недовірливий штат
Мічиган	Лансінг	Детройт	Штат росомач
Монтана	Гелена	Білінгз	Штат скарбів
Небраска	Лінкольн	Омаха	Кукурудзяний штат
Невада	Карсон-Сіті	Лас Вегас	Срібний штат
Нью- Мексико	Санта Фе	Альбукерк	Зачарована Земля
Нью-Гемпшир	Конкорд	Манчестер	Гранітний штат
Нью-Джерсі	Трентон	Ньюарк	Штат садів
Нью-Йорк	Олбані	Нью-Йорк Сіті	Імперський штат
Огайо	Колумбус	Клівленд	Штат кінських каштанів
Оклахома	Оклахома Сіті	Оклахома Сіті	Пізніший штат
Орегон	Салем	Портланд	Штат бобрів
Пенсільванія	Гаррісбург	Філадельфія	Наріжний штат
Південна Дакота	Пієр	Сіу Фоллз	Штат койотів
Південна Кароліна	Колумбія	Колумбія	Штат карликових пальм
Північна Дакота	Бісмарк	Фарго	Штат Сіу
Північна Кароліна	Раллей	Шарлотта	Штат «Смоляна п'ята»
Род Айленд	Провіденс	Провіденс	Літтл Роді (Малий Роді)
Теннессі	Нешвілл	Мемфіс	Волонтерський штат
Техас	Остін	Х'юстон	Штат Самотньої Зорі
Флорида	Таллахассі	Джексонавілл	Штат сяючого сонця
Юта	Солт Лейк Сіті	Солт Лейк Сіті	Штат вуликів

Округ Колумбія не є штатом. Він містить у собі столицю держави Вашингтон.

## US Geographic Areas - Географічні райони США

New England (Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island)	Нью-Інгленд (Нова Англія) (Мен, Нью Гемпшир, Вермонт, Массачусеттс, Коннектикут, Род Айленд)
Middle Atlantic, the (New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland)	Середня Атлантика (Нью-Йорк, Нью Джерсі, Пенсільванія, Делавер та Меріленд)
South, the (Virginia, Florida, central Texas, West Virginia, Kentucky, Tennessee, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Arkansas, Louisiana, parts of Missouri, Oklahoma)	Південь (Вірджинія, Флорида, центральний Техас, Західна Вірджинія, Кентукі, Теннессі, Північна Кароліна, Південна Кароліна, Джорджія, Алабама, Міссісіпі, Арканзас, Луїзіана, частини Міссурі й Оклахоми)
Midwest, the (Ohio, Michigan, Indiana, Wisconsin, Illinois, Minnesota, Iowa, Nebraska, parts of Missouri, North Dakota, South Dakota, Kansas, eastern Colorado)	Середній Захід (Огайо, Мічіган, Індіана, Вісконсін, Іллінойс, Міннесота, Айова, Небраска, частина Міссурі, Північна Дакота, Південна Дакота, Канзас, східне Колорадо)
Southwest, the (western Texas, portions of Oklahoma, New Mexico, Arizona, Nevada, southern interior part of California)	Південний Захід (західний Техас, частина Оклахоми, Нью-Мексико, Арізона, Невада, південна частина Каліфорнії)
West, the (Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, Utah, Idaho, California, Nevada, Oregon, Washington, Alaska, Hawaii)	Захід (Колорадо, Вайомінг, Монтана, Юта, Каліфорнія, Невада, Айдаго, Орегон, Вашингтон, Аляска, Гаваї)

## GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES - ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ НАЗВИ

<b>Baltimore</b>	Балтімор
<b>Chesapeake Bay</b>	Чесапікська затока
<b>Delaware river</b>	Делавер (річка)
<b>Grand Canyon</b>	Великий каньйон
<b>Great Lakes</b>	Великі озера
<b>Hudson river</b>	Гудзон (річка)
<b>Navajo Reservation</b>	Резервація індіанців племені Наваго
<b>Outer Banks</b>	острів Аутер Бенкс
<b>Silicon Valley</b>	Сліконова долина (район на півострові Сан-Франциско, де зосереджено виробництво комп'ютерної техніки)

## UNIVERSITIES AND COLLEGES - УНІВЕРСИТЕТИ

<b>Harvard</b>	Гарвард
<b>Yale</b>	Єйл

## HISTORICAL NOTIONS - ІСТОРИЧНІ ПОНЯТТЯ

<b>Civil War</b>	Громадянська війна
<b>Confederate States of America, the</b>	Конфедерація Штатів Америки
<b>Coronado's expedition</b>	Експедиція під керівництвом іспанського дослідника Франсиско Коронадо (1500-1554), який шукав легендарні "сім золотих міст Сиболі" ( <i>seven gold cities of Cibola</i> ) на південному заході сучасних США, але знайшов натомість Великий Каньйон
<b>Declaration of Independence</b>	Декларація про Незалежність
<b>racial segregation slavery</b>	расова сегрегація (різні закони для білих та кольорових) рабство



## **GEOGRAPHICAL CHARACTERISTICS - ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ**

average annual rainfall	середній обсяг опадів на рік
floor (of the Canyon)	дно (каньйону)
fossil	скамянілість; викопні рештки
gorge	яр
groundwater	грунтові води
mammal	ссавець
moisture	волога
national park	національний заповідник
reservation	резервація (територія, відведена для проживання індіанців)
rim	край
species	вид (тварин тощо)
stretch of wilderness	великі ділянки дикої природи
wild life	дика природа
wildlife refuge	заповідник дикої природи

## **AGRICULTURAL CHARACTERISTICS - СІЛЬСЬКОГОСПОДАРСЬКІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ**

abundant harvest	багатий урожай
breadbasket	житниця
cereal crops	зернові культури
fertile soil	родючий ґрунт
undeveloped land	неорана земля

## **POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC CHARACTERISTICS ПОЛІТИКО-ЕКОНОМІЧНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ**

abolition	скасування
contentious issue	спірне питання
distinctive political format	характерне політичне врядування
financial hub	фінансовий центр
firm and settled doctrine	тверда та чітко сформована доктрина
heritage	спадщина
isolationism	ізоляціонізм
issues of the day	нагальні проблеми
mainstays of the region	головні галузі господарства
original spirit	первісний дух
town meeting	міські збори (форма правління містом)
vibrant cultural life	насичене культурне життя

## **NATURAL AND HUMAN-RELATED RISKS - ПРИРОДНІ ТА ЛЮДСЬКІ ЧИННИКИ РИЗИКУ**

earthquake	землетрус
freeway sniper	снайпери на автошляхах
hazard	загроза
landslide	зсув (грунту)
mortality oil	смертність
spills seismic	нафтові плями
zones smog	сейсмічні зони
submarine	смог (суміш туману та диму)
	підводний



<b>tsunami urban</b>	цунамі
<b>riot volcano</b>	заворушення в містах
<b>water shortage</b>	вулкан нестача води
<b>wildfire</b>	стихійна пожежа

## WORDS TO DESCRIBE PLACES - СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОННСУ МІСЦЕВОСТІ

<b>assortment</b>	асортимент
<b>cluster</b>	група; скупчення
<b>destination</b>	місце призначення
<b>mecca</b>	Мекка; бажане місце
<b>sight</b>	вид
<b>scenic beauty</b>	краса краєвидів

## PEOPLE-ЛЮДИ POPULATION - НАСЕЛЕННЯ

<b>dense</b>	щільний
<b>populous (area etc)</b>	густонаселений (район тощо)
<b>sparse</b>	рідкий; розкиданий; розсіяний

## ORIGIN - ПОХОДЖЕННЯ

<b>Afro- American</b>	афро-американці
<b>Asian Americans</b>	американці азійського походження
<b>ethnicity</b>	етнічне походження
<b>Havasupai Indians</b>	індіанці племені Гавасупай
<b>Hopi Indians</b>	індіанці племені Гопі
<b>Mexican-American</b>	американці мексиканського походження
<b>Native-American</b>	корінні американці
<b>Navaho Indians</b>	індіанці племені Наваго
<b>residents of European stock</b>	американці європейського походження
<b>Spanish-American</b>	іспано-американці
<b>tribe</b>	плем'я

## PEOPLE IN GENERAL- ЛЮДИ ЗАГАЛОМ

<b>man of property</b>	людина, що володіє власністю
<b>Quakers, the</b>	квакери (християнська секта - різновид Протестантизму - не користуються Святим Письмом, відзначаються надзвичайною простотою життя, не визнають священників, проповідують пацифізм)
<b>retiree settler</b>	пенсіонер
<b>skilled worker</b>	поселенець
	кваліфікований робітник

## PEOPLE'S CHARACTERISTICS - РИСК ЛЮДЕЙ

<b>hardy people</b>	загартовані люди
<b>ingenuity</b>	винахідливість
<b>shrewdness</b>	практичність
<b>thrift</b>	ощадливість
<b>tolerance</b>	терпимість

## FAMOUS PEOPLE - ВІДОМІ ЛЮДИ

<b>Faulkner, William</b>	Фолкнер, Вільям (1897-1962), американський письменник, лауреат Нобелівської (1949) та Пулітцерівської (1955, 1963) премій (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Снується, Мойсею!")
<b>O'Connor, Flannery</b>	О'Коннор, Фленнері (1925-1964), американська письменниця (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Мудра кров")
<b>Porter, Katherine Anne</b>	Портер, Кетрін Енн (1890-1980), американська письменниця (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Корабель дурнів")
<b>Twain, Mark (Clemens, Samuel)</b>	Твен, Марк (Самуель Клеменс) (1825-1910), американський письменник, (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Пригоди Тома Соєра")
<b>Warren, Robert Penn</b>	Воррен, Роберт Пени (1905-1989), американський письменник, лауреат Пулітцерівської (1947, 1958, 1979) премії (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Уся королівська рать")
<b>Williams, Tennessee</b>	Вільямс, Теннессі (1911-1983), американський драматург, лауреат Пулітцерівської (1948, 1955) премії (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Трамвай "Бажання")
<b>Wilson, Woodrow</b>	Вілсон, Вудро (1856-1924), 28-й президент США (1913-1921)

## TYPES OF HUMAN ACTIVITY - ВІДН ЛЮДСЬКОЇ ДІЯЛЬНОСТІ

<b>boating</b>	веслування
<b>camping</b>	життя в таборі
<b>gambling</b>	азартні ігри
<b>grazing</b>	утримання худоби на пасовищі
<b>hiking</b>	туризм
<b>lumbering</b>	лісозаготівля
<b>mining</b>	розробка корисних копалин

## PRODUCTS OF HUMAN ACTIVITY - ПРОДУКТИ ЛЮДСЬКОЇ ДІЯЛЬНОСТІ

<b>air conditioner</b>	кондиціонер повітря
<b>artifact dam</b>	предмет матеріальної культури
<b>lighthouse</b>	гребля
	маяк

## VERBAL EXPRESSIONS - ДІЄСЛІВНІ ЗВОРОТИ

<b>bear the stamp</b>	нести на собі тавро; бути схожим на
<b>bypass</b>	обходити; іти обхідним шляхом
<b>diverge</b>	розходитися; відрізнятись
<b>emulate</b>	прагнути перевершити; наслідувати (приклад)
<b>evolve</b>	розвивати(ся)
<b>exert influence</b>	чинити вплив
<b>generate</b>	породжувати
<b>inspire</b>	надихати
<b>refine</b>	удосконалювати
<b>rival</b>	суперничати; конкурувати

## ADJECTIVAL EXPRESSIONS - ПРИКЛАДНІ ЗВОРОТИ

abundant	багатий (на щось); рясний
adherent	прихильний
concerted	узгоджений
far-flung	що далеко розкинувся
immoral	аморальний
integral	невід'ємний
on a grand scale	шпрокомас штабний
severe	суворий; вимогливий
spectacular	ефектний; захоплюючий
varied	різноманітний
vital	життєво важливий
vulnerable	уразливий

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

штат	столиця	найбільше місто	прізвисько штату
Айдаго	Бойс	Бойс	Штат перлів
Айова	Демойн	Демойн	Штат «Соколине око»
Алабама	Монтгомері	Бірінгем	Серце Діксі (півдня)
Аляска	Джуну	Анкер	Останній Кордон
Арізона	Фінікс	Фінікс	Штат Великого Каньйону
Арканзас	Літтл Рок	Літтл Рок	Земля Можливостей
Вайомінг	Чайєнн	Чайєнн	Штат Рівності
Вашингтон	Олімпія	Сієтл	Вічнозелений штат
Вермонт	Мнтпельєр	Барлінгтон	Штат зелених гір
Вірджинія	Річмонд	Норфолк	Старий Домініон
Вісконсин	Медісон	Мілуокі	Штат борсуків
Гаваї	Гонолулу	Гонолулу	Привітний штат
Делавар	Довер	Вілмінгтон	Перший штат
Джорджія	Атланта	Атланта	Імперський штат
Західна Вірджинія	Чарльзтаун	Гантінгтон	Сходу
Іллінойс	Спрінгфілд	Чикаго	Гірський штат
Індіана	Індіанаполіс	Індіанаполіс	Штат прерій
			Штат гузерів
			(жартівлива назва корінних мешканців)
Каліфорнія	Сакраменто	Лос Анджелес	Золотий штат
Канзас	Топіка	Вічита	Соняшниковий штат
Кентукі	Франкфорт	Луїсвілл	Штат блакитної трави
Колорадо	Денвер	Денвер	Столітній штат
Коннектикут	Гартфорд	Гартфорд	Штат Конституції
Луїзіана	Батон Руж	Нью-Орлеан	Штат пеліканів
Массачусетс	Бостон	Бостон	Штат-затока
Мен	Августа	Портланд	Штат сосон
Меріленд	Аннаполіс	Балтімор	Штат старого кордону
Міннесота	Сент-Пол	Міннеаполіс	Штат Північної Зорі
Міссісіпі	Джексон	Джексон	Штат магнолій
Міссурі	Джефферсон-Сіті	Сент Луїс	Недовірливий штат
Мічиган	Лансінг	Детройт	Штат росомех

Монтана	Гелена	Біллінгз	Штат скарбів
Небраска	Лінкольн	Омаха	Кукурудзяний штат
Невада	Карсон-Сіті	Лас Вегас	Срібний штат
Нью-Мексико	Санта Фе	Альбукерк	Зачарована Земля
Нью-Гемпшир	Конкорд	Манчестер	Гранітний штат
Нью-Джерсі	Трентон	Ньюарк	Штат садів
Нью-Йорк	Олбані	Нью-Йорк Сіті	Імперський штат
Огайо	Колумбус	Клівленд	Штат кінських каштанів
Оклахома	Оклахома Сіті	Оклахома Сіті	Пізніший штат
Орегон	Салем	Портленд	Штат бобрів
Пенсільванія	Гаррісбург	Філадельфія	Наріжний штат
Південна Дакота	Пієр	Сіу Фоллз	Штат койотів
Південна Кароліна	Колумбія	Колумбія	Штат карликових пальм
Північна Дакота	Бісмарк	Фарго	Штат Сіу
Північна Кароліна	Раллей	Шарлотта	Штат «Смоляна п'ята»
Род Айленд	Провіденс	Провіденс	Літл Роді (Малий Роді)
Теннессі	Нешвілл	Мемфіс	Волонтерський штат
Техас	Остін	Х'юстон	Штат Самотньої Зорі
Флорида	Таллахассі	Джacksonвіль	Штат сяючого сонця
Юта	Солт Лейк Сіті	Солт Лейк Сіті	Штат вуликів

Округ Колумбія штатом не є. Він містить у собі столицю держави Вашингтон.

## ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ РАЙОНИ США - US GEOGRAPHIC AREAS

Нью-Інглейд (Нова Англія) (Мен, Нью Гемпшир, Вермонт, Массачусеттс, Коннектикут, Род Айленд)

**New England** (Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island)

Середня Атлантика (Нью-Йорк, Нью Джерсі, Пенсільванія, Делавер та Меріленд)

**Middle Atlantic, the** (New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland)

**Південь** (Вірджинія, Флорида, центральний Техас, Західна Вірджинія, Кентукі, Теннессі, Північна Кароліна, Південна Кароліна, Джорджія, Алабама, Міссісіпі, Арканзас, Луїзіана, частини Міссурі й Оклахоми)

**South, the** (Virginia, Florida, central Texas, West Virginia, Kentucky, Tennessee, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Arkansas, Louisiana, parts of Missouri, Oklahoma)

Середній Захід (Огайо, Мічіган, Індіана, Вісконсін, Іллінойс, Міннесота, Айова, Небраска, частина Міссурі, Північна Дакота, Південна Дакота, Канзас, східне Колорадо)

**Midwest, the** (Ohio, Michigan, Indiana, Wisconsin, Illinois, Minnesota, Iowa, Nebraska, parts of Missouri, North Dakota, South Dakota, Kansas, eastern Colorado)

Південний Захід (західний Техас, частина Оклахоми, Нью-Мексико, Арізона, Невада, південна внутрішня частина Каліфорнії)

**Southwest, the** (western Texas, portions of Oklahoma, New Mexico, Arizona, Nevada, southern interior part of California)

Захід (Колорадо, Вайомінг, Монтана, Юта, Каліфорнія, Невада, Айдаго, Орегон, Вашингтон, Аляска, Гаваї)

**West, the** (Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, Utah, Idaho, California, Nevada, Oregon, Washington, Alaska, Hawaii)

## ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ НАЗВИ - GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Балтімор	Baltimore
Великий каньйон	Grand Canyon
Великі озера	Lakes
Гудзон (річка)	Hudson river
Делавер (річка)	Delaware river
острів Аутер Бенкс	Outer Banks
Резервація індіанців племені Наваго	Navajo Reservation
Сліконова долина (район на півострові Сан-Франциско, де зосереджено виробництво комп'ютерної техніки)	Silicon Valley
Чесапекська затока	Chesapeake Bay

## УНІВЕРСИТЕТИ - UNIVERSITIES AND COLLEGES

Гарвард	Harvard
Єйл	Yale

## ІСТОРИЧНІ ПОНЯТТЯ - HISTORICAL NOTIONS

Громадянська війна	Civil War
Декларація про Незалежність	Declaration of Independence
Експедиція Коронадо: експедиція під керівництвом іспанського дослідника Франсиско Коронадо (1500-1554), який шукав легендарні "сім золотих міст Сиболі" ( <i>seven gold cities of Cibola</i> ) на південному заході сучасних США, але знайшов натомість Великий Каньйон	Coronado's expedition
Конфедерація Штатів Америки	Confederate States of America,
рабство	the slavery
расова сегрегація (різні закони для білих та кольорових)	racial segregation

## GEOGRAPHICAL CHARACTERISTICS - ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ

великі ділянки дикої природи	stretch of wilderness
вид (тварин тощо)	species
волога	moisture
грунтові води	groundwater
дика природа	wild life
дно (каньйону)	floor (of the Canyon)
заповідник дикої природи	wildlife refuge
край	rim
національний заповідник	national park
резервація (територія, відведена для проживання індіанців)	reservation
середній обсяг опадів на рік	average annual rainfall
скамянілість; викопні рештки	fossil
ссавець	mammal
яр	gorge

## **СІЛЬСЬКОГОСПОДАРСЬКІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ - AGRICULTURAL CHARACTERISTICS**

багатий урожай  
житниця зернові  
культури  
неорана земля  
родючий ґрунт

abundant harvest  
breadbasket cereal  
crops  
undeveloped land  
fertile soil

## **ПОЛІТИКО-ЕКОНОМІЧНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ - POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC CHARACTERISTICS**

головні галузі господарства регіону  
ізоляціонізм  
міські збори (форма правління містом)  
нагальні проблеми  
насичене культурне життя  
первісний дух  
скасування  
спадщина  
спірне питання  
тверда та чітко сформована доктрина  
фінансовий центр  
характерне політичне врядування

mainstays of the region  
isolationism  
town meeting  
issues of the day  
vibrant cultural life  
original spirit  
abolition  
heritage  
contentious issue  
firm and settled doctrine  
financial hub  
distinctive political format

## **ПРИРОДНІ ТА ЛЮДСЬКІ ЧИННИКИ РИЗИКУ - NATURAL AND HUMAN-RELATED RISKS**

вулкан  
заворушення в містах  
загроза  
землетрус  
зсув (ґрунту)  
нафтові плями  
нестача води  
підводний  
сейсмічні зони  
смертність  
смог (суміш туману та диму)  
снайпери на автошляхах  
стихийна пожежа  
цунамі

volcano  
urban riot  
hazard  
earthquake  
landslide  
oil spills  
water shortage  
submarine  
seismic zones  
mortality  
smog  
freeway sniper  
wildfire  
tsunami

## **СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОПИСУ МІСЦЕВОСТІ - WORDS TO DESCRIBE PLACES**

асортимент  
вид  
група; скупчення  
краса краєвидів  
Мекка; бажане місце  
місце призначення

assortment  
sight  
cluster  
scenic beauty  
mecca  
destination

## ЛЮДИ-PEOPLE НАСЕЛЕННЯ - POPULATION

густонаселений (район тощо)  
рідкий; розкиданий; розсіяний  
щільний

**populous** (area etc)  
**sparse**  
**dense**

## ПОХОДЖЕННЯ - ORIGIN

американці азійського походження  
американці європейського походження  
американці мексиканського походження  
афро-американці  
етнічне походження  
індіанці племені Гавасупай  
індіанці племені Гопі  
індіанці племені Наваго  
іспано-американці  
корінні американці  
плем'я

**Asian Americans**  
**residents of European stock**  
**Mexican-American**  
**Afro- American**  
**ethnicity**  
**Havasupai Indians**  
**Hopi Indians**  
**Navaho Indians**  
**Spanish-American**  
**Native-American**  
**tribe**

## ЛЮДИ ЗАГАЛОМ - PEOPLE IN GENERAL

квакери (християнська секта - різновид Протестанства - не користуються Святим Письмом, відзначаються надзвичайною простотою життя, не визнають священників, проповідують пацифізм)  
кваліфікований робітник  
людина, що володіє власністю  
пенсіонер  
поселенець

**Quakers, the**

**skilled worker**  
**man of property**  
**retiree settler**

## РИСНИ ЛЮДЕЙ - PEOPLE'S CHARACTERISTICS

винахідливість  
загартовані люди  
ощадливість  
практичність  
терпимість

**ingenuity**  
**hardy people**  
**thrift**  
**shrewdness**  
**tolerance**

## ВІДОМІ ЛЮДИ - FAMOUS PEOPLE

Вілсон, Вудро (1856-1924), 28-й президент США (1913-1921)

**Wilson, Woodrow**

Вільямс, Теннессі (1911-1983), американський драматург, лауреат Пулітцерівської (1948, 1955) премії (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Трамвай "Бажання")

**Williams, Tennessee**

Воррен, Роберт Пени (1905-1989), американський письменник, лауреат Пулітцерівської (1947, 1958, 1979) премії (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Вся королівська рать")

**Warren, Robert Penn**

О'Коннор, Фленнері (1925-1964), американська письменниця (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Мудра кров")

**O'Connor, Flannery** з

Портер, Кетрін Енн (1890-1980), американська письменниця (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Корабель дурнів") **Porter, Katherine Anne**

Твен, Марк (Самуель Клеменс) (1825-1910), американський письменник, (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Пригоди Тома Соєра") **Twain, Mark (Clemens, Samuel)**

Фолкнер, Вільям (1897-1962), американський письменник, лауреат Нобелівської (1949), та Пулітцерівської (1955, 1963) премій (одна з найвідоміших робіт - "Спустиись, МойсеюГ") **Faulkner, William**

### **ВИДИ ЛЮДСЬКОЇ ДІЯЛЬНОСТІ - TYPES OF HUMAN ACTIVITY**

азартні ігри	<b>gambling</b>
веслування	<b>boating</b>
життя в таборі	<b>camping</b>
лісозаготівля	<b>lumbering</b>
розробка корисних копалин	<b>mining</b>
туризм	<b>hiking</b>
утримання худоби на пасовищі	<b>grazing</b>

### **ПРОДУКТИ ЛЮДСЬКОЇ ДІЯЛЬНОСТІ - PRODUCTS OF HUMAN ACTIVITY**

гребля	<b>dam</b>
кондиціонер повітря	<b>air conditioner</b>
маяк	<b>lighthouse</b>
предмет матеріальної культури	<b>artifact</b>

### **ДІСЛІВНІ ЗВОРОТИ - VERBAL EXPRESSIONS**

бути схожим на	<b>bear the stamp</b>
відрізнятися	<b>diverge</b>
іти обхідним шляхом	<b>bypass</b>
конкурувати	<b>rival</b>
надихати	<b>inspire</b>
наслідувати (приклад)	<b>emulate</b>
нести на собі тавро	<b>bear the stamp</b>
обходити	<b>bypass</b>
породжувати	<b>generate</b>
прагнути перевершити	<b>emulate</b>
розвивати(ся)	<b>evolve</b>
розходитися	<b>diverge</b>
суперничати	<b>rival</b>
удосконалювати	<b>refine</b>
чинити вплив	<b>exert influence</b>

### **ПРИКМЕТНИКОВІ ЗВОРОТИ - ADJECTIVAL EXPRESSIONS**

аморальний	<b>immoral</b>
багатий (на щось); рясний	<b>abundant</b>
ефектний; захоплюючий	<b>spectacular</b>
життєво важливий	<b>vital</b>
невід'ємний	<b>integral</b>
прихильний	<b>adherent</b>
різноманітний	<b>varied</b>



суворий; вимогливий  
узгоджений  
уразливий  
широкомасштабний  
що далеко розкинувся

severe  
concerted  
vulnerable  
on a grand scale  
far-flung

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### GEOGRAPHIC AND PROPER NAMES - ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ ТА ВЛАСНІ НАЗВИ

<b>Bahamas, the Bering</b>	Багамські острови
<b>Strait Christopher</b>	Берінгова протока
<b>Columbus land bridge</b>	Христофор Колумб
<b>New World San</b>	суходіл (між двома частинами суші)
<b>Salvador</b>	Новий Світ (Америка)
	Сан-Сальвадор

#### WORDS TO CHARACTERIZE IMMIGRATION PROCESSES -СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОННСУ ІМІГРАЦІЙНИХ ПРОЦЕСІВ

<b>constitute</b>	становити; складати
<b>estimate</b>	оцінка
<b>flood of immigrants</b>	наплив іммігрантів
<b>of Irish etc descent/ancestry</b>	ірландського (тощо) походження
<b>slave</b>	раб
<b>unwilling immigrant</b>	іммігрант мимоволі (не за власним бажанням)
<b>wanderer</b>	мандрівник
<b>wave of immigrants</b>	хвиля іммігрантів

#### WORDS RELATED TO THE INITIAL STAGE OF US IMMIGRATION -СЛОВА, ПОВ'ЯЗАНІ З ПЕРШИМ ЕТАНОМ ІМІГРАЦІЇ ДО СІНА

<b>coercion fill</b>	примус
<b>roster grant of</b>	поповнювати ряди армії
<b>land trading</b>	надання ділянки землі
<b>post transfer of</b>	торгівельний пункт
<b>land</b>	перехід власності на землю

#### WORDS TO CHARACTERIZE GROUPS OF IMMIGANTS ON ARRIVAL TO THE USA СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОННСУ ГРУП ІМІГРАНТІВ ПІСЛЯ ПРИБУТТЯ ДО СІНА

<b>education</b>	освіта
<b>fast-growing ethnic group</b>	етнічна група, чия чисельність швидко зростає
<b>income</b>	дохід
<b>plagued by drug use, crime etc.</b>	де поширені вживання наркотиків та злочинність
<b>trapped by poverty</b>	вести бідне існування
<b>unemployment</b>	безробіття

## **TYPICAL REASONS OF IMMIGRATION TO THE USA- ТИПОВІ ПРИЧИНИ ІМІГРАЦІЇ ДО США**

<b>crop blight</b>	хвороба рослин
<b>famine</b>	голод
<b>fierce prosecution</b>	жорстоке переслідування
<b>fleeing the regime</b>	рятуючись від режиму (що знаходиться при владі)
<b>political unrest</b>	політична нестабільність
<b>poor harvests</b>	низькі врожаї
<b>rising populations</b>	зростання чисельності населення
<b>starvation to death</b>	голодна смерть

## **US IMMIGRANTS ASSIMILATION CONCEPTS - КОИЦЕПЦІЇ АСИМІЛЯЦІЇ ІМІГРАНТІВ У США**

<b>melting pot</b>	плавильний казан , концепція, яка ґрунтувалася на ідеї перетворення імігрантів на нову націю, що втратила ознаки мипулої етнічної приналежності
<b>adopt new ways</b>	адаптуватися до нового способу життя
<b>discard old customs</b>	відмовитися від старих звичок
<b>monolingual salad bowl</b>	одномовний "салатниця", концепція, яка ґрунтується на ідеї перетворення імігрантів на нову націю, що зберігає ознаки мипулої етнічної приналежності
<b>bilingual</b>	двомовний
<b>celebrate heritage</b>	відроджувати свою спадщину
<b>diversity renew heritage</b>	різноманітність відновлювати етнічні групи

## **UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ ТА ВЛАСНІ**

### **НАЗВИ - GEOGRAPHIC AND PROPER NAMES**

Багамські острови	<b>Bahamas, the Bering</b>
Берінгова протока	<b>Strait New World San</b>
Новий Світ (Америка)	<b>Salvador land bridge</b>
Сан-Сальвадор	<b>Christopher Columbus</b>
суходіл (між двома частинами суші)	
Христофор Колумб	

## **СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОИНСУ ІМІГРАЦІЙНИХ ПРОЦЕСІВ -WORDS TO CHARACTERIZE IMMIGATION PROCESSES**

імігрант мимоволі (не за власним бажанням)	<b>unwilling immigrant</b>
ірландського (тощо) походження	<b>of Irish etc descent/ancestry</b>
мандрівник	<b>wanderer</b>
наплив імігрантів	<b>flood of immigrants</b>
оцінка	<b>estimate</b>
раб	<b>slave</b>
становити; складати	<b>constitute</b>
хвиля імігрантів	<b>wave of immigrants</b>

## СЛОВА, ПОВ'ЯЗАНИ З ПЕРШИМ ЕТАПОМ ІМІГРАЦІЇ ДО США - WORDS RELATED TO THE INITIAL STAGE OF US IMMIGRATION

надання ділянки землі	grant of land
перехід власності на землю	transfer of land
поповнювати ряди армії	fill roster
примус торгівельний	coercion trading
пункт	post

## СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОПИСУ ГРУПИ ІМІГРАНТІВ ПІСЛЯ ПРИБУТТЯ ДО США - WORDS TO CHARACTERIZE GROUPS OF IMMIGRANTS ON ARRIVAL TO THE USA

безробіття	unemployment
вести бідне існування	trapped by poverty
де поширені вживання наркотиків та злочинність	plagued by drug use, crime etc.
дохід	income
етнічна група, чия чисельність швидко зростає	fast-growing ethnic group
освіта	education

## TYPICAL REASONS OF IMMIGRATION TO THE USA ТИПОВІ ПРИЧИНИ ІМІГРАЦІЇ ДО США

голод	famine
голодна смерть	starvation to death
жорстоке переслідування	fierce prosecution
зростання чисельності населення	rising populations
низькі врожаї	poor harvests
політична нестабільність	political unrest
рятуючись від режиму (що знаходиться при владі)	fleeing the regime
хвороба рослин	crop blight

## КОНЦЕПЦІЇ АСИМІЛЯЦІЇ ІМІГРАНТІВ У США - US IMMIGRANTS ASSIMILATION CONCEPTS

плавильний казан , концепція, яка ґрунтувалася на ідеї перетворення імігрантів на нову націю, що втратила ознаки минулої етнічної приналежності	melting pot
адаптуватися до нового способу життя	adopt new ways
відмовитися від старих звичок	discard old customs
одномовний	monolingual salad
"салатниця", концепція, яка ґрунтується на ідеї перетворення імігрантів на нову націю, що зберігає ознаки минулої етнічної приналежності	bowl
двомовний	bilingual
відроджувати свою спадщину	celebrate heritage
різноманітність	diversity renew
відновлювати етнічні групи	heritage

### PART 3

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN MAIN US HOLIDAYS -

##### ГОЛОВНІ АМЕРИКАНСЬКІ СВЯТА

<b>Christmas (Dec 25)</b>	Різдво
<b>Columbus Day (the second Monday in October)</b>	Колумбіє День
<b>Easter</b>	Великдень
<b>Halloween (October 31)</b>	Гелловін (переддень Дня Усіх Святих)
<b>Independence Day (Jul 4)</b>	День Незалежності
<b>Labor Day (the first Monday of September)</b>	День Праці
<b>Martin Luther King Day (the third Monday of January)</b>	День Мартіна Лютера Кінга
<b>Memorial Day (the fourth Monday of May):</b>	День Пам'яті
<b>New Year's Day (Jan 1)</b>	Новий рік
<b>Presidents' Day (the third Monday of February)</b>	День президентів
<b>Thanksgiving Day (the fourth Thursday in November)</b>	День Подяки
<b>Valentine's Day (February 14)</b>	День Святого Валентина
<b>Veterans Day (November 11)</b>	День Ветеранів

##### MAIN UK HOLIDAYS - ГОЛОВНІ БРИТАНСЬКІ СВЯТА

<b>Ascension Day (Thursday 40 days after Easter) Ash</b>	Вознесіння
<b>Wednesday (first day of Lent, 40 days before Easter) Boxing</b>	Покаянна середа
<b>Day (Dec 26) Christmas (Dec 25)</b>	День коляди (другий день Різдва)
<b>Easter Monday (the day that follows Easter Day)</b>	Різдво
<b>Epiphany (Jan 6)</b>	Великодній понеділок
<b>Father's Day (third Sunday of June)</b>	Водохреща
<b>First Sunday in Advent (first Sunday four weeks before Christmas)</b>	День батька
<b>Good Friday (Friday before Easter)</b>	Перша неділя Різдвяного посту
<b>Halloween (Oct 31)</b>	Страсна п'ятниця
<b>Summer (August) Bank Holiday (last Monday in August)</b>	Гелловін (переддень Дня Усіх Святих)
<b>May Bank Holiday (first Monday of May) Mother's Day</b>	офіційний літній вихідний день
<b>(the fourth Sunday of March) New Year (Jan 1)</b>	офіційний першотравневий вихідний день
<b>Palm Sunday (Sunday before Easter) Pentecost</b>	День матері
<b>(Whitsun) (seventh Sunday after Easter)</b>	Новий рік
<b>Remembrance Day (Sunday nearest to November 11)</b>	Вербна неділя
<b>Spring Bank Holiday (last Monday in May) Trinity</b>	Трійця; Зелена неділя (День духів)
<b>Sunday (eighth Sunday after Easter) Whitsun</b>	Поминальна неділя
<b>(Pentecost) (seventh Sunday after Easter)</b>	офіційний весняний вихідний день
	Трійчина неділя
	День духів (Трійця; Зелена неділя)

##### MAIN UKRAINIAN HOLIDAYS - ГОЛОВНІ УКРАЇНСЬКІ СВЯТА

<b>New Year - Jan 1</b>	Новий рік
<b>Christmas - Jan 7</b>	Різдво
<b>International Women's Day - Mar 8</b>	Міжнародний жіночий день
<b>Easter - first Sunday after the first full Moon that coincides with or comes after the spring equinox on March 21</b>	Великдень
<b>International Labour Solidarity Day - May 1</b>	День міжнародної солідарності трудящих
<b>Spring Labour Day - May 2</b>	День весни та праці
<b>Victory Day - May 9</b>	День перемоги
<b>Trinity - fiftieth day after Easter</b>	Трійця; Зелена неділя
<b>Constitution Day - Jun 28</b>	День Конституції
<b>Independence Day - Aug 24</b>	День державної незалежності України

**PART 3 UKRAINIAN -  
ENGLISH**

**ГОЛОВНІ АМЕРИКАНСЬКІ СВЯТА - MAIN US HOLIDAYS**

Великдень	<b>Easter</b>
Гелловін (переддень Дня Усіх Святих)	<b>Halloween (October 31)</b>
День Ветеранів	<b>Veterans Day (November 11)</b>
День Мартіна Лютера Кінга	<b>Martin Luther King Day (the third Monday of January)</b>
День Незалежності	<b>Independence Day (Jul 4)</b>
День Пам'яті	<b>Memorial Day (the fourth Monday of May):</b>
День Подяки	<b>Thanksgiving Day (the fourth Thursday in November)</b>
День Праці	<b>Labor Day (the first Monday of September)</b>
День президентів	<b>Presidents' Day (the third Monday of February)</b>
день Святого Валентина	<b>Valentine's Day (February 14)</b>
Колумбіє День	<b>Columbus Day (the second Monday in October)</b>
Новий рік	<b>New Year's Day (Jan 1)</b>
Різдво	<b>Christmas (Dec 25)</b>

**ГОЛОВНІ БРИТАНСЬКІ СВЯТА - MAIN UK HOLIDAYS**

Великодній понеділок	<b>Easter Monday (the day that follows Easter Day)</b>
Вербна неділя	<b>Palm Sunday (Sunday before Easter)</b>
Водохрещя	<b>Epiphany (Jan 6)</b>
Вознесіння	<b>Ascension Day (Thursday 40 days after Easter)</b>
Гелловін (переддень Дня Усіх Святих)	<b>Halloween (Oct 31)</b>
День батька	<b>Father's Day (third Sunday of June)</b>
День духів (Трійця; Зелена неділя)	<b>Whitsun (Pentecost) (seventh Sunday after Easter)</b>
День коляди (другий день Різдва)	<b>Boxing Day (Dec 26)</b>
День матері	<b>Mother's Day (the fourth Sunday of March)</b>
Новий рік	<b>New Year (Jan 1)</b>
офіційний весняний вихідний день	<b>Spring Bank Holiday (last Monday in May)</b>
офіційний літній вихідний день	<b>Summer (August) Bank Holiday (last Monday in August)</b>
офіційний першотравневий вихідний день	<b>May Bank Holiday (first Monday of May)</b>
Перша неділя Різдвяного посту	<b>First Sunday in Advent (first Sunday four weeks before Christmas)</b>
Покаянна середа	<b>Ash Wednesday (first day of Lent, 40 days before Easter)</b>
Поминальна неділя	<b>Remembrance Day (Sunday nearest to November 11)</b>
Різдво	<b>Christmas (Dec 25)</b>
Страсна п'ятниця	<b>Good Friday (Friday before Easter)</b>
Трійцина неділя	<b>Trinity Sunday (eighth Sunday after Easter)</b>
Трійця; Зелена неділя (День духів)	<b>Pentecost (Whitsun) (seventh Sunday after Easter)</b>

**ГОЛОВНІ УКРАЇНСЬКІ СВЯТА - MAIN UKRAINIAN HOLIDAYS**

Великдень	<b>Easter - first Sunday after the first full Moon that coincides with or comes after the spring equinox on March 21</b>
День весни та праці	<b>Spring Labour Day - May 2</b>
День державної незалежності України	<b>Independence Day - Aug 24</b>
День Конституції	<b>Constitution Day - Jun 28</b>
День міжнародної солідарності трудящих	<b>International Labour Solidarity Day - May 1</b>
День перемоги	<b>Victory Day - May 9</b>
Міжнародний жіночий день	<b>International Women's Day - Mar 8</b>
Новий рік	<b>New Year - Jan 1</b>
Різдво	<b>Christmas - Jan 7</b>
Трійця; Зелена неділя	<b>Trinity - fiftieth day after Easter</b>

## LESSON 2. PART 1

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN GREAT

#### BRITAIN - ВЕЛИКА БРИТАНІЯ

<b>backbone</b>	хребет
<b>Ben Nevis</b>	Бен Невіс (найвища гора Великої Британії)
<b>British Isles</b>	Британські острови
<b>Channel Tunnel</b>	тунель під Ла-Маншем (з'єднує Англію з Францією)
<b>Chunnel</b>	"Чаннел" (тунель під Ла-Маншем (з'єднує Англію з Францією))
<b>Cumbria</b>	Камбрія (район озер на північному заході Англії)
<b>East Anglia</b>	Східна Англія
<b>East Midlands</b>	Східні Мідлендз (центральні графства Англії)
<b>England</b>	Англія
<b>English Channel</b>	Англійський канал (британська назва протоки Ла-Манш)
<b>Folkestone</b>	Фолкстоун (місто, біля якого починається тунель під Ла-Маншем)
<b>Gulf Stream</b>	Гольфстрім (тепла течія в Атлантичному океані)
<b>harbour</b>	гавань, порт
<b>Heart of England (West Midlands)</b>	серце Англії (Західні Мідлендз - центральні графства Англії)
<b>Herbrides</b>	Гебрндські острови
<b>highland</b>	височина
<b>Isle of Man</b>	острів Мен (популярний туристичний центр)
<b>Isle of Whight</b>	острів Уайт
<b>mainland</b>	материкова частина (на відміпу від островів)
<b>North Sea</b>	Північне море
<b>North West</b>	Північний захід
<b>Northern Ireland</b>	Північна Ірландія
<b>Northumbria</b>	Нортумбрія (графство Нортамберленд)
<b>Orkney Isles</b>	Оркнейські острови
<b>peak</b>	вершина (гори)
<b>Pennines</b>	Пеннінські гори
<b>Poole</b>	Пул (місто)
<b>Prime Meridian</b>	пульовий меридіан
<b>rainfall</b>	опад
<b>Republic of Ireland</b>	Ірландська республіка
<b>Royal Greenwich Observatory</b>	Королівська Грінвічська обсерваторія
<b>Scotland</b>	Шотландія
<b>Severn</b>	Северн (річка)
<b>Shetland Islands</b>	Шетландські острови
<b>Snowdon</b>	Сноудон (найвища гора Уельсу)
<b>South East</b>	Південний схід
<b>Southern</b>	Південь
<b>Thames and Chilterns</b>	Темза та Чилтернські пагорби
<b>Wales</b>	Уельс
<b>West Country</b>	Західна країна
<b>Yorkshire and Humberside</b>	Йоркшир і Гамберсанд

#### ENGLAND - АНГЛЫ

<b>chain of mountains</b>	гірський хребет
<b>drained for agricultural use</b>	осушений для сільськогосподарського використання
<b>Essex</b>	Ессекс (графство на південному сході Англії)
<b>Kent</b>	Кент (графство на південному сході Англії)
<b>London</b>	Лондон
<b>marshland</b>	болотиста місцевість

mountainous  
Newport offshore  
islands rolling  
hills Shropshire

гористий  
Ньюпорт (місто в графстві Шропшир)  
прибережні острови  
пагориста місцевість  
Шропшир (графство на заході Англії, межує з Уельсом)

## SCOTLAND - ШОТЛАНДІЯ

Aberdeen  
Central Belt  
Clyde  
Dee  
Dundee  
Edinburgh  
Firth of Forth  
Glasgow  
Grampians  
Highlands  
Highlands and Islands  
Iverness

Абердін (місто на північно-східному узбережжі, в гирлі річки Ді)  
Центральний пояс (див. *Lowlands* - Шотландська низина)  
Кланд (річка на заході Шотландії, впадає в Ірландське море)  
Ді (річка на північному сході Шотландії, впадає в Північне море)  
Данді (місто на східному узбережжі в гирлі річки Тей)  
Едінбург (столиця, розташована на східному узбережжі в затоці Форт)  
затока Форт (на сході Шотландії, в гирлі річки Форт)  
Глазго (найбільше місто, на західному узбережжі в гирлі річки Клайд)  
Грампіанські гори (частина Північно-шотландського нагір'я)  
Північно-шотландське нагір'я  
(Північно-шотландське) нагір'я та острови (прибережні)  
Івернесс (місто на північному узбережжі в затоці Морей,  
біля озера Лох-Несс)  
Лох-Несс (озеро на півночі Шотландії)  
Шотландська низина (в басейні річок Кланд і Форт)  
затока Морей (на півночі Шотландії, в гирлі річки Несе)  
Несе (річка на півночі Шотландії)  
Південно-шотландська височина  
Стерлінг (місто на східному узбережжі в затоці Форт)  
Тей (річка на сході Шотландії, впадає в Північне море)

## WALES-УЕЛЬС

Anglesey  
Brecon Beacons  
  
Bristol Channel  
  
Cardiff  
landscape  
mountainous  
peninsula  
St George's Channel  
Welsh  
Welsh 3000s

Англісі (острів в Ірландському морі біля узбережжя Уельсу)  
Бреконські сигнальні вогні (дві гори в Уельсі, висотою біля 800 м, на яких  
у старі часи запалювали сигнальні вогні)  
Брістольська затока (розташована у гирлі річки Евон, між південною  
частиною Уельсу та західною частиною Англії)  
Кардіфф (столиця Уельсу, розташована на березі Бристольської затоки)  
ландшафт  
гористий  
півострів  
протока святого Георга  
валлійський  
Валлійські гірські вершини, висота яких перевищує 3 000 футів

## SEVEN WONDERS OF WALES - СІМ ЧЗДЕС УЕЛЬСУ

Gresford bells (the peal of bells in the me-  
dieval church of All Saints at Gresford)  
Llangollen bridge (built in 1347 over  
the River Dee)  
Overton yew trees (ancient yew trees in  
the churchyard of St Mary's at Overton-  
on-Dee)  
Pistyll Rhaeadr (Wales's tallest water-  
fall, at 240 feet or 75 m)

Гресфордські дзвони (набір дзвонів у середньовічній Церкві Усіх  
Святих в м. Гресфорд)  
Лланголенський міст (через річку Ді, побудований у 1347 році)  
Овертонські тиси (старовинні тиси на церковному цвинтарі в  
церкві пресвятої Марії в м. Овертон-на-Ді)  
Пістилл Редр (найбільший водоспад в Уельсі, висота - 240 футів  
або 75 метрів)

**Snowdon (the highest mountain) St Winefride's Well (a pilgrimage site at Holywell in Flintshire) Wrexham steeple (16<sup>th</sup> century tower of St. Giles Church in Wrexham)**

Сноудон (найвища гірська вершина Уельсу)  
Джерело Св.Вінефрід (місце паломництва поблизу м. Голівелл в графстві Флінтшир)  
Рексгемська дзвіниця (дзвіниця церкви Св. Джайлза, побудована в XVI-му столітті в м. Рексгем)

## **NORTHERN IRELAND - ПІВНІЧНА ІРЛАНДІЯ**

**animal husbandry  
arable land  
Belfast  
centrepiece  
cloud cover  
damp climate  
deforestation  
distinct  
fertile lowlands  
freshwater lake  
grassland  
hill country  
industrialisation  
interior Europe  
Lough Neagh (392 km<sup>2</sup>)  
persistent  
pronounced  
rich  
River Lagan  
seaboard  
Slieve Donard (848 m)  
Sperrin Mountains  
unpredictable  
uplands  
urbanisation  
valley**

тваринництво  
орна земля  
Белфаст (столиця)  
найпримітніший елемент  
хмарний покрив  
вологий клімат  
знищення лісонасаджень  
чіткий; що чітко відрізняється  
родючі низини  
прісноводне озеро  
лукопасовищне угіддя  
пагориста частина країни  
індустріалізація  
материкова частина Європи  
Локс-Ней (найбільше озеро Великобританії)  
стійкий; що стійко тримається  
чіткий; що чітко відрізняється  
соковитий  
Лаган (річка, на якій розташований Белфаст)  
узбережжя  
Слів Донард (найвища північноірландська точка - 848 м)  
Сперрінські гори (на заході, найвища точка - 554 м)  
непередбачуваний  
височина  
урбанізація  
долина

## **STONEHENGE - СТОІНГЕИДЖ**

**attribute  
burial  
captivating  
Celtic  
deity  
Druids  
enclose  
enduring  
erroneous  
flourish  
Giant's Ring (Giant's Causeway)**

приписувати (комусь)  
захоронення  
чарівливий  
кельтський  
божество  
друїд (жрець у давніх кельтів)  
оточувати  
невмирущість  
помилковий  
розквітати  
Коло (дорога) велетнів (група з кількох тисяч кам'яних колон на північно-східному узбережжі Північної Ірландії - за легендою, це - початок дороги, якою велетні добиралися до острова Стаффа, де знаходиться схожа група колон)  
могила  
канава  
високопоставлений громадянин  
у вигляді підкови  
ікона; святиця

**grave  
henge  
high-ranking citizens  
horseshoe pattern  
icon**



Julius Caesar	Юлій Цезар (римський імператор, який вперше висадився на Британських островах у 55 та 54 роках до н.е.)
King Arthur	Король Артур (за легендою, кельтський ватажок, який жив наприкінці V - початку VI ст. і прославився успіхами в боротьбі проти англо-саксонських завоювальників - герой літературних творів, які були написані набагато пізніше, в XV-XIX ст).
laneway layer massacre Merlin	алей шар різанина Мерлін (за легендою, радник-чарівник при дворі короля Артура)
nobleman outer circle pillar priesthood River Avon	знатний чоловік зовнішнє коло колона; стовп жрецтво Ейвон (річка в центральній Англії, впадає в Брістольську затоку в Ірландському морі) священний Солсберійська рівнина (на півдні Англії)
sacred Salisbury Plain ship significant site slay speculate temple transplant treacherous trilithon	відправляти (вантаж тощо) значний місце вбивати теоретизувати храм перенести з одного місця на інше підступний дольмен (поховальна споруда у вигляді величезних кам'яних брил, що поставлені вертикально і накриті масивною плитою, і які разом утворюють підковоподібну структуру) Уїлтшп (графство на півдні Англії поклонятися)

#### LOCH NESS - ОЗЕРО ЛОХ-ИЕСС

Wiltshire worship	водяне чудовисько на відстані в чудовисько; звір загнузданий пожирати перебільшення прибічник горб
aquatic monster at a range of beast bridled devour exaggeration follower hump kelpie	келпі (міфічний водяний диявол, часто у формі коня, який заманює людей до води і топить їх) монах Державна служба охорони здоров'я плезіозавр (велика хижа водна рептилія мезозойської ери з відносно невеликою головою і довгою шиєю) пірнати проповідувати з приплющеним носом
monk National Health Service plesiosaur	перетворюватися випадок спостереження налякати пірнати
plunge preach pug-nosed revert sighting spook submerge	

## IRELAND - ІРЛАНДІЯ

barbarian	варварський
clergy	духовенство
coffin	труна
crush	розбити вщент
decree	указ
entire	цілий; увесь
estimate	оцінювати; оцінка
exploitation	експлуатація
extinction	винищення
famine	голод
gain	добитися
issue	випускати
lack	нестача
matriculation	реєстрація для навчання (в коледжі тощо)
poverty	бідність
principal	головний
prosecution	переслідування
rebel	повставати
self-government	самоуправління
starvation	хронічне недоїдання
subjugate	підкоряти
suffer	страждати
Trinity College	Трінті Коледж (католицький навчальний заклад в Дубліні)

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### ENGLISH COUNTIES - АНГЛІЙСЬКІ ГРАФСТВА

Avon	Ейвон
Bedfordshire	Бедфордшир
Berkshire	Беркшир
Buckinghamshire	Букінгемшир
Cambridgeshire	Кембриджшир
Cheshire	Чешир
Cleveland	Клівленд
Cornwall	Корнволл
Cumbria	Камбрія
Derbyshire	Дербішир
Devon <i>or</i> Devonshire	Девон <i>або</i> Девоншир
Dorset	Дорсет
Durham	Дарем
East Midlands	Східні Мідлендз
East Sussex	Східний Суссекс
Essex	Ессекс
Gloucestershire	Глостершир
Greater London	Великий Лондон
Greater Manchester	Великий Манчестер
Hampshire	Гемпшир
Hereford and Worcester	Герефорд і Вустер
Hertfordshire	Гертфордшир
Humberside	Гамберсанд

<b>Isle of Wight</b>	острів Уайт
<b>Kent</b>	Кент
<b>Lancashire</b>	Ланкашир
<b>Leicestershire</b>	Лестершир
<b>Lincolnshire</b>	Лінкольншир
<b>Merseyside</b>	Мерсісайд
<b>Norfolk</b>	Норфолк
<b>North Yorkshire</b>	Північний Йоркшир
<b>Northamptonshire</b>	Нортгемптоншир
<b>Northumberland</b>	Нортамберленд
<b>Nottinghamshire</b>	Ноттінгемшир
<b>Oxfordshire</b>	Оксфордшир
<b>Shropshire</b>	Шропшир
<b>Somerset</b>	Сомерсет
<b>South Yorkshire</b>	Південний Йоркшир
<b>Staffordshire</b>	Стаффордшир
<b>Suffolk</b>	Суффолк
<b>Surrey</b>	Суррей
<b>Tyne and Wear</b>	Тайн-енд-Вір
<b>Warwickshire</b>	Уорвікшир
<b>West Midlands</b>	Західні Мідлендз
<b>West Sussex</b>	Західний Суссекс
<b>West Yorkshire</b>	Західний Йоркшир
<b>Wiltshire</b>	Уїлтшир

### SOME FREQUENT COUNTY COLLOCATIONS - ДЕЯКІ НАЙБІЛЬШ ВЖИВАНІ СЛОВОСПОЛУЧЕННЯ З НАЗВАМИ ГРАФСТВ

<b>Bard of Avon</b>	Ейвонський бард (Шекспір)
<b>Bedford's cord</b>	бедфордський вельвет (бавовняна тканина в рубчик)
<b>Berkshire pig</b>	беркширська порода свиней (чорна з білими плямами)
<b>Buckingham Palace</b>	Букінгемський палац, резиденція англійських монархів
<b>Cheshire cat</b>	Чеширський кіт (персонаж "Аліси в країні чудес")
<b>Cleveland Bay</b>	"Клівлендська гніда" (упряжна порода коней)
<b>Cumberland sausage</b>	Камберлендська ковбаска (довга, приправлена гострими спеціями ковбаска, яку скручують спіраллю перед приготуванням)
<b>Derby Day</b>	Дербі, щорічні перегони коней-трояхліток на іпподромі Епсон Даунз поблизу Лондона
<b>Devonshire pie</b>	Девонширська запіканка (відбивні котлети з цибулею та яблуками, запечені в тісті)
<b>Dorset blue</b>	Дорсетський синій (сорт твердого гострого сиру з блакитними прожилками)
<b>Duke of Cornwall</b>	Герцог Корнуельський (ще один титул Принца Валлійського - він володіє землею в графстві Корнуолл)
<b>Durham Miners' Gala</b>	свято даремських шахтарів - друга субота липня
<b>Essex Wonder</b>	Ессекське чудо (сорт помідорів)
<b>Gloucester Old Spot</b>	«Глостерська стара плямиста», порода свиней (біла з чорними плямами)
<b>Hampshire sheep</b>	"Гемпширська вівця", порода м'ясошерстних овець з короткою шерстю
<b>Lancashire hotpot</b>	ланкаширське рагу (шматочки ягнятини та інші інгредієнти, покриті шаром картопляних скибочок, і запечені в духовці)
<b>Leicester Square</b>	Лестер-Сквер, площа в Лондоні (Вест-Енд), де розташовані розважальні заклади
<b>Lincoln green</b>	сукно "лінкольн" (яскраво-зеленого кольору)
<b>Manchester United</b>	"Манчестер Юнайтед", один з провідних футбольних клубів Англії

<b>Merseyside conurbation</b>	Мерсис айдська копурбація (Лівернуль з навколишніми населеними пунктами по обидва боки гирла річки Мерсі)
<b>Norfolk Broads</b>	Норфолкські озера (орнітологічні заповідники на сході Англії)
<b>Prince of Wales</b>	Принц Валлійський (титул найстаршого сина короля, який стає королем після смерті монарха)
<b>Sheriff of Nottingham</b>	Ноттінгемський шериф (в легенді про Робін Гуда, його найлютіший ворог)
<b>Staffordshire pottery</b>	Стаффордшпська кераміка (знаменита кераміка, що виробляється в м. Стоук-он-Трейт або поблизу нього)
<b>Stratford-on-Avon</b>	Стратфорд-он-Ейвон, місце народження та смерті Шекспіра
<b>Suffolk Punch</b>	Суффолкський нузань (порода рудих коней-вагозовів, що відзначається витривалістю)
<b>Surrey chicken</b>	Суррейська м'ясна курка (спеціально відгодована)
<b>Sussex Speckled Tyneside conurbation</b>	«Ряба суссекська», порода курей м'ясо-яйцевого тину
	Тайнсайдська конурбація (Ньюкасл з навколишніми населеними пунктами по обидва боки гирла річки Тайн)
<b>Warwick Castle</b>	Уорвікський замок (популярний серед туристів замок, будівництво якого почалося в XIV-му столітті)
<b>Wiltshire Horn</b>	Уїлтширська рогата (порода м'ясо-шерстяних овець з короткою шерстю)
<b>Worcester sauce</b>	"Вустерський соус", пікантний соєвий соус
<b>Yorkshire pudding</b>	Йоркширський пудинг (рідке прісне тісто запікається під шматком м'яса на рашпері, всотуючи м'ясний сок і розтоплений жир)

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

### LESSON 1

#### ВЕЛИКА БРИТАНІЯ - GREAT BRITAIN

Англійський канал (британська назва протоки Ла-Манш)	<b>English Channel</b>
Англія	<b>England</b>
Бен Невіс (найвища гора Великої Британії)	<b>Ben Nevis</b>
Британські острови	<b>British Isles</b>
вершина (гори)	<b>peak</b>
височина	<b>highland</b>
гавань, порт	<b>harbour</b>
Гебридські острови	<b>Hebrides</b>
Гольфстрім (тепла течія в Атлантичному океані)	<b>Gulf Stream</b>
Західна країна	<b>West Country</b>
Ірландська республіка	<b>Republic of Ireland</b>
Йоркшир і Гамберсайд	<b>Yorkshire and Humberside</b>
Камбрія (район озер на північному заході Англії)	<b>Cumbria</b>
Королівська Грінвічська обсерваторія	<b>Royal Greenwich Observatory</b>
материкова частина (на відміну від островів)	<b>mainland</b>
Нортумбрія (графство Нортамберленд)	<b>Northumbria</b>
нульовий меридіан	<b>Prime Meridian</b>
опади	<b>rainfall</b>
Оркнейські острови	<b>Orkney Isles</b>
острів Мен (популярний туристичний центр)	<b>Isle of Man</b>
острів Уайт	<b>Isle of Wight</b>
Пеннінські гори	<b>Pennines</b>
Південний схід	<b>South East</b>
Південь	<b>Southern</b>
Північна Ірландія	<b>Northern Ireland</b>
Північне море	<b>North Sea</b>

Північний захід	<b>North West</b>
Пул (місто)	<b>Poole</b>
Северн (річка)	<b>Severn</b>
серце Англії (Західні Мідлендз - центральні графства Англії)	<b>Heart of England (West Midlands)</b>
Сноудон (найвища гора Уельсу)	<b>Snowdon</b>
Східна Англія	<b>East Anglia</b>
Східні Мідлендз (центральні графства Англії)	<b>East Midlands</b>
Темза та Чилтернські пагорби	<b>Thames and Chilterns</b>
тунель під Ла-Маншем (з'єдпує Англію з Францією)	<b>Channel Tunnel</b>
Уельс	<b>Wales</b>
Фолкстоун (місто, біля якого починається тунель під Ла-Маншем)	<b>Folkestone</b>
хребет	<b>backbone</b>
"Чаннел" (тунель під Ла-Маншем (з'єдпує Англію з Францією))	<b>Chunnel</b>
Шетландські острови	<b>Shetland Islands</b>
Шотландія	<b>Scotland</b>

### АНГЛІЯ - ENGLAND

болотиста місцевість	<b>marshland</b>
гірський хребет	<b>chain of mountains</b>
гористий	<b>mountainous</b>
Ессекс (графство на південному сході Англії)	<b>Essex</b>
Кент (графство на південному сході Англії)	<b>Kent</b>
Ньюпорт (місто в графстві Шропшир)	<b>Newport</b>
осушений для сільськогосподарського використання пагориста місцевість	<b>drained for agricultural use</b>
прибережні острови	<b>rolling hills</b>
Шропшир (графство на заході Англії, межує з Уельсом)	<b>offshore islands</b>
	<b>Shropshire</b>

### ШОТЛАНДІЯ - SCOTLAND

Абердін (місто на північно-східному узбережжі, в гирлі річки Ді)	<b>Aberdeen</b>
Глазго (найбільше місто, на західному узбережжі в гирлі річки Клайд)	<b>Glasgow</b>
Грампіанські гори (частина Північно-шотландського нагір'я)	<b>Grampians</b>
Данді (місто на східному узбережжі в гирлі річки Тей)	<b>Dundee</b>
Ді (річка на північному сході Шотландії, впадає в Північне море)	<b>Dee</b>
Едінбург (столиця, розташована на східному узбережжі в затоці Форт)	<b>Edinburgh</b>
затока Мореї (на півночі Шотландії, в гирлі річки Несе)	<b>Moray Firth</b>
затока Форт (на сході Шотландії, в гирлі річки Форт)	<b>Firth of Forth</b>
Івернесс (місто на північному узбережжі в затоці Мореї, біля озера Лох-Несс)	<b>Iverness</b>
Клайд (річка на заході Шотландії, впадає в Ірландське море)	<b>Clyde</b>
Лох-Несс (озеро на півночі Шотландії)	<b>Loch Ness</b>
Несе (річка на півночі Шотландії)	<b>Ness River</b>
Південно-шотландська височина	<b>Southern Uplands</b>
Північно-шотландське нагір'я	<b>Highlands</b>
(Північно-шотландське) нагір'я та острови (прибережні)	<b>Highlands and Islands</b>
Стерлінг (місто на східному узбережжі в затоці Форт)	<b>Stirling</b>
Тей (річка на сході Шотландії, впадає в Північне море)	<b>Tay</b>
Центральний пояс (Шотландська низина)	<b>Central Belt</b>
Шотландська низина (в басейні річок Клайд і Форт)	<b>Lowlands</b>

## УЕЛЬС-WALES

Англісі (острів в Ірландському морі біля узбережжя Уельсу)	<b>Anglesey</b>
Бреконські сигнальні вогні (дві гори в Уельсі, висотою біля 800 м, на яких у старі часи запальовали сигнальні вогні)	<b>Brecon Beacons</b>
Брістольська затока (розташована в гирлі річки Евон, між південною частиною Уельсу та західною частиною Англії)	<b>Bristol Channel</b>
валлійський	<b>Welsh</b>
Валлійські гірські вершини, висота яких перевищує 3 000 футів	<b>Welsh 3000s</b>
гористий	<b>mountainous</b>
Кардіфф (столиця Уельсу, розташована на березі Брістольської затоки)	<b>Cardiff</b>
ландшафт	<b>landscape</b>
півострів	<b>peninsula</b>
протока святого Георга	<b>St George's Channel</b>

## СИМ ЧУДЕС УЕЛЬСУ - SEVEN WONDERS OF WALES

Гресфордські дзвони (набір дзвонів у середньовічній Церкві Усіх Святих в м. Гресфорд)	<b>Gresford bells (the peal of bells in the medieval church of All Saints at Gresford)</b>
Джерело Св.Вінефрід (місце паломництва поблизу м. Голівелл в графстві Флінтшир)	<b>St Winefride's Well (a pilgrimage site at Holywell in Flintshire)</b>
Лланголенський міст (через річку Ді, побудований у 1347 році)	<b>Llangollen bridge (built in 1347 over the River Dee)</b>
Овертонські тиси (старовинні тиси на церковному цвинтарі в церкві пресвятої Марії в м. Овертон-на-Ді)	<b>Overton yew trees (ancient yew trees in the churchyard of St Mary's at Overton-on-Dee)</b>
Пістилл Редр (найбільший водоспад в Уельсі, висота - 240 футів або 75 метрів)	<b>Pistyll Rhaeadr (Wales's tallest waterfall, at 240 feet or 75 m)</b>
Рексгемська дзвіниця (дзвіниця церкви Св. Джайлза, побудована в XVI-му столітті в м. Рексгем)	<b>Wrexham steeple (16<sup>th</sup> century tower of St. Giles Church in Wrexham)</b>
Сноудон (найвища гірська вершина Уельсу)	<b>Snowdon (the highest mountain)</b>

## ПІВІНІЧНА ІРЛАНДІЯ - NORTHERN IRELAND

Белфаст (столиця)	<b>Belfast</b>
височина	<b>uplands</b>
вологий клімат	<b>damp climate</b>
долина	<b>valley</b>
знищення лісонасаджень	<b>deforestation</b>
індустріалізація	<b>industrialisation</b>
Лаган (річка, на якій розташований Белфаст)	<b>River Lagan</b>
Локс-Ней (найбільше озеро Великобританії)	<b>Lough Neagh (392 km<sup>2</sup>)</b>
лукопасовищне угіддя	<b>grassland</b>
материкова частина Європи	<b>interior Europe</b>
найпримітніший елемент	<b>centrepiece</b>
непередбачуваний	<b>unpredictable</b>
орна земля	<b>arable land</b>
пагориста частина країни	<b>hill country</b>
прісноводне озеро	<b>freshwater lake</b>
родючі низини	<b>fertile lowlands</b>
Слів Донард (найвища північноірландська точка - 848 м)	<b>Slieve Donard (848 m)</b>
соковитий	<b>rich</b>
Сперрінські гори ( на заході, найвища точка - 554 м)	<b>Sperrin Mountains</b>
стійкий	<b>persistent</b>

тваринництво	<b>animal husbandry</b>
узбережжя	<b>seaboard</b>
урбанізація	<b>urbanisation</b>
хмарний покрив	<b>cloud cover</b>
чіткий	<b>distinct; pronounced</b>
що стійко тримається	<b>persistent</b>
що чітко відрізняється	<b>distinct; pronounced</b>

## СТОУНГЕНДЖ- STONEHENGE

алея	<b>laneway</b>
божество	<b>deity</b>
вбивати	<b>slay</b>
високопоставлений громадянин	<b>high-ranking citizens</b>
відправляти (вантаж тощо)	<b>ship</b>
дольмен (поховальна споруда у вигляді величезних кам'яних	<b>trilithon</b>
брил, що поставлені вертикально і накриті масивною плитою, і	
які разом утворюють підковоподібну структуру)	
друїд (жрець у давніх кельтів)	<b>Druids River</b>
Ейвон (річка в центральній Англії, впадає в Брістольську затоку в	<b>Avon</b>
Ірландському морі)	
жрецтво	<b>priesthood</b>
захоронення	<b>burial</b>
знатний чоловік	<b>nobleman</b>
значний	<b>significant</b>
зовнішнє коло	<b>outer circle</b>
ікона; святиня	<b>icon</b>
канава	<b>henge</b>
кельтський	<b>Celtic</b>
Коло (дорога) велетнів (група з кількох тисяч кам'яних колон на	<b>Giant's Ring (Giant's Causeway)</b>
північно-східному узбережжі Північної Ірландії - за легендою,	
це - початок дороги, якою велетні добиралися до острова	
Стаффа, де знаходиться схожа група колон)	
колона; стовп	<b>pillar</b>
Король Артур (за легендою, кельтський ватажок, який жив на-	<b>King Arthur</b>
прикінці V - початку VI ст. і прославився успіхами в боротьбі	
проти англо-саксонських завойовників - герой літературних	
творів, які були написані набагато пізніше, в XV-XIX ст.).	
Мерлін (за легендою, радник-чарівник при дворі короля Артура)	<b>Merlin</b>
місце	<b>site</b>
могила	<b>grave</b>
невмирущість	<b>enduring</b>
оточувати	<b>enclose</b>
перенести з одного місця на інше	<b>transplant</b>
підступний	<b>treacherous</b>
поклонятися	<b>worship</b>
помилковий	<b>erroneous</b>
приписувати (комусь)	<b>attribute</b>
різанина	<b>massacre</b>
розквітати	<b>flourish</b>
священний	<b>sacred</b>
Солсберійська рівнина (на півдні Англії)	<b>Salisbury Plain</b>
теоретизувати	<b>speculate</b>
у вигляді підкови	<b>horseshoe pattern</b>
Уїлтшир (графство на півдні Англії)	<b>Wiltshire</b>

храм	temple
чарівливий	captivating
шар	layer
Юлій Цезар (римський імператор, який вперше висадився на Британських островах у 55 та 54 роках до н.е.)	Julius Caesar

#### ОЗЕРО ЛОХ-НЕСС - LOCH NESS

випадок спостереження	sighting
водяне чудовисько	aquatic monster
горб	hump
Державна служба охорони здоров'я	National Health Service
з приплющеним носом	pug-nosed
загнузданий	bridled
келпі (міфічний водяний диявол, часто у формі коня, який заманює людей до води і топить їх)	kelpie
монах	monk
на відстані в	at a range of
налякати	spook
перебільшення	exaggeration
перетворюватися	revert
пірнати	plunge; submerge
плезіозавр (велика хижа водна рептилія мезозойської ери з відносно невеликою головою і довгою шиєю)	plesiosaur
пожирати	devour
прибічник	follower
проповідувати	preach
чудовисько	beast

#### ІРЛАНДІЯ - IRELAND

варварський	barbarian
духовенство	clergy
труна	coffin
розбити вщент	crush
указ	decree
цілий; увесь	entire
оцінювати; оцінка	estimate
експлуатація	exploitation
винищення	extinction
голод	famine
добитися	gain
винускати	issue
нестача	lack
реєстрація для навчання (в коледжі тощо)	matriculation
бідність	poverty
головний	principal
переслідування	prosecution
повставати	rebel
самоуправління	self-government
хронічне недоїдання	starvation
підкоряти	subjugate
страждати	suffer
Трінті Коледж (католицький навчальний заклад в Дубліні)	Trinity College



**LESSON 2 АНГЛІЙСЬКІ  
ГРАФСТВА - ENGLISH COUNTIES**

Бедфордшпр	<b>Bedfordshire</b>
Беркшпр	<b>Berkshire</b>
Букінгемшир	<b>Buckinghamshire</b>
Великий Лондон	<b>Greater London</b>
Великий Манчестер	<b>Greater Manchester</b>
Гамберсанд	<b>Humberside</b>
Гемпшпр	<b>Hampshire</b>
Герефорд і Вустер	<b>Hereford and Worcester</b>
Гертфордшпр	<b>Hertfordshire</b>
Глостершпр	<b>Gloucestershire</b>
Дарем	<b>Durham</b>
Девон <i>або</i> Девоншир	<b>Devon <i>or</i> Devonshire</b>
Дербішир	<b>Derbyshire</b>
Дорсет	<b>Dorset</b>
Ейвон	<b>Avon</b>
Ессекс	<b>Essex</b>
Західний Йоркшир	<b>West Yorkshire</b>
Західний Суссекс	<b>West Sussex</b>
Західні Мідлендз	<b>West Midlands</b>
Камбрія	<b>Cumbria</b>
Кембриджшпр	<b>Cambridgeshire</b>
Кент	<b>Kent</b>
Клівленд	<b>Cleveland</b>
Корнволл	<b>Cornwall</b>
Ланкашпр	<b>Lancashire</b>
Лестершпр	<b>Leicestershire</b>
Лінкольншпр	<b>Lincolnshire</b>
Мерсайд	<b>Merseyside</b>
Нортамберленд	<b>Northumberland</b>
Нортгемптоншир	<b>Northamptonshire</b>
Норфолк	<b>Norfolk</b>
Ноттінгемшир	<b>Nottin gh am shi r e</b>
Оксфордшир	<b>Oxfordshire</b>
острів Уайт	<b>Isle of Wight</b>
Південний Йоркшпр	<b>South Yorkshire</b>
Північний Йоркшпр	<b>North Yorkshire</b>
Сомерсет	<b>Somerset</b>
Стаффордшир	<b>Staffordshire</b>
Суррей	<b>Surrey</b>
Суффолк	<b>Suffolk</b>
Східний Суссекс	<b>East Sussex</b>
Східні Мідлендз	<b>East Midlands</b>
Тайн-енд-Біар	<b>Tyne and Wear</b>
Уілтшир	<b>Wiltshire</b>
Уорвікшпр	<b>Warwickshire</b>
Чешир	<b>Cheshire</b>
Шропшпр	<b>Shropshire</b>

## ДЕЯКІ НАЙБІЛЬШ ВЖИВАНІ СЛОВОСНОЛУЧЕННЯ З НАЗВАМИ ГРАФСТВ -SOME FREQUENT COUNTY COLLOCATIONS

бедфордський вельвет (бавовняна тканина в рубчик)	<b>Bedfords cord</b>
беркширська порода свиней (чорна з білими плямами)	<b>Berkshire pig</b>
Букінгемський палац, резиденція англійських монархів	<b>Buckingham Palace</b>
"Вустерський соус", пікантний соєвий соус	<b>Worcester sauce</b>
"Гемпширська вівця", порода м'ясошерстних овець з короткою шерстю	<b>Hampshire sheep Duke</b>
Герцог Корнуельський (ще один титул Принца Валлійського - він володіє землею в графстві Корнволл)	<b>of Cornwall</b>
«Глостерська стара плямиста», порода свиней (біла з чорними плямами)	<b>Gloucester Old Spot</b>
Девоншпрська запіканка (відбивні котлети з цибулею та яблуками, запечені в тісті)	<b>Devonshire pie</b>
Дербі, щорічні перегони коней-трюхліток на іпподромі Епсон Даунз поблизу Лондона	<b>Derby Day</b>
Дорсетський синій (сорт твердого гострого сиру з блакитними прожилками)	<b>Dorset blue Bard of</b>
Ейвонський бард (Шекспір)	<b>Avon Essex</b>
Есекське чудо (сорт помідорів)	<b>Wonder Yorkshire</b>
Йоркширський нудинг (рідке прісне тісто запікається під шматком м'яса на рашпері, всотуючи м'ясний сок і розтоплений жир)	<b>pudding</b>
Камберлендська ковбаска (довга, приправлена гострими спеціями ковбаска, яку скручують спіраллю перед приготуванням)	<b>Cumberland sausage</b>
"Клівлендська гніда" (упряжна порода коней)	<b>Cleveland Bay</b>
ланкаширське рагу (шматочки ягнятини та інші інгредієнти, покриті шаром картопляних скибочок, і запечені в духовці)	<b>Lancashire hotpot</b>
Лестер-Сквер, площа в Лондоні (Вест-Енд), де розташовані розважальні заклади	<b>Leicester Square</b>
"Манчестер Юнайтед", один з провідних футбольних клубів Англії	<b>Manchester United</b>
Мерсисайдська конурбація (Ліверпуль з навколишніми населеними нунктами по обидва боки гирла річки Мерсі)	<b>Merseyside conurbation</b>
Норфолкські озера (орнітологічні заповідники на сході Англії)	<b>Norfolk Broads Sheriff</b>
Ноттінгемський шериф (в легенді про Робін Гуда, його найлютіший ворог)	<b>of Nottingham Prince of</b>
Принц Валлійський (титул найстаршого сина короля, який стає королем після смерті монарха)	<b>Wales</b>
"Ряба суссекська", порода курей м'ясо-яйцевого тину	<b>Sussex Speckled</b>
свято даремських шахтарів - друга субота липня	<b>Durham Miners' Gala</b>
Стаффордширська кераміка (знаменита кераміка, що виробляється в м. Стоук-он-Трент або поблизу нього)	<b>Staffordshire pottery</b>
Стратфорд-он-Ейвон, місце народження та смерті Шекспіра	<b>Stratford-on-Avon</b>
сукно "лінкольн" (яскраво-зеленого кольору)	<b>Lincoln green</b>
Суррейська м'ясна курка (спеціально відгодована)	<b>Surrey chicken</b>
Суффолкський нузань (порода рудих коней-вагозовів, що відзначається витривалістю)	<b>Suffolk Punch</b>
Тайнсайдська конурбація (Ньюкасл з навколишніми населеними нунктами по обидва боки гирла річки Тайн)	<b>Tyneside conurbation</b>
Уїлтшпрська рогата (порода м'ясо-шерстяних овець з короткою шерстю)	<b>Wiltshire Horn</b>
Уорвікський замок (популярний серед туристів замок, будівництво якого почалося в XIV-му столітті)	<b>Warwick Castle</b>
Чешпрський кіт (персонаж "Аліси в країні чудес")	<b>Cheshire cat</b>

## ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

### PARTI REGIONAL (OBLASTS) CAPITALS OF UKRAINE - ОБЛАСНІ ЦЕНТРИ УКРАЇНИ

<b>Cherkasy</b>	Черкаси
<b>Chernihiv</b>	Чернігів
<b>Chernivtsi</b>	Чернівці (центр Буковинської області)
<b>Dnipropetrovsk</b>	Дніпропетровськ
<b>Donetsk</b>	Донецьк
<b>Ivano-Frankivsk</b>	Івано-Франківськ
<b>Kharkiv</b>	Харків
<b>Kherson</b>	Херсон
<b>Khmelnyskyi</b>	Хмельницький
<b>Kirovohrad</b>	Кіровоград
<b>Kyiv</b>	Київ
<b>Luhansk</b>	Луганськ
<b>Luts'k</b>	Луцьк (центр Волинської області)
<b>Lviv</b>	Львів
<b>Mykolayiv</b>	Миколаїв
<b>Odesa</b>	Одеса
<b>Poltava</b>	Полтава
<b>Rivne</b>	Рівне
<b>Simferopol</b>	Сімферополь (столиця Кримської АР)
<b>Sumy</b>	Суми
<b>Ternopil</b>	Тернопіль
<b>Uzhgorod</b>	Ужгород (центр Закарпатської області)
<b>Vinnitsya</b>	Вінниця
<b>Zaporizhya</b>	Запоріжжя
<b>Zhytomyr</b>	Житомир

### GEOGRAPHICAL REGIONS OF UKRAINE - ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ РЕГІОНИ УКРАЇНИ

<b>Bukovyna</b>	Буковина (Чернівці і область)
<b>Crimea, the</b>	Крим (Кримська автономна республіка)
<b>Donbas</b>	Донбас (Донецька і Луганська області)
<b>Halychyna</b>	Галичина (Львівська область)
<b>Kryvbas</b>	Кривбас (Криворізький залізничний басейн)
<b>Podillya</b>	Поділля (Хмельницька область)
<b>Podniprovyia</b>	Подніпров'я (басейн річки Дніпро)
<b>Polissya</b>	Полісся (Житомирська область)
<b>Pryazovya</b>	Приазов'я (райони, що прилягають до Азовського моря)
<b>Prychornomor'ya</b>	Причорномор'я (райони, що прилягають до Чорного моря)
<b>Sivershchyna</b>	Сіверщина (Чернігівська область)
<b>Slobozhanshchyna</b>	Слобожанщина (Харківська, Полтавська та Сумська області)
<b>Volyn</b>	Волинь (Луцьк і область)
<b>Zakarpattia</b>	Закарпаття (Ужгород і область)

### GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION - ГЕОГРАФІЧНЕ ПОЛОЖЕННЯ

<b>Austria</b>	Австрія
<b>Balkans</b>	Балкани
<b>Belarus</b>	Білорусь
<b>Black Sea</b>	Чорне море
<b>connect the Baltic with the Black Sea</b>	з'єднувати Балтійське та Чорне моря

Germany  
Hungary  
Mediterranean Sea  
Moldova  
outlet for Ukrainian trade  
Poland  
Romania  
Russia  
Sea of Azov  
Slovakia  
unify central Ukraine

Німеччина  
Угорщина  
Середземне море  
Молдова  
вікно для української торгівлі  
Польща  
Румунія  
Росія  
Азовське море  
Словаччина  
об'єднувати центральну Україну

## CLIMATE - КЛІМАТ

abundant precipitation  
cloudy skies mean  
temperature  
Mediterranean weather  
temperate climatic zone

сильні опади хмарне небо  
середня температура  
середземноморська погода  
помірна кліматична зона

## RELIEF AND GEOGRAPHIC AREAS - РЕЛЬЄФ ТА ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ ЗОНИ

Askania Nova Biosphere Reserve  
backbone of Central and Eastern Europe  
belt of mixed forest and steppe  
Black Sea Biosphere Reserve  
Carpathian Biosphere Reserve  
Carpathian Mountains  
catchment area  
complex geology  
Crimean mountains  
Donetsk Basin  
Dunaiskyi Biosphere Reserve  
East European Plain  
feed rivers  
fertile black soil  
forest-steppe area  
freshwater  
impressive contrasts in topography  
landscape  
mountainous area  
national park  
natural reserve  
rich variety of scenery  
Shatskyi National Nature Park  
southern Crimean coast.  
stretch across  
twice the rainfall of surrounding areas  
well-suited for grain farming  
wheat-producing regions

біосферний заповідник "Асканія Нова"  
хребет Східної та Центральної Європи  
зона лісостепу  
Чорноморський біосферний заповідник  
Карпатський біосферний заповідник  
Карпатські гори  
водозабірна площа  
складна геологія  
Кримські гори  
Донецький басейн  
Дунайський біосферний заповідник  
Східноєвропейська рівнина  
живити річки  
родючий чорнозем  
зона лісостепу  
прісна вода  
вражаючі топографічні контрасти  
рельєф місцевості  
гориста місцевість  
національний парк  
прпродний заповідник  
різноманітна мальовничість природи  
Шацький національний прпродний парк  
Південний берег Криму  
простягатися через  
вдвічі більше опадів, порівняно з навколишніми районами  
сприятливий для вирощування зерна  
зернові райони

## WATERWAYS - ВОДНІ ШЛЯХИ

artificial reservoir  
Azov-Black Sea Basin  
Bug

штучний резервуар  
Чорноморсько-Азовський басейн  
Буг

course (of the river)	русло ріки
dam	гребля; гатити греблю
Danube	Дунай
Dniester	Дністер
Dnipro (Dnieper)	Дніпро
drain southward	текти у південному напрямку
empty into	впадати в (про річки)
medicinal mud	лікувальні грязі
natural lake	природне озеро
river network	мережа річок
source of mineral water	джерело мінеральної води
Southern Bug	Південний Буг
tributary	притока

#### WILDLIFE - ДНКА ПРИРОДА

grassland mature	луки
forest nature	дорослий ліс
reserve species of	природний заповідник
animals wildlife	види тварин заказник
refuge	дикої природи

#### ECONOMY: AGRICULTURE - ЕКОНОМІКА: СІЛЬСЬКЕ ГОСПОДАРСТВО

buckwheat	гречка
corn	зерно; кукурудза
crops	урожай; рослинні культури
developed agriculture	розвинуте сільське господарство
intense cultivation	інтенсивна обробка (грунту)
maize	кукурудза
major producer	потужний виробник
millet	просо
oats	овес
outskirts of cities	предмістя
raise cattle and pigs	вирощувати велику рогату худобу та свиней
rich black soils	родючі чорноземи
rye	жнто
sugar beets	цукровий буряк
sunflower seeds	насіння соняшника
winter wheat	озима пшениця

#### ECONOMY: INDUSTRY - ЕКОНОМІКА: ПРОМИСЛОВІСТЬ

air pollution	забруднення повітря
anthracite coals	антрацитове вугілля
basic mining industries	головні гірничодобувні галузі промисловості
bituminous coals	бітумінозне вугілля
boom	бум; значні темпи зростання
chemical industry	хімічна промисловість
close proximity	безпосередня наближеність
come to light	стати усвідомленим
conservatory program	програма збереження
conserve	зберігати
contaminate	забруднювати
deplete	виснажувати; вичерпувати

devastating effect	руйнівний вплив
drinking water	питна вода
durable goods	товари тривалого користування
ecological considerations	екологічні міркування
environment	довкілля
environmental awareness	усвідомлення необхідності захисту довкілля
environmental organization	організація захисників довкілля
environmentally-friendly	що не шкодить довкіллю
ferrous-metals industries	галузі промисловості, пов'язані з чорними металами
fertilizers	добрива
food-processing	харчова переробка
fuel	топливо
general public	шпирокі кола громадськості
industrial center	промисловий центр
industrial heartland	індустріальне серце
iron	залізо
iron ore	залізна руда
lack	брак; нестача
legislation	законодавство
major heavy-industrial complex	крупний комплекс важкої промисловості
major industrial country	розвинута промислова країна
manganese-bearing ores	марганцеві руди
manufacture	виробляти
metallurgical equipment	металургійне устаткування
mining equipment	гірничодобувне устаткування
mining-metallurgical complex	гірничодобувний та металургійний комплекс
natural gas	природний газ
nickel	нікель
ownership	власність (на будь-що)
petroleum	бензин
pollutant	забруднювач
pollution controls	контроль за забрудненням
raise productivity	підняти продуктивність
recycling	переробка
regulation	постанова
rich in natural resources	багатий на природні ресурси
rich reserves of mineral deposits	багаті запаси мінеральних покладів
severe	суворий
steel	сталь
sulfuric acid	сірчана кислота
uranium	уран
yield	винуск

#### ZAKARPATTYA (TRANSCARPATHIAN) REGION - ЗАКАРПАТСЬКА ОБЛАСТЬ

alpine lake	альпійське озеро
boast a unique ethnic diversity	пишатися унікальним етнічним розмаїттям
campgrounds	місце, де туристи розбивають табір
camping	розташовуватися табором (про туристів)
cater (to)	надавати послуги (комусь)
confluence of the borders	збіг кордонів
conquering armies	армії завойовників
Corso (international bazaar in Uzhhorod)	Корсо (міжнародний ринок в Ужгороді)
cowboy-themed restaurant	ресторан, стилізований під ковбойський
Cross (square in Uzhhorod)	Хрест (площа в Ужгороді)

<b>crossroads for European traders</b>	перехрестя європейських торговельних шляхів
<b>dating from</b>	що веде свій вік від
<b>downtown's splendor</b>	розкіш центральної частини міста
<b>feature</b>	ознака
<b>formerly</b>	спочатку
<b>geographic center of Europe</b>	географічний центр Європи
<b>good bet (for)</b>	гарний вибір
<b>Hoverla (2,061 meters)</b>	Говерла (гора - 2,061 метр)
<b>Hungarian chronicles</b>	угорські літописи
<b>inner courtyard</b>	внутрішній двір
<b>Jesuit monastery</b>	монастир єзуїтів
<b>Latorytsya River</b>	Латориця (річка)
<b>linden-lined river embankment</b>	набережна, обсаджена липами
<b>live entertainment</b>	музика наживо
<b>Mongol invasions</b>	монгольське нашествя
<b>Mukachevo</b>	Мукачево (місто)
<b>Museum of Folk Architecture and Folkways</b>	Музей народної архітектури та етнографії
<b>naturist</b>	прихильники відпочинку на природі
<b>Old Slavic</b>	староє лав'янський
<b>operate as a history museum</b>	працювати, як історичний музей
<b>Palanok Castle (14th-century)</b>	замок Паланок (XIV століття)
<b>pedestrian footbridge</b>	пішохідний міст
<b>Rakhiv</b>	Рахів (місто)
<b>seat of the knights</b>	резиденція лицарів
<b>St. Nicholas' church</b>	церква святого Миколая
<b>stand of beech forest</b>	буковий ліс
<b>Synevyr Lake</b>	Синьєвпр (озеро)
<b>Synevyr National Park</b>	Синьєвпр (національний парк)
<b>Transylvanian</b>	трансільванський
<b>Ukrainian Baroque</b>	українське бароко
<b>UNESCO-supported project</b>	проект за підтримки ЮНЕСКО
<b>University Botanical Gardens</b>	Ботанічний сад університету
<b>Uzh River</b>	Уж (річка)
<b>Uzhansky National Park</b>	Ужанський національний парк
<b>Uzhhorod</b>	Ужгород
<b>well-preserved 10th-century castle</b>	замок XX-го століття, що добре зберігся
<b>White Palace (18th-century)</b>	Білий палац (XVIII століття)

## THE BLACK SEA REGION - ЧОРНОМОРСЬКИЙ РЕГІОН

### FOROS - ФОРОС

<b>Cape Savych</b>	мис Савнч
<b>Church of the Resurrection of Christ (412 m above the sea)</b>	Церква Воскресіння Христа (412 м., над рівнем моря)
<b>dizzy-making Black Sea views</b>	чорноморські краєвиди, від яких перехоплює подих
<b>failed hard-line coup Foros</b>	невдала спроба державного перевороту прибічників жорсткої влади
<b>Lighthouse hold under house</b>	фороський маяк
<b>arrest jewel of a building jut</b>	тримати під домашнім арештом
<b>out (into) mind-blowingly</b>	архітектурний діамант
<b>blue official residence perch</b>	виступати (вперед); врізатися (в)
<b>on a hill resort town</b>	запаморочлива блакить
	офіційна резиденція
	примощуватися на пагорбі
	курортне місто

scent of sun-drenched pines  
southernmost strategic point  
stunning mountains winding  
road

пахощі нагрітих сонцем сосон  
найпівденніший стратегічний  
об'єкт приголомшливо прекрасні  
гори серпантин (дорога)

### DZHARYLGACH - ДЖАРИЛГАЧ

backpack into the island's  
interior  
barrier island  
boat landing  
chitterings of the seagulls  
diving  
Dzharylgach  
fragrant air  
mainland Ukraine  
pristine  
rocky beach  
sand flats  
set something apart

подорожувати вглиб острова з рюкзаком за плечима  
бар'єрний острів  
причал крики  
чайок пірнання  
Джарилгач (острів)  
духмяне повітря  
материкова Україна  
первісний; незіпсований  
кам'янистий пляж піщані  
рівнини відрізняти від

### YEVPATORIA - ЄВНАТОРІЯ

accept Judaism as one's religion  
amateur archeologist  
Caraman (a cafe that serves  
Karaite cuisine)  
compelling  
enthuse  
ghostly mark  
huge pale-blue summer skies  
imperial past  
Karaites  
kenas (Karaite temple)  
rub up (against)  
settled for 25 centuries  
sleepy sanatorium town  
Tatar remnants  
temple  
trace  
unearthly quiet

приймати іудаїзм, як власну релігію  
археолог-аматор  
Караман (кафе, що пригощає караїмськими стравами)  
привабливий  
викликати ентузіазм; захоплювати  
примарний відбиток  
безмежне блакитне літнє небо  
імперське минуле  
Караїми (тюркський народ, що проживав на території Криму)  
кенас (караїмський храм)  
доторкатися (до)  
населене протягом XXV століть  
сонне курортне місто  
останки (прах) татар  
храм  
слід  
неприродна тиша

### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

#### ОБЛАСНІ ЦЕНТРИ УКРАЇНИ - REGIONAL (OBLAST) CAPITALS OF UKRAINE

Вінниця  
Дніпропетровськ  
Донецьк  
Житомир  
Запоріжжя  
Івано-Франківськ  
Київ

Vinnytsya  
Dnipropetrovsk  
Donetsk  
Zhytomyr  
Zaporizhya  
Ivano-Frankivsk  
Kyiv



Кіровоград	Kirovohrad
Луганськ	Luhansk
Луцьк (центр Волинської області)	Lutsk
Львів	Lviv
Миколаїв	Mykolayiv
Одеса	Odesa
Полтава	Poltava
Рівне	Rivne
Сімферополь (столиця Кримської АР)	Simpheropol
Суми	Sumy
Тернопіль	Ternopil
Ужгород (центр Закарпатської області)	Uzhgorod
Харків	Kharkiv
Херсон	Kherson
Хмельницький	Khmelnyskyi
Черкаси	Cherkasy
Чернівці (центр Буковинської області)	Chernivtsi
Чернігів	Chernihiv

## ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ РЕГІОНИ УКРАЇНИ - GEOGRAPHICAL REGIONS OF UKRAINE

Буковина (Чернівці і область)	Bukovyna
Крим (Кримська автономна республіка)	Crimea, the
Донбас (Донецька і Луганська області)	Donbas
Галичина (Львівська область)	Halychyna
Кривбас (Криворізький залізорудний басейн)	Kryvbas
Поділля (Хмельницька область)	Podillya
Подніпров'я (басейн річки Дніпро)	Podniprovyia
Полісся (Житомирська область)	Polissya
Приазов'я (райони, що прилягають до Азовського моря)	Pryazovya
Причорномор'я (райони, що прилягають до Чорного моря)	Prychornomor'ya
Сіверщина (Чернігівська область)	Sivershchyna
Слобожанщина (Харківська, Полтавська та Сумська області)	Slobozhanshchyna
Волинь (Луцьк і область)	Volyn
Закарпаття (Ужгород і область)	Zakarpattya

## ГЕОГРАФІЧНЕ ПОЛОЖЕННЯ - GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION

Австрія	<b>Austria</b>
Азовське море	<b>Sea of Azov</b>
Балкани	<b>Balkans</b>
Білорусь	<b>Belarus</b>
вікно для української торгівлі	<b>outlet for Ukrainian trade</b>
з'єднувати Балтійське та Чорне моря	<b>connect the Baltic with the Black Sea</b>
Молдова	<b>Moldova</b>
Німеччина	<b>Germany</b>
о'бєднувати центральну Україну	<b>unify central Ukraine</b>
Польща	<b>Poland</b>
Росія	<b>Russia</b>
Румунія	<b>Romania</b>
Середземне море	<b>Mediterranean Sea</b>
Словаччина	<b>Slovakia</b>
Угорщина	<b>Hungary</b>
Чорне море	<b>Black Sea</b>

## КЛІМАТ - CLIMATE

помірна кліматична зона  
середземноморська погода  
середня температура  
сильні опади хмарне небо

temperate climatic zone  
Mediterranean weather  
mean temperature  
abundant precipitation  
cloudy skies

## РЕЛЬЄФ ТА ГЕОГРАФІЧНІ ЗОНИ - RELIEF AND GEOGRAPHIC AREAS

біосферний заповідник "Асканія Нова"  
вдвічі більше опадів, порівняно з навколишніми районами  
водозабірна площа  
вражаючі топографічні контрасти  
гориста місцевість  
Донецький басейн  
Дунайський біосферний заповідник  
живити річки  
зернові райони  
зона лісостепу  
зона лісостепу  
Карпатський біосферний заповідник  
Карпатські гори  
Кримські гори  
національний парк  
Південний берег Криму  
природний заповідник  
прісна вода  
простягатися через  
рельєф місцевості  
різноманітна живописність природи  
родючий чорнозем  
складна геологія  
сприятливий для вирощування зерна  
Східноєвропейська рівнина  
хребет Східної та Центральної Європи  
Чорноморський біосферний заповідник  
Шацький національний природний парк

Askania Nova Biosphere Reserve  
twice the rainfall of surrounding areas  
catchment area  
impressive contrasts in topography  
mountainous area  
Donetsk Basin  
Dunaiskyi Biosphere Reserve  
feed rivers  
wheat-producing regions  
belt of mixed forest and steppe  
forest-steppe area  
Carpathian Biosphere Reserve  
Carpathian Mountains  
Crimean mountains  
national park  
southern Crimean coast.  
natural reserve  
freshwater  
stretch across  
landscape  
rich variety of scenery  
fertile black soil  
complex geology  
well-suited for grain farming  
East European Plain  
backbone of Central and Eastern Europe  
Black Sea Biosphere Reserve  
Shatskyi National Nature Park

## ВОДНІ ШЛЯХИ - WATERWAYS

Буг  
впадати в (про річки)  
гребля; гатити греблю  
джерело мінеральної води  
Дніпро  
Дністер  
Дунай  
лікувальні грязі  
мережа річок  
Південний Буг  
природне озеро  
притока  
русло ріки  
текти у південному напрямку

Bug  
empty into  
dam  
source of mineral water  
Dnipro (Dnieper)  
Dniester  
Danube  
medicinal mud  
river network  
Southern Bug  
natural lake  
tributary  
course (of the river)  
drain southward

Чорноморсько-Азовський басейн  
штучний резервуар

Azov-Black Sea Basin  
artificial reservoir

### ДНКА ПРИРОДА - WILDLIFE

види тварин  
дорослий ліс  
заказник дикої природи  
луки  
природний заповідник

species of animals  
mature forest  
wildlife refuge  
grassland nature  
reserve

### ЕКОНОМІКА: СІЛЬСЬКЕ ГОСПОДАРСТВО - ECONOMY: AGRICULTURE

вирощувати велику рогату худобу та свиней  
гречка  
жито  
зерно  
інтенсивна обробка (грунту)  
кукурудза  
насіння соняшника  
овес  
озима пшениця  
потужний виробник  
предмістя  
просо  
родючі чорноземи  
розвинуте сільське господарство  
рослинні культури  
урожай  
цукровий буряк

raise cattle and pigs  
buckwheat  
rye  
corn  
intense cultivation  
maize; corn  
sunflower seeds  
oats  
winter wheat  
major producer  
outskirts of cities  
millet  
rich black soils  
developed agriculture  
crops  
crops  
sugar beets

### ЕКОНОМІКА: ПРОМІСЛОВІСТЬ - ECONOMY: INDUSTRY

антрацитове вугілля  
багата на природні ресурси  
багаті запаси мінеральних покладів  
безпосередня наближеність  
бензин  
бітумінозне вугілля  
брак; нестача  
бум; значні темпи зростання  
винуск  
виробляти  
виснажувати; вичернувати  
власність (на будь-що)  
галузі промисловості, пов'язані з чорними металами  
гірничодобувне устаткування  
гірничодобувний та металургійний комплекс  
головні гірничодобувні галузі промисловості  
добрива  
довкілля  
екологічні міркування  
забруднення повітря  
забруднювати  
забруднювач

anthracite coals  
rich in natural resources  
rich reserves of mineral deposits  
close proximity  
petroleum  
bituminous coals  
lack  
boom  
yield  
manufacture  
deplete  
ownership  
ferrous-metals industries  
mining equipment  
mining-metallurgical complex  
basic mining industries  
fertilizers  
environment  
ecological considerations  
air pollution  
contaminate  
pollutant

законодавство  
залізна руда  
залізо  
зберігати  
індустріальне серце  
контроль за забрудненням  
крупний комплекс важкої промисловості  
марганцеві руди  
металургійне устаткування  
нікель  
організація захисників довкілля  
переробка  
питна вода  
підняти продуктивність  
постанова  
природний газ  
програма збереження  
промисловий центр  
розвинута промислова країна  
руйнівний вплив  
сірчана кислота  
сталь  
стати усвідомленим  
суворий  
товари тривалого користування  
топливо  
уран  
усвідомлення необхідності захисту довкілля  
харчова переробка  
хімічна промисловість  
шпрокі кола громадськості  
що не шкодить довкіллю

## **ЗАКАРПАТСКА ОБЛАСТЬ - ZA**

альпійське озеро  
армії завойовників  
Білий палац (XVIII століття)  
Ботанічний сад університету  
буковий ліс  
внутрішній двір  
гарний вибір  
географічний центр Європи  
Говерла (гора - 2,061 метр)  
замок XX-го століття, що добре зберігся  
замок Паланок (XIV століття)  
збіг кордонів  
Корсо (міжнародний ринок в Ужгороді)  
Латориця (річка)  
місце, де туристи розбивають табір  
монастир єзуїтів  
монгольське нашествя  
Музей народної архітектури та етнографії  
музика наживо

legislation  
iron ore  
iron  
conserve  
industrial heartland  
pollution controls  
major heavy-industrial complex  
manganese-bearing ores  
metallurgical equipment  
nickel  
environmental organization  
recycling  
drinking water  
raise productivity  
regulation  
natural gas  
conservatory program  
industrial center  
major industrial country  
devastating effect  
sulfuric acid  
steel  
come to light  
severe  
durable goods  
fuel  
uranium  
environmental awareness  
food-processing  
chemical industry  
general public  
environmentally-friendly

## **V (TRANSCARPATHIAN) REGION**

alpine lake  
conquering armies  
White Palace (18th-century)  
University Botanical Gardens  
stand of beech forest  
inner courtyard  
good bet (for)  
geographic center of Europe  
Hoverla (2,061 meters)  
well-preserved 10th-century castle  
Palanok Castle (14th-century)  
confluence of the borders  
Corso (international bazaar in Uzhhorod)  
Latorytsya River  
campgrounds  
Jesuit monastery  
Mongol invasions  
Museum of Folk Architecture and Folkways  
live entertainment

Мукачево (місто)  
набережна, обсаджена липами  
надавати послуги (комусь)  
ознака  
перехрестя європейських торговельних шляхів  
пишатися унікальним етнічним розмаїттям  
пішохідний міст  
працювати, як історичний музей  
прихильники відпочинку на природі  
проект за підтримки ЮНЕСКО  
Рахів (місто)  
резиденція лицарів  
ресторан, стилізований під ковбойський  
розкіш центральної частини міста  
розташовуватися табором (про туристів)  
Синєвпр (національний парк)  
Синєвпр (озеро)  
спочатку  
старое лов 'янський  
трансільванський  
угорські літописи  
Уж (річка)  
Ужанський національний парк  
Ужгород  
українське бароко  
Хрест (площа в Ужгороді)  
церква святого Миколая  
що веде свій вік від

**Mukachevo**  
**linden-lined river embankment**  
**cater (to)**  
**feature**  
**crossroads for European traders**  
**boast a unique ethnic diversity**  
**pedestrian footbridge**  
**operate as a history museum**  
**naturist**  
**UNESCO-supported project**  
**Rakhiv**  
**seat of the knights**  
**cowboy-themed restaurant**  
**downtown's splendor**  
**camping**  
**Synevyr National Park**  
**Synevyr Lake**  
**formerly**  
**Old Slavic**  
**Transylvanian**  
**Hungarian chronicles**  
**Uzh River**  
**Uzhansky National Park**  
**Uzhhorod**  
**Ukrainian Baroque**  
**Cross (square in Uzhhorod)**  
**St. Nicholas' church**  
**dating from**

## **ЧОРНОМОРСЬКИЙ РЕГІОН - THE BLACK SEA REGION**

### **ФОРОС-FOROS**

архітектурний діамант  
виступати (вперед); врізатися (в)  
запаморочлива блакить  
курортне місто  
мис Савнч  
найпівденніший  
невдала спроба державного перевороту прибічників жорсткої  
влади  
офіційна резиденція  
пахощі нагрітих сонцем сосон  
приголомшиво прекрасні гори  
примощуватися на пагорбі  
серпантин (дорога)  
стратегічний об'єкт  
тримати під домашнім арештом  
фороський маяк  
Церква Воскресіння Христа (412 м. над рівнем моря)  
  
чорноморські краєвиди, від яких перехоплює подих

**jewel of a building jut**  
**out (into) mind-**  
**blowingly blue resort**  
**town Cape Savych**  
**southernmost failed**  
**hard-line coup**  
  
**official residence**  
**scent of sun-drenched pines**  
**stunning mountains**  
**perch on a hill**  
**winding road**  
**strategic point**  
**hold under house arrest**  
**Foros Lighthouse**  
**Church of the Resurrection of Christ**  
**(412 m above the sea)**  
**dizzy-making Black Sea views**

## ДЖАРИЛГАЧ - DZHARYLGACH

бар'єрний острів	barrier island
відрізняти від	set something apart
Джарилгач (острів)	Dzharylgach
духмяне повітря	fragrant air
кам'янистий пляж	rocky beach
крики чайок	chitterings of the seagulls
материкова Україна	mainland Ukraine
первісний; незіпсований	pristine
пірнання	diving
піщані рівнини	sand flats
подорожувати вглиб острова з рюкзаком за плечима	backpack into the island's interior
причал	boat landing

## ЄВПАТОРІЯ - YEVPATORIA

археолог-аматор	amateur archeologist
безмежне блакитне літнє небо	huge pale-blue summer skies
викликати ентузіазм; захоплювати	enthuse
доторкатися (до)	rub up (against)
імперське минуле	imperial past
Караїми (тюркський народ, що проживав на території Криму)	Karaites
Караман (кафе, що пригощає караїмськими стравами)	Caraman (a cafe that serves Karaite cuisine)
кенас (караїмський храм)	kenas (Karaite temple)
населене протягом XXV століть	settled for 25 centuries
неприродна тиша	unearthly quiet
останки (прах) татар	Tatar remnants
привабливий	compelling
приймати іудаїзм, як власну релігію	accept Judaism as one's religion
примарний відбиток	ghostly mark
слід	trace
сонне курортне місто	sleepy sanatorium town
храм	temple

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

alien culture	чужа культура
architectural landmarks	архітектурні пам'ятки
Armenian	вірменин
attest to	засвідчувати (щось)
Bulgarian	болгарин
business environment	бізнесове довкілля
Byelorussian	білорус
Carpatho-Rusyns	карпатські русини
Catholic	католицький
company's taxation	оподаткування компанії
cosmopolitan	космополітичний
Dnipro Bend	район басейну Дніпра
faith	віра
foggy area	непевна ділянка
folk art	народне мистецтво
forest-steppe belt	зона лісостепу

<b>garbage collector</b>	прибиральник сміття
<b>Greek</b>	грек
<b>Jew</b>	єврей
<b>Jewish</b>	єврейський
<b>language barrier</b>	мовний бар'єр
<b>legal consulting</b>	юридична консультація
<b>look-see trip</b>	ознайомлювальна поїздка
<b>millennium</b>	тисячоліття
<b>Moldovan</b>	молдаванин
<b>mountain stream</b>	гірський ручай
<b>neither day, nor night</b>	ні те, ні се
<b>open and welcoming culture</b>	відкрита і гостинна культура
<b>Orthodox Christian religion</b>	православна християнська релігія
<b>Pole</b>	поляк
<b>population density</b>	густота населення
<b>predominate</b>	переважати
<b>productive</b>	продуктивний
<b>Protestant</b>	протестанський
<b>regional capital</b>	обласний центр
<b>related to</b>	споріднений з (про мови)
<b>Romanian</b>	румунський
<b>Slavic</b>	слов'янський
<b>spiritual achievements</b>	духовні здобутки
<b>Tatar</b>	татарин
<b>transition</b>	перехід
<b>upheaval</b>	збурення
<b>urban</b>	міський
<b>warm-hearted</b>	сердечний; співчутливий; душевний; щиросердий

## CHARACTER FEATURES - РИСИ ХАРАКТЕРУ

<b>aloof</b>	що байдуже тримається осторонь
<b>approachable</b>	доступний; приступний; досяжний; що йде назустріч
<b>conceited</b>	пихатий; гонористий; самовдоволений; зарозумілий
<b>conscientious</b>	добросовісний; чесний; сумлінний; свідомий
<b>diffident</b>	неупевнений у собі; боязкий; соромливий; недовірливий
<b>disdainful</b>	презирливий; зневажливий
<b>effusive</b>	експансивний; нестримний
<b>excitable</b>	легко збудливий
<b>extravert (extrovert)</b>	не схильний до зосередження на самому собі
<b>flirt</b>	кокетка; дон-жуан; любитель позалицятися
<b>garrulous</b>	балакучий
<b>gullible</b>	легковірний; довірливий
<b>haughty</b>	пихатий; гордовитий; чванливий; зарозумілий; бундючний
<b>impetuous</b>	гарячкуватий; занадто запальний (негативна характеристика)
<b>impulsive</b>	імпульсивний (більш позитивна характеристика, порівняно з <i>impetuous</i> )
<b>introvert</b>	зосереджений на самому собі
<b>modest</b>	скромний
<b>naive</b>	наївний
<b>obstinate</b>	упертий; настирний; наполегливий
<b>pigheaded</b>	упертий (по-дурному); тупий; тупак (негативна характеристика)
<b>pushy</b>	самовпевнено напористий
<b>reserved</b>	стриманий; некомунікабельний
<b>self-important</b>	бундючний; зарозумілий; пихатий
<b>taciturn</b>	відлюдкуватий; мовчун (негативна характеристика)

unapproachable  
unscrupulous

недоступний; неприступний  
безсовісний; нерозбірливий у засобах

## RIVNE REGION- РІВНЕНСЬКА ОБЛАСТЬ

access	доступ
billboard	білборд (великий щит для реклами)
carion	падлю; мертвечина
conductor	провідник (поїзда)
deja vu	"дежа вю" ( <i>фр.</i> ) (відчуття того, що те, що відбувається зараз, вже траплялася з тобою раніше)
drive home a point	потрапляти в саме яблучко
horse cart	підвода
narrow-gauge railway	вузькоколія
open fire	багаття
posh accommodations	розкішні апартаменти
rail car	залізничний вагон
rugged beauty	груба краса
slogan	лозунг
swamp	болото
terra incognita	незнана територія; терра інкогніта
tile window	вікно, обкладене кахлями
trek	робити перехід
unequivocal	недвозначний; певний; ясний

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

архітектурні пам'ятки	architectural landmarks
бізнесове довкілля	business environment
білорус	Byelorussian
болгарин	Bulgarian
відкрита і гостинна культура	open and welcoming culture
віра	faith
вірменин	Armenian
гірський ручай	mountain stream
грек	Greek
густота населення	population density
духовні здобутки	spiritual achievements
єврей	Jew
єврейський	Jewish
засвідчувати (щось)	attest to
збурення	upheaval
зона лісостепу	forest-steppe belt
карпатські русини	Carpatho-Rusyns
католицький	Catholic
ко смопо літичний	cosmopolitan
міський	urban
мовний бар'єр	language barrier
молдаванин	Moldovan
народне мистецтво	folk art
непевна ділянка	foggy area
ні те, ні се	neither day, nor night
обласний центр	regional capital
ознайомлювальна поїздка	look-see trip
оподаткування компанії	company's taxation



переважати	<b>predominate</b>
перехід	<b>transition</b>
поляк	<b>Pole</b>
православна християнська релігія	<b>Orthodox Christian religion</b>
прибиральник сміття	<b>garbage collector</b>
продуктивний	<b>productive</b>
проте станський	<b>Protestant</b>
район басейну Дніпра	<b>Dnipro Bend</b>
румунський	<b>Romanian</b>
сердечний; співчутливий; душевний; щиросердий	<b>warm-hearted</b>
слов'янський	<b>Slavic</b>
споріднений з (про мови)	<b>related to</b>
татарин	<b>Tatar</b>
тисячоліття	<b>millennium</b>
чужа культура	<b>alien culture</b>
юридична консультація	<b>legal consulting</b>

### **РИСИ ХАРАКТЕРУ - CHARACTER FEATURES**

балакучий	<b>garrulous</b>
безсовісний; нерозбірливий у засобах бундючний;	<b>unscrupulous</b>
зарозумілий; пихатий відлюдкуватий; мовчун	<b>self-important</b>
(негативна характеристика) гарячкуватий; занадто	<b>taciturn</b>
запальний (негативна характеристика)	<b>impetuous</b>
добросовісний; чесний; сумлінний; свідомий	
доступний; приступний; досяжний; що йде назустріч	<b>conscientious</b>
експансивний; нестримний зосереджений на самому	<b>approachable</b>
собі	<b>effusive</b>
імпульсивний (більш позитивна характеристика, порівняно	<b>introvert</b>
з <i>impetuous</i> )	<b>impulsive</b>
кокетка; дон-жуан; любитель позалицятися	
легко збудливий легковірний; довірливий	<b>flirt</b>
наївний	<b>excitable</b>
не схильний до зосередження на самому собі	<b>gullible</b>
недоступний; неприступний	<b>naive</b>
неупевнений у собі; боязкий; соромливий; недовірливий	<b>extravert (extrovert)</b>
пихатий; гонористий; самовдоволений; зарозумілий	<b>unapproachable</b>
пихатий; гордовитий; чванливий; зарозумілий; бундючний	<b>diffident</b>
презирливий; зневажливий самовпевнено напористий	<b>conceited</b>
скромний	<b>haughty</b>
стриманий; некоммунікбельний упертий (по-	<b>disdainful</b>
дурному); тупий; тупак (негативна	<b>pushy</b>
характеристика)	<b>modest</b>
упертий; настирний; наполегливий	<b>reserved</b>
що байдуже тримається осторонь	<b>pigheaded</b>
	<b>obstinate</b>
	<b>aloof</b>

### **РІВНЕНСЬКА ОБЛАСТЬ - RIVNE REGION**

багаття	<b>open fire</b>
білборд (великий щит для реклами)	<b>billboard</b>
болото	<b>swamp</b>
вікно, обкладене кахлями	<b>tile window</b>
вузькоколія	<b>narrow-gauge railway</b>

груба краса	rugged beauty
"дежа вю" {фр.) (відчуття того, що те, що відбувається	deja vu
зараз, вже траплялася з тобою раніше)	
доступ	access
залізничний вагон	rail car
лозунг	slogan
недвозначний; певний; ясний	unequivocal
незнана територія; terra інкогніта	terra incognita
падлю; мертвечина	carion
підвода	horse cart
потрапляти в саме яблучко	drive home a point
провідник (поїзда)	conductor
робити перехід	trek
розкішні апартаменти	posh accommodations

## UNIT 2

### LESSON 1

#### PART I

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### THEATRE INTERIOR- ІНТЕР'ЄР ТЕАТРУ

aisle	прохід між рядами в театрі
auditorium	зал для глядачів
balcony	балкон
box	театральна ложа
curtain	завіса
dress circle	бельетаж
footlights	рампа
foyer	фойє
front lights	верхнє освітлення сцени
gallery	театральний балкон; гальорка
orchestra pit	оркестрова яма
pillar	колона
proscenium	авансцена
proscenium arch	арка над авансценою
rail	поручень
stage	сцена
stalls	партер
tier	ярус
upper circle	верхній театральний ярус (над бельетажем)

#### THEATRE IN GENERAL- ТЕАТР ЗАГАЛОМ

abandon	відмовлятися від; кидати, залишати
accommodate	вміщувати (про зал тощо)
accomplish	досягати; виконувати
acoustics	акустика
actor's point of command	командний нункт актора
adaptation	інсценування
adjustable floor-space	варійована форма партеру
adjustable proscenium	регульована авансцена
ancillary space	допоміжні площі

apocalypse	апокаліпсис
arranged on a high rake	розташований на крутому підйомі
artist	художник
aspire	бажати
audience	глядачі
backstage tour	екскурсія за куліси
bare	без прикрас
basic shape	найбільш поширена форма
brink	край; грань
cantilever	консоль; кронштейн; косяк
circle rails	поручні верхнього ярусу
clad	убраний; одягнутий
classical staging	класична постановка
clear the floor of seats	зняти крісла партеру
cockpit	арена; відкрита сцена
comfortably cushioned benches	зручні лави, оббиті для м'якого сидіння
committed	відданий
contemporary and intimate setting	сучасне і затишне оточення
conventional	звичайний
deploy director	розгортати
diverse range	режисер
dizzy emerge	різноманітний (репертуар тощо)
enchanted	запаморочливий; карколомний
energize entrance	виникати
foyer envisage	зачарований
experimental theatre eye-	живити (енергією)
blocking pillars fall of the	фойє на вході до театру
curtain fan-shaped fixed seating	передбачати
fixed staging flank flexible	експериментальний театр
foyer music group the audience	колони, що перекривають вид
close in	кінець (вистави тощо)
around a central happening	віялоподібний
hazard hold hover	стаціонарні глядацькі крісла
impressive depth and scale	стаціонарна сцена
ingenious intimacy layout	обрамлювати з боків
obsessed open stage opening	гнучкий
production outdoor	виступ музикантів у фойє театру перед виставою
entertainment perch	розташовувати глядацькі крісла навколо сцени, яка знаходиться
pillared gallery platform	посеред залу
performance portal	перешкода
	вміщувати (про зал тощо)
	висіти (в повітрі)
	вражаючі глибина та масштаб
	майстерний; оригінальний
	камерність
	розташування
	одержимий (ідеєю тощо)
	відкрита сцена
	прем'єра
	розваги просто неба
	примощуватися (на жердині тощо)
	театральний балкон (гальорка) з колонами
	вистава на сцені
	двері; ворота

potentially influential	потенційно впливовий
presumably	імовірно
production	постановка; вистава; спектакль
props	реквізит; бутафорія
quiver	похитуватися; непевно стояти; балансувати
rearrange	змінювати розташування
rectangular	у вигляді паралелепіпеда
reflect	відбивати; віддзеркалювати
rehearsal	репетиція
remote	віддалений
repertoire	репертуар
repertory	репертуар
revive	відродити
rise of the curtain	початок (вистави тощо)
scoot	бігти прожогом (стрімголов)
sets	декорації
side-bank	бокова лежа
sightline	лінія зору (між сценою і очима глядача)
sophisticated	складний; витончений
span of the seats	розмах ярусу
span of vision	поле зору
stack	стелажного тину
stage an event	поставити виставу (тощо)
state-of-the-art	сучасний
steeply raked seats	глядацькі крісла, що круто піднімаються вгору
strip	смуга
studio	студія
sweep down	з розмахом ковзати вниз
thrust	виступ
tour	гастролювати
traditional theatre	традиційний театр
transform	перетворювати
unreserved seating	глядацькі крісла, розташування яких може змінюватися
venue	місце
within the compass of their eyes	в межах їхнього поля зору
workshop	семінар; практичні заняття
writers' event	творча зустріч з письменником

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH INTER'CP ТЕАТР - THEATRE INTERIOR

авансцена	proscenium
арка над авансценою	proscenium arch
балкон	balcony
бельетаж	dress circle
верхнє освітлення сцени	front lights
верхній театральний ярус (над бельетажем)	upper circle
гальорка	gallery
завіса	curtain
зал для глядачів	auditorium
колона	pillar
оркестрова яма	orchestra pit
партер	stalls
поручень	rail
прохід між рядами в театрі	aisle

рампа  
сцена  
театральна ложа  
театральний балкон  
фойє  
ярус

footlights  
stage  
box  
gallery  
foyer  
tier

## ТЕАТР ЗАГАЛОМ – THEATRE IN GENERAL

акустика  
апокаліпсис  
арена  
бажати  
балансувати  
без прикрас  
бігти прожогом (стрімголов)  
бокова ложа  
бутафорія  
варійована форма партеру  
в межах поля зору  
виконувати  
виникати  
висіти (в повітрі)  
вистава  
вистава на сцені  
виступ (частина сцени, що виступає вперед)  
виступ музикантів у фойє театру перед виставою  
витончений  
відбивати  
віддалений  
відданий  
віддзеркалювати  
відкрита сцена  
відмовлятися від  
відродити  
віялоподібний  
вміщувати (про зал тощо)  
ворота  
вражаючі глибина та масштаб  
гастролювати  
глядацькі крісла, розташування яких може змінюватися  
глядацькі крісла, що круто піднімаються вгору  
глядачі  
гнучкий  
грань  
двері  
декорації  
допоміжні площі  
досягати  
екскурсія за куліси  
експериментальний театр  
жнвити (енергією)  
з розгону ковзати вниз  
залишати  
запаморочливий

acoustics  
apocalypse  
cockpit  
aspire  
quiver  
bare  
scoot  
side-bank  
props  
adjustable floor-space  
within the compass of eyes  
accomplish  
emerge  
hover  
production  
platform performance  
thrust  
foyer music  
sophisticated  
reflect  
remote  
committed  
reflect  
cockpit; open stage  
abandon  
revive  
fan-shaped  
accommodate; hold  
portal  
impressive depth and scale  
tour  
unreserved seating  
steeply raked seats  
audience  
flexible  
brink  
portal  
sets  
ancillary space  
accomplish  
backstage tour  
experimental theatre  
energize  
sweep down  
abandon  
dizzy

зачарований	enchanted
звичайний	conventional
змінювати розташування	rearrange
зняти крісла партеру	clear the floor of seats
зручні лави, оббиті для м'якого сидіння	comfortably cushioned benches
імовірно	presumably
інсценування	adaptation
камерність	intimacy
карколомний	dizzy
кидати	abandon
кінець (вистави тощо)	fall of the curtain
класична постановка	classical staging
колони, що перекривають вид	eye-blocking pillars
командний нункт актора	actor's point of command
консоль	cantilever
косяк	cantilever
край	brink
кронштейн	cantilever
лінія зору (між сценою і очима глядача)	sightline
майстерний	ingenious
місце	venue
найбільш поширена форма	basic shape
непевно стояти	quiver
обрамлювати з боків	flank
одержимий (ідеєю тощо)	obsessed
одягнутий	clad
оригінальний	ingenious
передбачати	envisage
перетворювати	transform
перешкода	hazard
поле зору	span of vision
поручні верхнього ярусу	circle rails
поставити виставу (тощо)	stage an event
постановка	production
потенційно впливовий	potentially influential
похитуватися	quiver
початок (вистави тощо)	rise of the curtain
практичні заняття	workshop
прем'єра	opening production
примощуватися (на жердині тощо)	perch
регульована авансцена	adjustable proscenium
режисер	director
реквізит	props
репертуар	repertoire; repertory
репетиція	rehearsal
різноманітний (репертуар тощо)	diverse range
розваги просто неба	outdoor entertainment
розгортати	deploy
розмах ярусу	span of the seats
розташований на крутому підйомі	arranged on a high rake
розташовувати глядацькі крісла навколо сцени, яка знаходиться посеред залу	group the audience close in around a central happening
розташування	layout
семінар	workshop
складний	sophisticated
смуга	strip

спектакль	production
стаціонарна сцена	fixed staging
стаціонарні глядацькі крісла	fixed seating
стелажного тину	stack
студія	studio
сучасне і затишне оточення	contemporary and intimate setting
сучасний	state-of-the-art
творча зустріч з письменником	writers' event
театральний балкон (гальорка) з колонами	pillared gallery
традиційний театр	traditional theatre
у вигляді паралелепіпеда	rectangular
убраний	clad
фойє на вході до театру	entrance foyer
художник	artist

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN TYPES OF THEATRE - ТЕАТРАЛЬНІ ЖАНРИ

black comedy	чорна комедія
comedy	комедія
comedy of manners	сатпрична комедія
comedy of situation (sitcom)	комедія ситуацій
commedia delPart	комедія дельарте (староіталійський театр з кількома персонажами - Арлекін, Колумбіна тощо - і типовими сюжетами)
domestic drama	побутова драма
fantasy	феитезі (жапр, у якому герой шукає засіб боротьби з темними силами, а під час пошуків зустрічається з фантастичними істотами і ситуаціями)
farce	фарс
melodrama	мелодрама
meta-theatre	мета-театр (у якому глядачів залучають до дії, внаслідок чого сама дія розвивається значною мірою непередбачувано)
morality play	п'єса з мораллю (алегорія, де персонажі уособлюють моральні принципи)
musical comedy	музична комедія; оперета
musical theatre	музичний театр; театр оперети
pantomime physical theatre	пантоміма
	невербальний театр (у якому ідеї передаються не словами, а іншими засобами - танцями, жестами тощо)
rock opera	рок-опера
romantic comedy	романтична комедія
sitcom	комедія ситуацій
theatre for social change	соціальний театр (в центрі уваги - соціальні проблеми)
theatre of absurd	театр абсурду
tragedy	трагедія
tragicomedy	трагікомедія

### WORDS TO DESCRIBE THEATRE - СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОИИСУ ТЕАТРАЛЬНИХ ПОСТАНОВОК ТОЩО

abduction	викрадення (людей)
absurd	абсурд(ний)
address a social issue	звертатися до соціальної проблеми
allegory	алегорія; іносказання
all-star cast	зірковий акторський склад

answer precisely to the hero's wishes  
at a fever pitch  
basic plots  
bittersweet  
blur the line  
brilliant  
bring together laughter and tears  
bumbling  
by popular demand  
calculated coincidence  
characters are abstractions of moral ideas  
characters are engaged in  
clever scheming  
cold-blooded villain  
Columbine  
comic  
comic (dramatic) piece  
comic role  
comical  
conductor  
created by a situation  
debut  
debutant  
debutante  
defeat the powers of evil  
depict  
dress rehearsal  
embarrassing  
enact  
encounter  
entertaining  
extravagant exaggeration  
fabulous  
fantastic  
finest transcript  
focus on love  
focus on the everyday domestic lives  
ghastly  
go on by accident  
grow out of a character's attempt  
to solve a problem happy  
ending Harlequin heroic  
individual highly improbable  
situations illustrate injustice.  
intermission jester juxtapose  
some elements with  
different ones long-suffering heroine  
love story manners and affectations of a  
society

повністю відповідати бажанням героя  
на межі нервового зриву  
типові сюжети  
гірко-солодкий  
стерти грань  
блискучий  
викликати сміх і сльози одночасно  
що створює плутанину  
на прохання глядачів  
чітко розрахований збіг обставин  
персонажі уособлюють моральні принципи  
персонажі займаються  
розумний розрахунок  
холоднокровний негідник  
Колумбіна (персонаж комедії дельарте)  
комічний  
комічна (драматична) п'єса  
комічна роль  
комічний  
диригент  
що створюється ситуацією  
дебютувати; дебют  
дебютант  
дебютантка  
перемогти сили зла  
показувати; зображати  
генеральна репетиція  
що бентежить; бентежний  
розігрувати (на сцені)  
зустрічати  
розважальний  
екстравагантне перебільшення  
казковий  
фантастичний  
найкращий художній твір  
зосереджуватися на темі кохання  
зосереджуватися на повсякденних побутових темах  
жахливо; похмуро; мертвотно  
випадково продовжуватися  
бути наслідком спроби персонажа вирішити проблему  
  
щасливий кінець  
Арлекін (персонаж комедії дельарте)  
герой  
надзвичайно маловірогідні ситуації  
ілюструвати несправедливість  
перерва  
блазень  
замінювати одні елементи на інші  
  
довгостраждальна героїня  
оповідання про кохання  
звичаї та манірність суспільства



masterpiece	шедевр
meaningless	безглуздий
medley	суміш; понурі
mock	висміювати
morbid	хворобливий; огидний
most beautiful music	найкраща музика
musical form	музична форма
noble hero	благородний герой
outcome	фінал
Pantaloone	Панталун (персонаж комедії дельарте)
powers of light	світлі сили
primary means of performance	головні засоби впраження
puppetry	ляльки
romantic	романтичний
running time	тривалість вистави
scripted	передбачений текстом п'єси
seduction	завлечення
sentimental	сентиментальний
slapstick	балаган
sorrowful	сумний; прикрий; засмучений
standard characters	типові персонажі
star-crossed lovers	нещасливі коханці; коханці, що народилися під нещасливою зіркою
stereotyped characters	стереотипні персонажі
take on a tragic fate	прийняти на себе трагічну долю
tender	ніжний
terrible	жахливий
theatrical experience	театральний досвід
treat seriously	відноситися серйозно
violent horseplay	відчайдушно галаслива гра
weird characters	дивні персонажі
wicked	недобрий; лихий
with elements of	з елементами
with musical underscoring	підкреслений засобами музичного супроводу
witty	дотепний
wondrous discovery	чудесне відкриття

## ARTISTIC STAFF AND TECHNICAL PERSONNEL -ЧЛЕНИ ХУДОЖНЬОГО КОЛЕКТИВУ ТА ТЕХНІЧНИЙ ПЕРСОНАЛ

casting director	заступник режисера з акторського складу
costume designer	художник по костюмам
director	режисер
dramaturg	драмаїург-інтерпретатор (інтерпретує п'єси для конкретної постановки)
lighting designer	художник по світлу
playwright	драматург (пише п'єси)
producer scenic	продюсер (контролює фінансування постановки)
designer	художник по декораціях
scriptwriter set	автор сценарію
designer sound	художник по декораціях
designer stage	звукорежисер
manager	розпорядник сцени

# REQUIREMENTS TO ARTISTIC STAFF-ВИМОГИ ДО ЧЛЕНІВ ХУДОЖНЬОГО КОЛЕКТИВУ

## ACTORS

adaptivity  
 attend the auditions  
 bring characters to life  
 creativity  
 demonstrate their skills to agents  
 determination  
 evidence of an interest in acting  
 full professional training at drama school  
 give consistently good performance  
 good stamina  
 learn the lines  
 liveliness  
 look for the next job  
 physical fitness  
 prepare for auditions  
 progress to larger parts  
 record of belonging to a community  
     drama group record of belonging  
 to an amateur  
     dramatic group research on  
 their characters self-discipline  
 spend time away from home  
 stage skills strong, trained  
 voice take part in productions  
 talent team spirit versatility  
 work indoors and outdoors

### Production Team

handle the creation  
 execute the production

### Other Artistic Staff

costume designer  
 responsible for actors' clothes  
 casting director  
 in charge of finding actors  
 dramaturg  
 interprets the play  
 playwright  
 writes plays  
 sound designer  
 responsible for sound effects  
 lighting designer  
 in charge of the light on the stage  
 scenic (set) designer

## АКТОРИ

здатність до адаптації  
 ходити на прослуховування  
 вдихати життя в персонажі  
 творчість  
 продемонструвати власні уміння театральним агентам  
 рішучість  
 докази зацікавленості професією актора  
 повний курс фахової підготовки у театральному училищі  
 постійно демонструвати високий акторський рівень  
 стійкість  
 запам'ятовувати текст  
 бадьорість  
 шукати наступну роль  
 добра фізична форма  
 готуватися до прослуховування  
 фахово зростати до головніших ролей  
 свідчення щодо досвіду роботи в народному театрі  
 свідчення щодо досвіду роботи в аматорському драматичному  
 гурті  
 вивчати їхні (персонажів) характери  
 самодисципліна  
 їздити у відрядження  
 сценічні уміння  
 сильний поставлений голос  
 брати участь у постановці  
 талант  
 уміння працювати в колективі  
 універсальність  
 працювати в приміщенні і просто неба

### Постановочний колектив

здійснювати створення (спектаклю)  
 здійснювати постановку **Інші члени**  
**художнього колективу художник по**  
**костюмам** відповідає за одяг акторів  
**заступник режисера з акторського складу**  
 має знаходити акторів для участі у спектаклі  
**драматург-інтерпретатор** інтерпретує п'єси  
 для конкретної постановки **драматург** пише  
 п'єси **звукорежисер**  
 відповідальний за звукове оформлення  
**художник по світлу** відповідальний за  
 освітлення сцени **художник по**  
**декораціях**

responsible for scenery, furniture etc used on a stage	відповідальний за декорації та реквізит, який використовується на сцені під час спектаклю
scriptwriter	автор сценарію
writes stories and words for a performance	пише сценарій постановки
stage manager	розпорядник сцени
in charge of technical aspects of a performance	відповідальний за технічні питання постановки на сцені
production manager	директор постановки
responsible for technical aspects of the production process	відповідальний за технічні питання процесу постановки загалом
director	режисер
gives instructions to actors and others working on a play	керує роботою акторів та інших членів художнього колективу
producer	продюсер
has general control of the money for the play	контролює фінансування постановки

## BACKGROUND INFORMATION - ФОНОВІ ЗПАННЯ

**Kabuki** - a type of Japanese drama: tragic, slow-paced, almost plotless, integrating music, movement, masks and language, and using only male actors.

**Sanskrit drama** (1500 BC - 1100 AD) - involved music, dance and highly stylized gestures and costumes, full of religious and supernatural elements, focused on love and heroism.

**Chinese drama** - conventionalized acting style, character types and stage properties, the lines used to be sung or declaimed until the 19<sup>th</sup> century, mostly social and pathetic, less concerned with love.

**Mummers' play** - a masked pantomime.

**Lope de Vega** (1562-1635) - Spanish dramatist, poet and novelist, father of modern drama, wrote about 1800 plays.

**Constantin Stanislavski** (1863-1938) - Russian theatrical director, actor and teacher, developed innovative technique for actors based on emotional truth and inner motivation.

**Bertold Brecht** (1898-1956) - German dramatist and poet, father of 'epic theatre' that attempted (through the use of bright lines, films etc) to establish a politically conscious distance between the actors and the audience.

Кабукі-видяпонського театру: трагічний зміст, повільний розвиток дії, майже без сюжету, художні засоби: музика, рух, маски, мова; актори - лише чоловіки.

**Санскритський театр** (1500 до н.е. - 1100 н.е.) - художні засоби: музика, танці та надзвичайно стилізовані жести і костюми; насичений релігійними та надприродними елементами, головні теми: кохання та героїзм.

**Китайський театр** - стереотипізовані персонажі, сцена і акторська техніка, до XIX-го століття актори співали або декламували текст, головні теми: соціальні проблеми і патетика, кохання розглядалося як другорядна проблема.

**Блазеньський театр** - пантоміма в масках.

**Лопе де Вега** (1562-1635) - іспанський драматург, поет і романіст, батько сучасної драми, написав близько 1 800 п'єс.

**Костянтин Станіславський** (1863-1938) - російський театральний режисер, актор і педагог, розробив передову теорію акторської майстерності, що ґрунтується на щирості акторських емоцій та внутрішній мотивації.

**Бертольд Брехт** (1898-1956) - німецький драматург і поет, батько "епічного театру", який намагався (за допомогою яскравих ліній, використання елементів кіно тощо) встановити тісніший і політично усвідомлений контакт глядачів з акторами.

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH THEATRICAL GENRES - TYPES OF THEATRE

комедія

комедія дель арте (староіталійський театр з кількома персонажами - Арлекін, Колумбіна тощо - і типовими сюжетами)

комедія ситуацій

мелодрама

мета-театр (у якому глядачів залучають до дії, внаслідок чого сама дія розвивається значною мірою непередбачувано)

музична комедія

музичний театр

comedy

commedia dell'arte

comedy of situation (sitcom)

melodrama

meta-theatre

musical comedy

musical theatre

невербальний театр (у якому ідеї передаються не словами, а іншими засобами - танцями, жестами тощо)	physical theatre
оперета	musical comedy
п'єса з мораллю (алегорія, де персонажі уособлюють моральні принципи)	morality play
пантоміма	pantomime domestic
побутова драма	drama rock opera
рок-опера	romantic comedy comedy
романтична комедія	of manners theatre for
сатпрична комедія	social change theatre of
соціальний театр (в центрі уваги - соціальні проблеми)	absurd musical theatre
театр абсурду	tragedy tragicomedy
театр оперети	farce fantasy
трагедія	
трагікомедія	
фарс	black comedy
феитезі (жапр, у якому герой шукає засіб боротьби з темними силами, під час пошуків зустрічається з фантастичними істотами і ситуаціями)	
чорна комедія	

#### СЛОВА ДЛЯ ОИИСУ ТЕАТРАЛЬНИХ ИОСТАИОВОК ТОЩО -WORDS TO DESCRIBE THEATRE

абсурд(ний)	absurd
алегорія	allegory
Арлекін (персонаж комедії дельарте)	Harlequine
балаган	slapstick
безглуздий	meaningless
бентежний	embarrassing
благородний герой	noble hero
блазень	jester
блискучий	brilliant
бути наслідком спроби персонажа вирішити проблему	grow out of a character's attempt to solve a problem
викликати сміх і сльози одночасно	bring together laughter and tears
викрадення (людей)	abduction
випадково продовжуватися	go on by accident
висміювати	mock
відноситися серйозно	treat seriously
відчайдушно галаслива гра	violent horseplay
генеральна репетиція	dress rehearsal
герой	heroic individual
гірко-солодкий	bittersweet
головні засоби вираження	primary means of performance
дебют	debut
дебютант	debutant
дебютантка	debutante
дебютувати	debut
дивні персонажі	weird characters
дпригент	conductor
довгостраждальна героїня	long-suffering heroine
дотепний	witty
екстравагантне перебільшення	extravagant exaggeration

жахливий	terrible
жахливо	ghastly
з елементами	with elements of
замінювати одні елементи на інші	juxtapose some elements with different ones
засмучений	sorrowful
зваблення	seduction
звертатися до соціальної проблеми	address a social issue
звичаї та манірність суспільства	manners and affectations of a society
зірковий акторський склад	all-star cast
зосереджуватися на повсякденних побутових темах	focus on the everyday domestic lives
зосереджуватися на темі кохання	focus on love
зустрічати	encounter
ілюструвати несправедливість	illustrate injustice.
казковий	fabulous
Колумбіна (персонаж комедії дельарте)	Columbine
комічна (драматична) п'єса	comic (dramatic) piece
комічна роль	comic role
комічний	comic
комічний	comical
коханці, що народилися під нещасливою зіркою	star-crossed lovers
ляльки	puppetry
мертвотно	ghastly
музична форма	musical form
на межі нервового зриву	at a fever pitch
на прохання глядачів	by popular demand
надзвичайно маловірогідні ситуації	highly improbable situations
найкраща музика	most beautiful music
найкращий художній твір	finest transcript
недобрий; лихий	wicked
нещасливі коханці	star-crossed lovers
ніжний	tender
огидний	morbid
оповідання про кохання	love story
Панталун (персонаж комедії дельарте)	Pantaloon
передбачений текстом п'єси	scripted
перемогти сили зла	defeat the powers of evil
перерва	intermission
персонажі займаються	characters are engaged in
персонажі уособлюють моральні принципи	characters are abstractions of moral ideas
підкреслений засобами музичного супроводу	with musical underscoring
повністю відповідати бажанням героя	answer precisely to the hero's wishes
показувати; зображати	depict
попурі	medley
похмуро	ghastly
прийняти на себе трагічну долю	take on a tragic fate
прикрий	sorrowful
розважальний	entertaining
розігрувати (на сцені)	enact
розумний розрахунок	clever scheming
романтичний	romantic
світлі сили	powers of light
сентиментальний	sentimental

стереотипні персонажі	stereotyped characters
стерти грань	blur the line
суміш	medley
сумний	sorrowful
театральний досвід	theatrical experience
типові персонажі	standard characters
типові сюжети	basic plots
тривалість вистави	running time
фантастичний	fantastic
фінал	outcome
хворобливий	morbid
холоднокровний негідник	cold-blooded villain
чітко розрахований збіг обставин	calculated coincidence
чудесне відкриття	wondrous discovery
шедевр	masterpiece
щасливий кінець	happy ending
що бентежить	embarrassing
що створює плутанину	bumbling
що створюється ситуацією	created by a situation

#### ЧЛЕНИ ХУДОЖНЬОГО КОЛЕКТИВУ ТА ТЕХНІЧНИЙ ПЕРСОНАЛ ARTISTIC STAFF AND TECHNICAL PERSONNEL

автор сценарію	scriptwriter
драматург (пише п'єси)	playwright
драматург-інтерпретатор (інтерпретує п'єси для конкретної постановки)	dramaturg
заступник режисера з акторського складу	casting director
звукорежисер	sound designer
продюсер (контролює фінансування постановки)	producer
режисер	director
розпорядник сцени	stage manager
художник по декораціях	scenic designer
художник по декораціях	set designer
художник по костюмам	costume designer
художник по світлу	lighting designer

#### ВНМОГН ДО ЧЛЕНІВ ХУДОЖНЬОГО КОЛЕКТИВУ - REQUIREMENTS TO ARTISTIC STAFF

##### АКТОРИ

##### ACTORS

бадьорість	liveliness
брати участь у постановці	take part in productions
вдихати життя в персонажі	bring characters to life
вивчати їхні (персонажів) характери	research on their characters
готуватися до прослуховування	prepare for auditions
добра фізична форма	physical fitness
докази зацікавленості професією актора	evidence of an interest in acting
запам'ятовувати текст	learn the lines
здатність до адаптації	adaptivity
їздити у відрядження	spend time away from home
повний курс фахової підготовки у театральному училищі	full professional training at drama school

постійно демонструвати високий акторський рівень  
працювати в приміщенні і просто неба  
продемонструвати власні уміння театральним  
агентам  
рішучість  
самодисципліна  
свідчення щодо досвіду роботи в аматорському  
драматичному гуртці  
свідчення щодо досвіду роботи в народному театрі  
сильний поставлений голос  
стійкість  
сценічні уміння  
талант  
творчість  
уміння працювати в колективі  
універсальність  
фахово зростати до головніших ролей  
ходити на прослуховування  
шукати наступну роль

#### **Постановочний колектив**

здійснювати створення (спектаклю)

здійснювати постановку

#### **Інші члени художнього колективу**

художник по костюмам

відповідає за одяг акторів

**заступник режисера з акторського складу**

має знаходити акторів для участі у спектаклі

**драматург-інтерпретатор**

інтерпретує п'єси для конкретної постановки

**драматург**

пише п'єси

**звукорежисер**

відповідальний за звукове оформлення

**художник по світлу**

відповідальний за освітлення сцени

**художник по декораціях**

відповідальний за декорації та реквізит, який  
використовується на сцені під час спектаклю

**автор сценарію**

пише сценарій постановки

**розпорядник сцени**

відповідальний за технічні питання постановки на сцені

**директор постановки**

відповідальний за технічні питання процесу  
постановки загалом

**режисер**

керує роботою акторів та інших членів художнього  
колективу

**продюсер**

контролює фінансування постановки

**give consistently good performance**

**work indoors and outdoors**

**demonstrate their skills to agents**

**determination**

**self-discipline**

**record of belonging to an amateur dramatic  
group**

**record of belonging to a community drama group**

**strong, trained voice**

**good stamina**

**stage skills**

**talent**

**creativity**

**team spirit**

**versatility**

**progress to larger parts**

**attend the auditions**

**look for the next job**

#### **Production Team**

**handle the creation**

**execute the production**

#### **Other Artistic Staff**

**costume designer**

**responsible for actors' clothes**

**casting director**

**in charge of finding actors**

**dramaturg**

**interprets the play**

**playwright**

**writes plays**

**sound designer**

**responsible for sound effects**

**lighting designer**

**in charge of the light on the stage**

**scenic (set) designer**

**responsible for scenery, furniture etc used on a stage**

**scriptwriter**

**writes stories and words for a performance**

**stage manager**

**in charge of technical aspects of a performance**

**production manager**

**responsible for technical aspects of the production  
process**

**director**

**gives instructions to actors and others working on a  
play**

**producer**

**has general control of the money for the play**

PART 3  
ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN  
BROADWAY OFFICIAL OPENINGS - ОФІЦІЙНІ ПРЕМ'ЄРН НА БРОДВЕї

blatant	галасливий
Break a leg!	Ні нуха, ні пера!
congratulatory telegram	вітальна телеграма
critic	критик
die-hard	впертий
embroider	вишивати
final pep talk	останні настанови режисера
first night	прем'єра
glamorous	ефектний
glowing	палкий
Gypsy Robe	циганська мантия (полотняна мантия, на якій вишивається назви мюзиклів, які ставилися в театрі, аж поки не залишиться місця, і тоді заводять нову мантию. Перед прем'єрою її на щастя носить найстарший актор трупи)
inconspicuous	непомітний
late preview	попередній (закритий) перегляд вистави
lavish leap	розкішний; помпезний
main credit page	скочити
memento mob	сторінка (частина) афіші, де перелічуються найвизначніші учасники вистави
Museum of the City of New York's Theater	пам'ятний знак
opening night opt	юрмитися
outright bad review	Театральний музей міста Нью-Йорка
playbill premier publicity	прем'єра
quote rave review	віддавати перевагу
standing ovation	відверто критичний відзив
	театральна афіша
	прем'єра
	реклама
adagio	цитувати
at full throttle	захоплений відзив
baton	рецензія
bright spot	бурхливі оплески стоячи
cachet	
cardboard	SWAN LAKE - ЛЕБЕДИНЕ ОЗЕРО
consistent	
drably	адажіо
expansive	безупинно
expressive	паличка диригента
faintly	промінь світла
fancily	фірмовий знак
female corps	картон
get off on the wrong foot	постійний
hesitantly	одноманітний; сірий; монотонний
	нестримний
	виразний; експресивний
	ледь
	вигадливий
	жіноча група (балету)
	невдало почати
	непевно



<b>hit the shores</b>	висаджуватися на узбережжя
<b>impresario</b>	імпресаріо
<b>launch a tour</b>	починати гастролі
<b>luscious</b>	соковитий
<b>mama's boy</b>	мамин синочок
<b>menace</b>	загроза
<b>move with the same breath</b>	рухатися в унісон
<b>nominate for</b>	висувати на (премію тощо)
<b>pack</b>	юрба
<b>pas de trios</b>	па-де-труа
<b>pliant</b>	гпучкий
<b>pride of place</b>	козирна карта
<b>ridiculous</b>	сміховинний
<b>second-tier</b>	другий ешелон
<b>set against</b>	що проходить на тлі
<b>shrunk</b>	зіщулений; що зменшився у розмірі
<b>slouch</b>	незграба
<b>star attraction</b>	головна зірка вистави
<b>sure-footed</b>	твердими ногами
<b>torso</b>	торс; верхня частина тулуба
<b>wet finish</b>	плаксивий кінець
<b>whip through</b>	прокрутитися
<b>windswept</b>	що продувається вітрами
<b>wrapped</b>	закутаний

## REVIEW - ТЕАТРАЛЬНА РЕЦЕНЗІЯ

### INTRODUCTION - ВСТУП

**It brings together the on-stage partnership of...  
It is a drama/tragedy/melodrama/comedy... It  
is a fizzing and sizzling story It is a romantic  
bittersweet comedy**

**It is a story of rags to riches and back again**

**It is excellently tuned into music**

**It is from one of the directors of...**

**It makes your body want to dance**

**It makes your feet tap**

**It will likely hold the attention of...**

**It's hard to see this play appealing to...**

**The play is based upon...**

**The play is directed by...**

**The play is set in...**

**The production is a collaboration between...**

**The script was written by...**

**The theatre lacks the cachet of...**

**The theatre leads the pack of second-tier  
international classical companies There's not  
much here for... This is the Northwest  
premiere This play is suitable for... This well-  
staged/fascinating play tells the story of.**

Вистава звела на сцені...

Це драма/трагедія/мелодрама/комедія...

Це жвава і запальна історія

Це романтична солодка комедія з гіркуватим  
присмаком

Це історія попелюшки, що перетворюється на  
принцесу, а потім - знов на попелюшку

Музичне оформлення вистави відмінне

Виставу поставив один з режисерів...

Музика така, що тіло так і рветься піти в танок

Музика змушує притунувати в такт

Вона напевно приверне увагу...

Важко уявити, що вистава сподобається...

П'єса ґрунтується на...

П'єсу поставив режисер...

Дія п'єси відбувається в...

Вистава є спільним виробництвом...

Сценарій написаний...

Театру бракує фірмового лоску...

Театр очолює низку міжнародних класичних труп  
другого ешелону

В ній небагато цікавого для...

Це прем'єра вистави на північному заході

Вистава підходить для...

Ця добре поставлена вистава розказує історію...

## MAIN POINTS OF THE PLOT - ГОЛОВНИЙ ЗМІСТ СЮЖЕТУ

The story begins...  
The play begins with/concerns/is about...  
The plot/play focuses on...  
The plot is rather trivial/ exciting/thrilling  
The plot has an unexpected twist  
The play reaches a dramatic climax  
The last piece of the jigsaw falls into place  
He lacks a certain something ...  
In the club comes ...

Дія починається...  
Вистава починається/стосується/розповідає про...  
Сюжет/вистава зосереджується на...  
Фабула є досить тривіальною/ цікавою/захоплюючою  
Сюжет має несподіваний поворот...  
Дія сягає драматичної кульмінації...  
Останній елемент головоломки знаходить своє місце...  
Йому чогось бракує...  
До клубу приходить...

## GENERAL COMMENTS - ЗАГАЛЬНІ КОМЕНТАРИ

acting and vocal work are disappointing  
attentive partner  
background detail isn't as rich as...  
broad smile  
cardboard mama's boy  
characters could have been voiced by  
almost anyone characters in ...  
looked better consistent bright  
spot drably designed dream of  
an Odette dynamic  
excellently portraying the growth of...  
expansive yet detailed style expectations  
were raised higher and  
fulfilled expressive arms faintly  
ridiculous fast and fancily gilded third act  
happy ending Her acting talent and her  
singing voice are  
exhilarating Her skill is to do this with  
the merest look  
and gesture hesitantly danced It got  
off on slightly the wrong foot It has  
all the world in it It was her triumph  
lack magnetism luscious jumps  
meltingly slow menace  
move with the same breath not  
always sure-footed notably light  
landings orchestra responded  
sensitively  
to the conductor's baton  
pleasing pliant torso real  
artist Sara Poyzer as Teena  
shines

гра акторів і вокал розчаровують  
уважний партнер  
деталі заднього плану не такі пишні, як...  
шпрока посмішка  
картонний мамин синок  
розмовляти так, як це роблять дійові особи на сцені,  
міг би будь-хто  
персонажі в . . . виглядали краще  
незмінно блискуча гра (актора)  
одноманітно оформлений  
Одетта, про яку можна тільки мріяти  
динамічний  
переконливо показує розвиток...  
нестримний, але точний в деталях стиль  
рівень очікувань піднявся і справдився  
  
виразні руки  
трохи сміховинний  
швидкий і химерно прикрашений третій акт  
щасливий кінець  
її акторський талант і вокальні дані просто  
запаморочливі  
її уміння полягає в тому, що вона передає це самим  
лише поглядом і жестом  
непевно затанцьований  
Вистава почалася, як мокре горить  
Це передає усе на світі  
Це був її тріумф  
бракувати магнетизму  
вражаючі стрибки  
повільний, як маляс  
загроза  
рухатися в унісон  
не завжди твердими ногами  
вражає легкі приземлення  
оркестр тонко реагував на рухи диригентської палички  
  
приємний  
гучкий торс  
справжній художник  
Сара Пойзер у ролі Тіни грає блискуче

shrunk stage  
slouch  
star attraction  
suit one's temperament  
The cast is brilliant/unconvincing/weak/awful

The characters are a step back from...

The interaction between her and him has chemistry  
The play has a funny/ unexpected/sad/tragic end

The play is rather confusing/long/slow/dynamic/  
full of thrilling moments  
The script is poorly written/clever/dull there's an exaggeratedly cartoonish appearance to...  
voices are non-descript  
wet finish  
whip through at full throttle  
wrapped in tragic melancholia

сцена, яка зменшилася у розмірах  
незграба  
зірковий актор (актриса тощо)  
відповідати чийомусь темпераменту  
Актори грають блискуче/непереконливо/слабо/ жахливо  
Рівень розробленості характерів дійових осіб нижчий, порівняно з...  
їхні взаємовідносини породжують якусь магію

Вистава має кумедний/несподіваний/сумний/ трагічний кінець  
Вистава досить заплутана/довга/повільна/динамічна/ наповнена хвилюючими моментами  
Сценарій написаний недбало/продумано/пудно виглядають надмірно мультяшними...

голоси нехарактерні  
плаксивий кінець  
відтанцювала вихором на максимальній швидкості  
запурений у трагічну меланхолію

## CONCLUSION - ВИСНОВОК

Don't miss it  
Give this play a pass because...  
I had to struggle to stop myself bopping in the aisles  
I highly recommend seeing it  
I really enjoyed it  
I would not recommend it as...  
In general  
It is a highly entertaining play  
It is a waste of time  
It is bound to be a box-office hit  
It is double value for your ticket price  
It is not especially entertaining  
It made me laugh and cry  
It will change the way you see life  
It's a bore to watch  
The play is well worth seeing  
The problem here is that  
The production will make money  
This is a visit to a club as well as the theatre

Не пропустіть  
Цю виставу краще пропустити, бо ...  
Я ледве стримувався, аби не затанцювати у прохіді  
Я дуже рекомендую подивитися п'єсу  
Я отримав справжню насолоду  
Я б не рекомендував вам ходити на цю виставу, бо.. загалом  
Надзвичайно цікава п'єса  
Марно витратите час  
Вистава неодмінно стане театральним хітом  
Два задоволення за один квиток  
Вистава не надто цікава  
Гра акторів змушувала то плакати, то сміятися  
Це змінить ваші погляди на життя  
Нудне видовище  
Виставу варто подивитися  
Проблема полягає в тому, що  
Вистава принесе прибуток  
Ви сходите не тільки до театру, а й до клубу одночасно

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH ОФІЦІЙНІ ПРЕМ'ЄРНІ НА БРОДВЕЙ - BROADWAY OFFICIAL OPENINGS

бурхливі оплески стоячи  
вишивати  
відверто критичний відзив  
віддавати перевагу  
вітальна телеграма  
впертий  
галасливий

standing ovation  
embroider  
outright bad review  
opt  
congratulatory telegram  
die-hard  
blatant

ефектний	glamorous
захоплений відзив	rave
критик	critic
непомітний	inconspicuous
Ні нуха, ні пера!	Break a leg!
останні настанови режисера	final pep talk
палкий	glowing
пам'ятний знак	memento
помпезний	lavish
попередній (закритий) перегляд вистави	late preview
прем'єра	first night; opening night; premier
реклама	publicity
рецензія	review
розкішний	lavish
скочити	leap
сторінка (частина) афіші, де перелічуються найвизначніші учасники вистави	main credit page
театральна афіша	playbill
Театральний музей міста Нью-Йорка	Museum of the City of New York's Theater Gypsy
циганська мантия (полотняна мантия, на якій вишивається назви мюзиклів, які ставилися в театрі, аж поки не залишиться місця, і тоді заводять нову мантию. Перед прем'єрою її на щастя носить найстарший актор трупи)	Robe
цитувати	quote
юрмитися	mob

#### ЛЕБЕДИНЕ ОЗЕРО - SWAN LAKE

адажіо	adagio
безупинно	at full throttle
вигадливий	fancily
виразний	expressive
висаджуватися на узбережжя	hit the shores
висувати на (премію тощо)	nominate for
гпучкий	pliant
головна зірка вистави	star attraction
другий ешелон	second-tier
експресивний	expressive
жіноча група (балету)	female corps
загроза	menace
закутаний	wrapped
зіщулений	shrunk
імпресаріо	impresario
картон	cardboard
козирна карта	pride of place
ледь	faintly
мамин синочок	mama's boy
монотонний	drably
невдало почати	get off on the wrong foot
незграба	slouch
непевно	hesitantly
нестримний	expansive
одноманітний	drably
па-де-труса	pas de trios

паличка диригента  
плаксивий кінець  
постійний  
починати гастролі  
прокрутитися  
промінь світла  
рухатися в унісон  
сірий  
сміховинний  
соковитий  
твердими ногами  
торс (верхня частина тулуба)  
фірмовий знак  
що зменшився у розмірі  
що продувається вітрами  
що проходить на тлі  
юрба

baton  
wet finish  
consistent  
launch a tour  
whip through  
bright spot  
move with the same breath  
drably  
ridiculous  
luscious  
sure-footed  
torso  
cachet  
shrunk  
windswept  
set against  
pack

## ТЕАТРАЛЬНА РЕЦЕНЗІЯ - REVIEW

### ВСТУП - INTRODUCTION

В ній небагато цікавого для...  
Важко уявити, що вистава сподобається...  
Вистава є спільним виробництвом...  
Вистава звела на сцені...  
Вистава підходить для...  
Виставу поставив один з режисерів...  
Вона напевно приверне увагу...  
Дія п'єси відбувається в...  
Музика змушує притупувати в такт  
Музика така, що тіло так і рветься піти в танок  
Музичне оформлення вистави відмінне  
П'єса ґрунтується на...  
П'єсу поставив режисер...  
Сценарій написаний...  
Театр очолює низку міжнародних класичних  
труп другого ешелону  
Театру бракує фірмового лоску...  
Це драма/трагедія/мелодрама/комедія...  
Це жвава і запальна історія  
Це історія попелюшки, що перетворюється на  
принцесу, а потім - знов на попелюшку  
Це прем'єра вистави на північному заході  
Це романтична солодка комедія з гіркуватим  
присмаком  
Ця добре поставлена вистава розказує історію...

There's not much here for...  
It's hard to see this play appealing to...  
The production is a collaboration between...  
It brings together the on-stage partnership of...  
This play is suitable for...  
It is from one of the directors of...  
It will likely hold the attention of...  
The play is set in...  
It makes your feet tap  
It makes your body want to dance  
It is excellently tuned into music  
The play is based upon...  
The play is directed by...  
The script was written by...  
The theatre leads the pack of second-tier international  
classical companies  
The theatre lacks the cachet of...  
It is a drama/tragedy/melodrama/comedy...  
It is a fizzing and sizzling story  
It is a story of rags to riches and back again  
  
This is the Northwest premiere It is  
a romantic bittersweet comedy  
  
This well-staged/fascinating play tells the story of...

### ГОЛОВНИЙ ЗМІСТ СЮЖЕТУ - MAIN POINTS OF THE PLOT

Дія починається...  
Вистава починається/стосується/розповідає про...  
Сюжет/вистава зосереджується на...  
Фабула є досить тривіальною/ цікавою/  
захоплюючою

The story begins...  
The play begins with/concerns/is about...  
The plot/play focuses on...  
The plot is rather trivial/ exciting/thrilling

Сюжет має несподіваний поворот...  
 Дія сягає драматичної кульмінації...  
 Останній елемент головоломки знаходить своє місце...  
 Йому чогось бракує...  
 До клубу приходить...

**The plot has an unexpected twist**  
**The play reaches a dramatic climax**  
**The last piece of the jigsaw falls into place**  
**He lacks a certain something ...**  
**In the club comes ...**

### ЗАГАЛЬНІ КОМЕНТАРІ - GENERAL COMMENTS

Актори грають блискуче/непереконливо/слабо/ жахливо  
 бракувати магнетизму  
 виглядають надмірно мультяшними...  
 виразні руки  
 Вистава досить заплутана/довга/повільна/ динамічна/ наповнена хвилюючими моментами  
 Вистава має кумедний/несподіваний/сумний/ трагічний кінець  
 Вистава почалася, як мокро горить  
 відповідати чийомусь темпераменту  
 відтанцювала вихором на максимальній швидкості  
 вражаюче легкі приземлення  
 вражаючі стрибки  
 гнучкий торс  
 голоси нехарактерні  
 гра акторів і вокал розчаровують  
 деталі заднього плану не такі пишні, як...  
 динамічний  
 загроза  
 запурений у трагічну меланхолію  
 зірковий актор (актриса тощо)  
 її акторський талант і вокальні дані просто запаморочливі  
 її уміння полягає в тому, що вона передає це самим лише поглядом і жестом  
 їхні взаємовідносини породжують якусь магію  
 картонний мамин синок  
 не завжди твердими ногами  
 незграба  
 незмінно блискуча гра/актор  
 непевно затанцьований  
 нестримний, але точний в деталях стиль  
 Одетта, про яку можна тільки мріяти  
 одноманітно оформлений  
 Оркестр тонко реагував на рухи диригентської палички  
 Переконливо показує розвиток...  
 персонажі в виглядали краще  
 плаксивий кінець  
 повільний, як маляс  
 приємний  
 Рівень очікувань піднявся і справдився  
 Рівень розробленості характерів дійових осіб нижчий, порівняно з...

**The cast is brilliant/unconvincing/weak/awful**  
**lack magnetism**  
**there's an exaggeratedly cartoonish appearance to... expressive arms**  
**The play is rather confusing/long/slow/dynamic/full of thrilling moments**  
**The play has a funny/ unexpected/sad/tragic end**  
**It got off on slightly the wrong foot**  
**suit one's temperament whip**  
**through at full throttle**  
**notably light landings**  
**luscious jumps**  
**pliant torso**  
**voices are non-descript**  
**acting and vocal work are disappointing**  
**background detail isn't as rich as...**  
**dynamic**  
**menace**  
**wrapped in tragic melancholia**  
**star attraction**  
**Her acting talent and her singing voice are exhilarating**  
**Her skill is to do this with the merest look and gesture**  
**The interaction between her and him has chemistry**  
**cardboard mama's boy**  
**not always sure-footed**  
**slouch**  
**consistent bright spot**  
**hesitantly danced**  
**expansive yet detailed style**  
**dream of an Odette**  
**drabably designed**  
**orchestra responded sensitively to the conductor's baton**  
**Excellently portraying the growth of...**  
**characters in looked better**  
**wet finish**  
**meltingly slow**  
**pleasing**  
**expectations were raised higher and fulfilled**  
**The characters are a step back from**

розмовляти так, як це роблять дійові особи на сцені, міг би будь-хто  
 рухатися в унісон  
 Сара Пойзер у ролі Тіни грає блискуче  
 справжній художник  
 сцена, яка зменшилася у розмірах  
 Сценарій написаний недбало/продумано/пудно  
 трохи сміховинний  
 уважний партнер  
 Це був її тріумф  
 Це передає усе на світі  
 Швидкий і химерно прикрашений третій акт  
 шпирока посмішка  
 щасливий кінець

**characters could have been voiced by almost anyone**  
**move with the same breath**  
**Sara Poyzer as Teena shines**  
**real artist**  
**shrunk stage**  
**The script is poorly written/clever/dull**  
**faintly ridiculous**  
**attentive partner**  
**It was her triumph**  
**It has all the world in it**  
**fast and fancily gilded third act**  
**broad smile**  
**happy ending**

## ВИСНОВОК - CONCLUSION

Ви сходите не тільки до театру, а й до клубу  
 одночасно  
 Вистава не надто цікава  
 Вистава неодмінно стане театральним хітом  
 Вистава принесе прибуток  
 Виставу варто подивитися  
 Гра акторів змушувала то плакати, то сміятися  
 Два задоволення за один квиток  
 загалом  
 Марно витратите час  
 Надзвичайно цікава п'єса  
 Не пропустіть  
 Нудне видовище  
 Проблема полягає в тому, що  
 Це змінить ваші погляди на життя  
 Цю виставу краще пропустити  
 Я б не рекомендував вам ходити на цю виставу, бо...  
 Я дуже рекомендую подивитися п'єсу

**This is a visit to a club as well as the theatre**  
**It is not especially entertaining**  
**It is bound to be a box-office hit**  
**The production will make money**  
**The play is well worth seeing**  
**It made me laugh and cry**  
**It is double value for your ticket price**  
**In general**  
**It is a waste of time**  
**It is a highly entertaining play**  
**Don't miss it**  
**It's a bore to watch**  
**The problem here is that**  
**It will change the way you see life**  
**Give this play a pass because...**  
**I would not recommend it as...**  
**I highly recommend seeing it**

## LESSON 2

### PART I

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

<b>account for</b>	припадати на; бути відповідальним за
<b>admittedly</b>	правду кажучи
<b>annual</b>	щорічний
<b>celebrity</b>	знаменитість, видатна людина
<b>command</b>	коштувати, приносити, давати
<b>contender</b>	суперник, претендент, кандидат
<b>durable</b>	тривалий, довгочасний
<b>elaborate</b>	складний, мистецьки зроблений
<b>elated</b>	радісний, у піднесеному настрої
<b>enduring</b>	безсмертний, витривалий
<b>exquisite</b>	витончений
<b>feature</b>	зображувати, виводити в головній ролі
<b>head for</b>	прямувати

holdover	п'єса, що залишилася в репертуарі від попередніх сезонів
lure	спокуса, принада
megabit	суперхіт
noteworthy	вартий уваги, визначний
notorious	сумнозвісний, загальновідомий
outstrip	випереджати, перевищувати
perennial	вічний, нев'янучий
predict	передбачати, проорокувати
produce	ставити п'єсу
reap	знімати врожай, пожинати плоди
revenue	річний дохід
revival	відродження, відновлення
run	іти (про п'єсу, фільм)
show	спектакль, вистава
stage	підмостки, сцена
unwavering	непорушний, непохитний

### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

безсмертний	enduring
бути відповідальним за	account for
вартий уваги	noteworthy
виводити в головній ролі	feature
видатна людина	celebrity
визначний	noteworthy
випереджати	outstrip
вистава	show
витончений	exquisite
витривалий	enduring
відновлення	revival
відродження	revival
вічний	perennial
давати	command
довгочасний	durable
дохід (річний)	revenue
загальновідомий	notorious
знаменитість	celebrity
знімати врожай	reap
зображувати	feature
іти (про п'єсу, фільм)	run
кандидат	contender
коштувати	command
мистецьки зроблений	elaborate
нев'япучий	perennial
непорушний	unwavering
непохитний	unwavering
п'єса, що залишилася в репертуарі від попередніх сезонів	holdover
перевищувати	outstrip
передбачати	predict
пожинати плоди	reap
правду кажучи	admittedly
претендент	contender
принада	lure
приносити	command
припадати на	account for



проорокувати  
прямувати  
радісний  
складний  
спектакль  
спокуса  
ставити п'єсу  
сумнозвісний  
суперник  
суперхіт  
сцена  
тривалий  
у піднесеному настрої  
щорічний

predict  
head for  
elated  
elaborate  
show  
lure  
produce  
notorious  
contender  
megabit  
stage  
durable  
elated  
annual

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

affirm  
artist  
attraction  
award  
beset  
bountiful  
bygone  
consumer  
convey  
customary  
defy  
depict  
diverse  
fathom  
hesitant  
in keeping with  
incomprehensible  
keep up with  
lyrics  
market  
marketing  
memorable  
mess  
meticulous  
persuade  
relevant  
robust  
shimmer  
shrewd  
splendid  
staging  
technique  
trademark  
tune  
veer  
waif

стверджувати, підтверджувати  
художник, митець  
принада  
нагорода  
перепиняти  
щедрий  
минулий, колишній  
споживач, клієнт  
передавати, висловлювати  
звичайний, звичний  
не піддаватися (поясненню)  
зображувати  
різний, різноманітний  
розуміти, збагнути  
нерішучий, що вагається  
відповідно  
незрозумілий, неясний  
не відставати  
лірика, слова пісні  
продавати, збувати  
торгівля, продаж, збут  
пам'ятний, незабутній  
безладдя, гармидер, плутанина  
прискіпливий, педантичний, ретельний  
перекопувати, схилати  
доречний, релевантний  
міцний, здоровий, сильний  
мерехтіти, блимати, блищати  
проникливий, хитрий, дотепний  
чудовий, розкішний  
постановка п'єси, платформа  
методика, прийом  
фабрична марка, фірмовий знак  
мелодія, мотив  
змінювати напрям, робити віраж  
безпритульна дитина

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

безладдя	mess
безпритульна дитина	waif
блимати	shimmer
блищати	shimmer
відповідно	in keeping with
гармидер	mess
доречний	relevant
живучий	robust
збагнути	fathom
збувати	market
збут	marketing
звичний	customary
здоровий	robust
змінювати напрям	veer
зображувати	depict
колишній	bygone
мелодія	tune
мерехтіти	shimmer
методика	technique
мипулий	bygone
митець	artist
мотив	tune
нагорода	award
не відставати	keep up with
не піддаватися (поясненню)	defy
незабутній	memorable
незрозумілий	incomprehensible
нерішучий	hesitant
пам'ятний	memorable
педантичний	meticulous
передавати	convey
переконувати	persuade
перепиняти	beset
підтверджувати	affirm
платформа	staging
плутанина	mess
постановка п'єси	staging
прийом	technique
принада	attraction
прискіпливий	meticulous
продавати	market
продаж	marketing
проникливий	shrewd
ретельний	meticulous
різноманітний	diverse
робити віраж	veer
розкішний	splendid
сильний	robust
слова пісні	lyrics
споживач	consumer
схиляти	persuade
торгівля	marketing
фабрична марка	trademark
фірмовий знак	trademark

хитрий	shrewd
художник	artist
чудовий	splendid
щедрий	bountiful
що вагається	hesitant

### LESSON 3 PART 1

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### FILM PRODUCTION - КІНОВИРОБНИЦТВО

celluloid film	целулоїдна кіноплівка
dubbing	дублювання
exhibitor	особа, яка організовує показ фільму
filmmaker	кіновпробник
location scouting	попереднє обстеження місця зйомок; рекогносцирування місця зйомок
motion pictures camera	кінознімальна камера
motion pictures projector	кінопроектор
moving pictures show	кіносеанс
pre-production	допостановочний (етап тощо)
reel	ролик кіноплівки
screen	екран
script	постановочний кіносценарій
set construction	приготування декорацій
shooting	зйомки (знімання) фільму
shooting schedule	розклад зйомок (знімання)
storyboard	план візуального ряду фільму
troubleshoot	шукати і виявляти недоліки
underlying principle	принцип, на якому ґрунтується...

#### FILMMAKING PROFESSIONALS - ФАХІВЦІ, ЗАЙНЯТІ У КІНОВИРОБНИЦТВІ

Alan Smithee	Алан Сміті (псевдонім, який пишуть у тиграх, якщо режисер не дозволяє використовувати своє ім'я)
art director	художній режисер
camera operator	оператор
cast	акторський склад
casting director	режисер, що відповідає за акторський склад
cinematographer	режисер-оператор
composer	композитор
crew	знімальна група
designer	художник (-постановник, по декораціях, костюмах тощо)
director	режисер-постановник
director of photography	режисер-оператор
film editor	редактор фільму
lead actor	актор, що грає головну роль
producer	продюсер
production designer	художник-постановник
screenwriter	сценарист
set decorator	художник по декораціях
sound editor	звукорежисер; звукоредактор
storyboard artist	художник, який готує план візуального ряду фільму
visual editor	редактор візуального ряду фільму

## TYPES OF SHOTS - ВІДН ПЛАНІВ

shot's perspective	перспектива (ступінь віддаленості) об'єкта зйомки
camera angle	точка зйомки
establishing shot long	панорама
shot medium shot	загальний план
over-the shoulder shot	середньокрупний план
close up (shot)	план, знятий через плече актора
	крупний план

## EDITING AND ASSEMBLING - РЕДАГУВАННЯ ТА МОНТАЖ

assemble	здійснювати монтаж
assembling the scene	монтаж сцени
cut	вирізання (фрагментів фільму); монтаж
cut scenes	вирізані з фільму сцени
director's cut	режисерський монтаж
edited scenes	відредаговані сцени
editing	редагування
editing room	монтажна (кімната)
film clip	фрагмент фільму
final cut	остаточний монтаж
rough cut	попередній монтаж
transition	перехід (від однієї сцени до іншої)
vision	бачення (режисерське тощо)

## GENRES AND TYPES OF FILM - ЖАНРИ ТА ВІДН КІНО

action	екшн (фільм насичений погонями, бійками тощо)
adventure	пригодницький фільм
animated film	мультиплікаційний фільм
black-and-white film	чорно-білий фільм
cartoon	мультиплікаційний фільм
children's film	дитячий фільм
comedy	комедія
documentary	документальний фільм
drama	драма
fantasy	фантастичний фільм
feature film	художній фільм
gangster film	фільм з життя гангстерів
horror	фільм жахів
melodrama	мелодрама
motion pictures	кіно; фільм
mystery	детектив, де ім'я вбивці стає відомим лише наприкінці фільму
newsreel	кіножурнал
silent film	німий фільм
sound film	звуковий фільм
talkies	звуковий фільм
talking pictures	звуковий фільм
thriller	трилер (фільм з напруженим сюжетом про небезпечні пригоди)
travelogue	фільм про подорожі
western	вестерн (фільм про перших переселенців на Дикий Захід у XIX-му столітті)

## FILM-RELATED WORDS - СЛОВА, ЩО МАЮТЬ ВІДНОШЕННЯ ДО ФІЛЬМІВ

alias	псевдонім
artifact	матеріальний продукт культури
credits	титри з переліком імен усіх учасників виробництва фільму

ensemble acting	гра (актора) у взаємодії з іншими акторами
film score	музичний супровід усього кінофільму
frame	кадр (окремий)
intertitle	написи, що вставлялися між сценами і пояснювали дію в німих фільмах
lead acting	гра (актора) в головній ролі
screen time	екранний час
screenplay	режисерський (постановочний) кіносценарій
sequence	послідовність; ряд
sheet music	ноти музичного твору на окремих аркушах
shot	кадр; план (загальний тощо)
sound effects	звукові ефекти
soundtrack	звукова доріжка
still picture	нерухомий кадр
subtitles	субтитри
two-dimensional	двовимірний

### **FILM DESCRIPTION - ОННС ФІЛЬМІВ**

acceptable production	фільм прийнятної якості
artificial	штучний
exceptional production	фільм виняткової якості
major production	визначний фільм
worldwide attraction	світовий хіт

### **VERBS TO DESCRIBE HOW FILMS AFFECT THE AUDIENCE - ДІЄСЛОВА ДЛЯ ХАРАКТЕРИЗУВАННЯ ВПЛИВУ ФІЛЬМІВ НА ГЛЯДАЧІВ**

eclipse	затмарювати
enlighten	просвіщати; нести освіту в маси
entertain	розважати
fit the mood	відповідати настрою
improvise	імпровізувати
inspire	надихати
magnify	збільшувати
narrate	оповідати
supervise	наглядати; контролювати

### **UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH**

### **КІНОВИРОБНИЦТВО - FILM PRODUCTION**

допостановочний (етап тощо)	pre-production
дублювання	dubbing
екран	screen
зйомки (знімання) фільму	shooting
кіновпробник	filmmaker
кінознімальна камера	motion pictures camera
кінопроектор	motion pictures projector
кіносеанс	moving pictures show
організатор показу фільму	exhibitor
план візуального ряду фільму	storyboard
попереднє обстеження місця зйомок	location scouting
постановочний кіносценарій	script
приготування декорацій	set construction
принцип, на якому ґрунтується...	underlying principle

рекогносцирування місця зйомок  
розклад зйомок (знімання) ролик  
кіноплівки целулоїдна  
кіноплівка шукати і виявляти  
недоліки

location scouting  
shooting schedule  
reel  
celluloid film  
troubleshoot

## ФАХІВЦІ, ЗАЙНЯТІ У КІНОВИРОБНИЦТВІ - FILMMAKING PROFESSIONALS

актор, що грає головну роль  
акторський склад  
Алан Сміті (псевдонім, який пишуть у титрах, якщо режисер  
не дозволяє використовувати своє ім'я)  
звукоредактор звукорежисер знімальна  
група композитор оператор продюсер  
редактор візуального ряду фільму  
редактор фільму  
режисер, що відповідає за акторський склад  
режисер-оператор режисер-постановник  
сценарист  
художник (-постановник, по декораціях, костюмах тощо)  
художник по декораціях  
художник, який готує план візуального ряду фільму  
художник-постановник художній режисер

lead actor  
cast  
Alan Smithee  
sound editor  
sound editor  
crew  
composer  
camera operator  
producer  
visual editor  
film editor  
casting director  
cinematographer; director of photography  
director  
screenwriter  
designer  
set decorator  
storyboard artist  
production designer  
art director

## ВИДИ ПЛАНІВ - TYPES OF SHOTS

перспектива (ступінь віддаленості) об'єкта зйомки  
точка зйомки  
панорама  
загальний план  
середньокрупний план  
план, знятий через плече актора  
крупний план

shot's perspective  
camera angle  
establishing shot long  
shot medium shot over-  
the shoulder shot close  
up (shot)

## РЕДАГУВАННЯ ТА МОНТАЖ - EDITING AND ASSEMBLING

бачення (режисерське тощо)  
вирізані з фільму сцени  
вирізання (фрагментів фільму); монтаж  
відредаговані сцени  
здійснювати монтаж  
монтаж сцени  
монтажна (кімната)  
остаточний монтаж  
перехід (від однієї сцени до іншої)  
попередній монтаж  
редагування  
режисерський монтаж  
фрагмент фільму

vision  
cut scenes  
cut  
edited scenes  
assemble  
assembling the scene  
editing room  
final cut  
transition  
rough cut  
editing  
director's cut  
film clip

## ЖАНРИ ТА ВІДН КІНО - GENRES AND TYPES OF FILM

вестерн (фільм про перших переселенців на Дикий Захід у XIX-му столітті)	western
детектив, де ім'я вбивці стає відомим лише наприкінці фільму	mystery
дитячий фільм	children's film
документальний фільм	documentary
драма	drama
екшн (фільм насичений погонями, бійками тощо)	action
звуковий фільм кіно	sound film; talking pictures; talkies
кіножурнал	motion pictures
комедія	newsreel
мелодрама	comedy
мультиплікаційний фільм	melodrama
німий фільм	animated film; cartoon
пригодницький фільм	silent film
трилер (фільм з напруженим сюжетом про небезпечні пригоди)	adventure
фантастичний фільм	thriller
фільм жахів	fantasy
фільм з життя гангстерів	motion pictures
фільм про подорожі	horror
художній фільм чорно-білий фільм	gangster film
	travelogue
	feature film
	black-and-white film

## СЛОВА, ЩО МАЮТЬ ВІДНОШЕННЯ ДО ФІЛЬМІВ - FILM-RELATED WORDS

гра (актора) у головній ролі	lead acting
гра (актора) у взаємодії з іншими акторами	ensemble acting
двовимірний	two-dimensional
екранний час	screen time
звукова доріжка	soundtrack sound
звукові ефекти	effects shot;
кадр	frame artifact
матеріальний продукт культури	film score
музичний супровід усього кінофільму	intertitle
написи, що вставлялися між сценами і пояснювали дію	
в німих фільмах	still picture
нерухомий кадр	sheet music
ноти музичного твору на окремих аркушах	shot
план (загальний тощо) послідовність	sequence
псевдонім	alias
режисерський (постановочний) кіносценарій	screenplay
ряд	sequence
субтитри титри з переліком імен усіх учасників	subtitles
виробництва фільму	credits

## ОПИС ФІЛЬМІВ - FILM DESCRIPTION

визначний фільм	major production
світовий хіт	worldwide attraction
фільм виняткової якості	exceptional production
фільм прийнятної якості	acceptable production
штучний	artificial

## ДІЄСЛОВА ДЛЯ ХАРАКТЕРИЗУВАННЯ ВПЛИВУ ФІЛЬМІВ НА ГЛЯДАЧІВ -VERBS TO DESCRIBE HOW FILMS AFFECT THE AUDIENCE

відповідати настрою	fit the mood
затмарювати	eclipse
збільшувати	magnify
імпровізувати	improvise
контролювати	supervise
наглядати	supervise
надихати	inspire
нести освіту в маси	enlighten
оповідати	narrate
просвіщати	enlighten
розважати	entertain

### PART 2

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN FILM REVIEW - КШОРЕЦЕНЗІЯ

##### NEUTRAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FILM - НЕЙТРАЛЬНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ

is intended for...	фільм призначений для
it's been years since a pirate made movie making history	вже багато років фільми про піратів не входили в історію кінематографу
language is limited to...	вживання ненормативної лексики зводиться до... еротичність переважно
sensuality is mostly limited to , with a PG-13 rating	обмежується... фільм відноситься до категорії PG-13

##### POSITIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FILM - ПОЗИТИВНІ

##### ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ

backdrop is romantic CGI is impressive costuming is beautiful deserves a sailor's welcome escapes are harrowing excellent swordplay full of surprising plot twists it can truly be deemed an 'epic' it is downright jaw-dropping it is in the grand old style of... it's eye candy pace never seems to lag script is far more complex sword fights are grand the applause must go to ... there's enough humor to elevate the darker elements this is a grand achievement truly astonishing CGI battles witty dialogue	другий план романтичний комп'ютерна графіка вражає костюми чудові заслугує на вітальний салют сцена втечі є карколомною блискуче фехтування наповнений несподіваними поворотами сюжету його по праву можна назвати епічним від захоплення усі сидять з відкритим ротом у старому славетному стилі... це свято для очей динаміка розвитку сюжету не уповільнюється ні на мить сценарій набагато складніший фехтувальні сцени є вишуканими оплески слід адресувати... у фільмі достатньо гумору, аби пом'якшити гнітючий вплив окремих похмурих елементів це надзвичайне досягнення... справді вражаючі батальні сцени із застосуванням комп'ютерної графіки дотепні діалоги
--	---



## NEGATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FILM - НЕГАТИВНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ

can cause nightmares  
children will be frightened by...  
contains moderate fantasy violence, threat  
and horror contains nudity contains  
swearing death scene may disturb some  
film is scary and dark it may be  
inappropriate for pre-teens

language contains the "f" word  
mild innuendoes  
moderate threat and menace  
occasional gory moments  
scenes are intense and violent  
they are creepy and horrific  
too frightening  
too much for younger children of  
a sensitive disposition too scary  
youngsters of a nervous disposition  
might be upset

може спричинити нічні кошмари  
дітей налякає...  
містить сцени помірного насильства, погроз та жахів у  
стилі "фентезі"  
містить сцени з оголеними тілами  
містить лайку  
сцена смерті може стривожити деяких глядачів  
фільм є страшним і похмурим  
фільм може бути неприйнятним для дітей, молодших  
за 13 років  
персонажі лаються, вживаючи слова з трьох літер  
м'які приховані натяки  
помірні погрози та загрози  
трапляються сцени насильства  
сцени напружені і наповнені насильством  
вони страхітливі, аж мурашки по тілу  
занадто страшні  
занадто для молодших дітей з підвищеною чутливістю  
  
занадто страшні  
діти з підвищеною чутливістю можуть відчувати  
пригніченість

## CHARACTERISING THE PLOT - ОННС СЮЖЕТУ

he is the only one who can help  
her fate collides with...  
one of the best comic moments  
piece of gold is the only link  
plot is truly brilliant  
she discovers a gold piece  
she is kidnapped by...  
she is standing at the stern...  
she sees a half-dead boy  
she takes it  
story begins on the deck...  
years later...

тільки він може допомогти  
її доля перехрещується з...  
одна з найкращих комічних сцен  
золота монета є єдиною ланкою  
сюжет є насправді блискучим  
вона знаходить золоту монету  
її викрадають  
вона стоїть на кормі  
вона бачить напівмертвого хлопця  
вона бере її  
дія починається на палубі...  
пройшли роки...

## CHARACTERISING ACTORS - ОННС ГРН АКТОРІВ

beautiful damsel in distress cast  
is top-notch downright sinister  
excellent performances by...  
gold-toothed smile half-slurred  
speech handsome rogue as her  
rescuer he improvises the  
character of.. he really goes out  
on a limb

красуня, що потрапила в халену  
акторський склад є першокласним  
безперечно зловісний  
блискуча гра...  
золотоzubа посмішка  
манера ковтати половину слів при мовленні  
мужній відчайдух, що рятує красуню  
він імпровізує, граючи роль...

with his interpretation of... his entrance to the film is particularly memorable його поява у  
фільмі особливо вражає

він справді ризикує з такою інтерпретацією ролі.

his 'sea legs on land' stride  
 it totally works  
 motley crew of bloodthirsty buccaneers  
 never fails to engage a laugh  
 overall likable  
 slightly batty

манера широко крокувати ходою моряка на суші  
 це повністю спрацьовує  
 строката байда кровожерливих піратів  
 завжди викликає сміх  
 загалом приємний  
 трохи несповна розуму

## CONCLUSIONS - ВИСНОВКИ

film deserves a number of Oscar nominations  
 for merit alone I doubt many others would  
 find it unsavoury

I never felt uncomfortable with this film

I recommend that only older children  
 be allowed to attend it pays off for the  
 two-plus hours spent  
 in a cramped theatre seat one of the most  
 stunningly visual movies

I've ever seen viewers will find  
 themselves swept into  
 an adventure unlike any other

фільм заслуговує на висунення на премію "Оскар" у  
 кількох номінаціях тільки за художню цінність  
 гадаю, що й переважній більшості інших глядачів він  
 був би цікавим

мені жодної миті не було нецікаво під час перегляду  
 цього фільму  
 Я б рекомендував, аби цей фільм могли переглядати  
 лише старші діти  
 заради такого видовища варто просидіти понад дві  
 години в тісному глядацькому кріслі  
 один з найбільш вражаючих за красою сцен фільмів,  
 які я будь-коли бачив  
 глядачі опиняться у впрі пригод, яких вони ще ніколи  
 не зазнавали

## FILM RATINGS - ЦЕНЗУРНА КЛАСИФІКАЦІЯ ФІЛЬМІВ

British Board of Film Classification - Британський комітет з питань класифікації фільмів	
Unrestricted (U)	Без вікових обмежень
Parents' Guidance (PG)	Без вікових обмежень
12	Попередження для батьків. Окремі епізоди можуть бути неприйнятними для дітей
15	Діти віком 12 років і менше не допускаються
18	Діти віком 15 років і менше не допускаються
G	Особи віком 18 років і менше не допускаються <b>Motion Picture</b>
R	<b>Association of America (MPAA) - Кіноасоціація США</b>
M	
	1968-1970
	Без вікових обмежень
X	Фільм для дорослих. Батькам радять бути обережними Особи до 16 років допускаються лише у супроводі дорослих Особи віком до 17 років не допускаються
	<b>Nowadays - На сьогодні без</b>
G	вікових обмежень
PG	Попередження для батьків. Окремі епізоди можуть бути неприйнятними для дітей. Попередження
PG-13	для батьків. Окремі епізоди можуть бути неприйнятними для дітей, віком до 13 років. Фільм може містити сцени з оголеними тілами, еротичні епізоди, ненормативну лексику, грубі жарти та/або сцени насильства Особи віком до 18 років не допускаються
NC-17	

## GENERAL VOCABULARY - ЗАГАЛЬНИЙ СЛОВНИК

70-mm print	кіноплівка шириною 70 мм (для широкоекранних кінотеатрів)
backdrop	другий план; тло; задник (в театрі)
batty	несповна розуму
blemish	недолік
blockbuster	блокбастер (дорогий і комерційно успішний фільм)
bloodthirsty	кровожерливий
box office	каса (кінотеатру)

bring something to a scratch	приводити у відповідність зі сучасними вимогами
buccaneer	пірат
camcorder	відеокамера
CGI (computer generated images)	комп'ютерна графіка
cling	триматися за; вчепитися в
collide	зіткнутися
confession	визнання
cramped	тісний; завузький
creepy	що викликає мурашки по тілу; від якого кидає в дрож
crossbones	перехрещені кістки
curse	прокляття
damsel	дівича
deck	палуба
discerning	перебірливий
Dolby sound system	система "Долбі" (для якісного запису та відтворення звуку)
downright	очевидний
driftwood	дерев'яні рештки корабельної аварії, що плавають на воді
enforcement	примусове виконання
epic	епічна картина
equate	ставити в один ряд з
erosion	руйнування
eye candy	свято для очей
fabulous	казковий
final straw	остання краплина (що переповнює чашу)
frequent	вчащати (до)
go out on a limb	ризикувати
go over head	проходити повз вуха; залишатися непоміченим
grand	блискучий; шикарний
half-slurred speech	манера ковати половипу слів при мовленні
harrowing	карколомний
heady	п'яний
horrific	страхотливий; жахливий
immaculate	бездоганний
innuendo	прихований натяк
install	встановлювати
institute	вводити в дію
jaw-dropping	приголомшливий (аж відвисає щелепа)
kidnap	викрадати людей з метою одержання викупу
lag	уповільнювати(ся)
legitimate	законний
link	ланка
low budget exploitation film	дешевий фільм, що експлуатує теми насилля і сексу
lurk	ховатися в засідці
mainstream film	традиційний фільм
make (a fuss) over something	піднімати галас навколо чогось
make movie making history	увійти в історію кінематографу
merit	художня цінність
motley	строкатий
MPAA (Motion Picture Association of America)	Кіноасоціація США
multi screen multiplex	мультиплекс (кінотеатр з кількома залами)
obscene word ode pace	мультиплекс (кінотеатр з кількома залами)
	нецензурне слово
	ода
	темп; динаміка

<b>pornography</b>	порнографія
<b>precipitate</b>	прискорювати хід подій
<b>presumably</b>	як можна припустити
<b>preview theatre</b>	кінотеатр допрем'єрного показу фільмів
<b>Production Code of America</b>	Кодекс виробників США
<b>profanity</b>	богохульство
<b>prurient</b>	хтивий
<b>quick fix</b>	легке рішення
<b>rating</b>	класифікація (фільму)
<b>release</b>	винускати (фільм)
<b>rescuer</b>	рятівник
<b>revision</b>	перегляд (змісту закону тощо); внесення змін
<b>rogue</b>	відчайдух
<b>royal navy ship</b>	військовий корабель
<b>sailor's welcome</b>	вітальний салют
<b>seal</b>	печатка
<b>self-regulation</b>	саморегулювання
<b>sensuality</b>	чуттєвість; еротичність
<b>sinister</b>	зловісний
<b>SMA (Suggested for Mature Audiences)</b>	рекомендовано для перегляду дорослими (категорія фільмів у США до 1965 року)
<b>speck</b>	цяточка
<b>stamp</b>	чеканити
<b>state-of-the-art</b>	сучасний
<b>stern</b>	корма
<b>stride</b>	хода широкими кроками
<b>stunning</b>	надзвичайний
<b>subtly</b>	незначною мірою
<b>surmise</b>	гадати; припускати
<b>top-notch</b>	першокласний
<b>trigger</b>	привести в дію
<b>turn away from</b>	відмовлятися
<b>unbeatable</b>	незрівнянний
<b>uniform</b>	універсальний
<b>unmarked</b>	без позначень виробника
<b>unsavory</b>	непривабливий
<b>XXX film</b>	порнографічний фільм

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

### КШОРЕЦЕНЗІЯ - FILM REVIEW

#### НЕЙТРАЛЬНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ - NEUTRAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FILM

фільм призначений для	<b>is intended for...</b>
вже багато років фільми про піратів не входили в історію	<b>it's been years since a pirate made movie</b>
кінематографу	<b>making history</b>
Вживання ненормативної лексики зводиться до...	<b>language is limited to...</b>
еротичність переважно обмежується...	<b>sensuality is mostly limited to ...</b>
фільм відноситься до категорії PG-13	<b>with a PG-13 rating</b>

#### ПОЗИТИВНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ - POSITIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FILM

блискуче фехтування	<b>excellent swordplay</b>
в старому славетному стилі...	<b>it is in the grand old style of..</b>
від захоплення усі сидять з відкритим ротом	<b>it is downright jaw-dropping</b>

динаміка розвитку сюжету не уповільнюється ні на мить  
дотепні діалоги  
другий план романтичний  
заслугує на вітальний салют  
його по праву можна назвати епічним  
комп'ютерна графіка вражає  
костюми чудові  
наповнений несподіваними поворотами сюжету  
оплески слід адресувати...  
справді вражаючі батальні сцени із застосуванням  
комп'ютерної графіки сцена втечі є карколомною  
сценарій набагато складніший у фільмі достатньо гумору,  
аби пом'якшити гнітючий вплив  
окремих похмурих елементів  
фехтувальні сцени є вишуканими  
це надзвичайне досягнення... це  
свято для очей

pace never seems to lag witty  
dialogue backdrop is romantic  
deserves a sailor's welcome it can  
truly be deemed an 'epic' CGI is  
impressive costuming is beautiful full  
of surprising plot twists the applause  
must go to ... truly astonishing CGI  
battles

escapes are harrowing  
script is far more complex  
there's enough humor to elevate the  
darker elements sword fights are  
grand this is a grand achievement it's  
eye candy

## НЕГАТИВНІ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ - NEGATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FILM

може спричинити нічні кошмари  
дітей налякає...  
містить сцени помірного насильства, погроз та жахів  
у стилі "фентезі" містить сцени з  
оголеними тілами містить лайку  
сцена смерті може стривожити деяких глядачів фільм  
є страшним і похмурим фільм може бути  
неприйнятним для дітей, молодших  
за 13 років персонажі лаються, вживаючи слова з  
трьох літер м'які приховані натяки помірні погрози та  
загрози трапляються сцени насильства сцени  
напружені і наповнені насильством вони страхітливі,  
аж мурашки по тілу занадто страшні занадто для  
молодших дітей з підвищеною чутливістю

занадто страшні  
діти з підвищеною чутливістю можуть відчувати  
пригніченість

can cause nightmares children will be  
frightened by... contains moderate  
fantasy violence,  
threat and horror contains nudity  
contains swearing death scene may  
disturb some film is scary and dark it  
may be inappropriate for pre-teens

language contains the "f" word  
mild innuendoes  
moderate threat and menace  
occasional gory moments  
scenes are intense and violent  
they are creepy and horrific  
too frightening  
too much for younger children  
of a sensitive disposition too scary  
youngsters of a nervous disposition  
might be upset

## ОСНОВНІ СЮЖЕТУ - CHARACTERISING THE PLOT

тільки він може допомогти їй доля  
перехрещується з... одна з  
найкращих комічних сцен золота  
монета є єдиною ланкою сюжет є  
насправді блискучим вона  
знаходить золоту монету їй  
викрадають вона стоїть на кормі  
вона бачить напівмертвого хлопця

he is the only one who can help  
her fate collides with...  
one of the best comic moments  
piece of gold is the only link  
plot is truly brilliant  
she discovers a gold piece  
she is kidnapped by...  
she is standing at the stern...  
she sees a half-dead boy

вона бере її  
дія починається на палубі...  
пройшли роки...

she takes it  
story begins on the deck.,  
years later...

## ОННС ГРН АКТОРІВ - CHARACTERISING ACTORS

акторський склад є першокласним  
безперечно зловісний блискуча  
гра...  
він імпровізує, граючи роль...  
він справді ризикує з такою  
інтерпретацією ролі... завжди викликає  
сміх загалом приємний золотозуба  
посмішка його поява у фільмі особливо  
вважає красуня, що потрапила в халепу  
манера ковтати половину слів при мовленні  
манера широко крокувати ходю моряка  
на суші мужній відчайдух, що рятує  
красуню строката банда  
кровожерливих піратів трохи несповна  
розуму це повністю спрацьовує

cast is top-notch  
downright sinister  
excellent performances by...  
he improvises the character of...  
he really goes out on a limb with his interpretation of,

never fails to engage a laugh  
overall likable  
gold-toothed smile  
his entrance to the film is particularly memorable  
beautiful damsel in distress  
half-slurred speech  
his 'sea legs on land' stride

handsome rogue as her rescuer motley  
crew of bloodthirsty buccaneers slightly  
batty it totally works

## ВИСНОВКИ - CONCLUSIONS

гадаю, що й переважній більшості інших  
глядачів він був би цікавим глядачі  
опиняться у вирі пригод, яких вони ще  
ніколи не зазнавали заради такого видовища  
варто просидіти понад  
дві години в тісному глядацькому кріслі  
мені жодної миті не було нецікаво під час  
перегляду цього фільму один з найбільш  
вражаючих за красою сцен  
фільмів, які я будь-коли бачив фільм  
заслуговує на висунення на премію  
"Оскар" у кількох номінаціях тільки за  
художню цінність Я б рекомендував,  
аби цей фільм могли  
переглядати лише старші діти

I doubt many others would find it unsavoury

viewers will find themselves swept into  
an adventure unlike any other it pays off  
for the two-plus hours spent in a  
cramped theatre seat I never felt  
uncomfortable with this film

one of the most stunningly visual movies I've ever seen

film deserves a number of Oscar  
nominations for merit alone

I recommend that only older  
children be allowed to attend

## ЦЕНЗУРНА КЛАСИФІКАЦІЯ ФІЛЬМІВ - FILM RATINGS

**Британський комітет з питань класифікації фільмів -  
British Board of Film Classification**

Без вікових обмежень

Попередження для батьків. Окремі епізоди можуть бути

неприйнятними для дітей. Діти віком 12 років і менше не 12

допускаються Діти віком 15 років і менше не допускаються 15

Особи віком 18 років і менше не допускаються **Кіноасоціація** 18

**США- Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA) 1968-1970** Без

вікових обмежень

Unrestricted (U)

Parents' Guidance (PG)

Фільм для дорослих. Батькам радять бути обережними.  
Особи до 16 років допускаються лише у супроводі дорослих  
Особи віком до 17 років не допускаються

**R**  
**M**

**На сьогодні - Nowadays**

**X**

без вікових обмежень

Попередження для батьків. Окремі епізоди можуть бути неприйнятними для дітей.  
Попередження для батьків. Окремі епізоди можуть бути неприйнятними для дітей,  
віком до 13 років. Фільм може містити сцени з оголеними тілами, еротичні епізоди,  
ненормативну лексику, грубі жарти та/або сцени насильства. Особи віком до 18  
років не допускаються

**G**  
**PG**  
**PG-13**

**NC-17**

## **ЗАГАЛЬНИЙ СЛОВНИК - GENERAL VOCABULARY**

без позначень виробника

**unmarked**

бездоганний

**immaculate**

блискучий; шикарний

**grand**

блокбастер (дорогий і комерційно успішний фільм)

**blockbuster**

богохульство

**profanity**

вводити в дію

**institute**

визнання

**confession**

викрадати людей з метою одержання викуну

**kidnap**

винускати (фільм)

**release**

від якого кидає в дрож

**creepy**

відеокамера

**camcorder**

відмовлятися

**turn away from**

відчайдух

**rogue**

військовий корабель

**royal navy ship**

вітальний салют

**sailor's welcome**

внесення змін

**revision**

встановлювати

**install**

вчашати (до)

**frequent**

гадати

**surmise**

дерев'яні рештки корабельної аварії,

**driftwood**

що плавають на воді

дешевий фільм, що експлуатує теми насилля і сексу

**low budget exploitation film**

дівича

**damsel**

другий план

**backdrop**

еротичність

**sensuality**

епічна картина

**epic**

задник (в театрі)

**backdrop**

законний

**legitimate**

залишатися непоміченим

**go over head**

зіткнутися

**collide**

зловісний

**sinister**

казковий

**fabulous**

карколомний

**harrowing**

каса (кінотеатру)

**box office**

Кіноасоціація США

**MPAA (Motion Picture Association of America)**

кіноплівка шпориною 70 мм (для широкоекранних  
кінотеатрів)

**70-mm print**

кінотеатр допрем'єрного показу фільмів

**preview theatre**

класифікація (фільму)

**rating**

Кодекс виробників США

**Production Code of America**

комп'ютерна графіка

**CGI (computer generated images)**

корма

**stern**

кровожерливий	bloodthirsty
ланка	link
легке рішення	quick fix
манера ковтати половипу слів при мовленні	half-slurred speech
мультиплекс (кінотеатр з кількома залами)	multi screen; multiplex
надзвичайний	stunning
недолік	blemish
незначною мірою	subtly
незрівнянний	unbeatable
непривабливий	unsavory
неповна розуму	batty
нецензурне слово	obscene word
ода	ode
остання краплина (що переповнює чашу)	final straw
очевидний	downright
п'янкий	heady
палуба	deck
перебірливий	discerning
перегляд (змісту закону тощо)	revision
перехрещені кістки	crossbones
першокласний	top-notch
печатка	seal
піднімати галас навколо чогось	make (a fuss) over something
пірат	buccaneer
порнографічний фільм	XXX film
порнографія	pornography
привести в дію	trigger
приводити у відповідність з сучасними вимогами	bring something to a scratch
приголомшливий (аж відвисає щелепа)	jaw-dropping
примусове виконання	enforcement
принускати	surmise
прискорювати хід подій	precipitate
прихований натяк	innuendo
прокляття	curse
проходити повз вуха	go over head
рекомендовано для перегляду дорослими (категорія фільмів у США до 1965 року)	SMA (Suggested for Mature Audiences)
ризикувати руйнування рятівник	go out on a limb
саморегулювання	erosion
свято для очей	rescuer
система "Долбі" (для якісного запису та відтворення звуку) ставити в один ряд з	self-regulation
страхітливий строкатий сучасний темп;	eye candy
динаміка тісний; завузький тло	Dolby sound system
традиційний фільм триматися за;	
вчепитися в увійти в історію	equate
кінематографу	horrific
	motley
	state-of-the-art
	pace
	cramped
	backdrop
	mainstream film
	cling
	make movie making history



універсальний	uniform
уповільнювати(ся)	lag
ховатися в засідці	lurk
хода широкими кроками	stride
хтивий	prurient
художня цінність	merit
цяточка	speck
чеканити	stamp
чуттєвість	sensuality
що викликає мурашки по тілу	creepy
як можна припустити	presumably

## LESSON 4

### PART I

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

aloft	нагорі; нагору
art house	кінотеатр, який показує некомерційні стрічки
be hard pressed	зазнавати труднощів
biopic	біографічний фільм
blaze a trail	прокласти нові шляхи; бути новатором
buff	любитель; прихильник
burgeoning	що бурхливо розвивається
by and large	загалом
case in point	до речі
conjure	вигадувати
death knell	провісник смерті
encompass	включати (в себе)
engaging	привабливий
event movie	фільм, який апелює переважно до зображувального ряду (а не до психології)
flash in the pan	осічка (після неочікуваного короткотривалого успіху)
flock	юрмитися
gritty	суворий; небезпечний
grossing	в цілому (про прибутки тощо)
high street	головна вулиця
hipped	непопулярний
holiday destination	місце проведення відпустки або вихідних
influx	наплив
knell	похоронний дзвін
name to conjure with	відоме ім'я
outstrip	випереджати
overhype	рекламувати без міри
play host to	приймати гостей
pound	бити
premature	передчасний
prequel	стрічка, що передує наступній серії фільму
scope for	можливість для
sheer	простий
spring up	вигулькувати; впростати, як гриби після дощу
stately home	особняк
stumble over	натрапляти на
trawl	терзати (запитаннями тощо)
uplifting	піднесений
use as doubles	використовувати як натуру (при зйомках кінофільму)

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

бнти	pound
біографічний фільм	biopic
в цілому (про прибутки тощо)	grossing
вигадувати	conjure
вигулькувати	spring up
використовувати як натуру (при зйомках кінофільму)	use as doubles
випереджати	outstrip
виросати, як гриби після дощу	spring up
відоме ім'я	name to conjure with
включати (в себе)	encompass
головна вулиця	high street
до речі	case in point
загалом	by and large
зазнавати труднощів	be hard pressed
кінотеатр, який показує некомерційні стрічки	art house
любитель	buff
місце проведення відпустки або вихідних	holiday destination
можливість для	scope for
нагорі	aloft
нагору	aloft
наплив	influx
натрапляти на	stumble over
непонулярний	hipped
осічка (після неочікуваного короткотривалого успіху)	flash in the pan
особняк	stately home
передчасний	premature
піднесений	uplifting
похоронний дзвін	knell
привабливий	engaging
приймати гостей	play host to
прихильник	buff
провісник смерті	death knell
прокласти нові шляхи; бути новатором	blaze a trail
простий	sheer
рекламувати без міри	overhype
стрічка, що передує наступній серії фільму	prequel
суворий; небезпечний	gritty
терзати (запитаннями тощо)	trawl
фільм, який апелює переважно до зображувального ряду (а не до психології)	event movie
що бурхливо розвивається	burgeoning
юрмитися	flock

## PART 2 ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

### GENERAL VOCABULARY - ЗАГАЛЬНИЙ СЛОВНИК

acclaimed	визнаний
anything to go by	що може використовуватися, як підстава для висновків
atmospheric photography	зйомки, що передають відповідну атмосферу
be at a standstill	простоювати
beam	сяяти
bizarre	хімерний; ексцентричний
bloody-minded refusal	категорична відмова

burden	тягар
contrive	вигадувати; винаходити
dire	жахливий; страшенний
equation	рівняння; проблема
fable	казка
follow suit	наслідувати приклад
freelance	незалежний; що працює сам на себе
gun down	застрелити
haunting	незабутній; що переслідує (про образ тощо)
hurdle	перешкода; бар'єр
in box-office receipts	за сумами, що надійшли від продажу квитків
knuckle (to)	здаватися (обставинам тощо)
mourn	оплакувати; сумувати (за кимсь)
perilous	небезпечний; ризикований
pithy	впразно, змістовно і стисло
probe	розслідувати
prolific	плодовитий
recoup one's costs	покривати витрати
relentless	безжальний; немилосердний; невблаганний
resilient	стійкий; життєрадісний
revelation	відкриття; розкриття (таємниці)
revival	відродження
sardonic	уїдливий
sincerity	щирість
spark off	запалювати; надихати (когось)
stall	зупиняти
star-crossed love affair	нещасне кохання
vanish	зникати
venture	ризикована справа

#### FILM COLLOCATIONS - СЛОВОСПОЛУЧЕННЯ ЗІ СЛОВОМ "ФІЛЬМ"

appear in a film	з'являтися у фільмі
ban a film	забороняти фільм
be based on something	в основі фільму лежать (реальні події тощо)
be called	називатися (про назву фільму)
be entitled	мати назву (про фільм)
be in films	працювати у кіновиробництві
capture something	відтворювати (атмосферу того часу тощо)
cancel a film	цензувати фільм
come out	виходити (про фільм)
contain something	містити (про фільм)
cult film figure	культова кіноpostaть
deal with something	розповідати (про фільм)
depict something	зображувати (про фільм)
direct a film	ставити фільм (у якості режисера)
distribute a film	продавати (фільм)
English film version	англомовна версія фільму
feature somebody in a film	залучати (актора) до участі у фільмі
film about	фільм про
film adaptation	кіноадаптація
film archives	кіноархів
film awards	нагороди у галузі кіномистецтва
film business	кінопідприємство
film career	кар'єра в кіно

film classic	класика кіно
film clip film	кіноепізод
company film	кінокомпанія
credits	титри наприкінці фільму з переліком усіх, хто брав участь у його виробництві
film debut	дебют у кіно
film distributor	кінодистриб'ютор
film equipment	кіноапаратура
film fan	кінолюбитель
film festival	кінофестиваль
film footage	відеоряд фільму
film genre	жанр фільму
film industry	кіновиробництво
film legend	легенда кіно
film library	кінобібліотека
film mogul	кіномагнат
film narrative	сюжетна лінія картини
film poster	плакат (постер) з рекламою фільму
film props	кінореквізит
film report	повідомлення про зйомки або прем'єру фільму
film rights	авторські права на фільм
film school	факультет кінематографії
film sequence	послідовність сцен у фільмі
film series	серіал
film show	кіносеанс
film student	студент факультету кінематографії
film studio	кіностудія
film stunt	кінотрюк
film unit	знімальна група
film version	кіноверсія
film with subtitles	фільм із субтитрами
film world	світ кінематографії
full-length film	повнометражний фільм
go to (see) a film	ходити до кіна
hard-boiled film	жорстокий (безжальний) фільм
Hollywood film	голлівудський фільм
in a/the film	у фільмі
independent film	фільм, знятий незалежною (не голлівудською) студією
make a film	знімати фільм
mass-market film	фільм, розрахований на масового глядача
naughty film	ризикований фільм (комедія з елементами сексу)
present something	показувати (фільм тощо)
record something	фіксувати; увічнювати
release a film	випускати фільм (у прокат)
represent something	втілювати; символізувати
screening of a film	демонстрація фільму
see a film	побачити фільм
self-indulgent film	фільм, режисер якого потурає лише власним уподобанням
short film	короткометражний фільм
showing of a film	демонстрація фільму
slasher film	фільм, переповнений сценами насильства
star somebody in a film	залучати (актора) до виконання головної ролі у фільмі
take a film	зняти на плівку
take somebody to (see) a film	взяти (когось) до кіна
television film	телевізійний фільм

the beginning of the film  
the end of the film video  
film watch a film

початок фільму  
кінець фільму  
відеофільм  
дивитися фільм

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH ЗАГАЛЬНИЙ СЛОВНИК - GENERAL VOCABULARY

бар'єр  
безжальний  
вигадувати  
визнаний  
винаходити  
виразно, змістовно і стисло  
відкриття  
відродження  
ексцентричний  
жахливий  
життєрадісний  
за сумами, що надійшли від продажу квитків  
запалювати  
застрелити  
здаватися (обставинам тощо)  
зйомки, що передають відповідну атмосферу  
зникати  
зупиняти  
казка  
категорична відмова  
надихати (когось)  
наслідувати приклад  
небезпечний  
невблаганний  
незабутній  
незалежний  
немилосердний  
нещасне кохання  
оплакувати  
перешкода  
плодовитий  
покривати витрати  
проблема  
простоювати  
ризикована справа  
ризикований  
рівняння (математичне)  
розкриття (таємниці)  
розслідувати  
стійкий  
страшений  
сумувати (за кимсь)  
сяяти  
тягар  
уїдливи́й

hurdle  
relentless  
contrive  
acclaimed  
contrive  
pithy  
revelation  
revival  
bizarre  
dire  
resilient  
in box-office receipts  
spark off  
gun down  
knuckle (to)  
atmospheric photography  
vanish  
stall  
fable  
bloody-minded refusal  
spark off  
follow suit  
perilous  
relentless  
haunting  
freelance  
relentless  
star-crossed love affair  
mourn  
hurdle  
prolific  
recoup one's costs  
equation  
be at a standstill  
venture  
perilous  
equation  
revelation  
probe  
resilient  
dire  
mourn  
beam  
burden  
sardonic

химерний  
щпрість  
що може використовуватися, як підстава для висновків  
що переслідує (про образ тощо)  
що працює сам на себе

bizarre  
sincerity  
anything to go by  
haunting  
freelance

## СЛОВОСПОЛУЧЕННЯ ЗІ СЛОВОМ "ФІЛЬМ"- FILM COLLOCATIONS

авторські права на фільм  
англомовна версія фільму  
в основі фільму лежать (реальні події тощо)  
взяти (когось) до кіна  
винускати фільм (у прокат)  
виходити (про фільм)  
відеоряд фільму  
відеофільм  
відтворювати (атмосферу того часу тощо)  
втілювати; символізувати  
голлівудський фільм  
дебют у кіно  
демонстрація фільму  
демонстрація фільму  
дивитися фільм  
жапр фільму  
жорстокий (безжальний) фільм  
з'являтися у фільмі  
забороняти фільм  
залучати (актора) до виконання головної ролі у фільмі  
залучати (актора) до участі у фільмі  
знімальна група  
знімати фільм  
зняти на плівку  
зображувати (про фільм)  
кар'єра в кіно  
кінець фільму  
кіноадаптація  
кіноапаратура  
кіноархів  
кінобібліотека  
кіноверсія  
кіновиробництво  
кінодистриб'ютор  
кіноепізод  
кінокомпанія  
кінолюбитель  
кіномагнат  
кінопідприємство  
кінореквізит  
кіносеанс  
кіностудія  
кінотрюк  
кінофестиваль  
класика кіно  
короткометражний фільм  
культова кінопостать

film rights  
English film version  
be based on something  
take somebody to (see) a film  
release a film  
come out  
film footage  
video film  
capture something  
represent something  
Hollywood film  
film debut  
screening of a film  
showing of a film  
watch a film  
film genre  
hard-boiled film  
appear in a film  
ban a film  
star somebody in a film  
feature somebody in a film  
film unit  
make a film  
take a film  
depict something  
film career  
the end of the film  
film adaptation  
film equipment  
film archives  
film library  
film version  
film industry  
film distributor  
film clip  
film company  
film fan  
film mogul  
film business  
film props  
film show  
film studio  
film stunt  
film festival  
film classic  
short film  
cult film figure

легенда кіно  
 мати назву (про фільм)  
 містити (про фільм)  
 нагороди у галузі кіномистецтва  
 називатися (про назву фільму)  
 плакат (постер) з рекламою фільму  
 побачити фільм  
 повідомлення про зйомки або прем'єру фільму  
 повнометражний фільм  
 показувати (фільм тощо)  
 послідовність сцен у фільмі  
 початок фільму  
 працювати у кіновиробництві  
 продавати (фільм)  
 ризикований фільм (комедія з елементами сексу)  
 розповідати про (про фільм)  
 світ кінематографії  
 серіал  
 ставити фільм (у якості режисера)  
 студент факультету кінематографії  
 сюжетна лінія картини  
 телевізійний фільм  
 титри наприкінці фільму з переліком усіх, хто брав участь  
 у його виробництві у  
 фільмі увічнювати  
 факультет кінематографії  
 фіксувати  
 фільм із субтитрами  
 фільм про  
 фільм, знятий незалежною (не голлівудською) студією  
 фільм, переповнений сценами насильства фільм, режисер  
 якого потурає лише власним уподобанням фільм,  
 розрахований на масового глядача ходити до кіна  
 цензурувати фільм

film legend  
 be entitled  
 contain something  
 film awards  
 be called  
 film poster  
 see a film  
 film report  
 full-length film  
 present something  
 film sequence  
 the beginning of the film  
 be in films  
 distribute a film  
 naughty film  
 deal with something  
 film world  
 film series  
 direct a film  
 film student  
 film narrative  
 television film  
 film credits

in a/the film record  
 something film  
 school record  
 something film with  
 subtitles film about  
 independent film  
 slasher film self-  
 indulgent film mass-  
 market film go to  
 (see) a film censor a  
 film

## UNIT3

### LESSON 1

#### PARTI ENGLISHn - UKRAINIAN

accommodate	вміщати в собі
adjacent (to)	суміжний (з)
administration building	будівля адміністрації
aircraft ( <i>plural: aircraft</i> )	літальний апарат
aircraft tug	трактор для буксирування літаків
airfield	летовище, аеродром
airline	авіакомпанія
(air)plane	літак
ammunition	боєприпаси

apron	бетонована частина летовища, що прилягає до будівлі аеропорту чи ангару
article	річ, товар
assembly point	місце збору пасажирів перед посадкою
assume	приймати на себе (зобов'язання тощо)
bag well	місце зберігання багажу (службове приміщення в аеропорту)
baggage (luggage-BE)	багаж
baggage loader	багажний завантажувач
baggage retrieval area	пункт одержання багажу
be set to	збиратися
board	здійснювати посадку на борт літака
bomb dog	собака, натренований на пошук вибухівки
carrier	перевізник (авіакомпанія)
charge	плата
check (cheque - BE)	квитанція, бірка, ярлик
check in	реєструватися на рейс, реєстрація на рейс
checked baggage	зареєстрований багаж
check-in clerk	реєстратор
checkpoint	пункт контролю
clink	дзенькати; брязкати
clogged	забитий; переповнений
complete with	разом з
concourse	вестибюль; зал
concrete	бетон
control tower	центр управління польотів (диспетчерський пункт)
conveyor belt	пас (ремін) конвеєра
coverall	комбінезон
crate	пакувальна клітка
creaky	скрипучий
damage	пошкодити, шкода
deadline	граничний (крайній) термін (строк)
deal	угода
declare	декларувати (заявляти про наявність речей, обмежених для провозу)
departure building	будівля для відправки пасажирів
detection	виявлення
domestic	внутрішній (в межах однієї країни)
drugs	наркотики
estimate	оцінювати
excess valuation	додатково оголошена вартість
excessive	надмірний
exhaust	вихлипні гази
explosives	вибухові речовини
extra	додатковий
flight	політ, рейс
fragile	крихкий, ламкий
free	безкоштовний
galley loader	камбузний завантажувач (харчових продуктів)
gate	сектор посадки
grease	мастило
ground power unit	наземна пересувна електростанція
impede	перешкоджати
ink	підписати
land	приземлятися, сідати (про літальні апарати)
lease	брати в оренду
liability	відповідальність (за законом)
line	черга



load	завантажувати
loading position	положення, у якому літак пришвартований до трану для посадки пасажирів
lobby	фойє
lounge	зал чекання
maintenance	технічне обслуговування
meet tougher standards	задовольняти зрослі вимоги
minivan	міні-автобус
miserable	нещасний
overhead	нагорі
passenger loading bridge	трап (телескопічний) для посадки пасажирів
per	на (одного пасажпра тощо)
piece of baggage	місце багажу (валіза тощо)
pier	естакада (для переходу до секторів посадки)
pier head	голова естакади
point of destination	пункт призначення
proceed	продовжувати
pull	тягнути (на себе), буксирувати
pulley	шків; блок
rate	ступінь
remainder	решта
responsibility	відповідальність
runway	злітно-посадочна смуга (ЗПС)
screen	перевіряти (речі пасажирів)
see off	проводжати
service vehicles	автомобілі для обслуговування літака; технічні автомобілі
smuggling	контрабанда
spectators' terrace	тераса для глядачів
squeak	пищати
stick	приклеювати
stick out	відходити (як гілка від стовбура)
supply	постачати
surrender	здаватися
take off	злітати, зліт
taxiway	доріжка руління
terminal	термінал
unchecked baggage	незареєстрований багаж
unload	розвантажувати
valuable	цінний
value	цінність
waiting room	зал чекання
water tanker	водоналивна цистерна

#### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

авіакомпанія	airline
автомобілі для обслуговування літака; технічні автомобілі	service vehicles
аеродром	airfield
багаж	baggage (luggage-BE)
багажний завантажувач	baggage loader
безкоштовний	free
бетон	concrete
бетонована частина летовища, що прилягає до будівлі аеропорту чи ангару	apron
бірка блок	check (cheque - BE)
	pulley

боєприпаси	ammunition
брати в оренду	lease
брязкати	clink
будівля адміністрації	administration building
будівля для відправки пасажирів	departure building
вестибюль	concourse
вибухові речовини	explosives
вихлипні гази	exhaust
виявлення	detection
відповідальність	responsibility
відповідальність (за законом)	liability
відходити (як гілка від стовбура)	stick out
вміщати в собі	accommodate
внутрішній (в межах однієї країни)	domestic
водоналивна цистерна	water tanker
голова естакади	pier head
граничний термін	deadline
декларувати (заявляти про наявність речей, обмежених для провозу)	declare
дзенькати	clink
додатковий	extra
додатково оголошена вартість	excess valuation
доріжка руління	taxiway
естакада (для переходу до секторів посадки)	pier
забитий	clogged
завантажувати	load
задовольняти зростлі вимоги	meet tougher standards
зал	concourse
зал чекання	lounge; waiting room
зареєстрований багаж	checked baggage
збиратися	be set to
здаватися	surrender
здійснювати посадку на борт літака	board
зліт	take off
злітати	take off
злітно-посадочна смуга (ЗПС)	runway
камбузний завантажувач (харчових продуктів)	galley loader
квитанція	check (cheque - BE)
комбінезон	coverall
контрабанда	smuggling
крайній строк	deadline
крихкий	fragile
ламкий	fragile
леговище	airfield
літак	(air)plane
літальний апарат	aircraft ( <i>plural</i> : aircraft)
мастило	grease
міні-автобус	minivan
місце багажу (валіза тощо)	piece of baggage
місце зберігання багажу (службове приміщення в аеропорту)	bag well
місце збору пасажирів перед посадкою	assembly point
на (одного пасажирів тощо)	per
нагорі	overhead
надмірний	excessive

наземна пересувна електростанція	ground power unit
наркотики	drugs
незареєстрований багаж	unchecked baggage
нещасний	miserable
оцінювати	estimate
пакувальна клітка	crate
пас (ремінь) конвеєра	conveyor belt
перевізник (авіакомпанія)	carrier
перевіряти (речі пасажпрів)	screen
переповнений	clogged
перешкоджати	impede
пищати	squeak
підписати	ink
плата	charge
політ	flight
положення, у якому літак пришвартований до трапу для посадки пасажирів	loading position
постачати	supply
пошкодити	damage
приземлятися	land
приймати на себе (зобов'язання тощо)	assume
приклеювати	stick
проводжати	see off
продовжувати	proceed
пункт контролю	checkpoint
пункт одержання багажу	baggage retrieval area
пункт призначення	point of destination
разом з	complete with
реєстратор	check-in clerk
реєстрація на рейс	check-in
реєструватися на рейс	check in
рейс	flight
решта	remainder
річ	article
розвантажувати	unload
сектор посадки	gate
сідати (про літальні апарати)	land
скринучий	creaky
собака, натренований на пошук вибухівки	bomb dog
ступінь	rate
суміжний (з)	adjacent (to)
тераса для глядачів	spectators' terrace
термінал	terminal
технічне обслуговування	maintenance
технічний автомобіль	service vehicle
товар	article
трактор для буксирування літаків	aircraft tug
трап (телескопічний) для посадки пасажпрів	passenger loading bridge
тягнути (на себе), буксирувати	pull
угода	deal
фойє	lobby
центр управління польотів (диспетчерський пункт)	control tower
цінний	valuable
цінність (багажу тощо)	value
черга	line

шків  
шкода  
ярлик

pulley  
damage  
check (cheque - BE)

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

abbreviated	скорочений, у аббревіатурі
automated banking	банкомат
baggage locker	камера схову
bank order	перерахування грошей з банківського рахунку
boarding	посадка
boarding pass	посадочний талон
business class	бізнес-клас (категорія квитка)
cart	візок
cash	готівка
change	розмін (грошей)
chapel	каплиця
check-in desk	сектор реєстрації (на рейс)
coded	кодований
confirm	підтвердити (виліт тощо)
connect from	вилітати з
credit card	кредитна картка
curbside baggage check-in	реєстрація пасажирів на рейс біля будівлі аеропорту
customer	клієнт, відвідувач
delayed	відкладений, що затримується
departure	виліт, відбуття
diaper-changing facilities	приміщення для зміни дитячих пелюшок
drop off (the passengers)	висаджувати (пасажирів)
duty free	без сплати мита
economy class	економічний клас (категорія квитка)
emergency	надзвичайна ситуація
emergency exit	запасний вихід
every hour on the half-hour	кожної години рівно о пів-на наступну годину (наприклад, 12.30, 13.30 т.і.)
every hour on the hour	кожної години рівно о цій годині (наприклад, 12.00, 13.00 т.і.)
facilities	устаткування
flag down	зупиняти (таксі тощо) піднятою рукою
hamper	гальмувати (прогрес тощо); уповільнювати
health club	фітнес-клуб
hire (rent)	наймати, брати напрокат
holdup	затримка
hourly	кожної години
indication	вказівка
late arrival	прибуття із запізненням
late departures	відбуття із запізненням
latecomer	що запізнився
local	місцевий
loop	петля (кругова дорога, яка з'єдпує усі термінали аеропорту)
moving sidewalk	рухома доріжка
notice	повідомлення
one-way ticket	квиток в один бік
otherwise	інакше
produce (a ticket)	пред'являти (квиток)
purchase	купівля
reserve	резервувати

restroom	туалет
return ticket	квиток в обидва кінці
rooms by the hour	кімнати в готелі з погодинною оплатою
row	ряд
runway delay	затримка на злітній смузі
scaffolding	будівельне риштування
security check	перевірка служби безпеки аеропорту
shuttle	регулярне повітряне (наземне тощо) сполучення між двома містами
stopping place	зупинка
ticket counter	сектор продажу квитків
toll	плата за проїзд приватним шляхом, мостом тощо
transit	транзитний
transportation	перевезення
urgent	терміновий
valid	дійсний
water shuttle	катер, що регулярно курсує між двома точками
well in advance	задовго до вильоту

#### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

банкомат	automated banking
без сплати мита	duty free
бізнес-клас (категорія квитка)	business class
брати напрокат	hire (rent)
будівельне риштування	scaffolding
виліт, відбуття	departure
вилітати з	connect from
висаджувати (пасажирів)	drop off (the passengers)
відбуття із запізненням	late departures
відвідувач	customer
відкладений	delayed
візок	cart
вказівка	indication
гальмувати (прогрес тощо)	hamper
готівка	cash
дійсний	valid
економічний клас (категорія квитка)	economy class
задовго до вильоту	well in advance
запасний вихід	emergency exit
затримка	holdup
затримка на злітній смузі	runway delay
зупинка	stopping place
зупиняти (таксі тощо) піднятою рукою	flag down
інакше	otherwise
камера схову	baggage locker
каплиця	chapel
катер, що регулярно курсує між двома точками	water shuttle
квиток в обидва кінці	return ticket
квиток в один бік	one-way ticket
кімнати в готелі з погодинною оплатою	rooms by the hour
клієнт	customer
кодований	coded
кожної години	hourly
кожної години рівно о пів-на наступну годину (наприклад, 12.30, 13.30 ті.) кожної години рівно о цій	every hour on the half-hour
годині (наприклад, 12.00, 13.00 ті.)	every hour on the hour

кредитна картка	credit card
купівля	purchase
місцевий	local
надзвичайна ситуація	emergency
наймати	hire (rent)
перевезення	transportation
перевірка служби безпеки аеропорту	security check
перерахування грошей з банківського рахунку	bank order
петля (кругова дорога, яка з'єднує усі термінали аеропорту)	loop
підтвердити (виліт тощо)	confirm
плата за проїзд приватним шляхом, мостом тощо	toll
повідомлення	notice
посадка	boarding
посадочний талон	boarding pass
пред'являти (квиток)	produce (a ticket)
прибуття із запізненням	late arrival
приміщення для зміни дитячих пелюшок	diaper-changing facilities
регулярне повітряне (наземне тощо) сполучення між двома містами	shuttle
реєстрація пасажирів на рейс біля будівлі аеропорту	curbside baggage check-in
резервувати	reserve
розмін (грошей)	change
рухома доріжка	moving sidewalk
ряд	row
сектор продажу квитків	ticket counter
сектор реєстрації (на рейс)	check-in desk
скорочений	abbreviated
терміновий	urgent
транзитний	transit
туалет	restroom
у аббревіатурі	abbreviated
уповільнювати (прогрес тощо)	hamper
устаткування	facilities
фітнесс-клуб	health club
що запізнився	latecomer
що затримується	delayed

## LESSON 2

### PART I

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### CUSTOMS DECLARATIONS AND LANDING CARDS - МПТІІ ДЕКЛАРАЦІЇ ТА КАРТКИ ПРИЗЕМЛЕННЯ

#### UKRAINE - УКРАЇНА

ammunition	боєприпаси
antiques	старовинні речі
appliances	пристосування
be aware	усвідомлювати
bill	вексель
bond	облігація
citizen	громадянин

citizenship	громадянство
crude	необроблений
currency	валюта
customs	митниця
customs control	митний контроль
customs declaration	митна декларація
customs officer	митник
description	тип
diamond	діамант
duration	протягом
embassy	амбасада, посольство
exchequer bill	казначейський білет; вексель державної скарбниці
false	неправдивий
fill in	заповнювати (бланк)
foodstuff	харчові продукти
fowl	птиця
immigration control	імміграційний контроль
immigration officer	працівник імміграційної служби
inspection	перевірка
issue	видавати, видача
landing card	картка приземлення
letter of credit	акредитив
live	живий
manuscript	рукопис
object of art	витвір мистецтва
origin	походження
postage stamp	поштова марка
precious	дорогоцінний
printed matter	друкована продукція
process	обробляти
property papers	документи на право власності
purpose	мета
recording	запис
render oneself	підпадати під
renewable	такий, що може бути відновлений
residence	проживання
ruby	рубін
scrap (metal)	металобрухт
securities	цінні папери
share	акція (підприємства)
slaughtered	забитий (про тварину тощо)
submit	пред'являти
thereof	з них
vary	варіювати(ся)
voucher	ваучер

## USA- США

accordingly	відповідно
accuracy	точність
acquired	придбаний
admission number	внукний номер
authorities	органи влади
authorized	дозволений
be about to do smth	збратися зробити будь-що

be subject to	підлягати
bearer instruments	фінансові документи пред'явника
beverages	напої
check (cheque-BE)	чек
civil penalty	адміністративне покарання
combination	сполучення, разом
commercial items	речі для продажу
completed	заповнений
controlled	що підлягає контролю
criminal prosecution	судове переслідування
delay	уповільнювати, відкласти
deportation	депортація, висилка із країни
determined	визначений
dutiable	такий, що обкладається митом
duty	мито
duty free exemption	звільнення від сплати мита
enter	вносити (записувати)
entry	надходження
exceed	перевищувати
expected	очікуваний
failure	неспроможність
female	жіночий
file a report	подати відомості
fine	штраф
gift	подарунок
hard liqueur	міцні напої
importation	ввезення
item	річ, нункт
lead	привести
legal	законний
legibly	розбірливо
liqueur	спиртні напої
male	чоловічий
merchandise	придбані товари
monetary instruments	фінансові документи тощо
money order	грошовий переказ
non-resident	особа, яка не мешкає постійно у певному місці
obtained	придбаний
pest	шкідник, паразит
possession	володіння
present	подавати
print	писати друкованими літерами
ranch	ранчо
record	запис
regardless	незалежно
required	такий, що вимагається
reside	мешкати
resident	особа, яка постійно мешкає у певному місці
restricted	обмежений
retail	роздрібний
retain	зберігати
reverse	зворотний
sample	зразок
search	обшук, пошук
seizure	конфіскація



smuggling	контрабанда
snail	равлик, слимак
soil	земля, ґрунт
statement	заява
stock	акція (акціонерного товариства)
surrender	здавати
tax	податок
traveler's check	акредитив
type	друкувати
unauthorized	недозволений
unlawful	незаконний
US Customs Service	митна служба США
US Immigration and Naturalization Service Inspection	Інспекція служби імміграції та натуралізації США
used	вживаний

### WORDS AND WORD COMBINATIONS TO DESCRIBE AIRPORTS - СЛОВА ТА ВПРАЗП ДЛЯ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ АЕРОПОРТІВ

annoyance	річ, яка дратує
backup	стояння у черзі, автомобільна пробка
bland	прісний (нецікавий)
bottleneck	вузький прохід
commuting hours	години пік (на автострадах)
directional sign	показчик напрямку руху
dump	викидати, звалювати
egregious	кричущий, безпардонний
fare	їжа
flatten	збивати з ніг
freeway	загальнодоступна (безплатна) автострада
gridlock	автомобільна пробка на перехресті
hub	база
jeopardize	загрожувати
layover	зупинка (в дорозі)
long-term (parking) lot	довготермінова автостоянка
mazelike concourses	лабіринт переходів
mildew	пліснява
notwithstanding	не дивлячись на, всупереч
on the quarter hour	кожну годину о чверть на наступну годину (наприклад, 12.15)
promptness	старанність
ramp	похилий з'їзд з автостради
rash	робити необдуману заяву
reek	тхнути
repetitive	стандартний (про їжу)
sanity	здоровий глузд
scamper up a practice rock-climbing wall	дряпатися на стіну для тренування скелелазів
singular distaste	безпрецедентне небажання
ski-toting	що несе лижі в руках
snarled roads	забиті (транспортном) дороги
stack up	накопичуватися
throw back raw oysters	поласувати жнвими устрицями
tie-up	затримка (вильоту тощо)
timeliness	дотримання графіку
toll-free number	номер для безкоштовних телефонних дзвінків
treat	частування
trek	перехід

## PART 2

advantage	перевага, вигода
afford	дозволяти собі, бути спроможним
annual	щорічний, річний
anxiety	тривога, неспокій, турбота; палке бажання
anxious	стривожений, стурбований; що палко бажає
ASM costs	витрати на перевезення одного пасажирського місця на відстань в одну милю
available	наявний, доступний, досяжний
batter	бити, дубасити, лущувати, довбати, розбивати, піддавати нищівній критиці
battered	побитий, розбитий, пошарпаний, поношений, підданий нищівній критиці
battering	побиття, розгром, нищівна критика
be at stake	бути поставленим на карту, бути в небезпеці
capacity	місткість, ємність, обсяг, об'єм; здатність, здібність, номінальна потужність
come into operation	починати діяти
compete	змагатися, конкурувати
competition	змагання, конкуренція
competitive	конкурсний, конкуруючий, конкурентоспроможний
competitor	учасник змагання, конкурент
concession	згода, поступка; концесія (право виконувати певну діяльність)
cost	ціна, вартість, собівартість; коштувати, обходитися, потребувати
costs	видатки, витрати
crash	аварія, катастрофа, сильний удар під час зіткнення; гуркіт, грюкіт, тріск; крах, банкрутство; ударитися (врізатися) з гуркотом
crash course	короткий інтенсивний курс навчання
crash helmet	захисний шолом (мотоцикліста тощо)
decrease	зменшувати(ся), зменшення, зниження
discount	знижка; давати знижку
fledgling	неоперене пташеня, новачок, жовторотик; жовторотий, "зелений", недосвідчений
grapple	зчепитися, боротися, вовтузитися
ignoramus	невіглас, неук
ignorance	неуцтво, неосвіченість, невігластво
ignorant	неуцький, неосвічений, необізнаний, нетямущий
ignore	ігнорувати
in operation	у дії
increase	збільшувати(ся), викликати зростання, посилювати(ся), ріст, зростання, прприріст, збільшення,
negligible	незначний, дрібний, не вартий уваги, мізерний
offer	пропонувати; пропозиція
operate	діяти, працювати, справляти вплив, оперувати, керувати
operation	дія, робота, функціонування, процес, операція, керування
operator	оператор
perform	виконувати, робити, здійснювати; виступати
performance	виконання, дія, здійснення; робота, характеристики діяльності; виступ
performer	виконавець
predict	провіщати, передрікати, передбачати, пророкувати
predictable	що можна передбачити (прогнозувати)
prediction	передбачення, пророцтво, прогноз
pretend	прикидатися, удавати, робити вигляд, симулювати
pretender	удавальник, облудник, обманщик, ошуканець
pretense	претензія, удавання
pretentious	претензійний, показний
profit	прибуток, дохід, користь
profitable	прибутковий, рентабельний, вигідний, корисний, сприятливий
profiteer	спекулянт
put into operation	нукати в експлуатацію

<b>reduce</b>	зменшувати(ся)
<b>reduction</b>	зменшення, зниження
<b>rival</b>	суперник, учасник змагання, конкурент
<b>scramble</b>	продиратися, улаштувати бійку (супитку), боротися за що-небудь
<b>share</b>	ділити(ся), поділяти, брати спільну участь; доля, частина, акція (компанії), частка
<b>shareholder</b>	акціонер, власник акцій
<b>slash</b>	хльостати, бити, різати ножом, різко скорочувати, урізати
<b>stake</b>	ставка, заклад (у парі); акція (компанії)
<b>stake a claim</b>	робити заявку (на право володіння будь-чим чи вести діяльність)
<b>strive</b>	намагатися, докладати зусиль
<b>survival</b>	виживання
<b>survive</b>	вижити, лишитися живим, уціліти, врятуватися
<b>survivor</b>	той, хто уцілів (вижив, врятувався)
<b>trade</b>	обмінювати(ся)
<b>understate</b>	применшувати, висловлюватися стримано (не до кінця)
<b>vintage</b>	марочний, витриманий (про вино); святковий, найкращий (час тощо)
<b>wage</b>	вести (дії, війну тощо), проводити (компанію)
<b>wages</b>	заробітна плата (робітників)
<b>wring</b>	витискувати, викручувати, ламати руки (з рознуки)
<b>wring one's neck</b>	скрутити шию (в'язи)

### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

### МИТНІ ДЕКЛАРАЦІЇ ТА КАРТКИ ПРИЗЕМЛЕННЯ - CUSTOMS DECLARATIONS AND LANDING CARDS

#### Україна - Ukraine

акредитив	letter of credit
акція (підприємства)	share
амбасада	embassy
боєприпаси	ammunition
валюта	currency
варіювати(ся)	vary
ваучер	voucher
вексель	bill
вексель державної скарбниці	exchequer bill
видавати	issue
видача	issue
витвір мистецтва	object of art
громадянин	citizen
громадянство	citizenship
діамант	diamond
документи на право власності	property papers
дорогоцінний	precious
друкована продукція	printed matter
живий	live
з них	thereof
забитий (про тварину тощо)	slaughtered
запис	recording
заповнювати (бланк)	fill in
імміграційний контроль	immigration control
казначейський білет	exchequer bill
картка приземлення	landing card
мета	purpose
металобрухт	scrap (metal)
митна декларація	customs declaration

митний контроль	customs control
митник	customs officer
митниця	customs
необроблений	crude
неправдивий	false
облігація	bond
обробляти	process
перевірка	inspection
підпадати під	render oneself
посольство	embassy
походження	origin
поштова марка	postage stamp
працівник імміграційної служби	immigration officer
пред'являти	submit
пристосування	appliances
проживання	residence
протягом	duration
птиця	fowl
рубін	ruby
рукопис	manuscript
старовинні речі	antiques
такий, що може бути відновлений	renewable
тип	description
усвідомлювати	be aware
харчові продукти	foodstuff
цінні папери	securities

## США-USA

адміністративне покарання	civil penalty
акредитив	traveler's check
акція (акціонерного товариства)	stock
ввезення	importation
вживаний	used
визначений	determined
висилка із країни	deportation
відкладати	delay
відповідно	accordingly
вносити (записувати)	enter
володіння	possession
впускний номер	admission number
грошовий переказ	money order
депортація	deportation
дозволений	authorized
друкувати	type
жіночий	female
законний	legal
запис	record
заповнений	completed
заява	statement
зберігати	retain
збратися зробити будь-що	be about to do smth
звільнення від сплати мита	duty free exemption
зворотний	reverse
здавати	surrender

земля, ґрунт	soil
зразок	sample
Інспекція служби імміграції та натуралізації США	US Immigration and Naturalization Service Inspection
контрабанда	smuggling
конфіскація мешкати	seizure
митна служба США	reside
мито	US Customs Service
міцні напої	duty
надходження	hard liqueur
напої	entry
недозволений	beverages
незаконний	unauthorized
незалежно	unlawful
неспроможність	regardless
обмежений обшук	failure
органи влади	restricted
особа, яка не мешкає постійно у певному місці	search
особа, яка постійно мешкає у певному місці	authorities
очікуваний паразит перевищувати	non-resident
писати друкованими літерами	resident
підлягати подавати	expected
подавати відомості	pest
подарунок податок	exceed
пошук привести	print
придбаний придбані	be subject to
товари нункт	present
(документу тощо)	file a report
равлик разом ранчо	gift
речі для продажу	tax
річ	search
розбірливо роздрібний слимак	lead
спиртні напої сполучення судове	acquired; obtained
переслідування такий, що	merchandise
вимагається такий, що обкладається	item
митом точність уповільнювати	snail
фінансові документи фінансові	combination
документи пред'явника чек	ranch
чоловічий	commercial items
шкідник	item
	legibly
	retail
	snail
	liqueur
	combination
	criminal prosecution
	required
	dutiable
	accuracy
	delay
	monetary instruments
	bearer instruments
	check (cheque-BE)
	male
	pest

штраф  
що підлягає контролю

**fine**  
**controlled**

## СЛОВА ТА ВПРАЗН ДЛЯ ХАРАКТЕРИСТИКИ АЕРОПОРТІВ - WORDS AND WORD COMBINATIONS TO DESCRIBE AIRPORTS

автомобільна пробка на перехресті  
база  
безпардонний  
безпрецедентне небажання  
викидати  
всупереч  
вузький прохід  
години пік (на автостадах)  
довготермінова автостоянка  
дотримання графіку  
дряпатися на стіну для тренування скелелазів  
забиті (транспорт) дороги  
загальнодоступна (безплатна) автостада  
загрожувати  
затримка (вильоту тощо)  
збивати з ніг  
звалювати  
здоровий глузд  
зупинка (в дорозі)  
їжа  
кожну годину о чверть на наступну годину  
(наприклад, 12.15)  
кричущий  
лабіринт переходів  
накопичуватися  
не дивлячись на  
номер для безкоштовних телефонних дзвінків  
перехід  
пліснява  
показчик напрямку руху  
поласувати живими устрицями  
похилий з'їзд з автостади  
прісний (нецікавий)  
річ, яка дратує  
робити необдуману заяву  
стандартний (про їжу)  
старанність  
стояння у черзі, автомобільна пробка  
тхнути  
частування  
що несе лижі в руках

gridlock  
hub  
egregious  
singular distaste  
dump  
notwithstanding  
bottleneck  
commuting hours  
long-term (parking) lot  
timeliness  
scamper up a practice rock-climbing  
snarled roads  
freeway  
jeopardize  
tie-up  
flatten  
dump  
sanity  
layover  
fare  
on the quarter hour  
  
egregious  
mazelike concourses  
stack up  
notwithstanding  
toll-free number  
trek  
mildew  
directional sign  
throw back raw oysters  
ramp  
bland  
annoyance  
rash  
repetitive  
promptness  
backup  
reek  
treat  
ski-toting

### PART 2

аварія  
акціонер  
акція (компанії)  
банкрутство  
бити  
бити (з розмаху, навідліг)

crash  
shareholder  
stake, share  
crash  
batter  
slash

боротися	grapple
боротися (неестетично)	scramble
брати спільну участь	share
бути в небезпеці	be at stake
бути поставленим на карту	be at stake
бути спроможним	afford
вартість	cost
вести (дії, війну тощо)	wage
вигідний	profitable
вигода	advantage
видатки	costs
виживання	survival
виживати	survive
викликати зростання	increase
виконавець	performer
виконання	performance
виконувати	perform
викручувати	wring
висловлюватися стримано (не до кінця)	understate
виступ	performance
виступати	perform
витискувати	wring
витрати	costs
витрати на перевезення одного пасажирського місця на відстань у одну милю	ASM costs
витриманий (про вино)	vintage
власник акцій	shareholder
вовтузитися	grapple
врятуватися	survive
грюкіт	crash
гуркіт	crash
давати знижку	discount
ділити(ся)	share
дія	operation; performance
діяти	operate
довбати (в переносному значенні)	batter
дозволяти собі	afford
докладати зусиль	strive
доля (частина)	share
доступний	available
досяжний	available
ДОХІД	profit
дрібний	negligible
дубасити	batter
ємність	capacity
жовторотий	fledgling
жовторотик	fledgling
заклад (у парі)	stake
заробітна плата (робітників)	wages
захисний шолом (мотоцикліста тощо)	crash helmet
збільшення	increase
збільшувати(ся)	increase
згода	concession

здатність	capacity
здібність	capacity
здійснення	performance
здійснювати	perform
зелений (недосвідчений)	fledgling
змагання	competition
змагатися	compete
зменшення	decrease; reduction
зменшувати(ся)	decrease; reduce
зниження	decrease; reduction
знижка	discount
зростання	increase
зчепитися	grapple
ігнорувати	ignore
катастрофа	crash
керування (механізмом тощо)	operation
керувати (механізмом тощо)	operate
конкурент	competitor; rival
конкурентоспроможний	competitive
конкуренція	competition
конкурсний	competitive
конкурувати	compete
конкуруючий	competitive
концесія (право виконувати певну діяльність)	concession
корисний	profitable
користь	profit
короткий інтенсивний курс навчання	crash course
коштувати	cost
крах	crash
ламати руки (з рознуки)	wring
лишитися живим	survive
лупцювати	batter
марочний (про вино тощо)	vintage
мізерний	negligible
місткість	capacity
найкращий (час тощо)	vintage
намагатися	strive
наявний	available
не вартий уваги	negligible
невіглас	ignoramus
невігластво	ignorance
недосвідчений	fledgling
незначний	negligible
необізнаний	ignorant
неоперене пташеня	fledgling
неосвічений	ignorant
неосвіченість	ignorance
неспокій	anxiety
нетямущий	ignorant
неук	ignoramus
неуцтво	ignorance
неуцький	ignorant
нищівна критика	battering
новачок	fledgling
номінальна потужність	capacity



об'єм	capacity
облудник	pretender
обманщик	pretender
обмінювати(ся)	trade
обсяг	capacity
обходитися (у певну суму тощо)	cost
оператор	operator
операція	operation
оперувати	operate
ошуканець	pretender
палке бажання	anxiety
перевага	advantage
передбачати	predict
передбачення	prediction
передрікати	predict
піддавати нищівній критиці	batter
підданий нищівній критиці	battered
побитий	battered
побиття	battering
поділяти (думку тощо)	share
показний	pretentious
поношений	battered
посилювати(ся)	increase
поступка	concession
потребувати (певних витрат, зусиль тощо)	cost
починати діяти	come into operation
пошарпаний	battered
працювати	operate
претензійний	pretentious
претензія	pretense
прибутковий	profitable
прибуток	profit
прикидатися	pretend
применшувати	understate
пріріст	increase
провіщати	predict
проводити (компанію)	wage
прогноз	prediction
продиратися	scramble
пропозиція	offer
пропонувати	offer
пророкувати	predict
пророцтво	prediction
процес	operation
нукати в експлуатацію	put into operation
рентабельний	profitable
різати ножом	slash
різко скорочувати	slash
річний	annual
робити	perform
робити вигляд	pretend
робити заявку (на право володіння будь-чим чи вести діяльність)	stake a claim
робота	operation; performance
розбивати	batter
розбитий	battered

розгром  
святковий  
сильний удар під час зіткнення  
симулювати  
скрутити шню (в'язи)  
собівартість  
спекулянт  
справляти вплив  
сприятливий  
ставка  
стривожений  
стурбований  
суперник  
той, хто уцілів (вижив, врятувався)  
тривога  
тріск  
турбота  
у дії  
удавальник  
удавання  
удавати  
ударитися (врізатися) з гуркотом  
улаштовувати бійку (сучаску)  
урізати  
уціліти  
учасник змагання  
функціонування  
характеристики діяльності  
хльостати (з розмаху)  
ціна  
частина  
частка  
що можна передбачити (прогнозувати)  
що палко бажає  
щорічний

battering  
vintage  
crash  
pretend  
wring one's neck  
cost  
profiteer  
operate  
profitable  
stake  
anxious  
anxious  
rival  
survivor  
anxiety  
crash  
anxiety  
in operation  
pretender  
pretense  
pretend  
crash  
scramble  
slash  
survive  
competitor; rival  
operation  
performance  
slash  
cost  
share  
share  
predictable  
anxious  
annual

## LESSON 3

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

account (for)	пояснювати; контролювати, нести відповідальність за
bank on	розраховувати (на)
brand brand	марка, сорт, ґатунок, якість
name by	назва фабричної (фірмової) марки
heart charge	напам'ять
clone	призначити (вимагати) плату, правити, брати (гроші) за-щось; ціна, плата
contain	(за послуги)
deliver	копія
delivery	містити (у собі); утримувати (на тому ж рівні), стримувати
enter	доставляти, передавати, вручати
exception	доставка, передача, вручення
expand	входити у, вступати до
experience	виняток
	розшпрювати(ся), збільшувати(ся), розгортати(ся)
	досвід, кваліфікація, стаж

fierce	лютий, шалений, несамовитий
fleet	флот (морський, повітряний)
flock	наводняти, юрмитися
flood	повінь, потік, приплив, заливати, наводняти, юрмитися
free of charge	безплатно, безкоштовно
GDP (gross domestic product)	ВНП (валовий національний продукт)
glimmer	блимання, мигтіння, слабкий проблиск (надії), мерехтіння; блимати, мигтіти, тьмяно світити, мерехтіти
grab	хапати, захоплювати, привласнювати
halt	зупинка
heart	центр (чогось)
high tide	морський приплив
invade	вдиратися, вторгатися, наводнити, заповонити
joint venture	спільне підприємство
launch	занускати, починати, вводити в дію, відкривати
low tide	морський відплив
marginal	периферійний, що знаходиться на краю (чогось), другорядний
maul	шматувати, терзати
network	мережа, система (філій тощо)
of the best brand	найвищого ґатунку
pace	крокувати, рухатись з такою ж швидкістю як хтось-інший
persuade	переконувати, схилати, умовляти
press	тиснути, натискувати, чинити тиск
pressure	тиск
public revenues	державні доходи (від податків)
range	радіус дії, межа застосування, дальність (польоту тощо)
rare	рідкісний
reassuring	заспокійливий, утішний, підбадьорливий, знайомий та звичний
reckon	(розмовний стиль) думати, гадати
reflect	відображати, віддзеркалювати
reflection	відображення
regular	звичайний, стандартний
response	відповідь
revenue	дохід (річний), прибуток
support	підтримка, допомога, опора, засоби існування; підтримувати, допомагати, утримувати (сім'ю тощо)
take heart from	позичати (почерпнути) мужності (ентузіазму) у когось (з чогось)
tide over	долати, переборювати
tiny	дуже маленький, крихітний
trim	підрізати, підстригати
venture	(комерційна) справа, підприємство
yields	дохід, прибуток

#### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

безкоштовно	free of charge
безплатно	free of charge
блимання	glimmer
блимати	glimmer
вводити в дію	launch
вдиратися	invade
виняток	exception
віддзеркалювати	reflect
відкривати	launch
відображати	reflect
відображення	reflection
відповідь	response

ВНП (валовий національний продукт)	GDP (gross domestic prod
вручити	deliver
вручення	delivery
вступати до	enter
вторгатися	invade
входити у	enter
гадати	reckon
гатунок	brand
дальність (польоту тощо)	range
державні доходи (від податків)	public revenues
долати	tide over
допомагати	support
допомога	support
досвід	experience
доставка,	delivery
доставляти	deliver
дохід	yields
дохід (річний)	revenue
другорядний	marginal
дуже маленький	tiny
думати	reckon
заливати	flood
заполонити	invade
занускати	launch
засоби існування	support
заспокійливий	reassuring
захоплювати,	grab
збільшувати(ся)	expand
звичайний	regular
знайомий та звичний	reassuring
зупинка	halt
кваліфікація	experience
контролювати	account (for)
копія	clone
крихтінний	tiny
крокувати	pace
лютий	fierce
марка	brand
межа застосування	range
мережа	network
мерехтіння	glimmer
мерехтити	glimmer
мигтіння	glimmer
мигтіти	glimmer
містити (у собі)	contain
морський відплив	low tide
морський приплив	high tide
наводнювати	invade; flock; flood
назва фабричної (фірмової) марки	brand name
найвищого гатунку	of the best brand
напам'ять	by heart
натискувати	press
несамовитий	fierce
нести відповідальність за	account (for)
опора	support
переборювати	tide over

передавати	deliver
передача	delivery
переконувати	persuade
периферійний	marginal
підбадьорливий	reassuring
підприємство	venture
підрізати	trim
підстригати	trim
підтримка	support
підтримувати	support
плата (за послуги)	charge
повінь	flood
позичати (почерпнути) мужност (ентузіазму) у когось (з чогось)	take heart from
потік	flood
починати	launch
пояснювати	account (for)
правити (гроші) за-щось	charge
прибуток	revenue; yields
привласнювати	grab
призначати (вимагати) плату	charge
приплив	flood
радіус дії	range
рідкісний	rare
розгортати(ся)	expand
розраховувати (на)	bank on
розшпрювати(ся)	expand
рухатися з такою ж швидкістю як хтось-інший	pace
система (філій тощо)	network
слабкий проблиск (надії)	glimmer
сорт	brand
спільне підприємство	joint venture-
справа (комерційна)	venture
стаж	experience
стандартний	regular
стримувати	contain
схиляти	persuade
терзати	maul
тиск	pressure
тиснути	press
тьмяно світити	glimmer
умовляти	persuade
утішний	reassuring
утримувати (на тому ж рівні)	contain
утримувати (сім'ю тощо)	support
флот (морський, повітряний)	fleet
хапати	grab
центр (чогось)	heart
ціна	charge
чинити тиск	press
шалений	fierce
шматувати	maul
що знаходиться на краю (чогось)	marginal
юрмитися	flock; flood
якість	brand

# UNIT 4

## LESSON 1

### PARTI ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### TYPES OF HOTELS - ТИПИ ГОТЕЛІВ

airport hotel	готель біля аеропорту
bed and-breakfast	готель, де вартість сніданку включається до вартості номеру
(B&B) hotel	бізнес-готель у центрі міста (переважно для підприємців, що перебувають у відрядженні)
commercial hotel	конгрес-готель, що має усі необхідні приміщення для проведення зборів, нарад, конференцій тощо
congress hotel	дім фермера де інколи здаються кімнати
farmhouse	будинок для приїжджих (невеликий готель, що надає лише ліжко та сніданок)
guesthouse	студентський (тощо) гуртожиток, що надає лише ліжко
hostel	заїжджий постійний двір (невеликий готель з пивною у сільській місцевості)
inn	готель класу "люкс"
luxury hotel	мотель (готель для тих, хто подорожує автомобілем, має місце для паркування та обслуговування автомобілів, кафетерій та/або устаткування для приготування їжі, зазвичай розташований біля автостради)
motel	готель для автомобілістів, більший за мотель і надає послуги більш високого рівня, має першокласний ресторан
motor hotel	курортний готель на морському узбережжі, в горах тощо, для туристів, що відпочивають і мешкають тут певний час
resort hotel	готель на курорті з мінеральними водами (тут можна також пройти курс лікування)
spa hotel	

#### TYPES OF ROOMS - ТИПИ КІМНАТ (ДЛЯ ПРОЖИВАННЯ)

accommodation	помешкання, місце тимчасового проживання
double room	номер на двох (одне ліжко на двох)
duplex	дуплекс (двоповерховий люкс)
family room	номер з чотирма або більше ліжками
junior suit	люкс, де вітальня відділяється від спальні тонкою перегородкою
penthouse	люкс на даху висотного готелю
room	номер
room with en-suite bath and WC	номер з ванною та туалетом
single room	номер на одного (одне ліжко на одного)
studio	студія (кімната з одним ліжком на одного та розкладним диваном, люкс, що включає вітальню та одну або кілька спальних кімнат)
suit	номер на двох (два ліжка на одного кожне)
twin room	

#### TYPES OF ROOMS FOR SOCIAL EVENTS - ТИПИ КІМНАТ (ДЛЯ ГРУПОВИХ ЗАХОДІВ)

ballroom banquet room	бальний (танцювальний) зал бенкетний зал
conference room	зал для нарад, конференцій тощо
exhibition (display) room	виставочний зал
проведення прийомів	reception (hospitality / function) room зал для

## OTHER-ІНШЕ

convertible	складний; що складається
luxurious	розкішний, класу люкс
occupy	займати, тимчасово орендувати
put up (at a hotel)	зупинятися (у готелі)

## TYPES OF HOTEL FOOD PLANS - ТИПИ ПАНСІОНУ (ХАРЧУВАННЯ)

Full Board (FB)	
Full Pension (FP)	повний пансіон (до вартості готельного номера включається вартість сніданку, обіду та вечері)
En Pension	
(Full) American Plan	
Half Board (HB)	напівпансіон (до вартості готельного номера включається вартість сніданку та обіду (або вечері))
Demi Pension (DP)	
Bed-and-Breakfast (BB)	до вартості готельного номера включається вартість сніданку
Continental Plan (CP)	
European Plan (EP)	до вартості готельного номера вартість харчування не включається

## OTHER-ІНШЕ

board	харчування
entertainment	розваги
facilities	устаткування, обладнання
highway	автострада, шосе
lodging	проживання
provide	надавати
rate	вартість (номера тощо)
recreational	відновлювальний
resort	курорт
spa	курорт з мінеральними водами
treatment	лікування

## PART 2 HOTEL SERVICES AND FACILITIES -

### НОСЛУГ ТА УСТАТКУВАННЯ ГОТЕЛЮ

building of historical interest	будівля, що має історичну цінність
coffee and tea making facilities	устаткування для приготування кави або чаю
conference facilities	устаткування для проведення конференцій
currency exchange	обмін валют
doctor	медична допомога
dry cleaner	хімчистка
establishment may be suitable for disabled	заклад пристосований для проживання інвалідів
gardens of 1/2 acres or more	сад площею півакра або більше
indoor/ outdoor swimming pool	закритий / відкритий басейн
laundry service	пральня
lift	ліфт
night porter	нічний черговий
non smoking establishment	заклад для некурців
other sporting facilities available	є інше спортивне обладнання та устаткування
parking	місце для паркування автомобілів

<b>residents' lounge</b>	вітальня для відпочинку гостей
<b>restaurant facility</b>	ресторан
<b>room service</b>	обслуговування в номерах
<b>self service restaurant</b>	кафетерій (самообслуговування)
<b>shoe cleaning service</b>	чищення взуття
<b>special diets catered for</b>	приготування дієтичних страв
<b>special weekend breaks</b>	спеціальні розважальні програми у вихідні дні
<b>telephones in all bedrooms</b>	телефони в усіх номерах
<b>telephone available for guest use</b>	телефон загального користування
<b>television in bedrooms available</b>	можливість поставити телевізор у номері (за додаткову плату)
<b>traveller's cheques</b>	погашення акредитивів
<b>24 hour access</b>	готель відкритий цілодобово
<b>valet service</b>	прасування, чищення одягу
<b>valuables deposit</b>	зберігання цінних речей

## **HOTELS CLASSIFICATIONS - КАТЕГОРІЇ ГОТЕЛІВ**

<b>3 crown commended</b>	готель класу :> корони з плюсом
<b>easy chair</b>	крісло
<b>guide</b>	довідник; пояснювальна записка
<b>listed</b>	готель, що включили до переліку (в довіднику тощо)
<b>operate</b>	використовувати
<b>range</b>	діапазон, номенклатура, кількість

## **ABBREVIATIONS - СКОРОЧЕННЯ**

<b>AA (Automobile Association)</b>	Асоціація автолюбителів
<b>B&amp;B (bed and breakfast)</b>	до вартості номера включено сніданок
<b>cfe (coffee)</b>	кава
<b>cnfrnce felts (conference facilities)</b>	обладнання та устаткування для конференції
<b>ETB (English Tourist Board)</b>	Англійський комітет з питань туризму
<b>gdn (garden)</b>	парк
<b>non-smkg (non-smoking)</b>	для тих, хто не палить
<b>P (parking)</b>	паркування автомобілів
<b>p.p. (per person)</b>	на одну особу
<b>RAC (Royal Automobile Club)</b>	Королівський автомобільний клуб
<b>RR (British Rail)</b>	Британські залізниці
<b>RS (Room Service)</b>	обслуговування в номерах
<b>rstrnt (restaurant)</b>	ресторан
<b>STB (Scottish Tourist Board)</b>	Шотландський комітет з питань туризму
<b>TV (television)</b>	телевізор
<b>WB (weekend break)</b>	розважальна програма на вихідні
<b>WC (water closet)</b>	туалет
<b>WTB (Welsh Tourist Board)</b>	Валлійський комітет з питань туризму

## **HOTEL DEPARTMENTS - СЛУЖБИ ГОТЕЛЮ**

### **GENERAL MANAGER - КЕРУЮЧИЙ ГОТЕЛЕМ**

### **RECEPTION - СЛУЖБА ПРИЙОМУ ГОСТЕЙ**

<b>assistant manager</b>	заступник керуючого готелем (відповідає за прийом гостей)
<b>concierge</b>	консьєрж(ка) (працівник готелю, що допомагає з організацією дозвілля: квитки до театру, кіно, резервування столика у ресторані тощо)
<b>night porter</b>	нічний порт'є (черговий)
<b>receptionist</b>	порт'є; черговий, що реєструє гостей



## HOUSEKEEPING - ГОСПОДАРСЬКА СЛУЖБА

housekeeper	заступник керуючого готелем (відповідає за господарську службу)
switchboard operator	телефоніст(ка)
chambermaid	покоївка
maintenance engineer	інженер з експлуатації
floor maid laundry	чергова на поверсі
maid valet	працівниця пральні
	камердинер (працівник готелю, який прасує, чистить одяг тощо)

## RESTAURANT/KITCHEN - СЛУЖБА ХАРЧУВАННЯ

maitre d'hotel	метрдотель, керуючий рестораном
head chef head	шеф-кухар
waiter barmaid	метрдотель, керуючий рестораном
barman waiter	буфетниця
	бармен
	офіціант

## HALL- СЛУЖБА ОБСЛУГОВУВАННЯ У ВЕСТИБЮЛІ

bellboy	коридорний, посильний
cloak room attendant	гардеробник, гардеробниця
doorman	швейцар
head porter	відповідальний за обслуговування у вестибюлі
lift attendant	ліфтер
porter	носільник

## CASHIER- ФІНАНСОВА СЛУЖБА

accountant	бухгалтер
cashier	касир
head accountant	головний бухгалтер
hotel controller	начальник фінансової служби

## RECEPTION HALL- ВЕСТИБЮЛЬ ГОТЕЛЮ

hotel bill	рахунок за готель
key rack	стелаж для ключів від номерів готелю
letter rack	стелаж для листів для гостей
number tag	бірка ключа з номером кімнати
register	журнал реєстрації
registration form	бланк реєстрації
wall desk	відкидний столик, прикріплений до стіни
reception desk	місце реєстрації у готелі
check in	реєструватися (при поселенні у готелі)
check out	реєструватися (при виїзді з готелю)
linen	білизна
go sightseeing	оглядати пам'ятки
maintain	підтримувати
in charge	відповідальний
responsible	відповідальний
cloak room	гардероб
organization chart	схема організації (готелю)

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

### PARTI TINN HOTELIV - TYPES OF HOTELS

бізнес-готель у центрі міста (переважно для підприємців, що перебувають у відрядженні)	commercial hotel
будинок для приїжджих (невеликий готель, що надає лише ліжко та сніданок)	guesthouse
готель біля аеропорту	airport hotel
готель для автомобілістів, більший за мотель і надає послуги більш високого рівня, має першокласний ресторан	motor hotel
готель класу "люкс"	luxury hotel spa
готель на курорті з мінеральними водами (тут можна також пройти курс лікування)	hotel
готель, де вартість сніданку включається до вартості номеру	bed and-breakfast (B&B) hotel
дім фермера де інколи здаються кімнати	farmhouse
зайжджий постійний двір (невеликий готель з пивною у сільській місцевості)	inn
конгрес-готель, що має усі необхідні приміщення для проведення зборів, нарад, конференцій тощо	congress hotel
курортний готель на морському узбережжі, в горах тощо, для туристів, що відпочивають і мешкають тут певний час	resort hotel
мотель ( готель для тих, хто подорожує автомобілем, має місце для паркування та обслуговування автомобілів, кафетерій та/або устаткування для приготування їжі, зазвичай розташований біля автостради)	motel
студентський (тощо) гуртожиток, що надає лише ліжко	hostel

### TINN KIMNAT (DLIA PROZHIVANNIA) - TYPES OF ROOMS

дуплекс (двоповерховий люкс)	duplex
люкс на даху висотного готелю	penthouse
люкс, де вітальня відділяється від спальні тонкою перегородкою	junior suit
люкс, що включає вітальню та одну або кілька спальних кімнат	suit
номер	room
номер з ванною та туалетом	room with en-suit bath and WC
номер з чотирма або більше ліжками	family room
номер на двох (два ліжка на одного кожне)	twin room
номер на двох (одне ліжко на двох)	double room
номер на одного (одне ліжко на одного)	single room
помешкання, місце тимчасового проживання	accommodation
студія (кімната з одним ліжком на одного та розкладним диваном)	studio

### TINN KIMNAT (DLIA GRUHOVHX ZAKHODIV) -TYPES OF ROOMS FOR SOCIAL EVENTS

бальний (танцювальний) зал	ballroom
бенкетний зал	banquet room
виставочний зал	exhibition (display) room
зал для нарад, конференцій тощо	conference room
зал для проведення прийомів	reception (hospitality / function) room

## ІНШЕ - OTHER

займати, тимчасово орендувати	occupy
зупинятися (у готелі)	put up (at a hotel)
розкішний, класу люкс	luxurious
складний; що складається	convertible

## ТИПИ ПАНСІОНУ (ХАРЧУВАННЯ) - TYPES OF HOTEL FOOD PLANS

	Full Board (FB)
повний пансіон (до вартості готельного номера включається *all*ension I*)	Pension
вартість сніданку, обіду та вечері	(Full) American Plan
напівпансіон (до вартості готельного номера включається	Half Board (HB)
вартість сніданку та обіду (або вечері)	Demi Pension (DP)
до вартості готельного номера включається вартість сніданку	Bed-and-Breakfast (BB)
	Continental Plan (CP)
до вартості готельного номера вартість харчування не включається	European Plan (EP)

## ІНШЕ - OTHER

автострада	highway
вартість (номера тощо)	rate
відновлювальний	recreational
курорт	resort
курорт з мінеральними водами	spa
лікування	treatment
надавати	provide
обладнання	facilities
проживання	lodging
розваги	entertainment
устаткування	facilities
харчування	board

## PART 2 НОСЛУГ ТА УСТАТКУВАННЯ ГОТЕЛЮ

### - HOTEL SERVICES AND FACILITIES

будівля, що має історичну цінність	building of historical interest
вітальня для відпочинку гостей	residents' lounge
готель відкритий цілодобово	24-hour access
є інше спортивне обладнання та устаткування	other sporting facilities available
заклад для некурців	non smoking establishment
заклад пристосований для проживання інвалідів	establishment may be suitable for disabled
закритий / відкритий басейн	indoor/ outdoor swimming pool
зберігання цінних речей	valuables deposit
кафетерій (самообслуговування)	self service restaurant
ліфт	lift
медична допомога	doctor
місце для паркування автомобілів	parking
можливість поставити телевізор у номері (за додаткову плату)	television in bedrooms available
нічний черговий	night porter
обмін валют	currency exchange

обслуговування в номерах  
погашення акредитивів  
пральня  
прасування, чищення одягу  
приготування дієтичних страв  
ресторан  
сад площею півакра або більше  
спеціальні розважальні програми у вихідні дні  
телефон загального користування  
телефони в усіх номерах  
устаткування для приготування кави або чаю  
устаткування для проведення конференцій  
хімчистка  
чищення взуття

room service  
traveller's cheques  
laundry service  
valet service  
special diets catered for  
restaurant facility  
gardens of 1/2 acres or more  
special weekend breaks  
telephone available for guest use  
telephones in all bedrooms  
coffee and tea making facilities  
conference facilities  
dry cleaner  
shoe cleaning service

### **КАТЕГОРІЇ ГОТЕЛІВ - HOTELS CLASSIFICATIONS**

використовувати  
готель класу "3 корони з плюсом"  
готель, що включили до переліку (в довіднику тощо)  
діапазон  
довідник; пояснювальна записка  
кількість  
крісло  
номенклатура

operate  
3 crown commended  
listed  
range  
guide  
range  
easy chair  
range

### **СЛУЖБИ ГОТЕЛЮ - HOTEL DEPARTMENTS**

#### **Керуючий готелем - General Manager**

#### **Служба прийому гостей - Reception**

заступник керуючого готелем (відповідає за прийом гостей)  
консьєрж(ка) (працівник готелю, що допомагає з організацією дозвілля:  
квитки до театру, кіно, резервування столика у ресторані тощо) нічний  
портьє (черговий) портьє; черговий, що реєструє гостей

assistant manager  
concierge  
  
night porter  
receptionist

### **ГОСПОДАРСЬКА СЛУЖБА - HOUSEKEEPING**

заступник керуючого готелем (відповідає за усю господарську службу)  
інженер з експлуатації  
камердинер (працівник готелю, який прасує, чистить одяг тощо)  
покоївка  
працівниця пральні  
телефоніст(ка)  
чергова на поверсі

housekeeper  
maintenance engineer  
valet  
chambermaid  
laundry maid  
switchboard operator  
floor maid

### **СЛУЖБА ХАРЧУВАННЯ - RESTAURANT/KITCHEN**

бармен  
буфетниця  
метрдотель (керуючий рестораном)  
офіціант  
шеф-кухар

barman  
barmaid  
maitre d'hotel, head waiter  
waiter  
head chef

## СЛУЖБА ОБСЛУГОВУВАННЯ У ВЕСТИБЮЛІ - HALL

відповідальний за обслуговування у вестибюлі	head porter
гардеробник (гардеробниця)	cloak room attendant
коридорний,	bellboy
ліфтер	lift attendant
носильник	porter
посильний	bellboy
швейцар	doorman

## ФІНАНСОВА СЛУЖБА - CASHIER

бухгалтер	accountant
касир	cashier
головний бухгалтер	head accountant
начальник фінансової служби	hotel controller

## ВЕСТИБЮЛЬ ГОТЕЛЮ – RECEPTION HALL

білизна	linen
бірка ключа з номером кімнати	number tag
бланк реєстрації	registration form
відкидний столик, прикріплений до стіни	wall desk
відповідальний	in charge
відповідальний	responsible
гардероб	cloak room
журнал реєстрації	register
місце реєстрації у готелі	reception desk
оглядати пам'ятки	go sightseeing
підтримувати	maintain
рахунок за готель	hotel bill
реєструватися (при виїзді з готелю)	check out
реєструватися (при поселенні у готелі)	check in
стелаж для ключів від номерів готелю	key rack
стелаж для листів для гостей	letter rack
схема організації (готелю)	organization chart

## LESSON 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### RESERVATIONS - РЕЗЕРВУВАННЯ ПОМЕЩЕНЬ

book	резервувати, замовляти заздалегідь
booking	резервування, попереднє замовлення
car registration number	номерний знак (автомобіля)
car registration plate	номерний знак (автомобіля)
confirm	підтверджувати
confirmation	підтвердження
deposit	депозит, завдаток, попередній внесок
license plate	номерний знак (автомобіля)
reservation	резервування, попереднє замовлення
reserve	резервувати, замовляти заздалегідь

## CHECKING IN/OUT AND OTHER FORMS -РЕЄСТРАЦІЮ НРН НОСЕЛЕННІ/ВНСЕЛЕННІ ТА ІНШІ БЛАНКИ

accept	приймати
acceptance	приймання
actual	справжній, дійсний, фактично існуючий
adult	дорослий
bank account	банківський рахунок
be subject to	залежати від, підлягати будь-чому
clearance	усунення перешкод, приведення у відповідність до вимог
clearance requirements (to cheques)	вимоги до виплати готівки за чеками
enjoyable	приємний
extend (welcome)	вітати
fee	плата (за послуги)
fill in	заповнювати (картку при реєстрації)
guest registration card (form)	картка реєстрації при поселенні до готелю
infant	дитина (дошкільного віку)
intend	мати намір
leisure	відпочинок, дозвілля
muesli	муслі (суміш подрібнених горіхів, сухофруктів та пластівців)
on behalf	від імені
overseas	закордонний
poached egg	яйце "пашот" (зварене без шкаралупи)
porridge	вівсянка, вівсяні пластівці
retire	лягати спати
scrambled eggs	яєчня (жовтки змішані з білками)
settle an account	сплатити рахунок
shredded wheat	пшеничні пластівці
skimmed milk	збиране молоко
hard boiled egg	круто зварене яйце
soft boiled egg	некруто зварене яйце
stewed fruit	компот

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH РЕЗЕРВУВАННЯ НОМЕРІВ - RESERVATIONS

депозит завдаток номерний	deposit
знак (автомобіля)	deposit
	car registration number; car registration
підтвердження	plate; license plate
підтверджувати	confirmation
попередній внесок	confirm
резервування, попереднє замовлення	deposit
резервувати, замовляти заздалегідь	booking, reservation
	book, reserve

## РЕЄСТРАЦІЯ НРН НОСЕЛЕННІ/ВНСЕЛЕННІ ТА ІНШІ БЛАНКИ - CHECKING IN/OUT AND OTHER FORMS

банківський рахунок	bank account
вимоги до виплати готівки за чеками	clearance requirements (to cheques)
вівсяні пластівці	porridge
вівсянка	porridge
від імені	on behalf

ВІДПОЧИНОК	leisure
вітати	extend (welcome)
дитина (дошкільного віку)	infant
дійсний	actual
дозвілля	leisure
дорослий	adult
закордонний	overseas
залежати від	be subject to
заповнювати (картку при реєстрації)	fill in
збиране молоко	skimmed milk
картка реєстрації при поселенні до готелю	guest registration card (form)
компот	stewed fruit
круто зварене яйце	hard boiled egg
лягати спати	retire
мати намір	intend
муслі (суміш подрібнених горіхів, сухофруктів та пластівців)	muesli
некруто зварене яйце	soft boiled egg
підлягати будь-чому	be subject to
плата (за послуги)	fee
приведення у відповідність до вимог	clearance
приємний	enjoyable
приймання	acceptance
приймати	accept
пшеничні пластівці	shreaded wheat
сплатити рахунок	settle an account
справжній,	actual
усунення перешкод	clearance
фактичний	actual
яєчня (жовтки змішані з білками)	scrambled eggs
яйце "пашот" (зварене без шкаралупи)	poached egg

## LESSON 3

### PART I

#### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

advantage	перевага, вигода, користь
arrange	упорядковувати, організовувати, домовлятися; розташовувати (у певному порядку); аранжувати
arrangement	упорядкування, організація, домовленість; розташування (у певному порядку), класифікація; аранжування
be in one's bad (black) books	перебувати у чиїхось чорних списках
be in one's good books	бути на гарному рахунку у когось
be to one's advantage	бути на чиюсь користь
book	резервувати, бронювати, замовляти заздалегідь
booking office	квиткова каса, контора (готелю)
closed book	невідома галузь, незнана справа
complete	повний, завершений, довершений
consider	вважати, гадати; розглядати, обговорювати, обмірковувати
consideration	міркування, підстава; розгляд, обговорення
content (adjective)	задоволений, згодний
content (noun)	вміст, обсяг
contents	зміст

**depend (on, upon)**

**dependence**

**dependent**

depending (on, upon)

hesitate

in this (one, many) respects

include

included

inclusive

independence

independent

obtain

pay one's last respects

performance

put up a good (poor) show

respect

respectively

respects

selection

show around

show of hands

show off

show somebody somewhere

show to good (the best) advantage

show up

**take advantage of**

**turn to advantage**

**vary**

VAT (value added tax)

залежати (від когось, чогось), зумовлюватися (чимось); по-

кладатися, розраховувати, сподіватися (на когось, щось)

залежність, зумовленість залежний, зумовлений залежно (від

когось, чогось) вагатися, сумніватися

у цьому (одному, багатьох) відношенні (відношеннях)

містити в собі, мати в своєму складі; включати до складу

включно

що містить у собі (включає до себе), включаючи, включно

незалежність, незумовленість незалежний,

необумовлений одержувати, діставати, здобувати віддати

останню шану

виконання (роботи тощо), характеристика функціонування

добре/ слабо робити будь-що, досягти позитивних/ негативних

наслідків, показати товар з найкращого боку поважати,

шанувати; повага, увага відповідно, у зазначеному порядку

привіт(ання), шанування

вибір, добірка, асортимент, збірка вибраних творів

показувати комусь усе вартє уваги, знайомити

голосування (відкрите)

вихвалятися, хизуватися; людина, що хизується, задавака

провести когось кудись підкреслювати (вигідно) що-

небудь з'явитися

скористатися з чогось повернути на чиюсь

користь мінятися(ся), змінювати(ся),

варіювати(ся) податок на додану вартість

(ПДВ)

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

аранжування

аранжувати

бронювати

бути на гарному рахунку у когось

бути на чиюсь користь

вагатися

варіювати(ся)

вважати

вигода

виконання (роботи тощо)

вихвалятися

віддати останню шану

відповідно

включати до складу

включаючи

включно

вміст

гадати

голосування (відкрите)

діставати

arrangement

arrange

book

be in one's good books

be to one's advantage

hesitate

vary

consider

advantage

performance

show off

pay one's last respects

respectively

include

inclusive; including

included; inclusive

content

consider

show of hands

obtain



добре робити будь-що	put up a good show
довершений	complete
домовленість	arrangement
домовлятися	arrange
досягти негативних наслідків	put up a poor show
досягти позитивних наслідків	put up a good show
завершений	complete
задавака	show off
задоволений	content (adjective)
залежати (від когось, чогось),	depend (on, upon)
залежний	dependent
залежність	dependence
залежно (від когось, чогось)	depending (on, upon)
замовляти заздалегідь	book
згодний	content (adjective)
здобувати	obtain
змінювати(ся)	vary
змінюватися	vary
зміст	contents
знайомити (з місцевістю тощо)	show around
зумовлений	dependent
зумовленість	dependence
зумовлюватися (чимось)	depend (on, upon)
з'явитися	show up
квиткова каса	booking office
класифікація	arrangement
контора (готелю)	booking office
користь	advantage
людина, що хизується	show off
мати у своєму складі	include
міркування	consideration
містити у собі	include
невідома галузь	closed book
незалежний	independent
незалежність	independence
незнана справа	closed book
незумовленість	independence
необумовлений	independent
обговорення	consideration
обговорювати	consider
обмірковувати	consider
обсяг	content (noun)
одержувати	obtain
організація	arrangement
організовувати	arrange
перебувати у чиїхось чорних списках	be in one's bad (black) books
перевага	advantage
підкреслювати (вигідно) що-небудь	show to good (the best) advantage
підстава	consideration
повага	respect
поважати	respect
повернути на чиюсь користь	turn to advantage
повний	complete
податок на додану вартість (ПДВ)	VAT (value added tax)
показати товар з найкращого боку	put up a good show

показувати комусь усе варте уваги  
 покладатися (на когось, щось)  
 привіт(ання)  
 провести когось кудись  
 резервувати  
 розгляд  
 розглядати  
 розраховувати (на когось, щось)  
 розташовувати (у певному порядку)  
 розташування (у певному порядку)  
 скористатися з чогось  
 слабо робити будь-що  
 сподіватися (на когось, щось)  
 сумніватися  
 у зазначеному порядку  
 у цьому (одному, багатьох) відношенні (відношеннях)  
 увага  
 упорядковувати  
 упорядкування  
 характеристика функціонування  
 хизуватися  
 шанування  
 шанувати  
 що містить у собі (включає до себе)

show around  
 depend (on, upon)  
 respects  
 show somebody somewhere  
 book  
 consideration  
 consider  
 depend (on, upon)  
 arrange  
 arrangement  
 take advantage of  
 put up a poor show  
 depend (on, upon)  
 hesitate  
 respectively  
 in this (one, many) respects  
 respect  
 arrange  
 arrangement  
 performance  
 show off  
 respects  
 respect  
 inclusive

## PART 2

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

accustom anybody's  
 guess at the crack of  
 dawn be at smb's  
 wit's end clue confess  
 conversation crack

crackdown  
 cracker  
 crackers  
 cross-question  
 deceive  
 event

eventful  
 eventual  
 eventually  
 evidence  
 evident  
 evidently  
 fellow

звикати  
 спробуй вгадай  
 на світанку;  
 морочити (сушити) собі голову, напружено обмірковувати щось.  
 ключ до розгадки, доказ  
 визнавати, признавати(ся), зізнавати(ся)  
 розмова, бесіда  
 розколювати(ся), розбивати(ся), тріскатися; тріщати, клацати, ляскати;  
 розгадати, розкрити; жартувати; тріщина, щілина, розлом; ляскіт (батога),  
 удар (грому), ляпас, тріск; жарт;  
 наступ, круті заходи з боку офіційного уряду  
 крекер, тонке сухе печиво  
 збожеволілий, несповна розуму, що з'їхав з глузду  
 перехресний допит  
 обманювати, вводити в оману, обдурювати  
 подія, важливе явище, значний факт; випадок; захід (вечір, прийом тощо);  
 номер (у програмі змагань)  
 багатий на події; що матиме важливі наслідки;  
 кінцевий, остаточний  
 в кінцевому рахунку, у результаті, зрештою  
 доказ, підстава, дані, факт; свідчення;  
 очевидний, явний  
 очевидно, явно, ясно  
 (застар.) чоловік, хлопець, парубок; (розм.) залицяльник, коханець; товариш,  
 побратим; той, хто спільно виконує якусь роботу, діяльність тощо; член  
 академічного закладу, товариства, ради тощо; стипендіат, який займається  
 дослідницькою роботою;

	почуття товарищескості, дружиї взаємовідносини; товариство, братство, компанія, співдружність; членство (у академічному закладі, товаристві, раді тощо); стипендія для проведення наукових досліджень
give evidence	свідчити, показувати (у суді);
gleam	старанно підбрати, збирати, добирати дрібниці
high relief	горельєф
inevitable	неминучий, невідворотний
innocent	безневинний, невинуватий
investigate	розслідувати, старанно розглядати
jigsaw	головоломка
low relief	барельєф
mayhem	гармидер, нерозбериха
miss	пройти мимо, не помітити; промахнутися, схибити, не потрапити в ціль; скучати, відчувати відсутність чогось; пропускати, не з'являтися
miss out	пропускати, не робити чогось
miss the boat	втратити нагоду
miss the point	не розуміти суті
missing	якого не вистачає, бракує; відсутній, загублений
never to miss the trick	ніколи нічого не пропускати
occur	траплятися, відбуватися, попадатися, зустрічатися; спадати на думку
occurrence	приходити в голову
Police Incident Room	випадок, подія, явище
proof	кімната речових доказів
proofs	доказ, довід, доведення:
prove	коректура, гранки, пробний відбиток
	доводити, засвідчувати, доказувати; засвідчувати, підтверджувати; виявлятися
rattle (noun)	дитяче брязкальце; калатало (футбольних фанів тощо)
rattle (verb)	тріскотіти, торохтіти, гуркотіти, гриміти, деренчати, гучно стукотіти; брязкати; (розм.) бентежити, хвилювати, турбувати, лякати, страхати
rattle away (on)	говорити без угаву, базікати, торохтіти, барабанити
rattle through	відбарабанити, квапливо робити щось, протягти (законопроект тощо)
rattlesnake	гримуча змія
reek	густий запах, сморід
relief	полегшення, зниження, пом'якшення; рельєф місцевості; звільнення, заміна
relieve	полегшувати, зменшувати, послабляти; звільняти (від чогось), позбавляти (чогось)
relieve (smb) of (his) duties (post)	звільняти з посади
relieve smb	змінювати (на посту), звільняти
relieved	задоволений; що звільнився від тягаря
scare smb. out of his wits	налякати до смерті (нестями)
sharpen one's wits	напружувати увагу, гостро сприймати щось
skeleton skeleton key	остов, каркас
skeleton map skeleton	універсальний ключ, відмичка
staff suspect tense tension	контурна карта
uncover victim vital	штатний розклад, що включає лише мінімальну кількість персоналу
waterproof	підозрюваний
wit witness	напружений, нервово збуджений; натягнутий, тугий, не розслаблений
	напруження, напруженість, напружений стан
	виявляти, знаходити
	жертва
	життєво важливий
	водонепроникний, непромокальний
	дотепність, гумор; розум, ум
	свідок

## PART 2

### UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

багатий на події	eventful rattle
базікати	away (on) rattle
барабанити	away (on) low
барельєф	relief innocent
безневинний	rattle fellowship
бентежити (розм.)	rattle eventually
братство	event deceive
брязкати	confess
в кінцевому рахунку	event; occurrence
важливе явище	uncover prove
вводити в оману	rattle through
визнавати	occur
випадок	skeleton key
виявляти	missing miss
виявлятися	waterproof miss the
відбарабанити	boat mayhem rattle
відбуватися	away (on) jigsaw
відмичка	high relief-sharpen
відсутній	one's wits proofs
відчувати відсутність чогось	rattle
водонепроникний	rattlesnake
втратити нагоду	wit rattle
гармидер	reek rattle
говорити без утаву	evidence
головоломка	rattle rattle
горельєф	proof proof
гостро сприймати щось	prove
гранки	clue; proof; evidence
гриміти	prove wit
гримуча змія	fellowship
гумор	crack crack
гуркотіти	victim vital
густий запах	missing
гучно стукотіти	relieved
дані	fellow relief
деренчати	
дитяче брязкальце	
доведення	
ДОВІД	
доводити	
доказ	
доказувати	
дотепність	
дружні взаємовідносини	
жарт	
жартувати	
жертва	
життєво важливий	
загублений	
задоволений (що звільнився від тягара)	
залицяльник (розм.)	
заміна	

засвідчувати  
захід (вечір, прийом тощо)  
збрати дрібниці  
збожеволілий  
звикати  
звільнення  
звільняти (від чогось)  
звільняти з посади  
зізнавати(ся)  
зменшувати  
змінювати (на посту)  
знаходити  
значний факт  
зрештою  
зустрічатися  
калатало (футбольних фанів тощо)  
каркас  
квапливо робити щось  
кімната речових доказів  
кінцевий  
клацати  
ключ до розгадки  
кмітливість  
компанія  
контурна карта  
коректура  
коханець (розм.)  
крекер (тонке сухе печиво)  
круті заходи з боку офіційного уряду  
лякати (розм.)  
ляпас  
ляскати  
ляскіт (батога)  
морочити (сушити) собі голову,  
на світанку  
налякати до смерті (нестями)  
напружений  
напружений стан  
напруженість  
напружено обмірковувати щось  
напружувати увагу  
наступ  
натягнутий  
не з'являтися  
не помітити  
не потрапити в ціль  
не робити чогось  
не розслаблений  
не розуміти суті  
невинуватий  
невідворотний  
неминучий  
непромокальний  
нервово збуджений  
неповна розуму

prove  
event  
glean  
crackers  
accustom  
relief  
relieve  
relieve (smb) of (his) duties (post)  
confess  
relieve  
relieve smb  
uncover  
event  
eventually  
occur  
rattle  
skeleton  
rattle through  
iPolice Incident Room  
eventual  
crack  
clue  
wits  
fellowship  
skeleton map  
proofs  
fellow  
cracker  
crackdown  
rattle (verb)  
crack  
crack  
crack  
be at smb's wit's end  
at the crack of dawn  
scare smb. out of his wits  
tense  
tension  
tension  
be at smb's wit's end  
sharpen one's wits  
crackdown  
tense  
miss  
miss  
miss  
miss out  
tense  
miss the point  
innocent  
inevitable  
inevitable  
waterproof  
tense  
crackers

ніколи нічого не пропускати	never to miss the trick
номер (у програмі змагань)	event
обдурювати	deceive
обманювати	deceive
остаточний	eventual
остов	skeleton
очевидний	evident
очевидно	evidently
перехресний допит	cross-question
підозрюваний	suspect
підстава	evidence
підтверджувати	prove
побратим (той, хто щільно виконує якусь роботу, діяльність тощо)	fellow
подія	event; occurrence
позбавляти (чогось)	relieve
полегшення	relief
полегшувати	relieve
пом'якшення	relief
попадатися	occur
послабляти	relieve
почуття товариськості	fellowship
признавати(ся)	confess
приходити в голову	occur
пробний відбиток	proofs
пройти мимо	miss
промахнутися	miss
прону скати (рядки в тексті тощо)	miss out
прону скати (уроки тощо)	miss
протягати (законопроект тощо)	rattle through
рельєф місцевості	relief
розбивати(ся)	crack
розгадати (загадку тощо)	crack
розколювати(ся)	crack
розкрити (справу тощо)	crack
розлом	crack
розслідувати	investigate
розум	wit
свідок	witness
свідчення	evidence
свідчити (у суді)	give evidence
скучати	miss
сморід	reek
спадати на думку	occur
співдружність	fellowship
спробуй вгадай	anybody's guess
старанно підбирати	glean
старанно розглядати	investigate
стипендіат, який займається дослідницькою роботою	fellow
стипендія для проведення наукових досліджень	fellowship
страхати (розм.)	rattle
схибити	miss
товариство	fellowship
товариш	fellow
торохтіти	rattle (away/on)

траплятися	occur
тріск	crack
тріскатися	crack
тріскотіти	rattle
тріщати	crack
тріщина	crack
тугий	tense
турбувати (розм.)	rattle
тямущість	wits
удар (грому)	crack
універсальний ключ	skeleton key
факт	evidence
хвилювати (розм.)	rattle
член академічного закладу, товариства, ради тощо	fellow
членство (у академічному закладі, товаристві, раді тощо)	fellowship
чоловік (хлопець, парубок) (застар.)	fellow
штатний розклад, що включає	skeleton staff
лише мінімальну кількість персоналу	
щілина	crack
що з'їхав з глузду	crackers
що матиме важливі наслідки	eventful
явище	occurrence
явний	evident
явно	evidently
якого бракує	missing
ясно	evidently

## UNIT 5

### ENGLISH - UKRAINIAN

#### LESSON 1

#### PARTI HUMAN

#### BODY- ТІЛО ЛЮДННН

abdomen	живіт
artery	артерія
bladder	сечовий міхур
blood vessels	кровоносні судини
cartilage	хрящ (волокниста сполучна тканина)
fatty tissue	жирова тканина
intestines	кишечник
iris	райдужна оболонка ока
joint	суглоб
kidney	нирка
large intestine	товста кишка
larynx	гортань
ligament	зв'язка
liver	печінка
lungs	легені
muscle	м'яз
pharynx	глотка

small intestine	тонка кишка
stomach	шлунок
tendon vein	сухожилля
	вена

## BRANCHES OF MEDICINE - ГАЛУЗІ МЕДИЦИНИ

aetiology (etiology)	етіологія (вчення про причини й умови виникнення хвороб); причина виникнення хвороби
anestheology	анестезіологія (вчення про методи та засоби знеболювання)
anatomy	анатомія
balneology	бальнеологія (наука про вплив на організм мінеральних вод та лікувальних грязей)
cardiology	кардіологія (наука, що вивчає функції серця та методи лікування його захворювання)
dentistry	стоматологія
dermatology	дерматологія (наука, що вивчає методи лікування захворювання шкіри)
diagnostics	вчення про діагностику захворювань
embryology	ембріологія (наука про утворення зародку та його розвиток)
endocrinology	ендокринологія (наука, що вивчає гормональну систему та внутрішню секрецію)
bacteriology	бактеріологія (наука, що вивчає бактерії)
epidemiology	епідеміологія (вчення про причини й умови виникнення епідемій і методи боротьби з інфекційними хворобами)
gastroenterology	гастроентерологія (наука, що вивчає роботу кишково-шлункового тракту та методи лікування його захворювань)
gerontology gynaecology (gynecology)	геронтологія (наука, що вивчає механізми старіння організму) гінекологія (наука, що вивчає функції жіночих статевих органів та їхні захворювання)
haematology (hematology)	гематологія (наука, що вивчає роботу системи крові та методи лікування її захворювань)
immunology	імунологія (наука, що вивчає роботу імунної системи та методи лікування її захворювань)
laryngology	ларингологія (наука, що вивчає роботу гортані та методи лікування її захворювань)
midwifery	акушерство (наука, що вивчає процеси, пов'язані із заплідненням, вагітністю, пологам та післяпологовим періодом)
morbid anatomy	патологоанатомія
neonatology	неонатологія (наука, що вивчає особливості фізіології і захворювання новонароджених)
neurology	неврологія (наука, що вивчає роботу нервової системи та методи лікування її захворювань)
obstetrics	акушерство (наука, що вивчає процеси, пов'язані із заплідненням, вагітністю, пологам та післяпологовим періодом)
occupational therapy	трудова терапія (трудотерапія)
oncology	онкологія (наука, що вивчає процеси, пов'язані із виникненням та розвитком пухлин та методи їхнього лікування)
ophthalmology	офтальмологія (наука, що вивчає органи зору та методи лікування їхніх захворювань)
orthopaedics (orthopedics)	ортопедія (наука, що вивчає роботу опорно-рухового апарату та методи лікування його захворювань)
otolaryngology	отоларингологія (наука, що вивчає роботу вуха, глотки і гортані та методи лікування їхніх захворювань)
paediatrics (pediatrics)	педіатрія (наука, що вивчає особливості фізіології і захворювання дітей)



pathology	патологія (наука, що вивчає розвиток хвороб); патологія (будь-яке відхилення від норми)
plastic surgery	пластична хірургія
psychiatry	психіатрія (наука, що вивчає роботу психічної системи та методи лікування її захворювань)
psychoanalysis	психоаналіз (аналіз підсвідомих чинників, які можуть бути причиною захворювань)
spare-part surgery	відновлювальна (реконструктивна) хірургія
speech therapy	лікування дефектів мовлення
stomatology	стоматологія
surgery	хірургія
symptomatology	симптоматологія (наука, що вивчає симптоми захворювань)
therapeutics	терапія (наука, що вивчає внутрішні захворювання)
toxicology	токсикологія (наука, що вивчає механізм дії отрути та методи лікування отруєнь)
urology	урологія (наука, що вивчає роботу сечової та (у чоловіків) статевої систем і методи лікування їхніх захворювань)
venereology	венерологія (наука, що вивчає механізм розвитку венеричних хвороб та методи їхнього лікування)

## PART1-PART2

### MEDICAL PRACTITIONERS AND SPECIALISTS - МЕДИЦІНІКИ ЗАГАЛЬНОГО ПРОФІЛЮ ТА ФАХІВЦІ

aetiologist (etiologist)	етіолог (фахівець у галузі етіології)
anaesthetist	анестезіолог (фахівець у галузі анестезіології)
anatomist	анатом (фахівець у галузі анатомії)
andrologist	андролог (фахівець у галузі андрології)
bacteriologist	бактеріолог (фахівець у галузі бактеріології)
balneologist	бальнеолог (фахівець у галузі бальнеології)
cardiologist	кардіолог (фахівець у галузі кардіології)
consultant	консультант (лікар, який дає консультації у певній галузі медицини)
dentist	стоматолог (дантист)
dermatologist	дерматолог (фахівець у галузі дерматології)
diagnostician	діагностик (фахівець з постановки діагнозу захворювання)
dietitian	дієтолог (фахівець з визначення раціону харчування та його розпорядку)
district nurse	дільнична медсестра
embryologist	ембріолог (фахівець у галузі ембріології)
endocrinologist	ендокринолог (фахівець у галузі ендокринології)
epidemiologist	епідеміолог (фахівець у галузі епідеміології)
extern (externe)	екстерн (в США та Канаді) - студент старших курсів або лікар-початківець, який працює у лікарні позаштатним лікарем
forensic scientist	судовий медичний експерт (судмедексперт)
gastroenterologist	гастроентеролог (фахівець у галузі гастроентерології)
general practitioner (GP)	лікар загального профілю
gerontologist	геронтолог (фахівець у галузі геронтології)
gynaecologist (gynecologist)	гінеколог (фахівець у галузі гінекології)
health visitor	патронажна сестра/працівник (навідує хворого вдома)
house physician	лікар, що живе при лікувальному закладі
immunologist	імунолог (фахівець у галузі імунології)
intern or interne	інтерн (лікар-стажист)
internist	терапевт (лікар, що одержав підготовку з питань діагностики, лікування і профілактики хвороб внутрішніх органів)

junior doctor	лікар-стажист
laboratory technician	лаборант
laryngologist	ларинголог (фахівець у галузі ларингології)
matron	головна медсестра (лікарні); сестра-хазяйка (лікарні)
midwife	акушерка
neonatologist	неонатолог (фахівець у галузі неонатології)
neurologist	невролог (фахівець у галузі неврології)
nurse	медсестра
nursing officer	керівник відділу середнього медичного персоналу (медсестер) в управлінні охорони здоров'я (району, міста тощо)
obstetrician	акушер
occupational therapist	фахівець у галузі трудової терапії (трудотерапії)
oncologist	онколог (фахівець у галузі онкології)
ophthalmologist	офтальмолог (фахівець у галузі офтальмології)
orderly	санітар
orthopaedist (orthopedist)	ортопед (фахівець у галузі ортопедії)
paediatrician (pediatrician)	педіатр (фахівець у галузі педіатрії)
paramedic	будь-хто з молодшого медичного персоналу
pathologist	патолог (фахівець у галузі патології)
plastic surgeon	пластичний хірург
psychiatrist	психіатр
psychoanalyst	психоаналітик
registrar	ординатор (лікар, який навчається в ординатурі)
senior registrar	старший ординатор
residency	ординатура (курс спеціалізації лікарів на базі медичного закладу)
resident	лікар-стажист (що проходить післядипломну клінічну практику, тобто навчається у ординатурі); лікар-резидент (що живе при лікувальному закладі)
speech therapist	логопед (фахівець у галузі лікування дефектів мовлення)
surgeon	хірург
therapist	терапевт
toxicologist	токсиколог (фахівець у галузі токсикології)
urologist	уролог (фахівець у галузі урології)
venerologist	венеролог (фахівець у галузі венерології)

## PART 2 HEALTH CARE

### ESTABLISHMENTS - ЛІКУВАЛЬНІ ЗАКЛАДИ

Admission Department	приймальне відділення
ambulance Burns Unit	автомобіль швидкої медичної допомоги
Cardiology Department	кардіологічне відділення
Dermatology Department	дерматологічне відділення
Dressing Room Emergency	перев'язочна
Department Endocrinology	ендокринологічне відділення
Department Gastroenterology	гастроентерологічне відділення
Department Gynecology	гінекологічне відділення
Department In-Patient Hospital	лікарня (стаціонар)
Intensive Care Unit Laboratory	лабораторія
Maternity Department	пологове відділення
Neurology Department Nursing	неврологічне відділення
Home	будинки для людей похилого віку

Oncology Department	онкологічне відділення
Ophthalmology Department	офтальмологічне відділення
Out-Patient Department	поліклініка
Registry	реєстратура
Resuscitation Department	реанімаційне відділення
Surgical Unit Therapeutics	хірургічне відділення
Department Thoracic	терапевтичне відділення
Department Traumatology	торакальне відділення (лікування органів грудної клітки)
Department Urology	травматологічне відділення
Department Venereology	урологічне відділення
Department X-ray Room	венерологічне відділення
	рентген-кабінет

### IMMUNE SYSTEM - ІМУННА СИСТЕМА

adrenal glands	надниркова залоза
antibody	антитіло
antigen	антиген
bacterium	бактерія
B-cell	Б-клітина (бета-клітина підшлункової залози)
bone marrow	кістковий мозок
cell	клітина
consume	поглинати
dead cell	відмерла клітина
foreign invader	чужорідний об'єкт, що інвазіює (вторгається) до організму
foreign matter	чужорідні об'єкти
friend or foe	свій чи чужий
helper T-cell	кооперуюча Т-клітина
identity badge	розпізнавальний знак
immune cell	іmunна клітина
infected	інфікований
inoculation	щеплення
invading cell	клітина, що інвазіює (вторгається) до організму
killer T-cell	клітина-убивця
macrophage	макрофаг (клітина, здатна поглинати мікроскопічні чужорідні об'єкти)
Major histocompatibility complex molecule (MHQ	молекула головної системи тканинної сумісності
mature	дозрівати
neutralize	нейтралізувати
pancreas	підшлункова залоза (породжує травні ферменти і гормони)
protein	протеїн (білок)
receptor	рецептор
reproduce	репродукувати
thymus	тимус (вилочкова залоза - орган, що регулює функціонування клітинного імунітету)
track down	вистежувати
virus	вірус
white blood cell	лейкоцит

### PART3 HUMAN DISEASES

acne	вугрі
Addison's disease	аддісонова хвороба (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому антитіла атакують надниркову залозу, внаслідок чого настає гормональний дисбаланс)

Aids (AIDS)	гарячка
alcoholism	СНІД
allergy	алкоголізм
anaemia	алергія
angina	анемія (недокрів'я)
angina (pectoris)	ангіна
anorexia	стенокардія
anthrax	анорексія (відсутність апетиту)
appendicitis	сибірська впразка
arteriosclerosis	апендицит
arthritis	атеросклероз
asthma	артрит
avian flue	астма
bird flue	пташиний грип
bronchitis	пташиний грип
bubonic plague	бронхіт
cancer	бубонна чума
caries	рак
chickenpox	карієс
cholera	вітряна віспа
cirrhosis	холера
cold	цироз (печінки)
colitis	застуда
constipation	коліт (запалення товстої кишки)
depression	запор
dermatitis	депресія
diabetes	дерматит (запалення шкіри)
diarrhoea	цукровий діабет
diphtheria	діарея (пронос)
double pneumonia	діфтерія (гостре інфекційне захворювання, яке уражає слизові оболонки)
dropsy	двостороннє запалення легень
dysentery	водянка (скупчення рідини в тканинах тіла)
epilepsy	дизентерія (ураження шлунка)
fever	епілепсія (падуча хвороба)
flu	пропасниця (гарячка)
gastritis	грип
glaucoma	гастрит (ураження слизової оболонки шлунка)
goitre	глаукома (хвороба очей)
gout	воло (патологічно збільшена щитовидна залоза)
haemorrhage	подагра (відкладання солей у тканинах)
heart attack	крововилив
hepatitis	серцевий напад
herpes	гепатит (запалення печінки)
hypertension	герпес (вірусне ураження шкіри)
hypotension	гіпертонія (підвищений артеріальний тиск)
influenza	гіпотензія (понижений артеріальний тиск)
jungle fever	грип
juvenile diabetes	тропічна пропасниця
	юнацький (ювенильний) діабет (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому імунні клітини знищують клітини підшлункової залози)
	ларингіт (запалення гортані)
	проказа
	лейкемія (рак крові)
	вовчак (різновид туберкульозу шкіри)

malaria	малярія (інфекційна хвороба, що передається комарами)
mastitis	мастит (запалення молочної залози)
measles	кір
meningitis	менінгіт (запалення оболонок головного і спинного мозку)
multiple sclerosis	розсіяний склероз
mumps	свинка (завушниця)
muscular dystrophy	мускульна дистрофія
myasthenia gravis	міастенія (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому імунні клітини знищують рецептори на м'язах, внаслідок чого настає їхня атрофія)
nephritis	нефрит (запалення нирки)
otitis	отит (запалення вуха)
paralysis	параліч
Parkinson's disease	хвороба Паркінсона (тремтячий параліч)
pharyngitis	фарингіт (запалення глотки)
plague	чума
pneumonia	запалення легень
polio (poliomyelitis)	поліомеліт (дитячий параліч)
pox	віспа
rabies	рабієс (каз)
rheumatoid arthritis	ревматичний артрит (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому антитіла атакують суглоби, внаслідок чого настає їхнє запалення)
rickets	рахіт (порушення процесу утворення кісток)
ringworm	дерматикоз (грибкове ураження шкіри)
rubella scabies	рубела (краспуха)
scarlet fever	короста
(scarlatina)	скарлатина
schizophrenia	шизофренія
sclerosis	склероз (ущільнення органа, обумовлене заміною його загиблених елементів сполучною тканиною)
shingles	оперізуєчий лишай
smallpox	віспа
sunstroke	сонячний удар
tonsillitis	тонзиліт (запалення піднебінних мигдаликів)
tuberculosis	туберкульоз
typhoid fever	черевний тиф
typhus	тиф (інфекційна хвороба, яка характеризується гарячкою та потьмаренням свідомості)
worms	глисти

## SYMPTOMS - СИМПТОМИ

### РАІН-БІЛЬ

aching pain acute	судомний біль
pain burning pain	гострий біль
cutting pain dull	пекучий біль
pain girdle pain	ріжучий біль тупий
gnawing pain	біль оперізувальний
headache knife-like	біль гризотний біль
pain long-standing	головний біль
pain muscle pain	кинджальний біль
	довготривалий біль
	м'язовий біль

persistent pain	безперервний біль
piercing pain	пронизуючий біль
pressing pain	стискальний біль
radiating pain	біль, що іррадіює
severe pain sharp	різкий біль
pain slight pain	гострий біль
throbbing pain	слабкий біль
toothache	нульсуючий біль
troublesome pain	зубний біль
unbearable pain	обтяжливий біль
	нестерпний біль

## TRAUMA AND TREATMENT - ТРАВМИ ТА ЇХНЄ ЛІКУВАННЯ

bite	укус		
blow	удар	Wound treatment and bandage	Обробка рани і накладання пов'язки
burns	опік		
contusion	забите місце		
dislocation	вивих	reduction	вправляння
fracture	перелом	Wound treatment, immobilization, plaster bandage, splintage, prosthetics	Обробка рани, іммобілізація, гіпсова пов'язка, шинування, протезування
frostbite	відмороження	Wound treatment and bandage	Обробка рани і накладання пов'язки
injury	пошкодження		
sprain strain (pull)	надрид розтягання	Immobilization and bandage	Іммобілізація і накладання пов'язки

## BIRD FLU EPIDEMIC - ЕПІДЕМІЯ ПТАПІННОГО ГРННУ

anti-viral	антивірусний
claim (lives)	забирати (людські життя)
combat (an epidemic)	боротися (з епідемією)
contain (an epidemic)	стримувати (локалізувати) поширення епідемії
contingency plans	плани на випадок непередбачених обставин
culling	винищення; забій
foot-dragging	зволікання
host population	популяція, в якій виник вірус
ill-effect	негативні наслідки
infect	інфікувати
mutate	піддаватися мутації
outbreak (of an epidemic)	спалах (епідемії)
pandemic	пандемія (епідемія, яка охоплює цілі країни та материки)
spread	поширюватися (про епідемію)
strain (of a disease)	штам (культура вірусів, що виділена з певного джерела)
trigger (an epidemic)	провокувати (початок епідемії)
vaccination	вакцинація (щеплення)

## LESSON 2

### PART I

## MEDICAL INSTRUMENTS AND SURGICAL EQUIPMENT - МЕДИЧНІ ІНСТРУМЕНТИ ТА ХІРУРГІЧНЕ УСТАТКУВАННЯ

artificial heart	апарат штучне серце
artificial kidney	апарат "штучна нирка"

bandage	бандаж; биит
bedpan	підкладне судно
cardiograph	кардіограф (прилад для реєстрації скорочень серця)
catheter	катетер (металевий або гумовий хірургічний інструмент для дренування і промивання порожнин)
clamp	затискач
CT scanner (CAT scanner)	комп'ютерний томографічний сканер
defibrillator	дефібрилятор (електричний прилад для короткочасної подачі на серце високої напруги)
drain	інструмент для осушування ран
encephalogram	енцефалограф (апарат для фотографування циркуляції крові у головному мозку)
forceps	щипці
gastroscope	гастроскоп (медичний прилад для маніпуляцій на шлунку)
heart-lung machine	апарат штучного кровообігу
inhalator	інгальатор (прилад для вдихання аерозолів тощо)
lancet (lance)	ланцет (гостроконечний хірургічний ніж з ручкою)
life-support machine	установка для підтримки життєдіяльності
microscope	мікроскоп
needle	голка
oxygen mask	киснева маска
pacemaker	водій ритму серця
packing	тампон
plaster cast	гіпсова пов'язка
probe	зонд
respirator	респіратор (засіб індивідуального захисту органів дихання); апарат штучного дихання
scalpel	скальпель
sling	підтримуюча пов'язка
sound	зонд
specimen bottle	банка для збирання проб на аналіз
splint	шина (пристосування з твердого матеріалу для закріплення кінцівок при переломі тощо)
stethoscope	стетоскоп (медичний прилад для прослуховування легень і серця)
stretcher	носилки (ноші)
swab	тампон на стержні
syringe	шприц
thermometer	термометр
tourniquet	джгут
ultrasound scanner	ультразвуковий сканер
ventilator	апарат штучного дихання
wet pack	вологе обгортання
X-ray machine	рентгенівська установка

## PART 2 BRANCHES OF ALTERNATIVE MEDICINE -

### ГАЛУЗІ НЕТРАДИЦІЙНОЇ МЕДИЦИНИ

acupuncture	акупунктура, голковколювання, голкотерапія
Alexander technique	система Александра (метод лікування, що ґрунтується на виконанні фізичних вправ)
aromatherapy	ароматерапія
autogenic training	автогенне тренування
Bach chiropractic	система Баха (метод лікування із застосуванням квіткових есенцій) хіропрактика (теорія, згідно з якою виникнення деяких хвороб пояснюється вивихом певних хребців, вправлення яких приводить довилікування)

herbalism	гербалізм (теорія, згідно з якою будь-які хвороби можна вилікувати виключно за допомогою трав)
homeopathy (homoeopathy)	гомеопатія (теорія, згідно з якою будь-які хвороби можна вилікувати шляхом застосування у малих дозах речовин, що у великих дозах спричиняють явища, схожі на ознаки хвороби)
hydrotherapy	гідротерапія (зовнішнє застосування води з лікувальною та профілактичною метою у вигляді обливань, розтирань тощо)
hypnotherapy	гіпнотерапія (метод лікування, заснований на гіпнотичному навіюванні)
iridology	іридологія (теорія, згідно з якою будь-яку хворобу можна встановити, проаналізувавши стан райдужної оболонки ока)
massage	масаж
naturopathy	наїуропатія (система лікування, що ґрунтується на використанні природних чинників (вода, світло, повітря, тепло, масаж тощо) і не визнає ліків, хірургії, рентгенівських променів тощо)
Shiatsu	японський масаж

## **DISORDERS OF THORAX AND THORACIC ORGANS - ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ГРУДНОЇ КЛІТКИ ОРГАНІВ ГРУДНОЇ ПОРОЖНИНИ**

bluish discoloration	посиніння
cough	кашель
gasping	утруднене дихання
harsh breathing	жорстке дихання
heart (cardiac) murmurs	шуми в серці
heart attack	серцевий напад
heart rate	частота серцевих скорочень
indigestion	розлад травлення (шлунка)
loss of consciousness	втрата свідомості
nausea	пудота
pallor	блідість
prostration	знесиленість
rales	хрипи
shortness of breath	задишка
swelling	набряк
vomiting	блювання

## **PART 3 SKIN DISORDERS - ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ШКІРИ**

abrasion	садно
birth mark	родимка
blister	пухир
cradle cap	лупа (у дітей)
crust	кірка
eruption	висип
dandruff	лупа (у дорослих)
eczema	екзема
impetigo	імпетиго
irritation	подрознення
itch	свербіти
lesion	ураження тканини
mole	родимка
ooze	розтріскуватися; лопатися
papilloma	папілома (доброякісна пухлина у вигляді тонкої бородавки)
psoriasis	псоріаз



rash	висип
scaling	лущення
scar	шрам
ulcer	виразка
wart	бородавка

#### DISORDERS OF THE EAR, NOSE AND THROAT - ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ВУХА, ГОРЛА І НОСА

blow (the nose)	сякати (носа)
body aches	відчуття, наче ломить тіло
bronchitis	бронхіт (запалення бронхів)
cold	застиуда
congested (nose)	закладений (ніс)
cough	кашель; кашляти
croup	круп (запалення слизової оболонки гортані, що супроводжується хрипом, гавкаючим кашлем та важким диханням)
diarrhea	пронос
difficult swallowing	утруднене ковтання
discharge	виділення
dizziness	запаморочення
ear infection	запалення вуха
ear pain	біль у вусі
fatigue	втома
fever	температура (підвищена); гарячка
flushed face	почервоніле обличчя
hacking cough	кахикання
headache	головний біль
inflammation	запалення
lack of energy	знижений тонус
malaise	нездування (невизначне відчуття дискомфорту й стомливості)
nasal discharge	виділення з носу
nosebleed	кровотеча з носу
pus discharge	гнійне виділення
respiratory symptoms	симптоми захворювання верхніх дихальних шляхів
rhinitis	нежить
run a temperature	мати (підвищену) температуру
running nose	нежить
sneeze	чхання
sore throat	запалене горло
stuffy (nose)	закладений (ніс)
sweating	потіння
tiredness	втома
vomiting	блювання
wheezing	хрип
worsening of underlying illness	ускладнення головної з пов'язаних між собою хвороб

#### DISORDERS OF PERITONEUM AND ABDOMINAL CAVITY - ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ОЧЕРЕВИНИ І ОРГАНІВ ЧЕРЕВНОЇ ПОРОЖНИНИ

anorexia	відсутність апетиту
belching	відрижка
constipation	запор
diarrhea	пронос

heartburn	печія
hernia	грижа
hiccough	гикавка; ікавка
hiccup	гикавка; ікавка
liquid stool	рідкий стул
nausea	пудота здутий
swollen abdomen	живіт
vomit(ing)	блювання

## EYE DISORDERS - ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ОЧЕН

blurring of vision	поволока перед очима
bulging eye	винукле око
eye pain	біль у оці
eye strain	втомленість ока
eyelid injury	пошкодження віка
eyewatering	сльозотеча
inflamed eye	запалене око
longsightedness	далекозорість
see double	двоїтися в очах
shortsightedness	короткозорість
sore eye	запалене око
squinting eye	косяче око
sty	ячмінь

## LESSON 3

### PART I

appalling	жахливий
bleed	кровоточити
caress	пестити, голубити
casualties	людські втрати (на війні тощо)
celebration	оспікування, прославляння
cure	вилікувати
dedicate	присвячувати
desert	залишати, кидати
dexterous	обдарований, спритний
diagnosis	діагноз
dislodge	усувати, витіснити
drug	ліки, зілля, наркотик
examination	огляд (хворого)
experience	відчувати, переживати
exploit	використовувати
fail	зазнавати невдачі, слабнути
fatal	згубний, смертельний
fomentation	лікування припарками
gene	ген
haemorrhage	кровотеча
harness	приборкувати, підкоряти
heal	зціляти
healer	знахар, зцілитель
imperial	наражати на небезпеку, ризикувати
indigestion	розлад травлення
injury	поранення, ушкодження
interfere	втручатися
mar	псувати, спотворювати

miserable	жалюгідний, сумний
moor	заболочена місцевість
neglected	недоглянутий, занедбаний
occasionally	іноді, час від часу
physician	лікар
pregnancy	вагітність
proficient	умілий, досвідчений
rapidly	швидко
resin	смола
resist	протистояти
seek	шукати
severe	тяжкий, серйозний
spring	джерело
survive	виживати
temple	храм
tranquility	спокій
transfusion	переливання крові
urge	спопукання, поштовх, сильне бажання
wounded	поранений
wrap up	загортати

## PART 2

accept	припускати, визнавати
approach	підхід
arrogance	зарозумілість, пихатість
authoritarian	авторитарний, владний
average	середній
clue	ключ (до розгадки)
come across	зустріти (випадково)
concern with	піклуватися
deadly	смертельний, смертоносний
deal with	мати справу з
develop	розробляти; розвиватися (про симптоми)
dire	жахливий, зловісний
dispense with	звільняти від
efficient	ефективний, кваліфікований
expose to	піддавати дії
fated	приречений
give up	припиняти, відмовлятися
hay fever	сінна гарячка
huge	величезний
humility	покірність, смиренність
immunity	імунітет
ingest	ковтати, засвоювати
inhaler	інгалятор
plea	виправдання, доказ
remedy	засіб
resistance	опірність (організму)
suffer from	страждати від
treat with	лікувати (за допомогою...)
treatment	лікування
victim	жертва
vulnerable	уразливий
wake	слід, струмінь
work out	розробляти

## UKRAINIAN - ENGLISH

### LESSON 1

#### PARTI TІЛО

#### ЛЮДННН - HUMAN BODY

артерія	artery
вена	vein
глотка	pharynx
гортань	larynx
жнівт	abdomen
жнрова тканина	fatty tissue
зв'язка	ligament
кишечник	intestines
кровоносні судини	blood vessels
легені	lungs
м'яз	muscle
нирка	kidney
печінка	liver
райдушна оболонка ока	iris
сечовий міхур	bladder
суглоб	joint
сухожилля	tendon
товста кишка	large intestine
тонка кишка	small intestine
хрящ (волокиста сполучна тканина)	cartilage
шлунок	stomach

#### ГАЛУЗІ МЕДНЦННН - BRANCHES OF MEDICINE

акушерство (наука, що вивчає процеси, пов'язані із заплідненням, вагітністю, пологами та післяпологовим періодом)	midwifery; obstetrics
анатомія	anatomy
анестезіологія (вчення про методи та засоби знеболювання) бактеріологія (наука, що вивчає бактерії) бальнеологія (наука про вплив на організм мінеральних вод та лікувальних	anesthesiology bacteriology balneology
грязей) венерологія (наука, що вивчає механізм розвитку венеричних хвороб та	venereology
методи їхнього лікування) відновлювальна (реконструктивна) хірургія вчення про діагностику захворювань гастроентерологія (наука, що вивчає роботу кишково-шлункового тракту та	plastic surgery diagnostics gastroenterology
методи лікування його захворювань) гематологія (наука, що вивчає роботу системи крові та методи лікування її	haematology (hematology)
захворювань) геронтологія (наука, що вивчає механізми старіння організму) гінекологія (наука, що вивчає функції жіночих статевих органів та їхні	gerontology gynaecology (gynecology)
захворювання) дерматологія (наука, що вивчає методи лікування захворювання шкіри) ембріологія (наука про утворення зародку та його розвиток) ендокринологія (наука, що вивчає гормональну систему та внутрішню	dermatology embryology endocrinology
секрецію) епідеміологія (вчення про причини й умови виникнення епідемій і методи	epidemiology
боротьби з інфекційними хворобами)	

етіологія (вчення про причини й умови виникнення хвороб); причина виникнення хвороби імунологія (наука, що вивчає роботу імунної системи та методи лікування її захворювань)	aetiology (etiology)
кардіологія (наука, що вивчає функції серця та методи лікування його захворювання)	cardiology
ларингологія (наука, що вивчає роботу гортані та методи лікування її захворювань)	laryngology
лікування дефектів мовлення	speech therapy
неврологія (наука, що вивчає роботу нервової системи та методи лікування її захворювань)	neurology
неонатологія (наука, що вивчає особливості фізіології і захворювання новонароджених) онкологія (наука, що вивчає процеси, пов'язані із виникненням та розвитком пухлин та методи їхнього лікування)	neonatology
ортопедія (наука, що вивчає роботу опорно-рухового апарату та методи лікування його захворювань)	orthopaedics (orthopedics)
отоларингологія (наука, що вивчає роботу вуха, глотки і гортані та методи лікування їхніх захворювань)	otolaryngology
офтальмологія (наука, що вивчає органи зору та методи лікування їхніх захворювань)	ophthalmology
патологоанатомія	
патологія (наука, що розвинулася з хвороб); патологія (будь-яке відхилення від норми) pathology	morbid anatomy
педіатрія (наука, що вивчає особливості фізіології і захворювання дітей)	paediatrics (pediatrics)
пластична хірургія	plastic surgery
психіатрія (наука, що вивчає роботу психічної системи та методи лікування її захворювань)	psychiatry
психоаналіз (аналіз підсвідомих чинників, які можуть бути причиною захворювань)	psychoanalysis
симптоматологія (наука, що вивчає симптоми захворювань)	symptomatology
стоматологія	dentistry
стоматологія	stomatology
терапія (наука, що вивчає внутрішні захворювання)	therapeutics
токсикологія (наука, що вивчає механізм дії отрути та методи лікування отруєнь)	toxicology
трудова терапія (трудотерапія)	occupational therapy
урологія (наука, що вивчає роботу сечової та (у чоловіків) статевих систем та методи лікування їхніх захворювань)	urology
хірургія	surgery

## PART1-PART2

### МЕДИЦИСЬКІ СПЕЦІАЛІСТИ ЗАГАЛЬНОГО ПРОФІЛЮ ТА СПЕЦІАЛІСТИ -MEDICAL PRACTITIONERS AND SPECIALISTS

акушер(ка)	obstetrician
акушерка	midwife
анатом (фахівець у галузі анатомії) андролог	anatomist
(фахівець у галузі андрології) анестезіолог (фахівець у галузі анестезіології) бактеріолог (фахівець у галузі бактеріології) бальнеолог (фахівець у галузі бальнеології) будь-хто з молодшого медичного персоналу венеролог (фахівець у галузі венерології)	andrologist
гастроентеролог (фахівець у галузі гастроентерології)	anaesthetist
геронтолог (фахівець у галузі геронтології) гінеколог	bacteriologist
(фахівець у галузі гінекології)	balneologist
	paramedic
	venerologist
	gastroenterologist
	gerontologist
	gynaecologist (gynecologist)

дерматолог (фахівець у галузі дерматології)	dermatologist
діагностик (фахівець з постановки діагнозу захворювання)	diagnostician
дієтолог (фахівець з визначення раціону харчування та його розпорядку)	dietitian district
дільнична медсестра	nurse extern
екстерн (в США та Канаді) - студент старших курсів	(externe)
або лікар-початківець, який працює у лікарні позаштатним лікарем	
ембріолог (фахівець у галузі ембріології) ендокринолог (фахівець у галузі ендокринології) епідеміолог (фахівець у галузі епідеміології)	embryologist
етіолог (фахівець у галузі етіології) імунолог (фахівець у галузі імунології) інтерн (лікар-стажист) кардіолог (фахівець у галузі кардіології) керівник відділу середнього медичного персоналу (медсестер)	endocrinologist
в управлінні охорони здоров'я (району, міста тощо) консультант (лікар, який дає консультації у певній галузі медицини) лаборант ларинголог (фахівець у галузі ларингології) лікар загального профілю; лікар-резидент (що жнве при лікувальному закладі) лікар, що жнве при лікувальному закладі лікар-стажист лікар-стажист (що проходить післядипломну клінічну практику,	epidemiologist
тобто навчається у ординатурі) логопед (фахівець у галузі лікування дефектів мовлення) медсестра невролог (фахівець у галузі неврології) неонатолог (фахівець у галузі неонатології) онколог	aetiologist (etiologist)
ординатор (лікар, який навчається в ординатурі) ординатура (курс спеціалізації лікарів на базі медичного закладу) ортопед (фахівець у галузі ортопедії) офтальмолог (фахівець у галузі офтальмології) патолог (фахівець у галузі патології) патронажна сестра/працівник (навідує хворого вдома) педіатр (фахівець у галузі педіатрії) пластичний хірург психіатр психоаналітик санітар сестра-хазяйка (лікарні) старша медсестра (лікарні) старший ординатор стоматолог (дантист) судовий медичний експерт (судмедексперт) терапевт терапевт (лікар, що одержав підготовку з питань діагностики, лікування і профілактики хвороб внутрішніх органів) токсиколог (фахівець у галузі токсикології) уролог (фахівець у галузі урології) фахівець у галузі трудової терапії (трудотерапії) хірург	immunologist intern or interne cardiologist nursing officer
	consultant
	laboratory technician
	laryngologist
	general practitioner (GP)
	house physician
	junior doctor
	resident
	speech therapist
	nurse
	neurologist
	neonatologist
	oncologist
	registrar
	residency
	orthopaedist (orthopedist)
	ophthalmologist
	pathologist
	health visitor
	paediatrician (pediatrician)
	plastic surgeon
	psychiatrist
	psychoanalyst
	orderly
	matron
	matron
	senior registrar
	dentist
	forensic scientist
	therapist
	therapist
	toxicologist
	urologist
	occupational therapist
	surgeon

## PART 2 ЛІКУВАЛЬНІ ЗАКЛАДИ -

### HEALTH CARE ESTABLISHMENTS

автомобіль швидкої медичної допомоги	ambulance Nursing Home
будинок для людей похилого віку	Venereology Department
венерологічне відділення	Intensive Care Unit Emergency
відділення інтенсивної терапії	Department Gastroenterology
відділення швидкої медичної допомоги	Department Gynecology
гастроентерологічне відділення	Department Dermatology
гінекологічне відділення	Department Endocrinology
дерматологічне відділення	Department Cardiology
ендокринологічне відділення	Department Laboratory In-
кардіологічне відділення	Patient Hospital Neurology
лабораторія	Department Oncology
лікарня (стаціонар)	Department Burns Unit
неврологічне відділення	Ophthalmology Department
онкологічне відділення	Dressing Room Out-Patient
опікове відділення	Department Maternity
офтальмологічне відділення	Department Admission
перев'язочна	Department Resuscitation
поліклініка	Department Registry X-ray
пологове відділення	Room
прийомне відділення	Therapeutics Department
реанімаційне відділення	Thoracic Department
реєстратура	Traumatology Department
рентген-кабінет	Urology Department Surgical
терапевтичне відділення	Unit
торакальне відділення (лікування органів грудної клітки)	
травматологічне відділення	
урологічне відділення	
хірургічне відділення	

### ІМУННА СИСТЕМА - IMMUNE SYSTEM

антиген	antigen
антитіло	antibody
бактерія	bacterium
Б-клітина (бета-клітина підшлункової залози)	B-cell
вистежувати	track down
відмерла клітина	dead cell virus
вірус	mature immune
дозрівати	cell infected
іmunна клітина	bone marrow
інфікований	cell
кістковий мозок	invading cell killer
клітина	T-cell helper T-cell
клітина, що інвазіює (вторгається) до організму	white blood cell
клітина-убивця	macrophage
кооперуюча Т-клітина	
лейкоцит	Major histocompatibility
макрофаг (клітина, здатна поглинати мікроскопічні чужорідні об'єкти) молекула головної системи тканинної сумісності	complex molecule (MHC)

надниркова залоза	adrenal glands
нейтралізувати	neutralize
підшлункова залоза (породжує травні ферменти і гормони)	pancreas
поглинати	consume
протеїн (білок)	protein
репродукувати	reproduce
рецептор	receptor
розпізнавальний знак	identity badge
свій чи чужий	friend or foe
тимус (вилочкова залоза - орган, що регулює функціонування клітинного імунітету)	thymus
чужорідний об'єкт, що інвазіює (вторгається) до організму	foreign invader
чужорідні об'єкти щеплення	foreign matter
	inoculation

### PART3 ЛЮДСЬКІ ХВОРОБИ -

#### HUMAN DISEASES

аддісонова хвороба (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому антитіла атакують надниркову залозу, внаслідок чого настає гормональний дисбаланс)	Addison's disease
алергія	allergy
алкоголізм	alcoholism
ангіна	angina
анемія (недокрів'я)	anaemia
анорексія (відсутність апетиту)	anorexia
апендицит	appendicitis
артрит	arthritis
астма	asthma
атеросклероз	arteriosclerosis
бронхіт	bronchitis
бубонна чума	bubonic plague
віспа	pox; smallpox
вітряна віспа	chickenpox
вовчак (різновид туберкульозу шкіри)	lupus
водянка (скупчення рідини в тканинах тіла)	dropsy
воло (патологічно збільшена щитовидна залоза)	goitre
вугрі	acne
гарячка	ague
гастрит (ураження слизової оболонки шлунка)	gastritis
гепатит (запалення печінки)	hepatitis
герпес (вірусне ураження шкіри)	herpes
гіпертонія (підвищений артеріальний тиск)	hypertension
гіпотензія (понижений артеріальний тиск)	hypotension
глаукома (хвороба очей)	glaucoma
глисти	worms
грип	flu; influenza
двостороннє запалення легень	double pneumonia
депресія	depression
дерматикоз (грибкове ураження шкіри)	ringworm
дерматит (запалення шкіри)	dermatitis
дизентерія (ураження шлунка)	dysentery
діарея (пронос)	diarrhoea



дифтерія (гостре інфекційне захворювання, яке уражає слизові оболонки) епілепсія	diphtheria
(падуча хвороба) запалення легень запор застуда карієс	epilepsy
кір	pneumonia
коліт (запалення товстої кишки)	constipation
короста крововилив	cold
ларингіт (запалення гортані)	caries
лейкемія (рак крові)	measles
малярія (інфекційна хвороба, що передається комарами)	colitis
мастит (запалення молочної залози)	scabies
менінгіт (запалення оболонок головного і спинного мозку)	haemorrhage
міастенія (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому імунні клітини знищують рецептори на м'язах, внаслідок чого настає їхня атрофія)	laryngitis
мускульна дистрофія нефрит	leukaemia
(запалення нирки) оперізуючий	malaria
лишай отит (запалення вуха)	mastitis
параліч	meningitis
подагра (відкладання солей у тканинах)	myasthenia gravis
поліомеліт (дитячий параліч) проказа	
пропасниця (гарячка)	muscular dystrophy
пташиний грип рабієс	nephritis
(сказ) рак	shingles
рахіт (порушення процесу утворення кісток) ревматичний	otitis
артрит (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому антитіла атакують суглоби, внаслідок чого настає їхнє запалення) розсіяний склероз рубела(краснуха) свинка	paralysis
(завушниця) серцевий напад сибірська впадка скарлатина	gout
склероз (ущільнення органа, обумовлене заміною його загиглих елементів сполучною тканиною)	polio (poliomyelitis)
СНІД	leprosy
сонячний удар стенокардія тиф (інфекційна хвороба, яка характеризується гарячкою та потьмаренням свідомості) тонзиліт	fever
(запалення піднебінних мигдаликів) тропічна	avian flue; bird flue
пропасниця туберкульоз	rabies
фарингіт (запалення глотки) хвороба	cancer
Паркінсона (тремтячий параліч) холера	rickets
	rheumatoid arthritis
	multiple sclerosis
	rubella
	mumps
	heart attack
	anthrax
	scarlet fever (scarlatina)
	sclerosis
	Aids (AIDS)
	sunstroke angina
	(pectoris) typhus
	tonsillitis jungle
	fever tuberculosis
	pharyngitis
	Parkinson's disease
	cholera

цироз (печінки)	<b>cirrhosis</b>
цукровий діабет	<b>diabetes typhoid</b>
черевний тиф	<b>fever plague</b>
чума	<b>schizophrenia</b>
шизофренія	<b>juvenile diabetes</b>
юнацький (ювенильний) діабет (порушення роботи імунної системи, при якому імунні клітини знищують клітини підшлункової залози)	

## СИМПТОМИ - SYMPTOMS

### БІЛЬ-PAIN

безперервний біль	persistent pain
біль, що іррадіює	radiating pain
головний біль	headache
гострий біль	acute pain; sharp pain; gnawing pain
довготривалий біль	long-standing pain
зубний біль	toothache
кинжальний біль	knife-like pain
м'язовий біль	muscle pain
нестерпний біль	unbearable pain
обтяжливий біль	troublesome pain
оперізувальний біль	girdle pain
пекучий біль	burning pain
пронизуючий біль	piercing pain
пульсуючий біль	throbbing pain
ріжучий біль різкий	cutting pain
біль слабкий біль	severe pain
стискальний біль	slight pain
судомний біль	pressing pain
тупий біль	aching pain
	dull pain

## TRAUMA AND TREATMENT - ТРАВМИ ТА ЇХНЄ ЛІКУВАННЯ

<b>bite</b>	укус
<b>blow</b>	удар
<b>burns</b>	опік
<b>contusion</b>	забите місце
<b>dislocation</b>	вивих
<b>fracture</b>	перелом
<b>frostbite</b>	відмороження
<b>immobilization</b>	імобілізація
<b>injury</b>	пошкодження
<b>plaster bandage</b>	гіпсова пов'язка
<b>prosthetics</b>	протезування
<b>reduction</b>	вправлення
<b>splintage</b>	шинування
<b>sprain</b>	надрид
<b>strain (pull)</b>	розтягання
<b>Wound treatment</b>	Обробка рани
<b>Wound treatment and bandage</b>	Обробка рани і накладання пов'язки

## ЕНІДЕМІЯ НТАШННОГО ГРННУ - BIRD FLU EPIDEMIC

антивірусний	anti-viral
боротися (з епідемією)	combat (an epidemic)
вакцинація (щеплення)	vaccination
винищення	culling
забирати (людські життя)	claim (lives)
забій	culling
зволікання	foot-dragging
інфікувати	infect
негативні наслідки	ill-effect
пандемія (епідемія, яка охоплює цілі країни та материки)	pandemic
піддаватися мутації	mutate
плани на випадок непередбачених обставин	contingency plans
понуляція, в якій виник вірус	host population
поширюватися (про епідемію)	spread
провокувати (початок епідемії)	trigger (an epidemic)
спалах (епідемії)	outbreak (of an epidemic)
стримувати (локалізувати) поширення епідемії	contain (an epidemic)
штам (культура вірусів, що виділена з певного джерела)	strain (of a disease)

## LESSON 2

### PART I

#### МЕДИЧНІ ІНСТРУМЕНТИ ТА ХІРУРГІЧНЕ УСТАТКУВАННЯ MEDICAL INSTRUMENTS AND SURGICAL EQUIPMENT

апарат штучна нпрка	artificial kidney
апарат "штучне серце"	artificial heart
апарат штучного дихання	ventilator
апарат штучного кровообігу	heart-lung machine
бандаж	bandage
банка для збирання проб на аналіз	specimen bottle
бинт	bandage
водій рнтму серця (вживлений стимулятор)	pacemaker
вологе обгортання	wet pack
гастроскоп (медичний прилад для маніпуляцій на шлунку)	gastroscope
гіпсова пов'язка	plaster cast
голка	needle
дефібрилятор (електричний прилад для короткочасної подачі на серце високої напруги) джгут енцефалограф (апарат для фотографування циркуляції крові у головному мозку)	defibrillator
затискач зонд	tourniquet
інгальатор (прилад для вдихання аерозолів тощо) інструмент для осушування ран кардіограф (прилад для реєстрації скорочень серця) катетер (металевий або гумовий хірургічний інструмент для дренивання і промивання порожнин)	encephalogram
киснева маска	clamp
комп'ютерний томографічний сканер ланцет (гостроконечний хірургічний ніж з ручкою)	probe; sound
	inhalator
	drain
	cardiograph
	catheter
	oxygen mask
	CT scanner (CAT scanner)
	lancet (lance)

мікроскоп	microscope
носилки (ноші)	stretcher
підкладне судно	bedpan
підтримуюча пов'язка	sling
рентгенівська установка	X-ray machine
респіратор (засіб індивідуального захисту органів дихання); апарат штучного дихання	respirator
скальпель	scalpel
стетоскоп (медичний прилад для прослуховування легень і серця)	stethoscope
тампон	packing
тампон на стержні	swab
термометр	thermometer
ультразвуковий сканер установка для підтримки життєдіяльності шина (пристосування з твердого матеріалу для закріплення кінцівок при переломі тощо)	ultrasound scanner life-support machine splint
шприц щипці	syringe forceps

## PART 2

### ГАЛУЗІ НЕТРАДИЦІЙНОЇ МЕДИЦИНИ - BRANCHES OF ALTERNATIVE MEDICINE

автогенне тренування	autogenic training
акупунктура	acupuncture
ароматерапія	aromatherapy
гербалізм (теорія, згідно з якою будь-які хвороби можна вилікувати виключно за допомогою трав) гідротерапія	herbalism
(зовнішнє застосування води з лікувальною та профілактичною метою у вигляді обливань, розтирань тощо)	hydrotherapy
гіпнотерапія (метод лікування, заснований на гіпнотичному навіюванні) голковколювання голкотерапія гомеопатія	hypnotherapy
(теорія, згідно з якою будь-які хвороби можна вилікувати шляхом застосування у малих дозах речовин, що у великих дозах спричиняють явища, схожі на ознаки хвороби)	acupuncture acupuncture homeopathy (homoeopathy)
іридологія (теорія, згідно з якою будь-яку хворобу можна встановити, проаналізувавши стан райдужної оболонки ока)	iridology
масаж натуропатія (система лікування, що ґрунтується на використанні природних чинників (вода, світло, повітря, тепло, масаж тощо) і не визнає ліків, хірургії, рентгенівських променів тощо)	massage naturopathy
система Александра (метод лікування, що ґрунтується на виконанні фізичних вправ) система Баха (метод лікування із застосуванням квіткових есенцій) хіропратика (теорія, згідно з якою виникнення деяких хвороб пояснюється вивихом певних хребців, вправлення яких приводить до вилікування)	Alexander technique Bach chiropractic
японський масаж	Shiatsu

### ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ГРУДНОЇ КЛІТКИ ОРГАНІВ ГРУДНОЇ ПОРОЖНИНИ DISORDERS OF THORAX AND THORACIC ORGANS

блідість	pallor
блювання	vomiting

втрата свідомості  
жорстке дихання  
задишка  
знесиленість  
кашель  
набряк  
нудота  
посиніння  
розлад травлення (шлунка)  
серцевий напад  
утруднене дихання  
хрипи  
частота серцевих скорочень  
шуми в серці

loss of consciousness  
harsh breathing  
shortness of breath  
prostration  
cough  
swelling  
nausea  
bluish discoloration  
indigestion  
heart attack  
gasping  
rales  
heart rate  
heart (cardiac) murmurs

### **PART3**

## **ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ШКІРИ - SKIN DISORDERS**

бородавка		wart
виразка		ulcer
висип		eruption; rash
екзема		eczema
імпетиго		impetigo
кірка		crust
лопатися		ooze
лупа (у дітей)		cradle cap
лупа (у дорослих)		dandruff
лущення		scaling
папілома	нухлина у вигляді тонкої бородавки)	papilloma
подразнення		irritation
псоріаз		psoriasis
нухир		blister
родимка		birth mark; mole
розтріскуватися		ooze
садно		abrasion
свербіти		itch
ураження тканини		lesion
шрам		scar

## **ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ВУХА, ГОРЛА І НОСА - DISORDERS OF THE EAR, NOSE AND THROAT**

біль у вусі	ear pain
блювання	vomiting
бронхіт (запалення бронхів)	bronchitis
виділення	discharge
виділення з носу	nasal discharge
відчуття, наче ломить тіло	body aches
втома	fatigue; tiredness
гарячка	fever
гнійне виділення	pus discharge
головний біль	headache
закладений (ніс)	congested (nose); stuffy (nose)
запалене горло	sore throat
запалення	inflammation

запалення вуха	ear infection
запаморочення	dizziness
застуда	cold
знижений тонус	lack of energy
кахикання	hacking cough
кашель	cough
кашляти	cough
кровотеча з носу	nosebleed
круп (запалення слизової оболонки гортані, що супроводжується хрипом, гавкаючим кашлем та важким диханням)	croup
мати (підвищену) температуру нежить	run a temperature
нездужання (невправне відчуття дискомфорту й стомливості)	rhinitis; running nose
потіння	<b>malaise</b>
почервоніле обличчя	sweating
пронос	flushed face
симптоми захворювання верхніх дихальних шляхів	diarrhea
сякати (носа) температура (підвищена)	respiratory symptoms
ускладнення головної з пов'язаних між собою хвороб	blow (the nose)
утруднене ковтання хрип чхання	fever
	worsening of underlying illness
	difficult swallowing
	wheezing
	sneeze

## ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ОЧЕРЕВИНИ І ОРГАНІВ ЧЕРЕВНОЇ ПОРОЖНИНИ DISORDERS OF PERITONEUM AND ABDOMINAL CAVITY

блювання	vomit(ing)
відрижка	belching anorexia
відсутність апетиту	hiccough; hiccup
гикавка	hernia
грижа	constipation
запор	swollen abdomen
здутий живіт	hiccough; hiccup
ікавка	nausea heartburn
нудота	diarrhea liquid
печія	stool
пронос	
рідкий стул	

## EYE DISORDERS - ЗАХВОРЮВАННЯ ОЧЕЙ

біль у оці винукле	eye pain
око втомленість ока	bulging eye
далекозорість	eye strain
двоїтися в очах	longsightedness
запалене око косяче	see double
око короткозорість	inflamed eye; sore eye
поволока перед очима	squinting eye
пошкодження віка	shortsightedness
сльозотеча ячмінь	blurring of vision
	eyelid injury
	eyewatering
	sty

## LESSON 3

### PART I

вагітність	pregnancy
виживати	survive
використовувати	exploit
виліковувати	cure
витісняти	dislodge
відчувати	experience
втручатися	interfere
ген	gene
голубити	caress
джерело	spring
діагноз	diagnosis
досвідчений	proficient
жалюгідний	miserable
жахливий	appalling
заболочена місцевість	moor
загортати	wrap up
зазнавати невдачі	fail
залишати	desert
занедбаний	neglected
згубний	fatal
зілля	drug
знахар	healer
зцілюваль	healer
зцілювати	heal
іноді	occasionally
кидати	desert
кровотеча	haemorrhage
кровоточити	bleed
лікар	physician
ліки	drug
лікування припарками	fomentation
людські втрати (на війні тощо)	casualties
наражати на небезпеку	imperial
наркотик	drug
недоглянутий	neglected
обдарований	dexterous
огляд (хворого)	examination
оспікування	celebration
переживати	experience
переливання крові	transfusion
пестити	caress
підкоряти	harness
поранений	wounded
поранення	injury
поштовх (внутрішній)	urge
приборкувати	harness
присвячувати	dedicate
прославляння	celebration
протистояти	resist
псувати	mar
ризикувати	imperial

розлад травлення  
серйозний (за тяжкістю)  
сильне бажання  
слабнути  
смертельний  
смола  
спокій  
спонукання  
спотворювати  
спритний  
сумний  
тяжкий  
умілий  
усувати  
ушкодження  
храм  
час від часу  
швидко  
шукати

indigestion  
severe  
urge  
fail  
fatal  
resin  
tranquility  
urge  
mar  
dexterous  
miserable  
severe  
proficient  
dislodge  
injury  
temple  
occasionally  
rapidly  
seek

## PART 2

авторитарний  
величезний  
визнавати  
виправдання  
відмовлятися  
владний (про характер)  
доказ  
ефективний  
жахливий  
жертва  
зарозумілість  
засвоювати (їжу тощо)  
засіб  
звільняти від  
зловісний  
зустріти (випадково)  
імунітет  
інгалятор  
кваліфікований  
ключ (до розгадки)  
ковтати  
лікування  
лікувати (за допомогою...)  
мати справу з  
опірність (організму)  
пихатість  
піддавати дії  
підхід  
піклуватися  
покірність  
припиняти  
принускати  
приречений  
розвиватися (про симптоми)  
розробляти (теорію тощо)

authoritarian  
huge  
accept  
plea  
give up  
authoritarian  
plea  
efficient  
dire  
victim  
arrogance  
ingest  
remedy  
dispense with  
dire  
come across  
immunity  
inhaler  
efficient  
clue  
ingest  
treatment  
treat with  
deal with  
resistance  
arrogance  
expose to  
approach  
concern with  
humility  
give up  
accept  
fated  
develop  
develop; work out



середній  
сінна гарячка  
слід  
смертельний  
смертоносний  
смиренність  
страждати від  
струмінь  
уразливий

average  
hay fever  
wake  
deadly  
deadly  
humility  
suffer from  
wake  
vulnerable